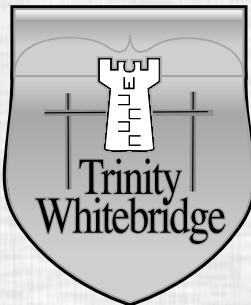


EDWARD JORDAN

PATRIZIA FIOCCHI

GRAMMAR FILES

**A Reference Grammar
for Italian Students**



from elementary (A2) to upper-intermediate (B2)

42 files grammatica con esercizi graduati e esercizi di revisione	Turn into English esercizi di traduzione	6 supplementary sections approfondimento con esercizi	TESTS & Supplementary Activities un quaderno separato con - 42 tests autocorrettivi - attività di recupero - CD-ROM con esercizi autocorrettivi
---	---	--	---

GRAMMAR FILES

a Reference Grammar for Italian Students

Una **grammatica di riferimento** per studenti della **scuola superiore** che desiderino sistematizzare conoscenze linguistiche in corso di acquisizione, chiarire ed esercitarsi su aspetti della lingua che possono presentare particolari difficoltà, avere uno strumento di supporto per sostenere gli esami **PET** -Preliminary English Test (livello B1-1) e **FCE** - First Certificate in English (livello B2).

Livello

Il livello va da "**elementary**" (A2) a "**upper-intermediate**" (B2) e può quindi accompagnare lo studente nell'intero iter di studio della scuola media superiore.

I contenuti grammaticali fino al livello B1, sono indicati con il simbolo (UNA STELLA); i contenuti di livello B2, sono indicati con il simbolo (DUE STELLE).

una stella (A2 - B1)	due stelle (B2)
elementary - intermediate	upper intermediate
A2 Waystage - B1 Threshold	B2 Vantage
ALTE Level 1 - ALTE Level 2	ALTE Level 3

Uso

Il testo può essere usato in classe con l'insegnante, o come fonte di consultazione ed esercitazione individuale ed autonoma da parte degli studenti.

Organizzazione

La **prima parte del testo** è costituita da:

- **42 percorsi** (chiamati **Files**) flessibili

Ciascun percorso presenta alcune **strutture grammaticali** raggruppate secondo criteri di gradualità, omogeneità e funzionalità.

Ogni struttura viene introdotta tramite schemi, spiegazioni ed esempi. La **teoria**, quando l'argomento lo richiede, è divisa in **forma** ed **uso**. Gli esempi relativi all'uso sono tradotti in italiano in modo da consentire l'analisi contrastiva e comparativa delle strutture.

Alla parte teorica fanno immediatamente seguito **esercizi graduati di vario tipo (Practice)**: trasformazione, inserimento, completamento, sostituzione, classificazione, abbinamento, scelta multipla, costruzione di mini-dialoghi, riformulazione, correzione di errori, ecc. Le tipologie di esercizi che rispecchiano **tipologie presenti nelle prove di certificazione del PET e del FCE** sono chiaramente indicate.

- **Esercizi di revisione (Revision)** che si soffermano sugli aspetti della lingua inglese che presentano le maggiori difficoltà per lo studente italiano.
- **Esercizi di traduzione (Turn into English)**, che, coerenti con i contenuti linguistici dei 42 files e centrati su aspetti linguistici che possono risultare problematici, costituiscono un ulteriore strumento di riflessione sulle differenze o possibili interferenze fra la lingua inglese e la lingua italiana.

La **seconda parte** del testo è costituita da:

- **6 sezioni supplementari (Supplementary Sections)** complete di **esercizi**, che approfondiscono aspetti particolari della lingua.

In particolare:

Section 1: Say it right: focalizzazione su termini ed espressioni linguistiche che in genere creano problemi agli studenti italiani;

Section 2: Word formation: presentazione dei principali meccanismi della formazione delle parole che consente allo studente di arricchire ulteriormente il proprio vocabolario;

Section 3: Something more about nouns: alcune particolarità dei sostantivi;

Section 4: Something more about prepositions: approfondimento sull'uso delle preposizioni;

Section 5: Communicative functions: presentazione di numerose funzioni comunicative realizzate tramite espressioni formali, informali e neutrali, suddivise per aree di significato;

Section 6: SOS Verbs!: una sezione che consente allo studente di meglio districarsi nella giungla dei verbi, dei tempi verbali inglesi e delle costruzioni sintattiche dei verbi. Contiene anche un elevato numero di **phrasal verbs**, un'utile **tabella riepilogativa dei tempi verbali**, e i **paradigmi dei verbi irregolari**.



Per lo studente:

GRAMMAR FILES TESTS & Supplementary Activities

che contiene:

- **42 tests di progresso** autocorrettivi
- **attività supplementari** di recupero e consolidamento
- **CD-ROM** con ulteriori esercizi autocorrettivi

Lo studente può verificare consapevolmente il proprio processo di apprendimento e, in caso di necessità, esercitarsi ulteriormente sugli aspetti linguistici non ancora acquisiti.

Per l'insegnante:

GRAMMAR FILES Teacher's Book

che contiene:

- le **soluzioni degli esercizi** di *Grammar Files*
- **tests sommativi** (con **soluzioni**) distinti per livello

CONTENTS

FILE 1 Grammar and practice

- p. 2 **★A** Pronomi personali soggetto
4 **★B** Infinito - Infinito del verbo
essere: *to be*
4 **★C** Present simple di *to be*
8 **★D** *Question words: who, what,
where, when, how, why, ...?*
10 **★E** Espressioni idiomatiche con *to be*
10 **★F** "Ecco"

FILE 2 Grammar and practice

- 12 **★A** Articoli: *the, a / an*
14 **★B** Paesi e nazionalità
16 **★C** Aggettivi
16 **★D** Ordine degli aggettivi

FILE 3 Grammar and practice

- 20 **★A** Plurale dei sostantivi
24 **★B** Aggettivi e pronomi dimostrativi:
this, these, that, those
26 **★C** Pronomi personali complemento
26 **★D** Preposizioni semplici

FILE 4 Grammar and practice

- 28 **★A** *There is / There are*
30 **★B** Preposizioni di stato in luogo
34 **★C** Usi particolari di *in, at, on*

FILE 5 Grammar and practice

- 36 **★A** Present simple di *to have*
40 **★B** Gli indefiniti *some, any, no, none*
42 **★C** Sostantivi numerabili e non
numerabili
45 **Revision**

FILE 6 Grammar and practice

- 46 **★A** Aggettivi possessivi - *Whose?*
48 **★B** Genitivo sassone e doppio
genitivo
52 **★C** Pronomi possessivi

FILE 7 Grammar and practice

- 54 **★A** Numeri cardinali
56 **★B** Età, indirizzi, numeri di telefono
58 **★C** Prezzi
60 **★D** Misure: *How big? How long?
ecc.*

FILE 8 Grammar and practice

- 62 **★A** L'ora
65 **★B** Numeri ordinali - La data
68 **★C** Preposizioni di tempo
71 **Revision**

FILE 9 Grammar and practice

- 72 **★A** Present simple
76 **★B** Avverbi ed espressioni di
frequenza
78 **★C** Uso di *do / does* nelle *wh-
questions*
81 **Revision**

FILE 10 Grammar and practice

- 82 **★A** Espressioni idiomatiche con *to
have*
84 **★B** Mi piace ... *I like ...*
86 **★C** Mi occorre ... *I need ... / I take
...*
86 **★D** Preposizioni di mezzo

- 88 ★E Pronomi riflessivi e pronomi reciproci

FILE 11 Grammar and practice

- 92 ★A Present continuous - Forma in *-ing*
96 ★B Present simple / Present continuous
96 ★C Verbi di stato (verbi che non ammettono la forma progressiva)
100 ★D Costruzione con doppio accusativo (oggetto indiretto e diretto)

FILE 12 Grammar and practice

- 102 ★A Molto - Quanto?
104 ★B Un po' / Poco / Alcuni / Pochi
104 ★C Troppo
108 ★D Abbastanza (*enough*)
108 ★E Piuttosto (*quite / rather*)

FILE 13 Grammar and practice

- 110 ★A Preposizioni di moto
111 ★B Verbi di movimento
114 ★C Imperativo 2a persona singolare e plurale

FILE 14 Grammar and practice

- 118 ★A Uso dell'articolo determinativo *the*
121 ★B Uso dell'articolo determinativo *the* con luoghi geografici e punti cardinali
121 ★C Uso dell'articolo determinativo *the* con nomi propri di luogo
123 ★D Uso dell'articolo indeterminativo *a / an*
125 ★E Esclamazioni

FILE 15 Grammar and practice

- 126 ★A Verbi modali: caratteristiche generali
126 ★B *Can*
130 ★C *May*
130 ★D *Can / May*

FILE 16 Grammar and practice

- 132 ★A *Must*
135 ★B Imperativo 1a persona plurale: *let's*
135 ★C *Shall*

FILE 17 Grammar and practice

- 138 ★A *Will - Would*
140 ★B *To want* e verbi di volontà - Costruzione oggettiva
142 ★C *What? / Which? - One / Ones*
143 Revision

FILE 18 Grammar and practice

- 144 ★A Past simple di *to be*
146 ★B Past simple dei verbi ordinari (regolari e irregolari)
151 ★C Past simple di *to have*
152 Revision: tempi verbali

FILE 19 Grammar and practice

- 154 ★A Past continuous
156 ★B Past simple / Past continuous
160 ★C *Used to ...*
162 Revision: tempi verbali

FILE 20 Grammar and practice

- 164 ★A Avverbi di modo
166 ★B Comparativo e superlativo relativo di maggioranza con aggettivi

- 170 **★C** Comparativo e superlativo relativo di maggioranza con avverbi, sostantivi e dopo un verbo

FILE 21 Grammar and practice

- 172 **★A** Comparativo di uguaglianza
 172 **★B** Comparativo e superlativo di minoranza
 175 **★C** Costruzioni particolari con comparativi e superlativi
 176 **★★D** Rafforzativi dei comparativi e dei superlativi
 178 **Revision:** comparativi e superlativi

FILE 22 Grammar and practice

- 180 **★A** Aggettivi terminanti in *-ing* e *-ed*
 182 **★B** La forma in *-ing* dopo le preposizioni
 184 **★C** *To be used to / To get used to / Used to*
 185 **★D** La forma in *-ing* come soggetto / oggetto - Proibizioni brevi

FILE 23 Grammar and practice

- 186 **★A** Present perfect simple
 192 **★B** Present perfect simple / Past simple
 195 **Revision:** tempi verbali

FILE 24 Grammar and practice

- 196 **★A** Present perfect simple con *for* e *since*
 198 **★B** *It is ... since*
 200 **★C** Present perfect continuous
 202 **★D** Present perfect simple / Present perfect continuous

FILE 25 Grammar and practice

- 206 **★A** Past perfect simple
 210 **★B** Past perfect simple con *for* e *since*
 212 **★C** Past perfect continuous
 212 **★D** Past perfect simple / Past perfect continuous
 214 **Revision:** i tempi del passato

FILE 26 Grammar and practice

- 216 **★A** Present continuous con valore di futuro
 218 **★B** *To be going to*
 220 **★C** Present continuous / *To be going to*
 222 **★D** Future simple
 224 **★E** Future simple / *To be going to*
 225 **Revision:** tempi verbali (il futuro)

FILE 27 Grammar and practice

- 226 **★A** Present simple con valore di futuro
 227 **★B** Periodo ipotetico di "tipo 0"
 228 **★C** Periodo ipotetico di 1° tipo
 230 **★D** Il futuro nelle subordinate ipotetiche e temporali - Principali connettivi di "condizione" e di "tempo"
 232 **★E** Altri connettivi di base

FILE 28 Grammar and practice

- 234 **★★A** Future continuous
 236 **★★B** Future perfect simple
 238 **★★C** Future perfect continuous
 240 **★★D** Altri modi per esprimere il futuro
 241 **Revision:** tempi verbali (il futuro)

FILE 29 Grammar and practice

- 244 ★A Pronomi relativi - Frasi subordinate relative restrittive
 248 ★B Pronomi relativi - Frasi subordinate non restrittive
 250 ★★C Relativi indefiniti composti con "ever"
 251 ★★D Infinito e partecipi al posto di frasi relative
 252 Revision: relativi

FILE 30 Grammar and practice

- 254 ★A Indefiniti composti con *some*, *any*, *no*, *every*
 258 ★B *All / Every / Each / Whole*
 260 ★C *Both / Either / Neither*
 261 ★D *Most*
 262 ★E Gradi di quantità - Percentuale - Proporzioni
 264 ★F *Other / Another / Else*
 265 Revision: indefiniti

FILE 31 Grammar and practice

- 266 ★A *Can / Could*
 268 ★B *To be able to*
 270 ★C *May / Might*
 272 ★D *To be allowed to*

FILE 32 Grammar and practice

- 274 ★A *Must / Should / Ought to*
 276 ★B *To have to*
 280 ★C Verbi semi-modali: *need* e *dare*
 282 ★★D Altri modi per esprimere "dovere": *be to*, *be expected to*, *be supposed to*

FILE 33 Grammar and practice

- 284 ★A Present conditional
 286 ★B Periodo ipotetico di 2° tipo
 289 ★C *Should / Would have to*

FILE 34 Grammar and practice

- 290 ★★A Perfect conditional (condizionale passato)
 292 ★★B Periodo ipotetico di 3° tipo
 294 ★★C Periodi ipotetici a confronto - Inversione
 296 ★★D Forme composte con i modali (riferimento al passato)

FILE 35 Grammar and practice

- 300 ★A *Wish*
 304 ★★B *Would rather*
 306 ★★C *Had better*
 308 ★★D *It's time / It's high/about time*
 309 Revision: *Wish - Would rather - Had better - It's time*

FILE 36 Grammar and practice

- 310 ★A Forma passiva: present simple e past simple
 314 ★★B Forma passiva: altri tempi e modi
 316 ★C Forma passiva con i modali

FILE 37 Grammar and practice

- 318 ★A Forma passiva: costruzione personale (*I was given*)
 320 ★B Forma passiva: costruzione impersonale e personale (*It is said that / He is said to*)
 322 ★★C Particolari significati passivi
 323 Revision: forma passiva

FILE 38 Grammar and practice

- 324 ★A Fare + infinito: *have something done*
 326 ★B Fare + infinito: *make / have / let somebody do - get somebody to do*

- 328 **★★C** Verbi di percezione
330 **Revision:** fare + infinito - verbi di percezione

FILE 39 Grammar and practice

- 332 **★A** Discorso diretto e indiretto:
to say / to tell
332 **★B** Discorso indiretto: riportare affermazioni
336 **★C** Discorso indiretto: riportare domande e risposte
338 **★D** Discorso indiretto: riportare richieste, ordini, consigli, ecc.
340 **★E** I modali nel discorso indiretto
341 **★★F** Discorso indiretto: periodi ipotetici, *had better, would rather, wish ...*
342 **Revision:** discorso indiretto

FILE 40 Grammar and practice

- 344 **★★A** Connettivi di tempo
347 **★★B** Connettivi di condizione
349 **★★C** Connettivi di dubbio
350 **★★D** Connettivi di scopo e precauzione
352 **★★E** Connettivi di modo

FILE 41 Grammar and practice

- 354 **★★A** Connettivi di causa ed effetto
356 **★★B** Connettivi per: includere ed aggiungere, escludere, esprimere alternativa, esprimere contrasto o concessione
360 **★★C** Altri connettivi per strutturare un discorso
363 **Revision:** connettivi

FILE 42 Grammar and practice

- 366 **★★A** Uso dell'infinito con *to*
369 **★★B** Uso dell'infinito senza *to*
370 **★★C** Uso della forma in *-ing*
374 **★★D** Verbi seguiti da forma in *-ing* o da infinito
376 **★★E** Tempi dell'infinito e della forma in *-ing*
378 **Revision:** infinito con *to* / senza *to* o forma in *-ing*?

TURN INTO ENGLISH

- 380 Esercizi di traduzione

Supplementary Sections

SECTION 1 Say it right

- 396 **A** Come si dice: "ancora", "non ... più", "come" - Espressioni con *like*
400 **B** Come si dice: "anche/neanche", "anch'io/neanch'io", ""io sì / io no", "davvero?" "vero? / non è vero?" "penso di sì / penso di no"
404 **C** Parole da non confondere (sostantivi, aggettivi, avverbi)
411 **D** False friends

SECTION 2 Word formation

- 414 **A** Formazione delle parole con suffissi e prefissi
421 **B** Parole composte: aggettivi e sostantivi composti
424 **C** Aggettivi e sostantivi di nazionalità

SECTION 3 Something more about nouns

- 426 **A** Particularità di alcuni sostantivi numerabili e non numerabili
428 **B** Plurale: alcuni casi particolari
428 **C** Sostantivi collettivi

SECTION 4 Something more about prepositions

- 430 **A** Aggettivi + preposizione
430 **B** Sostantivi + preposizione
432 **C** Usi idiomatici delle preposizioni

SECTION 5 Communicative functions

- 434 **A** Le funzioni comunicative (Che cosa sono?)
434 **B** Il linguaggio dei rapporti interpersonali
440 **C** Le funzioni comunicative con i modali e forme alternative

SECTION 6 S.O.S. Verbs!

- 450 **A** Verbi da non confondere
455 **B** Fare: *to do / to make* - Altri modi per rendere "fare"
456 **C** Verbi con preposizione e senza preposizione
458 **D** *Phrasal verbs*
463 **E** Altri *phrasal verbs*
469 **F** Revision: *phrasal verbs*
470 **F** Costruzioni sintattiche dei verbi
471 **G** Costruzioni sintattiche dei verbi più comuni
476 **H** Tabella riepilogativa dei tempi verbali
480 **I** Verbi irregolari (paradigmi)

APPENDIX

- 483 Simboli fonetici e alfabeto
483 Punteggiatura

INDEX

- 484 Indice analitico

FILES 1-42

p. 2-379

TURN INTO ENGLISH

p. 380-395

SUPPLEMENTARY SECTIONS 1-6

p. 396-482

APPENDIX

p. 483

INDEX

p. 484-501

Grammar and practice

- | | |
|--|---|
| A. Pronomi personali soggetto | D. Question words: who, what, where, when, how, why |
| B. Infinito - Infinito del verbo essere: to be | E. Espressioni idiomatiche con to be |
| C. Present simple di to be | F. Ecco |

★ A PRONOMI PERSONALI SOGGETTO

Forma

singolari		plurali	
I	io	we	noi
you	tu	you	voi
he	egli/lui	they	essi/e/loro
she	ella/lei		
it	esso/a		

Il pronomine personale **I** (1a persona singolare) è sempre scritto con la **lettera maiuscola**.

Uso

- Il pronomine personale soggetto **va sempre espresso**, mentre in italiano è spesso sottinteso. *We are Italian.* Siamo italiani.
- Il pronomine personale soggetto **può essere sottinteso** in inglese solo in frasi coordinate introdotte da **and, but, or** che abbiano lo stesso soggetto. *He is Italian but lives in England.* Lui è italiano ma vive in Inghilterra.



Il pronomine personale di **3a persona singolare** presenta **tre forme**:

he per persona di genere maschile (egli/lui)
she per persona di genere femminile (ella/lei)
it per il neutro (cosa o animale: esso/a)

it viene usato anche come **soggetto impersonale** in molti casi. Ad esempio, per esprimere:

il giorno
la data
l'ora
il tempo
il tempo atmosferico
la temperatura
la distanza
l'ambiente

He is my boyfriend. Lui è il mio ragazzo.
She is my girlfriend. Lei è la mia ragazza.
It is my dog. (Esso) è il mio cane.

It's Sunday. È domenica.
It's 12th May. È il 12 maggio.
It's seven o'clock. Sono le sette.
It's late/early. È tardi/presto.
It's hot/cold. È caldo/freddo.
It's 27°C. Ci sono 27°C.
How far is it? Quanto dista?
It's dark. È buio.

you, oltre ad essere il pronomine personale di 2a persona singolare (tu) e di 2a persona plurale (voi), viene usato anche con significato corrispondente al "lei" di cortesia italiano.

Are you a student? Sei studente?
Are you students? Siete studenti?
Excuse me. Are you Mr Jones?
Mi scusi. Lei è il signor Jones?

Ricorda:

Mr Jones	Il signor Jones	→	he
Mrs Swanson	La signora Swanson	→	she
Miss Sullivan	La signorina Sullivan	→	she
Ms Gray	La signora/signorina Gray	→	she

PRACTICE

- 1.** Scrivi il *pronomo personale soggetto* (*he, she, it, they*) corrispondente a ciascuna figura.



1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.



- 2.** Sostituisci i *soggetti sottolineati* con i *pronomi personali* corrispondenti.

- | | |
|--|--|
| ➤ <u>Paul</u> is a doctor. | <u>He</u> is a doctor. |
| 1. <u>Peter</u> is a musician. | 7. <u>The cat</u> is in the garden. |
| 2. <u>My house</u> is big. | 8. <u>My parents</u> are at work. |
| 3. <u>Mrs Gorman</u> is a nurse. | 9. <u>Jenny</u> is a teacher. |
| 4. <u>Mary and John</u> are students. | 10. <u>Mr and Mrs Simpson</u> are in the garden. |
| 5. <u>Elephants</u> are big animals. | 11. <u>Miss Norton</u> is beautiful. |
| 6. <u>My sister and I</u> are not English. | 12. <u>Mr Cooper</u> is my teacher. |

- 3.** Completa le frasi con i *pronomi personali soggetto he, she, it*.

- | | |
|---|--|
| ➤ This is Brenda. | <u>She</u> is American. |
| 1. German is my favourite subject but ... is difficult. | 4. That's Paul White. ... is my neighbour. |
| 2. This is Jane. ... is my best friend. | 5. I love Italy. ... is a wonderful country. |
| 3. This is my boyfriend. ... is a student. | 6. Here's a sandwich for you. ... is a ham sandwich. |

- 4.** Completa i mini-dialoghi con i *pronomi personali soggetto* adeguati.

- | | |
|--|--|
| ➤ A: What's your job? | B: <u>I</u> 'm a nurse. |
| 1. A: Who's that boy over there?
B: ...'s my brother. | 6. A: What colour is your new bike?
B: ...'s red. |
| 2. A: What's the weather like?
B: ...'s cold but sunny. | 7. A: What's your name?
B: ...'s Mark. |
| 3. A: What time is ...?
B: ...'s 5 o'clock. ...'s late. | 8. A: Excuse me? Are ... Mr Parker?
B: Yes, ... am. |
| 4. A: Who are those people over there?
B: ...'re my parents. | 9. A: When's your birthday?
B: ...'s in November. |
| 5. A: Who's that girl next to Bob?
B: ...'s my best friend Pam. | 10. A: Where are your friends?
B: ...'re at home. |

★ B INFINITO - INFINITO DEL VERBO "ESSERE": **to be**

Forma

Infinito	to + forma base del verbo <i>to be, to see, to study, to sleep, ...</i>
Infinito negativo	not to + forma base del verbo <i>not to be, not to see, not to study, not to sleep, ...</i>

- L'infinito dei verbi in inglese è caratterizzato dalla presenza di **to** davanti alla **forma base**.
- L'infinito del verbo **essere** è **to be**.
It's nice to be here again.
È bello essere qui di nuovo.
To be or not to be ... Essere o non essere ...
- L'infinito non è mai preceduto da preposizioni.
I'm here to visit my grandparents.
Sono qui per vedere i miei nonni.

★ C PRESENT SIMPLE DI **TO BE**

Forma

Affermativa	Negativa	Interrogativa	Interrogativo-negativa
I am ('m) you are ('re) he } is ('s) she } it	I am not ('m not) you are not (aren't) he } she } is not (isn't) it	am I ...? are you ...? is he ...? is she ...? it ...?	aren't I ...? / am I not ...? aren't you ...? isn't he ...? isn't she ...? It ... ?
we are ('re) you are ('re) they are ('re)	we are not (aren't) you are not (aren't) they are not (aren't)	are we ...? are you ...? are they ...?	aren't we ...? aren't you ...? aren't they ...?
Risposte brevi			
Yes , I am / you are / he-she-it is / we are / you are / they are			
No , I'm not / you aren't / he-she-it isn't / we aren't / you aren't / they aren't			
<i>She is ('s) at home. / She is not (isn't) at home.</i>			
<i>Is she at home? / Isn't she at home? - Yes, she is. / No, she isn't.</i>			

Forme contratte

Le **forme contratte** sono tipiche della lingua parlata o informale.

La forma interrogativo-negativa non contratta non è comunemente usata e per la **1a persona singolare** si usa soprattutto **aren't I** ?

Aren't I too thin? Non sono troppo magro?

Risposte brevi (short answers)

In inglese normalmente non si risponde con un semplice “yes” o un “no”; sarebbe considerato scortese. E’ necessario sempre aggiungere qualcosa. Vengono spesso utilizzate le **short answers (risposte brevi)**.

Le **risposte brevi affermative** richiedono l’ausiliare alla **forma affermativa non contratta**.

Are you a student? – Yes, I am.

Le **risposte brevi negative** hanno l’ausiliare alla **forma negativa di solito contratta**.

Are they doctors? – No, they aren't.

Question tags

Le **question tags**, che rendono l'italiano **vero? / non è vero?**, si usano per **chiedere conferma** di quanto si è dichiarato.
Si strutturano come segue:

Frase	Question tag (vero? / non è vero?)
affermativa <i>You're Italian</i> Tu sei italiano,	interrogativo-negativa <i>aren't you?</i> vero?
negativa <i>You aren't Italian,</i> Tu non sei italiano,	interrogativa (non più negativa) <i>are you?</i> vero?

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi con la forma *forma affermativa intera* del *present simple* di *to be*, poi riscrivile nella forma contratta.

➤ *We are at school.* *We're at school.*

1. I Sue Feldman
2. My name George.
3. Mark my new classmate.
4. The window near the door.
5. It cold today.
6. They in the garden

7. You a pretty girl.

8. The sky dark.
9. Mr Johnson a doctor.
10. We Italian.
11. This film boring.
12. I bored.

2. Completa le frasi utilizzando la *forma negativa* del *present simple* di *to be*, poi riscrivile nella forma contratta.

➤ *Paul is not at home.* *Paul isn't at home.*

1. Peter in Paris.
2. I at home.
3. Mary at school today.
4. Mark and Tom at the gym.
5. George and I old friends.

6. Paella an Italian dish.
7. Sue and Mary twins.
8. Mrs Jones a nurse.
9. He a disc jokey.
10. It a small classroom.

3. Costruisci frasi con le parole fornite utilizzando le *forme contratte* del *present simple* di *to be*.

➤ I / Brenda Coleman. / not / Susan Smith. ***I'm Brenda Coleman. I'm not Susan Smith.***

1. She / Diana Baker. / not / Glenda Gibson.
2. They / Paul and Bob. / not / Alan and Colin.
3. We / Mick and Susan. / not / John and Jane.
4. He / Peter. / not / Stephen.
5. It / my dog. / not / Paul's dog.
6. You / Jenny. / not / Pamela.

4. Trasforma le seguenti frasi nella forma *interrogativa* e *interrogativo-negativa*.

➤ *He is a good footballer.* ***Is he a good footballer? Isn't he a good footballer?***

1. Mr Davis is the headmaster.
2. You are generous.
3. They are from Brazil.
4. Berlin is the capital of Germany.
5. Tom is in the basketball team.

6. We are late.
7. He is at the dentist's.
8. It is cold.
9. She is ready.
10. The pizza is good.

5. Riscrivi le frasi in *forma interrogativa* e rispondi usando le parole fornite, come nell'esempio.

➤ *The boss is in his office. (in the canteen)*

Is the boss in his office?

No, he isn't in his office. He's in the canteen.

1. Those people are from Hong Kong.
(*Tokyo*)
2. This is an old film. (*new film*)
3. This exercise is difficult. (*easy*)
4. These books are cheap. (*expensive*)

5. The children are at school. (*at the museum*)
6. The U2 are an English band. (*Irish band*)
7. Mr Gorman is the German teacher.
(*English*)
8. They are hungry. (*thirsty*)

6. Rispondi con *risposte brevi*.

➤ *Is she a student? - Yes, **she is**.*

1. Are you a doctor? - No, ...
2. Are Mark and Frank American? - Yes, ...
3. Is Manuela from Rome? - Yes, ...
4. Are you students? - No, ...

5. Is that your dog? - Yes, ...
6. Are Jimmy and Bill on holiday? - No, ...
7. Are those your suitcases? - No, ...
8. Am I late? - No, ...

7. Rispondi in modo personale alle domande con *risposte brevi*.

1. Are you a student? ...
2. Is your school big? ...
3. Is English your favourite subject? ...
4. Are your teachers good? ...
5. Are the subjects interesting? ...
6. Are your schoolmates nice? ...

8. Indica le frasi corrette (R) e quelle errate (W). Correggi gli eventuali errori.

➤ *Are they on holiday? - No, it isn't.*

(W) *No, **they aren't**.*

1. Aren't I too thin? - No, you aren't.
2. She is Italian? - Yes, she is.
3. Is that boy English? - Yes, she is.
4. Are he from Spain? - No, he isn't.
5. Are they engineers? - Yes, they aren't.

- (...)
(...)
(...)
(...)
(...)

9. Abbina a ciascuna frase la *question tag* appropriata.

1. It's blue,
2. They're Canadian,
3. Mary isn't from London,
4. Paul is an engineer,
5. Mr Osborne isn't a doctor,
6. It isn't cold today,
7. We aren't late,



- a) is it?
- b) isn't he?
- c) isn't it?
- d) are we?
- e) is she?
- f) aren't they?
- g) is he?

1...
2...
3...
4...
5...
6...
7...

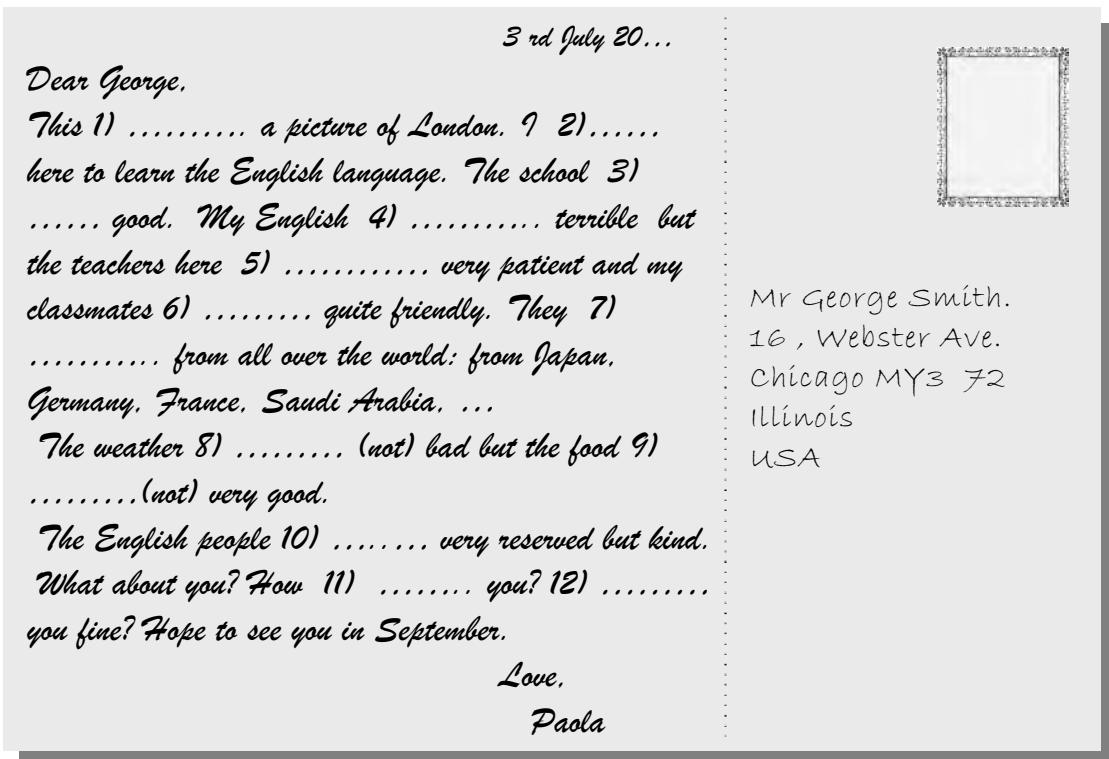
10. Aggiungi in coda a ciascuna frase la *question tag* appropriata.

➤ *You aren't English, **are you?***

1. It's seven o' clock,?
2. You're a student,?
3. Mary isn't at home,?
4. Peter and Alan aren't American,?
5. It's a beautiful day,?

6. It isn't expensive,?
7. Lunch is ready,?
8. It's late,?
9. I'm a bit too fat,?
10. You aren't hungry,?

11. Completa la cartolina con il *present simple* di *to be* nella forma corretta (affermativa, negativa, interrogativa)



12. Completa il dialogo con la forma corretta del *present simple* di *to be*. Utilizza la forma contratta quando è possibile. (Jane = J; Susan= S; Alan= A)

J: Come on, Susan! You 1) late.
S: Late? What time 2) it?
J: It 3) seven o'clock and dinner 4) ready. Susan, this 5) Alan, Alan Johnson.
S: Hello, Alan.
A: Hello, Susan.
S: Where 6) you from, Alan? You 7) English, are you?
A: No, I 8) I 9) Australian.
J: He 10) from Sydney.
S: Oh, that 11) interesting. Sydney 12) a beautiful city, 13) it?
A: Oh, yes, it 14) It 15) really beautiful.
S: 16) your parents there?
A: No, they 17) They 18) in Glasgow. They live there now. What about you, Susan? 19) you English?
S: Yes, I 20) I 21) from a small village near Cambridge. It 22) a nice village but it 23) boring in autumn and in winter.
J: Alan, Susan 24) a computer scientist, you know.
A: That 25) interesting. I 26) a computer scientist, too.

★ D QUESTION WORDS: *who / what / where / when / how / why...?*

who?	chi?	<i>Who's that man over there?</i>	Chi è quell'uomo?
what?	quale? che cosa?	<i>What's your name?</i> <i>What nationality are you?</i>	Qual è il tuo nome/ Come ti chiami? Di che nazionalità sei?
where?	dove?	<i>Where's your brother?</i> <i>Where are you from?</i>	Dov'è tuo fratello? Di dove sei?
when?	quando?	<i>When's your birthday?</i>	Quando è il tuo compleanno?
how?	come?	<i>How are you?</i> <i>How old are you?</i>	Come stai? Quanti anni hai?
why?	perché?	<i>Why are you late?</i>	Perché sei in ritardo?



Esistono anche altre **question words** che incontrerai proseguendo lo studio della lingua inglese.

why = "perché" nelle domande

because = "perché" nelle risposte

- *Why are you late?*

- *I'm late because my watch is ten minutes slow.*

- Perché sei in ritardo?

- Sono in ritardo perché il mio orologio è indietro di dieci minuti.

PRACTICE

1. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

- **When / Where** is Mark? - He's at work.
1. **How / Who** is Mary? - She's fine thanks.
 2. **Where / When** is Tom's birthday? - It's in March.
 3. **What / Where** nationality is Alex? - He's American.
 4. **How / Where** is Bob from? - He's from Canada.

5. **How / What** colour is your hair? - It's brown.
6. **When / Why** isn't Jane at work today? - She's ill.
7. **How / When** old is Susan? - She's 18.
8. **How / What** is Mark like? - He's quite shy.

2. Completa le domande in A e poi abbinale adeguatamente alle risposte in B.

A

1. What your name?
2. What time it?
3. What colour your eyes?
4. What that machine for?
5. What her address?
6. What your parents like?
7. What your job?

B

- a) They're green.
- b) I'm a nurse.
- c) It's 5 o'clock.
- d) To cut the grass.
- e) They're generous and kind.
- f) It's Jane.
- g) It's 8 Court Road.

1 ...

2 ...

3 ...

4 ...

5 ...

6 ...

7 ...

3. Completa le domande con le *question words* adeguate.

1. 's his name? - It's Mark.
2. old is he? - He's 24.
3. are they from? - They're from Scotland.
4. nationality are they? - They're French.
5. 's your job? - I'm a doctor.
6. are they? - They're my parents.
7. are you? - I'm fine, thanks.
8. 's your phone number? - It's 574892.
9. 's your favourite sport? - It's tennis.
10. time is it? - It's 8.30.
11. 's your address? - It's 16, Olm Street.
12. colour are your eyes? - They're blue.
13. 's Jane like? - She's sweet and patient.
14. is Pamela at home? - She isn't very well.

4. Riordina le parole per formulare domande di senso compiuto.

➤ *the footbal match / when / is / ? When is the football match?*

1. wrong / is / this exercise / why / ?
2. Jane / where / is / ?
3. old / how / your parents / are / ?
4. are / where / the children / ?
5. your uncle / how / is / ?
6. time / the concert / is / what / ?

5. Abbina adeguatamente le domande alle risposte, collegandole con *because*.

1. Why is Bob in that shop?
2. Why is Clare at home this evening?
3. Why aren't they at work?
4. Why isn't Tom at school this morning?
5. Why is David in Paris?

- | | |
|----------|--|
| B | a) he's got flu. |
| E | b) they're on strike. |
| C | c) he wants to buy a present for his girlfriend. |
| A | d) he wants to learn French. |
| U | e) she doesn't like going out after dinner. |
| S | |
| E | |

1 ...
2 ...
3 ...
4 ...
5 ...

6. Completa il dialogo con le domande adeguate.

- A: 1)?
B: David Parker.
A: 2)?
B: I'm a policeman.
A: 3)?
B: I'm 24.
A: 4)?
B: I'm from Manchester.
A: 5) the girl in the photo?
B: She's my girlfriend.
A: 6)?
B: She's from Manchester too.
A: 7)?
B: She's 23.



★ E ESPRESSIONI IDIOMATICHE CON TO BE

- In inglese viene utilizzato il verbo **essere - to be** in alcune espressioni idiomatiche, a differenza dell'italiano dove il verbo è "avere".

<i>to be cold</i>	avere freddo	<i>to be wrong</i>	avere torto, sbagliarsi
<i>to be hot</i>	avere caldo	<i>to be in a hurry</i>	avere fretta
<i>to be hungry</i>	avere fame	<i>to be afraid/scared</i>	aver paura, temere
<i>to be thirsty</i>	avere sete	<i>to be ashamed</i>	aver vergogna, vergognarsi
<i>to be sleepy</i>	avere sonno	<i>to be ... old</i>	avere ... anni
<i>to be right</i>	avere ragione		

- Il verbo **to be** si usa anche in altre espressioni come:

<i>to be early</i>	essere in anticipo	<i>to be well / fine</i>	stare bene
<i>to be late</i>	essere in ritardo	<i>to be</i>	costare
<i>to be ill / sick</i>	essere ammalato	<i>to be sorry</i>	dispiacersi/scusarsi

- Ricorda anche le espressioni:

What's the matter? / What's wrong?
Che cosa c'è?
C'è qualche problema?
C'è qualcosa che non va?

What's the matter?

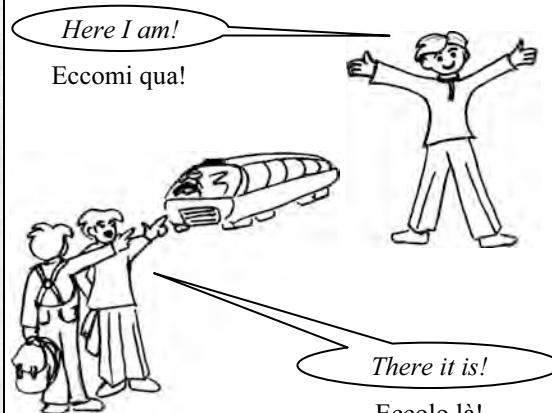
I'm cold.

★ F ECCO

L'espressione **ecco (qui / là)**
si rende in inglese con le seguenti costruzioni:

here qui
there là

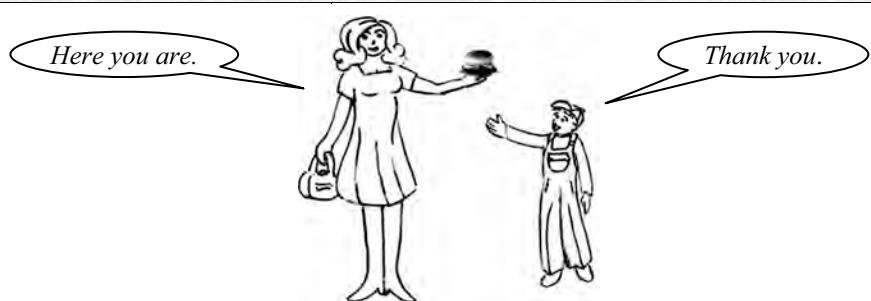
Here / There + pronomi personali + am/is/are



Here / There + am/is/are + sostantivo



Per **porgere**
qualcosa
a qualcuno
si usa l'espressione:
Here you are.
Ecco qui.



PRACTICE

1. Scrivi frasi utilizzando *espressioni idiomatiche con to be*, come nell'esempio.

What's the matter?

➤ ...He's sleepy...



1.
2.
3.
4.
5.



2. Abbina le frasi adeguatamente.

1. Are you hungry?
2. How old is Mary?
3. How are you?
4. Are you cold?
5. Dublin is in Germany.
6. Are they in a hurry?
7. Are they sleepy?
8. Are you hot?

- a) Of course I am. It's -3°C!
b) Not bad. And you?
c) Yes, they're late for work.
d) Of course we are. It's 37°C!
e) Yes, they are. It's bedtime.
f) No, you're wrong. It's in Ireland.
g) Yes, I am. Can I have a sandwich?
h) She's 19.

- 1 ...
2 ...
3 ...
4 ...
5 ...
6 ...
7 ...
8 ...

3. Completa i seguenti *mini-dialoghi* inserendo correttamente le parole mancanti.

➤ "Great Britain is a peninsula." "You **are wrong**. It's an island!"

1. "..... you?" "Of course, I am. It's two o'clock in the morning!"
2. "I" "Put on a pullover. There's one in my bedroom."
3. "..... you of dogs?" "Yes, very much. I of all animals."
4. "..... I?" "No, you aren't. You're early. The meeting is at 10 o'clock."
5. "..... I wrong?" "No, you aren't. You"
6. "What's the matter with John?..... he?" "Yes, he's got a temperature."

4. Riformula le frasi come negli esempi.

➤ Your book is here. → **Here's your book.**
➤ He is there. → **There he is.**

1. Your pencil is there. 3. My brother is there. 5. She is there.
2. Your shoes are here. 4. I'm here. 6. They are here.

5. Abbina le frasi adeguatamente.

1. Tom's late as usual.
2. Where are my shoes?
3. Can I have a cup of tea?
4. Where's the taxi?
5. John, where are you?

- a) There they are! Under the bed.
b) There it is!
c) Here I am!
d) Oh, look! There he is!
e) Here you are. It's nice and hot.

- 1 ...
2 ...
3 ...
4 ...
5 ...

Grammar and practice

- B. Paesi e nazionalità
D. Ordine degli aggettivi

- A. Articoli: *the, a/an*
C. Aggettivi

★ A ARTICOLI: *THE, A/AN*

ARTICOLO DETERMINATIVO (definite article) THE	ARTICOLO INDETERMINATIVO (indefinite article) A/AN				
<p>Traduce l'italiano <i>il, lo, la, i, gli, le</i> e si usa con sostantivi maschili, femminili e neutri, singolari e plurali.</p> <p><i>the boy the boys</i> <i>the girl the girls</i> <i>the house the houses</i></p> <p>si pronuncia: <i>/ðe/</i> davanti a consonante e h aspirata <i>/ði/</i> davanti a vocale e h muta</p>	<p>Traduce l'italiano <i>un, uno, una, un'</i> e si usa con sostantivi maschili, femminili e neutri, singolari numerabili per indicare uno tra tanti.</p> <table> <thead> <tr> <th>A</th><th>AN</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>davanti - a consonante <i>a cat</i> - h aspirata <i>a house</i> - al suono /ju/ <i>a university</i> <i>a European man</i></td><td>davanti - a vocale <i>an orange</i> - h muta <i>an hour</i></td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Le parole che iniziano con h muta sono poche: <i>heir, hour, honour, honest</i> e i loro derivati.</p>	A	AN	davanti - a consonante <i>a cat</i> - h aspirata <i>a house</i> - al suono /ju/ <i>a university</i> <i>a European man</i>	davanti - a vocale <i>an orange</i> - h muta <i>an hour</i>
A	AN				
davanti - a consonante <i>a cat</i> - h aspirata <i>a house</i> - al suono /ju/ <i>a university</i> <i>a European man</i>	davanti - a vocale <i>an orange</i> - h muta <i>an hour</i>				



A differenza dell'italiano, si usa l'articolo **a/an** davanti alle **professioni**.
He's a doctor. Lui fa il medico.

Per approfondire
l'uso degli articoli
vedi FILE 14

PRACTICE

1. Inserisci i seguenti vocaboli nella colonna appropriata a seconda dell'articolo (**a** oppure **an**) che richiedono.

ear / hand / nose / address / chair / hero / heir / glass / actor / uncle / uniform / hour / union / wardrobe / bottle / university / watch / European country / honest man

A	AN
<i>hand /</i>	<i>ear /</i>

2. Scrivi *a* oppure *an* davanti ai seguenti vocaboli.

➤ *an exercise*

- | | | |
|------------------|---------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. ... passport | 5. ... hospital | 9. ... American boy |
| 2. ... aeroplane | 6. ... window | 10. ... Italian girl |
| 3. ... wardrobe | 7. ... English dictionary | 11. ... holiday |
| 4. ... apple | 8. ... boy | 12. ... hobby |

3. Completa le frasi con *a* oppure *an* davanti alle professioni.



➤ *Mrs Clark is a housewife.*

1. Clare is ... vet.

2. Miss Sawyer is ... teacher.



3. Miss Swanson is ... actress.

4. Peter is ... surgeon.

5. Mr Thorpe is ... architect.

4. Completa i *mini-dialoghi* con *a* o *an*.

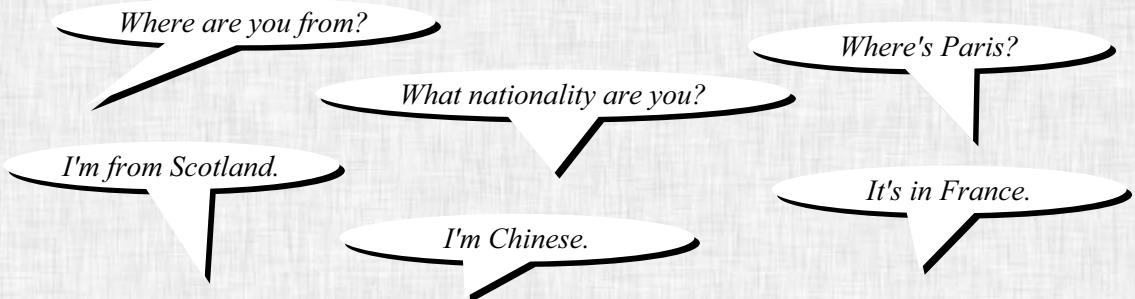
- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. A: That is tiger.
B: Yes, it's Indian tiger. | 4. A: Ghana is country.
B: Yes, it's African country. |
| 2. A: He is astronaut.
B: Yes, he's Russian astronaut. | 5. A: Megan's model.
B: Yes, she's Australian top model. |
| 3. A: He is musician.
B: Yes, he's excellent musician. | 6. A: The Po is river.
B: Yes, it's Italian river. |

5. Completa le frasi con *a/an* oppure *the*.

➤ *London is the capital of England. It's a very big city.*

1. Martin Scorsese is director of the film "Cape Fear". It's thriller.
2. name of my best friend is Martina. She's nurse.
3. Who is woman in photo? - She's actress.
4. Michael is son of famous scientist.
5. This is beautiful cathedral. - Yes, it's famous St. Paul's Cathedral.
6. protagonist of this film is Sharon Stone. She's very attractive woman.
7. Colosseum is ancient amphitheatre in Rome.
8. Beethoven is German composer. He's composer of famous ninth symphony.
9. Rugby is popular sport in Great Britain. It's favourite sport of my English e-mail pal.
10. capital of Portugal is Lisbon. I think it's interesting city to visit.

★ B PAESI E NAZIONALITÀ



EUROPE	EUROPEAN
Austria	Austrian
Finland	Finnish
France	French
Germany	German
Great Britain	British
England	English
Scotland	Scottish
Wales	Welsh
Holland / The Netherlands	Dutch
Hungary	Hungarian
Ireland	Irish
Italy	Italian
Norway	Norwegian
Poland	Polish
Portugal	Portuguese
Rumania	Rumanian
Russia	Russian
Spain	Spanish
Sweden	Swedish
Switzerland	Swiss

AFRICA	AFRICAN
Egypt	Egyptian
South Africa	South African
Morocco	Moroccan

AMERICA	AMERICAN
The United States (The USA)	American
Canada	Canadian
Mexico	Mexican
Peru	Peruvian
Brazil	Brazilian
Argentina	Argentinian

ASIA	ASIAN
China	Chinese
Japan	Japanese
India	Indian
Irak	Iraqi
Pakistan	Pakistani

AUSTRALIA	AUSTRALIAN
-----------	------------

A differenza dell'italiano, in inglese gli aggettivi di nazionalità si scrivono con la **lettera maiuscola**.

They are English.

Loro sono inglesi.

L'aggettivo di nazionalità di solito esprime anche la **lingua**.

They speak English.

Loro parlano inglese.

Per approfondire
vedi a PAG. 424 425

PRACTICE

1. Guarda le tabelle nella pagina precedente e scrivi gli aggettivi di nazionalità corrispondenti ai paesi elencati nel gruppo corretto.

Sweden, Canada, France, Japan, Italy, Brazil, China, Mexico, Poland, the USA, Spain, Hungary, Great Britain, Portugal, Wales, Scotland, Germany, Greece, Australia, Austria, Norway, Morocco, Peru, Holland, Pakistan, Irak

aggettivi terminanti in -an	<i>Mexican</i>
aggettivi terminanti in -ian	<i>Canadian</i>
aggettivi terminanti in -ish	
aggettivi terminanti in -ese	
aggettivi terminanti in altro modo	

2. Inserisci la *nazionalità* corrispondente al paese di provenienza.

➤ *I'm from Norway. I'm Norwegian.*

1. She's from Germany . She's 4. Birgitte is from Sweden. She's
2. Kitty is from Ireland. She's 5. Zhou You is from China. He's
3. Juan is from Spain. He's 6. Kazuko is from Japan. She's

3. Scrivi *mini-dialoghi* utilizzando i suggerimenti forniti come nell'esempio.

➤ *you / Egypt / Alexandria*

A: What nationality are you?

B: I'm / We're Egyptian.

A: Where are you from in Egypt?

B: I'm / We're from Alexandria.

1. he / Morocco / Casablanca
2. they / Hungary / Budapest
3. you / Norway / Oslo

4. she / Ireland / Dublin
5. Roberto / Italy / Bologna
6. Veena / Pakistan / Lahore

4. Scrivi domande e risposte come nell'esempio.

➤ *Budapest / Hungary*

Where's Budapest? - In Hungary. It's the capital of Hungary.

1. Cairo / Egypt
2. Rome / Italy
3. Moscow / Russia

4. Warsaw / Poland
5. Beijing / China
6. Tokyo / Japan

★ C AGGETTIVI

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sono invariabili in genere Sono invariabili in numero (non prendono mai la -s del plurale) Seguono il verbo <i>to be</i> in funzione di predicato Precedono il sostantivo in funzione di attributo 	<i>Sarah is tall.</i> Sarah è alta. <i>Paul is tall.</i> Paul è alto. <i>Sarah and Paul are tall.</i> Sarah e Paul sono alti. <i>Sarah is beautiful.</i> Sarah è bella. <i>Sarah is a beautiful girl.</i> Sarah è una bella ragazza.
---	---

★ D ORDINE DEGLI AGGETTIVI

Quando vi sono più aggettivi in funzione di attributo, essi vengono espressi nel seguente **ordine**:

FACTS (fatti)	1. OPINION (opinione)	<i>beautiful, expensive, cheap, interesting, boring, ...</i>
	2. size (dimensione)	<i>small, big, long, short, high, tall, ...</i>
	3. weight (peso)	<i>heavy, light, ...</i>
	4. age (età)	<i>young, old, middle-aged, 20 year-old, ...</i>
	5. shape (forma)	<i>square, rectangular, round, triangular, straight, ...</i>
	6. colour (colore)	<i>yellow, red, pink, brown, black, blue, ...</i>
	7. origin (provenienza/nazionalità)	<i>Italian, American, Japanese, ...</i>
	8. material (materiale)	<i>gold, silver, metal, cotton, leather, silk, velvet, ...</i>
	9. specific features (caratteristiche specifiche)	<i>curly, wavy (di capelli), bald (di testa), ...</i>



 <i>It's a beautiful long silk dress.</i> È un bel vestito lungo di seta.	<p>Molti materiali (che sono dei sostantivi) vengono utilizzati come aggettivi in funzione attributiva.</p> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 45%;"><i>a leather bag</i></td><td>una borsa di pelle (= <i>a bag made of leather</i>)</td></tr> <tr> <td><i>a silk dress</i></td><td>un vestito di seta (= <i>a dress made of silk</i>)</td></tr> <tr> <td><i>a plastic bag</i></td><td>una borsa di plastica (= <i>a bag made of plastic</i>)</td></tr> </table> <p>Ma: wool, sostantivo = lana woollen, aggettivo = di lana <i>a pullover made of wool</i> <i>a woollen pullover</i> wood, sostantivo = legno wooden, aggettivo = di legno <i>a chair made of wood</i> <i>a wooden chair</i></p> <p>Nota inoltre la differenza tra gold (= oro, d'oro) e golden (= color oro) <i>a gold watch</i> un orologio d'oro <i>golden hair</i> capelli dorati</p>	<i>a leather bag</i>	una borsa di pelle (= <i>a bag made of leather</i>)	<i>a silk dress</i>	un vestito di seta (= <i>a dress made of silk</i>)	<i>a plastic bag</i>	una borsa di plastica (= <i>a bag made of plastic</i>)
<i>a leather bag</i>	una borsa di pelle (= <i>a bag made of leather</i>)						
<i>a silk dress</i>	un vestito di seta (= <i>a dress made of silk</i>)						
<i>a plastic bag</i>	una borsa di plastica (= <i>a bag made of plastic</i>)						

PRACTICE

1. Raggruppa i seguenti aggettivi nella categoria appropriata. Opinione o fatto? Aiutati con il dizionario per gli aggettivi di cui non conosci il significato.

*beautiful / long / good-looking / rectangular / boring / American / horrible / pretty
woollen / wooden / yellow / interesting / short / expensive / ugly / wavy / nice / round*

opinion	fact
<i>beautiful</i>	<i>long</i>

2. Raggruppa i seguenti aggettivi nella categoria appropriata. Aiutati con il dizionario per gli aggettivi di cui non conosci il significato.

*tall / blue / black / Hungarian / short / thin / slim / wavy / straight / long /
fair / blond(e) / old / fat / middle-aged / American / dark / slanting / green / young*

age (età)	origin (origine/nazionalità)	height (altezza)	build (corporatura)	hair (capelli)	eyes (occhi)

3. Scrivi gli aggettivi per descrivere i capelli e gli occhi nell'ordine corretto.

➤ *wavy / short / black / hair* ***short black wavy hair***

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. dark / curly / long / hair | 3. black / big / beautiful / eyes |
| 2. slanting / dark / small / eyes | 4. grey / horrible / long / hair |

4. Scrivi frasi usando le parole fornite come nell'esempio.

➤ *Mr Sullivan / old / man / Greek // short / thin / dark hair / blue eyes*

Mr Sullivan is an old Greek man.

He's short and thin with dark hair and blue eyes.

- | |
|---|
| 1. Helena / beautiful / girl / Swedish // tall / slim / blond(e) hair / blue eyes |
| 2. Kazuko / pretty / woman / Japanese // short / straight black hair / black eyes |
| 3. Jim / young / boy / Scottish // short / fat / brown hair / green eyes |
| 4. Mr Bowen / old / gentleman / English // tall / thin / grey wavy hair / big blue eyes |

5. Per descrivere il *carattere delle persone* si usano spesso gli aggettivi elencati.

Abbina gli opposti. Aiutati con il dizionario per gli aggettivi di cui non conosci il significato.

1. <i>courageous</i>	a) <i>unpleasant</i>	1 d	7. <i>active</i>	g) <i>mean</i>	7 ...
2. <i>kind</i>	b) <i>rude</i>	2 ...	8. <i>generous</i>	h) <i>talkative</i>	8 ...
3. <i>friendly</i>	c) <i>unkind</i>	3 ...	9. <i>strong</i>	i) <i>lazy</i>	9 ...
4. <i>honest</i>	d) <i>cowardly</i>	4 ...	10. <i>cheerful</i>	j) <i>weak</i>	10 ...
5. <i>pleasant</i>	e) <i>dishonest</i>	5 ...	11. <i>quiet</i>	k) <i>reserved</i>	11 ...
6. <i>polite</i>	f) <i>unfriendly</i>	6 ...	12. <i>outgoing</i>	l) <i>sad</i>	12 ...

6. Scrivi delle frasi usando gli aggettivi dell'esercizio precedente come negli esempi.

➤ ***My mother is kind. / My mother is a kind person.***

7. Abbina le affermazioni alle rispettive descrizioni.

1. Tom is a **caring** person.
2. Mark is an **active** person.
3. Alan is an **ambitious** person.
4. Michael is a **stubborn** person.
5. My brother is a **bossy** boy.

- a) He is determined to do what he wants and never changes his mind.
- b) He likes giving orders to others.
- c) He moves around a lot or does a lot of things.
- d) He has the strong desire to be successful, rich and powerful.
- e) He is affectionate, helpful and sympathetic.

1 e
2 ...
3 ...
4 ...
5 ...

8. Scrivi i seguenti aggettivi nella categoria appropriata.

*red / big / small / wide / orange / round / purple / oval / leather / wooden / green / silk
high / long / yellow / square / grey / tall / heavy / light / short / woollen / triangular*

size	weight	shape	colour	material
big				

9. Scrivi il corrispondente italiano dei seguenti aggettivi relativi al *colore*.

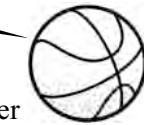
➤ black nero	3. green	6. blue	9. brown
1. white	4. yellow	7. pink	10. dark
2. red	5. orange	8. purple	11. light

10. Descrivi gli oggetti usando le parole fornite nell'ordine corretto, come nell'esempio.

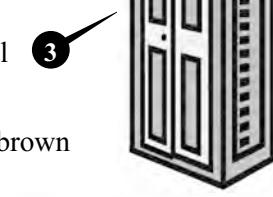
➤ skirt - cotton / black / short
It's a short black cotton skirt.



1. ball - white / big / leather



2. carpet - grey / woollen / oval



3. wardrobe - high / wooden / brown



4. dress - silk / long / black



5. table - round / metal / small



11. Abbina gli opposti dei seguenti aggettivi che si riferiscono al *cibo*.

- | | | |
|--------------|---------------|-------|
| 1. good | a) bitter | 1 e |
| 2. delicious | b) tasteless | 2 ... |
| 3. tasty | c) disgusting | 3 ... |
| 4. varied | d) limited | 4 ... |
| 5. sweet | e) bad | 5 ... |

12. Scrivi *mini-dialoghi* come nell'esempio

➤ A: *What's your steak like?*

B: *It's delicious.*

1. the English food / limited

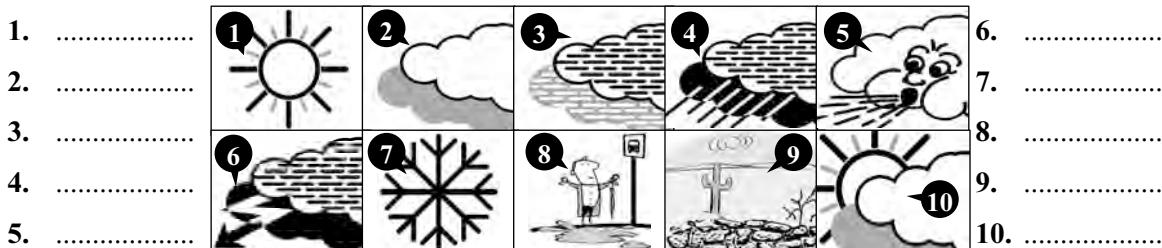
2. your coffee / bitter

3. your pizza / disgusting

4. the Italian food / varied

13. Scrivi l'aggettivo appropriato a ciascuna immagine per descrivere il *tempo climatico*.

snowy / foggy / cloudy / sunny / rainy / changeable / thundering / dry / windy / wet



14. Scrivi gli aggettivi che si riferiscono alla *temperatura* nello spazio appropriato.

freezing / hot / mild / cold / chilly / warm

➤ hot		+ 35°C
1.		+ 22°C
2.		+ 16°C
3.		+ 2°C
4.		0°C
5.		- 10°C

15. Guarda la *tabella* e scrivi *mini-dialoghi* come nell'esempio.

C	C
CAIRO +22°	PARIS + 2°
LONDON + 0°	MOSCOW - 10°
MADRID +16°	MANILA +35°

A: *What's the weather like in Cairo today?*

B: *It's warm and sunny.*

A: *What's the temperature in Cairo today?*

B: *It's 22°C.*

16. Completa le frasi in A con gli aggettivi appropriati della colonna B.

A

1. *A Ferrari car is*
2. *A glass is*
3. *A knife is*
4. *The moon and the sun are*
5. *This pullover is*
6. *That lake is*
7. *Tigers are*
8. *Cherries are*

B

- a) sharp and hard.
- b) fragile and thin.
- c) expensive and fast.
- d) blue and deep.
- e) round.
- f) soft and warm.
- g) round and sweet.
- h) wild and ferocious.

1. c
2. ...
3. ...
4. ...
5. ...
6. ...
7. ...
8. ...

17. Scrivi gli aggettivi che precedono ciascun sostantivo nell'ordine corretto.

- *small / pretty / Italian*
1. leather / big / expensive
 2. thin / French / beautiful
 3. green / wonderful / big
 4. valuable / gold / square
 5. middle-aged / tall / fascinating

- a **pretty small Italian**
- | | | |
|-------|-------|----------|
| a/an | | woman |
| a/an | | suitcase |
| | | girl |
| | | eyes |
| a/an | | watch |
| a/an | | man |

18. Abbina domande e risposte adeguatamente.

1. *What's the weather like today?*
2. *What shape is that coffee table?*
3. *What's John like?*
4. *What colour is your hair?*
5. *What style is your hair?*
6. *What nationality is Clare?*
7. *What's your coat made of?*

- a) It's made of leather.
- b) It's long and curly.
- c) *It's sunny but freezing cold!*
- d) She's Irish.
- e) It's square.
- f) It's black.
- g) He's generous and kind.

1. c
2. ...
3. ...
4. ...
5. ...
6. ...
7. ...

- A. Plurale dei sostantivi
 B. Aggettivi e pronomi dimostrativi:
this, these, that, those

- C. Pronomi personali complemento
 D. Preposizioni semplici

★ A PLURALE DEI SOSTANTIVI

Formazione del plurale dei sostantivi

Singolare	Plurale	Esempi
la maggior parte dei sostantivi	-s	<i>table → tables; chair → chairs</i>
sostantivi che terminano in -s, -ss, -ch, -sh, -x, -o	-es	<i>bus → buses; address → addresses; dish → dishes; church → churches; box → boxes; potato → potatoes</i>
sostantivi abbreviati che terminano in -o		<i>disco → discos; piano → pianos</i>
sostantivi che terminano in -o preceduta da vocale	-s	<i>video → videos; rodeo → rodeos; kangaroo → kangaroos</i>
sostantivi che terminano in -y preceduta da consonante	-ies	<i>baby → babies; lady → ladies</i>
sostantivi che terminano in -y preceduta da vocale	-s	<i>boy → boys; day → days</i>
alcuni sostantivi che terminano in -f, -fe	-ves	<i>half → halves; calf → calves; wife → wives; wolf → wolves; leaf → leaves; life → lives; loaf → loaves; shelf → shelves</i> Eccezioni: <i>roof → roofs; chief → chiefs; cliff → cliffs; dwarf → dwarfs</i>

- In inglese formano il plurale aggiungendo 's o -s
 - le lettere dell'alfabeto *two A's (oppure As)*
 - le abbreviazioni *two MP's (oppure MPs) three DVDs*
 - i numeri cardinali con funzione di sostantivo, scritti in cifre: *in the 60's (60s)*.
- I cognomi formano il plurale seguendo le regole date, per indicare la famiglia.
The Sullivans are at a party. I Sullivan sono ad una festa.

Attenzione!!!

Ricorda che gli aggettivi

non prendono mai la -s del plurale.

This car is fast

Questa macchina è veloce.

It's a fast car.

E' una macchina veloce.

These cars are fast.

Queste macchine sono veloci.

They are fast cars.

Sono macchine veloci.

Plurali irregolari

Alcuni sostantivi formano il plurale in modo irregolare.

man	→	men	uomo/uomini
woman	→	women	donna/e
policeman	→	policemen	poliziotto/i
fireman	→	firemen	pompiere/i
child	→	children	bambino/i

person	→	people	persona/e
mouse	→	mice	topo/i
tooth	→	teeth	dente/i
foot	→	feet	piede/i
goose	→	geese	oca/oche
ox	→	oxen	buo/buoi

Sostantivi invariabili

Alcuni sostantivi hanno la stessa forma sia per il singolare che per il plurale.

Tra questi ricorda:

crossroads	incrocio/i
means	mezzo/i
series	serie
species	specie
deer	cervo/i

fish	pesce/i
salmon	salmone/i
sheep	pecora/e
trout	trota/e

Sostantivi singolari in inglese

Alcuni sostantivi plurali in italiano

sono singolari in inglese e richiedono verbo e pronome ad essi riferiti al singolare. Tra questi ricorda:

hair	capelli	money	danaro/soldi
homework	compiti per casa	luggage	bagaglio/i
housework	lavori domestici	furniture	mobili
information	informazione/i	news	notizie
spaghetti	spaghetti		

Sostantivi sempre plurali

Alcuni sostantivi sono sempre plurali in inglese e quindi richiedono verbo e pronome ad essi riferiti al plurale.

Tra questi ricorda:

cattle	bestiame
people	la gente
police	la polizia

Per approfondire
vedi a pag. 426 428

PRACTICE

1. Inserisci il plurale dei sostantivi forniti nella tabella.

student	wife	-s	<i>students,</i>
orange	banana	-es	
country	bench	-ies	
address	leaf	-ves	
fox	beach	irregolari	
man	salmon		
bus	egg	invariabili	
university	loaf		
mouse	video		
trout	tooth		
sheep	chief		
watch	church		
fish	roof		

2. Quali sostantivi tra quelli dati sono *sempre plurali* in inglese? Quali sono *sempre singolari*?

police cattle homework luggage news people hair information money spaghetti furniture	sempre plurali	
	sempre singolari	

3. Completa la tabella.

singolare	plurale	singolare	plurale
► day	<i>days</i>	8.	scarves
1.	boxes	9. half
2. ox	10. computer
3. match	11.	heroes
4.	shelves	12. baby
5. cliff	13.	feet
6. potato	14.	kisses
7.	watches	15.	women

4. Scrivi il *plurale* dei seguenti sostantivi.

1. record	6. radio	11. kilo
2. dish	7. diary	12. toy
3. dress	8. donkey	13. tomato
4. clock	9. woman	14. boy
5. kangaroo	10. ranch	15. fireman

5. Scrivi il *singolare* dei seguenti sostantivi.

1. poppies	4. oxen	7. cities
2. countries	5. policemen	8. children
3. mice	6. men	9. geese

6. Uno studente distratto ha fatto degli errori nel formare il plurale dei sostantivi.

Scrivi il *plurale* dei sostantivi correttamente.

1. loafs	5. spys	9. pianoes
2. churchs	6. puppyss	10. childrents
3. busses	7. keies	11. womens
4. thiefs	8. mans	12. tooths

7. Completa le frasi con il *plurale* delle parole tra parentesi.

1. Two (*house*) in Gordon Road are on fire.
2. The (*lady*) at the party are all very elegant.
3. Three (*glass*) of wine, please.
4. There are a lot of (*goose*) on Mr Norman's farm.
5. Where are the English (*gentleman*)?
6. Bob has some (*tooth*) missing.
7. What are your (*hobby*)
8. There are four (*person*) in my family.
9. There are two (*donkey*) and four (*sheep*) in the field.
10. Can I have two (*sandwich*), please?

8. Riscrivi le frasi al *plurale*.

- *It's a sharp knife.* ***They're sharp knives.***
1. It's an interesting video.
 2. She's a pretty girl.
 3. He's a skilful thief.
 4. It's a red roof.
 5. It's a dangerous cliff.
 6. It's a wild wolf.
 7. She's an old woman.
 8. He's an elegant man.

9. Completa le frasi con *is* oppure *are*.

1. My feet very long.
2. His child four years old.
3. The furniture very modern.
4. My luggage very heavy.
5. The men over there very old.
6. The woman over there my mother.
7. The children in the garden.
8. Your hair too long.
9. This spaghetti fantastic!
10. The news bad today.
11. Why the firemen here?
12. The information useful.
13. The homework difficult today.
14. Housework always boring.
15. The money in the wallet.
16. Mice rodents.

10. Alcune frasi sono corrette, altre contengono un errore. Se la frase è corretta metti un *tick* (✓). Se la frase contiene un errore, correggi l'errore. Ti sono forniti 2 esempi.

➤ <i>It's time for the two familys to go back home.</i>	families
➤ <i>Why are the police here?</i>	✓
1. My hair is too short.
2. The childrens are in the park.
3. Public means of transport are efficient in my town.
4. The Brown are on holiday.
5. The police is in the building.
6. Italian spaghetti is very good.
7. There are some books on the shelfs.
8. The information is correct.
9. The money are in the case.
10. Are your English homework difficult?

★ B AGGETTIVI E PRONOMI DIMOSTRATIVI: *this, these, that, those*

Forma

singolare		plurale	
this questo/questa	<i>This is a car.</i> Questa è una macchina.	these questi/queste	<i>These are chairs.</i> Queste sono sedie.
that quello/quella	<i>That is a watch.</i> Quello è un orologio.	those quei/quelli/quelle	<i>Those are armchairs.</i> Quelle sono poltrone.

I dimostrativi possono essere:

- aggettivi

o

- pronomi

This book is interesting.

Questo libro è interessante.

This is an interesting book.

Questo è un libro interessante.

That è l'unico dimostrativo che può essere seguito dalla forma contratta del verbo *to be* affermativo.

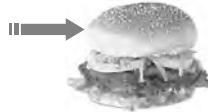
That's my house.

Quella è la mia casa.

Uso

- **this e these** vengono usati per **indicare persone o oggetti vicini**.

This is a hamburger.



These are hamburgers.



- **that e those** vengono usati per **indicare persone o oggetti lontani**.

That is a chair.



Those are chairs.



- **this e these** vengono anche usati per **presentare persone**.

Hello, Tom. This is Peter.

Hello, Mary. These are my new American friends.

- **this e that** vengono anche usati nelle **conversazioni telefoniche**.

A: Hello. Is that 5683?

B: No, this is 5783.

A: Hi. This is Mark speaking. Is that you, Paul?

B: Yes, speaking.

PRACTICE

1. Completa ciascuna frase con il *dimostrativo* corretto.

Fai attenzione ai simboli (• vicino/i ; → lontano/i)

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------|---|---------------------------|---|
| 1. is my book. | • | 5. are my friends. | → |
| 2. is your car. | → | 6. are John's shoes | → |
| 3. are my gloves. | • | 7. is Peter's house. | → |
| 4. is my sister Sarah. | → | 8. is my dog. | • |

2. Trasforma le seguenti frasi al plurale. Effettua tutti i cambiamenti necessari.

➤ *This computer is very useful.*

These computers are very useful.

1. That glass is full of wine.
2. This bus is red.
3. That child is very nice.

4. This book isn't very interesting.
5. That church is very old.
6. This watch isn't expensive.

3. Trasforma le frasi al singolare. Effettua tutti i cambiamenti necessari.

➤ *Those are my English friends.*

That is my English friend.

1. Who are those girls over there?
2. These children are from Madrid.
3. Those cars are very fast.

4. What are these keys for?
5. What are those things over there?
6. These glasses are empty.

4. Trasforma le frasi come nell'esempio.

➤ *That is a nice girl.*

That girl is nice.

1. This is a fast car.
2. That is an intelligent boy.
3. These are warm gloves.

4. That is an elegant street.
5. Those are ancient ruins.
6. That is an attractive woman.

5. Scrivi *mini-dialoghi* seguendo gli esempi.

➤ *Who / men / over there? // my uncles*
A: *Who are those men over there?*
B: *Those men? Oh, they're my uncles.*

➤ *What / strange animal / here? // anteater*
A: *What is this strange animal here?*
B: *This strange animal? Oh, it's an anteater.*

1. Who / girl / over there? // my sister
2. Who / children / over there? // my cousins
3. Who / man / over there? // my father

4. What / insect / here? // black beetle
5. What / things / here? // ostrich eggs
6. Who / woman / over there? // my teacher

6. Completa le *presentazioni* con *this is* o *these are*.

1.

A: Hello, Peter.
B: Oh, hello, John. John, Alan.
A: Nice to meet you, Alan.

2.

A: Hello, Jennifer.
B: Oh, hello, Mark. Mark, my cousins.
A: Nice to meet you.

7. Completa le *conversazioni telefoniche* con *this* o *that*.

1.

A: Hallo. is Tom speaking.
B: Oh, hello Tom.

2.

A: Hi. is David. Is you Susan?
B: Yes, speaking.

3.

A: Is 8765920?
B: No, is 8675920.
A: Sorry, wrong number.

4.

A: Is you, Jane?
B: Yes, it's me.
A: Hi, Jane. is Alan.
B: Oh, hello, Alan. How are you?

5.

A: 678503. Hallo.
B: Hi. is Jason speaking.
Is Wendy there, please?

6.

A: Hallo, is the Gallagher Art Gallery?
B: No, is Cannon Park Library.

★ C PRONOMI PERSONALI COMPLEMENTO

CONFRONTA i pronomi personali complemento con i pronomi personali soggetto.

Pronomi personali soggetto	Pronomi personali complemento
I	me
you	you
he	him
she	her
it	it
we	us
you	you
they	them

- Il pronome personale complemento può seguire

- un verbo

I like her. (complemento diretto)

Mi piace lei.

- o una preposizione

This present is for him. (complemento indiretto)

Questo regalo è per lui.

★ D PREPOSIZIONI SEMPLICI

about	circa, di, su	to	a
for	per	with	con
from	da	without	senza
of	di		

PRACTICE

1. Indica se i pronomi personali sottolineati sono *soggetto* (S) o *complemento* (C).

- *This present is for you.* (C)
1. We are at home. (...)
 2. He's here with us. (...)
 3. This letter is from him. (...)
 4. Is the cake for me? (...)
 5. It's for Paul. (...)
 6. They're in the garden. (...)
 7. These flowers are for her. (...)
 8. Are you tired? (...)

2. Sostituisci le parole sottolineate con i *pronomi personali complemento* corrispondenti.

- *I'm with Tom.* **him**

1. We are with Paul and Lucy. ...
2. Mary is with her children. ...
3. Is the cake for Jane? ...
4. Are Mary and Jim with Michael? ...
5. Is the film about history? ...
6. These CDs are for Susan and me. ...
7. Are the roses for mum? ...
8. This coffee is without sugar. ...

3. Completa le risposte con il *pronomo personale complemento* adeguato.

- A: *Is Pamela with Mary and Tim?*

B: Yes, she's with them.

1. A: Is this pizza for me?
B: No, it isn't for
2. A: Is that letter for John?
B: Yes, it's for
3. A: Is this documentary film about tigers?
B: Yes, it's about
4. A: Are the twins with Jane?
B: No, they aren't with
5. A: Are these presents for Bob and me?
B: No, they aren't for
6. A: Is Kevin with you and your brother?
B: No, he isn't with

4. Completa le frasi con *pronomi personali soggetto o complemento*.

1. I like beer. Do you like?
2. want to go to the park. Come with us.
3. loves Mary, but she doesn't love him.
4. The children are in the park with their parents. often play there.
5. My brother loves his girlfriend. He wants to marry
6. I don't like dogs. Do you like?
7. There is a good film on TV. Do you want to watch?
8. Jane, my American friend, is in London. Do you want to meet?

5. Sottolinea l'errore contenuto in ciascuna frase e scrivi la correzione a lato.

➤ <i>The horse is thirsty so the water is for them.</i>	<i>it</i>
1. Is this cake for Mary? - Yes, it's for she.
2. Is the pizza for John? - Yes, it's for her.
3. Where's Sarah? - Her is over there.
4. We are hungry so the hamburgers are for you.
5. I live in a flat. He's a nice flat.

6. Completa le frasi con le *preposizioni* corrette.

1. What's this documentary? - Kangaroos.
2. I'm hungry - Here's a sandwich you.
3. Here's your coffee. sugar? - No,, please.
4. Thank you very much your present.
5. This nice souvenir is Kenya.
6. Jane's got flu. She's in bed a temperature.
7. Mark is on holiday his friends.
8. The Statue Liberty is in New York.
9. This postcard is Tom. He's in Paris for work.
10. Is that letter addressed you? - Yes, it is.

7. Completa le frasi con le *preposizioni* corrette.

1. Is the meat Michael? - No, it isn't. He's vegetarian.
2. Are you afraid dogs? - No, I'm not.
3. The price the ticket is ten dollars.
4. Here's a bottle wine!
5. Andrew is my boyfriend and I'm in love him.
6. What's the matter you?
7. Are you on holiday your friends?
8. Here's a glass water you.

Grammar and practice

A. There is / There are

B. Preposizioni di stato
in luogoC. Usi particolari di *in*,
at, *on*

★ A THERE IS / THERE ARE

Forma

Affermativa	Negativa	Interrogativa	Interrogativo-negativa
there is ('s)	there is not (isn't)	is there ...?	isn't there ...?
there are	there are not (aren't)	are there ...?	aren't there ...?

Risposte brevi	
Yes, there is.	Yes, there are.
No, there isn't.	No, there aren't.

*There are two bathrooms in this flat. / There aren't two bathrooms in this flat.
 Are there two bathrooms in this flat? / Aren't there two bathrooms in this flat?
 Yes, there are. / No, there aren't.*

Frase	Question tag (vero?/non è vero?)
affermativa <i>There's a cinema near here,</i> C'è un cinema qui vicino,	interrogativo-negativa <i>isn't there?</i> vero?
negativa <i>There aren't three bedrooms in this flat,</i> Non ci sono tre camere da letto in questo appartamento,	interrogativa (non più negativa) <i>are there?</i> vero?

Uso

Le espressioni **there is / there are** traducono l'italiano **c'è / ci sono**.

N.B. Si usa **there is** se il primo sostantivo che segue è singolare.

There is a table and four chairs.

Ci sono un tavolo e quattro sedie.

Ma si dice:

There are four chairs and a table.

Ci sono quattro sedie e un tavolo.

Attenzione!!!

C'è Mark? Is Mark in / at home / here / there?

C'è il sole. It's sunny.

PRACTICE

1. Trasforma le seguenti frasi in *forma negativa, interrogativa, e interrogativo-negativa*.

In town

➤ *There is a post office near here. There isn't a post office near here.
 Is there a post office near here? Isn't there a post office near here?*

1. There is a swimming pool near the park.
2. There is a church in Bond Street.
3. There are two discos in this town.
4. There are two museums in the city centre.
5. There is a bus stop near the railway station.

2. Rispondi con risposte brevi.

- Is there a wall size TV in your bedroom? - No, **there isn't**.
1. Are there two bedrooms in your house? - Yes,
2. Is there a nice garden in front of the house? - Yes,
3. Is there a big bathroom? - Yes,
4. Is there a garage? - No,
5. Are there two balconies? - No,

3. Aggiungi in coda a ciascuna frase la corretta question tag.

- There are 25 students in your class, **aren't there?**
1. There's a river near here,?
2. There aren't any discos in this town,?
3. There isn't an English lesson today,?
4. There are 13 stripes in the American flag,?

4. Completa il dialogo con la forma corretta di *there is* o *there are*. Utilizza le forme contratte del verbo *to be* quando è possibile.

A: Excuse me, 1) a cinema near here?
B: No, 2) but 3) a nice theatre in Grange Road.
A: Thank you. One more question. 4) a post office near the theatre?
B: Yes, 5) two post offices in this town. One is near the theatre in Grange Road, then 6) another post office near the supermarket, in Barnes Street.
A: Thank you very much.
B: You're welcome.

5. Completa la lettera con la forma corretta di *there is* o *there are*.

Dear Robin,

As you know, I'm living in a new house now. I moved here with my family in June. I like it very much.

Downstairs 1) a big kitchen, a sitting room, a dining room and a small toilet. Upstairs 2) three bedrooms and a bathroom. My bedroom is not very big but it's comfortable. 3) my bed, a wardrobe, a desk with a chair, an armchair and 4) a lot of posters and pictures on the walls. Oh, 5) also a big bookcase. Unfortunately 6) a wall size TV.

Outside the house 7) a garden where 8) a lot of flowers and plants.

What about your house? 9) a garden? What's your bedroom like? 10) any posters on the walls?

Hope to hear from you soon.

Love,

Susan

★ B PREPOSIZIONI DI STATO IN LUOGO

IN si usa in riferimento a:

- luogo chiuso o circoscritto
There is some milk in the bottle.



- città, regioni, stati, continenti
We live in Rome / Italy / Europe.
- strade e piazze senza numero civico
The appointment is in Leicester Square.

Ricorda: *in bed* a letto *in prison* in prigione

in an armchair in una poltrona

in the north/south/east/west

nel nord/sud/est/ovest

AT si usa in riferimento a:

- un punto nello spazio con riferimento all'attività svolta nel luogo o alla funzione specifica del luogo
She is at the bus stop.
- indirizzi con numero civico
He lives at 4, Gordon Road.



Ricorda:

at home a casa *at school* a scuola

at work al lavoro

ON

su, sopra (con contatto)



OVER

su, sopra (senza contatto)



UNDER

sotto



Ricorda:

on the right/left a destra/sinistra

on the wall sulla parete

on the ground/first/floor

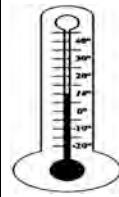
al piano terra/primo piano

on the north/south/east/west coast

sulla costa nord/sud/est/ovest

ABOVE

sopra



BELOW

sotto

It's ten degrees above zero.
Ci sono dieci gradi sopra zero.



It's ten degrees below zero.
Ci sono dieci gradi sotto zero.

NEAR

vicino (genericamente)



Attenzione!!!

Non è seguito da preposizione

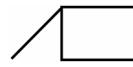
NEXT TO / BESIDE

accanto, di fianco



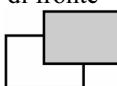
AGAINST

contro



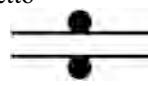
IN FRONT (OF)

davanti / di fronte



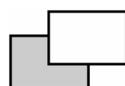
OPPOSITE

dirimpetto



BEHIND

dietro



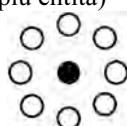
BETWEEN

tra (tra due entità)



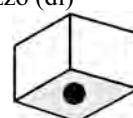
AMONG

tra (tra più entità)



IN THE MIDDLE (OF)

nel mezzo (di)



INSIDE all'interno	OUTSIDE all'esterno	UPSTAIRS al piano superiore	DOWNSTAIRS al piano inferiore
IN THE CORNER nell'angolo	ON/AT THE CORNER all'angolo		

PRACTICE

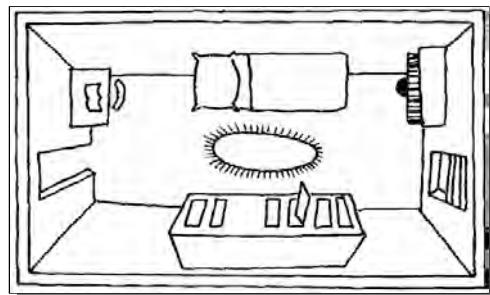
1. Completa le frasi con *in* o *at*.

➤ *The wine is in the bottle*

- There are two boys the window.
- Mr Johnson isn't work.
- He's the dentist's.
- I live 5, Benson Street.
- They live Gordon Road.
- What's on the theatre tonight?
- My brother studies university.
- Mark is bed.
- The children aren't school today.
- Mr and Mrs Jones are the bus stop.
- Is George home?
- Is there a good pub the city centre?
- What is there that box?
- Sheila is the supermarket.
- Dad is sitting an armchair.
- Mum is the sitting room.
- The thieves are prison.
- We live the north of England.

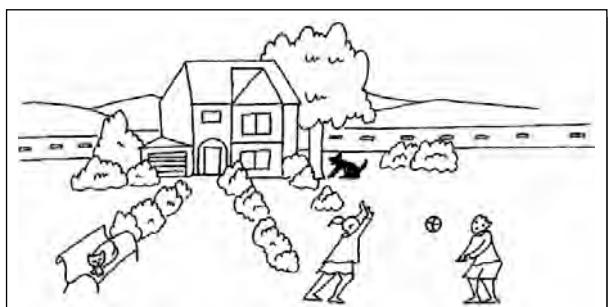
2. Osserva l'immagine e inserisci adeguatamente: *next to*, *opposite* (x3), *in the middle of*, *in the corner*, *against*.

- The window is the door.
- The bed is the long wall, the wardrobe.
- There is a desk between the bed and the door.
- There's an oval carpet the room.
- The piano is the desk.
- The desk is the door.



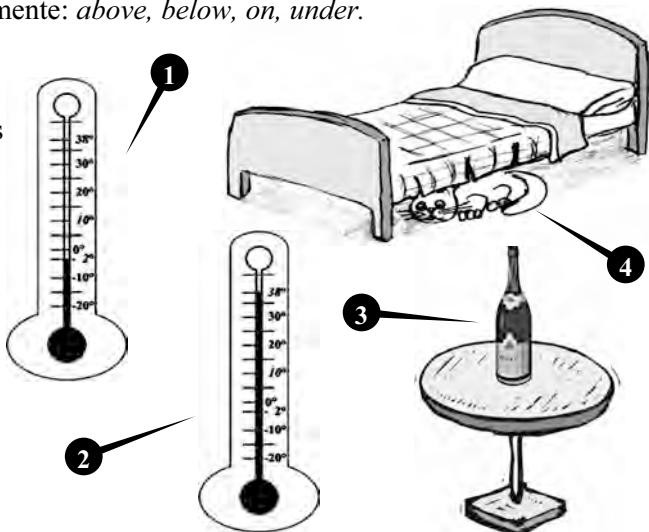
3. Osserva l'immagine e inserisci: *on*, *under*, *in*, *near*, *outside*, *behind*.

- There is a nice garden the house.
- There is a cat sleeping a bench.
- There are two children playing the garden.
- There is a tree the house.
- There is a dog the tree.
- There is a street the house.

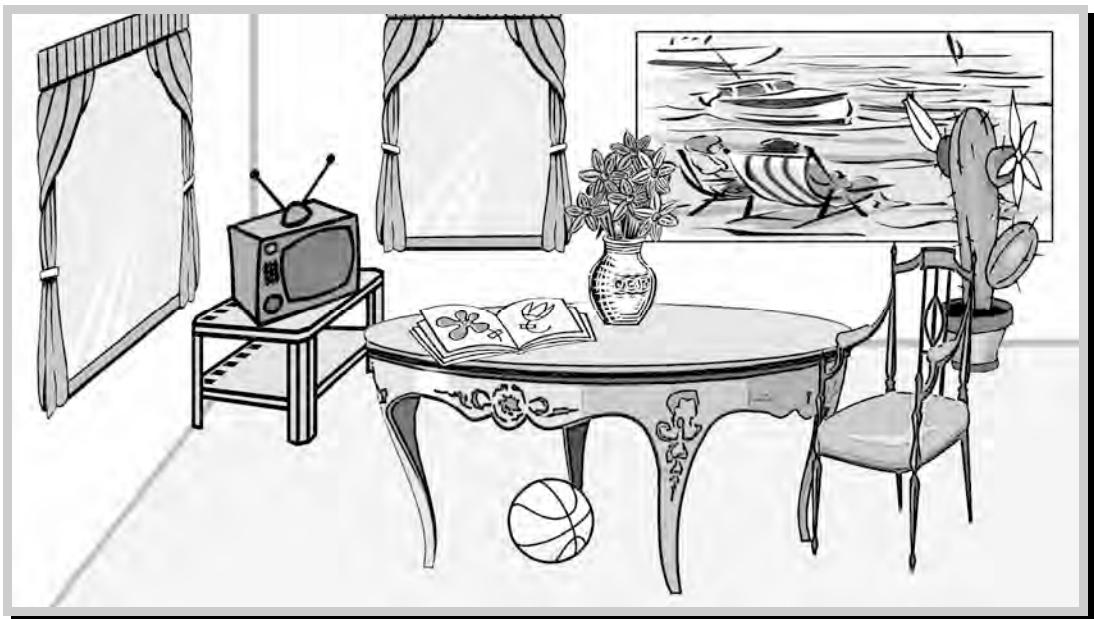


4. Osserva le immagini e inserisci correttamente: *above, below, on, under*.

1. A: I'm cold! What's the temperature today?
B: Of course you're cold! It's two degrees zero!
2. A: I'm hot! What's the temperature today?
B: Of course you're hot! It's thirty-eight degrees zero!
3. A: Where's the wine?
B: It's the table.
4. A: Where's the cat?
B: It's the bed.



5. Osserva l'immagine, leggi il testo e sottolinea la preposizione corretta.



There is a table (1) the room.

There is a vase (2) the table with some flowers (3) it.

There is a magazine (4) the vase.

There is a ball (5) the table.

There is a chair (6) the table.

There is a plant (7) the chair.

There is a poster (8) the wall.

(9) the plant.

The television is (10) the corner.

(11) the windows.

1. in - on - under - above

2. beside - in - on - over

3. on - above - under - in

4. below - between - behind - next to

5. under - on - below - opposite

6. behind - between - next to - in the middle of

7. in front of - against - behind - beside

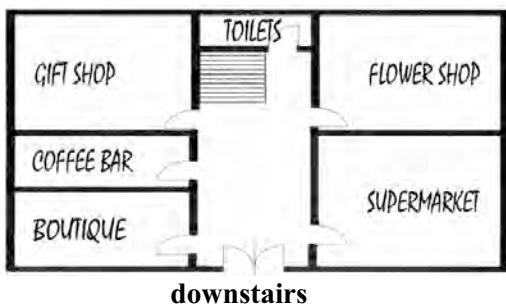
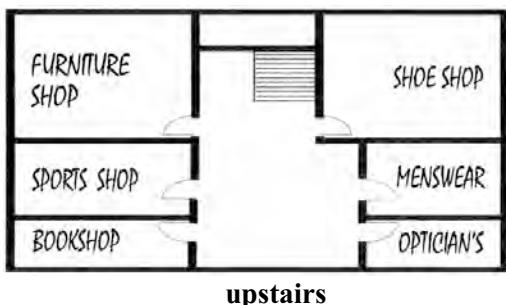
8. in - on - opposite - over

9. near - in front of - behind - below

10. in - on - at - against

11. among - opposite - between - above

6. Guarda la piantina di questo *shopping-centre* e completa i *mini-dialoghi*, per chiedere e dare informazioni.



1.

A: Excuse me. Where's the **menswear** shop, please?

B: It's **upstairs**, between the **shoe** shop and the **optician's**.

A: Thank you.

B: Not at all.

A: Excuse me. Is there a **gift** shop in this **shopping-centre**?

B: Yes, there is. It's the coffee bar.

A: On the right?

B: No, the **flower** shop.

A: Thank you.

2.

A: Excuse me. Where's the **furniture** shop?

B: It's

A: Where exactly?

B: It's the **shoe** shop.

3.

A: Excuse me, is there a?

B: Yes, it's the **furniture** shop and the

7. Completa il dialogo all'agenzia immobiliare con le battute mancanti fornite in ordine sparso.
(A = Estate Agent; M = Michael)

M: Good morning. I'm Michael Evans.

A: (1) **h**

M: Thank you.

A: (2) ...

M: Yes, a detached house.

A: (3) ...

M: Oh, good.

A: (4) ...

M: I see. It's a spacious hall.

A: (5) ...

M: Er --- what's this room here, in front of the dining room?

A: (6) ...

M: Er ... the kitchen isn't very big, but that's not a problem. I never have my meals at home. --- and how many bedrooms are there?

A: (7) ...

B: Two bedrooms. Yes, it's exactly the type of house I'm looking for. And how much is it?

A: (8) ...

a) It's a good price. £700 per month.

b) Here, look. These two rooms upstairs are the bedrooms. This is the bathroom and this is the toilet.

c) Look! This is the front door. ... here on the left. There's the hall immediately inside.

d) Well, here's the plan of a house in Poplar Street. It's near the park, in a quiet area.

e) You want to rent a house in this area, don't you?

f) That's the kitchen ... the living room is this big room on the left.

g) Yes, it's quite spacious. And over there, on the right, is the dining room.

h) Ah, yes, Mr Evans. How do you do!
Please sit down.

★ C USI PARTICOLARI DI IN, AT, ON

IN

<i>in the mountains/country(side)</i>	in montagna/campagna
<i>in the sun/rain</i>	sotto il sole/la pioggia
<i>in the cold/heat</i>	al freddo/al caldo
<i>in the open air/ wind</i>	all'aria aperta/ nel vento
<i>in the dark/light</i>	al buio/alla luce
<i>in a newspaper/magazine</i>	su un giornale/una rivista
<i>in a dictionary/book</i>	su un dizionario/un libro
<i>in the street</i>	per la strada
<i>in the foreground/background</i>	in primo piano/sullo sfondo
<i>in a car</i>	su un'auto

AT

<i>at the sea(side)</i>	al mare
<i>at the beginning/end (of)</i>	all'inizio/alla fine (di)
<i>at the traffic lights/crossroads</i>	al semaforo/all'incrocio
<i>at the window</i>	alla finestra
<i>at the table</i>	al tavolo

ON

<i>on a map/page/menu</i>	su una mappa/pagina/ sul menu
<i>on a farm</i>	in una fattoria

Ricorda inoltre i seguenti usi di on:

<i>on business/holiday</i>	per affari/in vacanza
<i>on the phone</i>	al telefono
<i>on TV</i>	alla TV
<i>on strike</i>	in sciopero
<i>on a trip/cruise</i>	in viaggio/crociera
<i>on the way</i>	per la strada/lungo la strada

Attenzione!!!

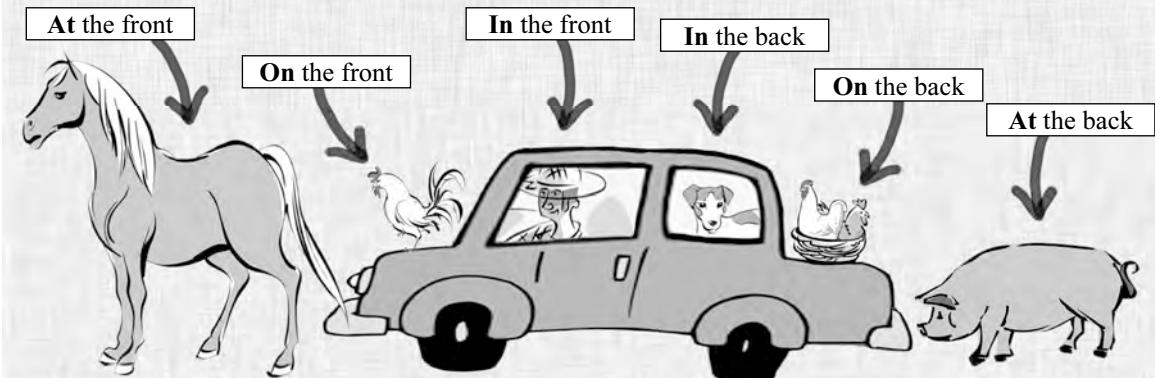
*on sale
for sale*

in saldo
in vendita

in the front / back

on the front / back

at the front / back

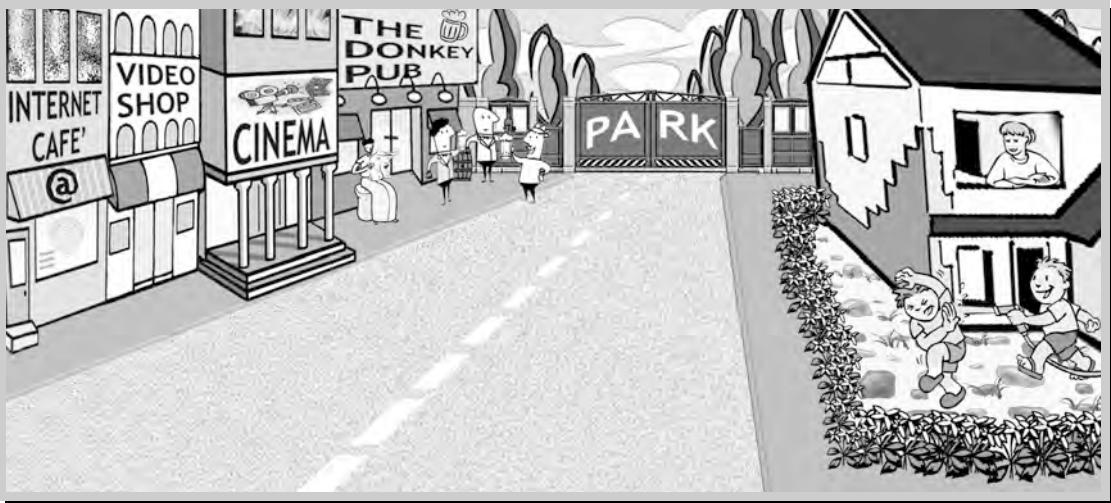


PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi con *in*, *at*, *on*.

1. Mary lives a farm in Sussex.
2. No trains today. The railwaymen are strike.
3. They're Venice a school trip.
4. We're here business.
5. I often meet my friends my way to school.
6. The exercises are page 278.
7. The Sullivans are the seaside.
8. What's the menu? - There's fish or meat.
9. They are walking the rain.
10. The church is the beginning of West Road.
11. Mary and John are talking the phone.
12. The boy the window is my cousin John.
13. What's TV tonight? - There's a thriller.
14. We are lying the sun.
15. Clothes are usually sale after Christmas.
16. My address is the back of the envelope.

2. Completa la descrizione con le preposizioni di stato *in luogo* adeguate.



Hi! John.

Here I am in Cornwall! And this is a photo of the nice little village where I am 1)
..... holiday. It's 2) the south coast.. It's a traditional village, but there
are excellent facilities. For example, 3) the beginning of the street. 4)
..... the left, there's an Internet Café. It's 5) to the video hire shop. 6)
..... to the video shop there's also a cinema. 7) the end of the street, there's
an old pub. There are some people 8) the pub. They are drinking beer. The
man who is reading an article 9) the newspaper is Frank, my new friend.
My host family live 10) the nice cottage 11) the right. It's
12) the middle of a garden. The woman 13) the window is Mrs
Thorpe, and the two children 14) the garden are her children. 15)
..... the background there's a green area. It's the village park. There's also a nice little
harbour, but it isn't 16) the picture. It's 17) the trees.

A. Present simple di *to have*B. Gli indefiniti *some, any, no, none*

C. Sostantivi numerabili e non numerabili

Revision

★ A PRESENT SIMPLE DI **TO HAVE**Forma

Affermativa	I / you / we / they have ('ve) got he / she / it has ('s) got
Negativa	I / you / we / they have not (haven't) got he / she / it has not (hasn't) got
Interrogativa	have I / you / we / they got...? has he / she / it got...?
Interrogativo-negativa	haven't I / you / we / they ... got? hasn't he / she / it got ...?
Risposte brevi	Yes, I / you / we / they have / No, I / you / we / they haven't Yes, he / she / it has / No, he / she / it hasn't

*I have ('ve) got a mobile phone. / I haven't got a mobile phone.
Have you got a mobile phone? / Haven't you got a mobile phone?
Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.*

Frase	Question tag (vero? / non è vero?)
affermativa <i>She has got a sister,</i> Lei ha una sorella,	haven't / hasn't + soggetto? <i>hasn't she?</i> vero?
negativa <i>She hasn't got a sister,</i> Lei non ha una sorella,	have / has + soggetto? <i>has she?</i> vero?

- Osserva nella tabella l'uso di "got" e ricorda che esso **non viene usato** nelle **risposte brevi** e nelle **question tags**.

Have you got a pet? - Yes, I have.

You haven't got a pet, have you?

- Le frasi interrogative, negative e interrogativo-negative possono essere strutturate anche con l'uso degli ausiliari **do / does** (**senza got**) come avviene per tutti i verbi ordinari.

Do you have much free time? Hai molto tempo libero?

- Ricorda inoltre che il "got" viene usato **solo al tempo presente**.

Attenzione !!!**Non confondere**

Mary's a nurse. = Mary is a nurse.

Mary's got a dog. = Mary has got a dog.

Uso

Il verbo **to have**, oltre che come verbo ausiliare nella costruzione di alcuni tempi verbali, si usa per:

- | | |
|-----------------------|---|
| • esprimere possesso | <i>I have ('ve) got a gold watch.</i> Ho un orologio d'oro. |
| • esprimere relazione | <i>She has ('s) got a brother.</i> Lei ha un fratello. |

to have si usa anche:

• con le **malattie**:

to have a cold

to have a cough

to have a sore throat

to have a temperature

avere il raffreddore

avere la tosse

avere il mal di gola

avere la febbre

to have a backache

to have a stomachache

to have a toothache

to have flu

avere mal di schiena

avere mal di stomaco

avere mal di denti

avere l'influenza

"What's the matter with you?"

"I'm not very well. I've got a cold.."

"Che problema hai?"

"Non sto molto bene. Ho il raffreddore."

Il verbo **to have** si usa anche in particolari **espressioni idiomatiche**.

Vedi a **PAG.** 82

Ricorda i casi in cui si usa il verbo *to be* invece di *to have* (vedi "Espressioni idiomatiche con *to be*" - **PAG.** 10).

Attenzione!!!

Non confondere:
I've got a cold. Ho il raffreddore.
I'm cold. Ho freddo.

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi con la forma *have / 've got o has / 's got*.

➤ *Bob has / 's got a big family.*

1. We / an exam on Monday.

2. I / an invitation to a party.

3. Brenda / a nice bedroom.

4. Mr Johnson / an interesting job.

5. The hotel / a big car park.

6. They / a very big house.

7. Mark / five cousins.

8. Mrs Parker / five grandchildren.

2. Trasforma le frasi ottenute nell'esercizio precedente in forma *negativa, interrogativa e interrogativo-negativa*.

➤ *Bob has got a big family.*

Bob hasn't got a big family.

Has Bob got a big family?

Hasn't Bob got a big family?

3. Rispondi con *risposte brevi*.

➤ *Have they got the tickets for the match? - Yes, **they have**.*

1. Has she got a brother? - Yes, ...

4. Has Mark got two cousins? - Yes, ...

2. Has Martin got a big family? - No, ...

5. Has Betty got a sister? - No, ...

3. Have they got many children? - Yes, ...

6. Paul, have you got a bicycle? - Yes, ...

4. Rispondi con *risposte brevi* in modo personale.

1. Have you got a computer?
 2. Have you got a mobile phone?
 3. Have you got a motorbike?
 4. Have you got a big family?
 5. Have you got much free time?
 6. Has your house got a garden?
 7. Has your school got a gym?
 8. Has your school got a language lab?
-

5. Aggiungi in coda a ciascuna frase la *question tag* adeguata.

➤ *You've got flu, haven't you?*

1. She's got a mobile phone,?
 2. You haven't got an English test tomorrow,?
 3. Tom hasn't got an interesting job,?
 4. They've got a cottage in the country,?
 5. Tom's house has got a big garden?
 6. We've got a history test tomorrow,?
 7. The hotel hasn't got a swimming pool,?
 8. He's got a headache,?
-

6. Completa le frasi con la forma corretta del *present simple* di *to have* (+ *got*)

➤ *Elephants have got long trunks.*

1. you time for a nice cup of tea? - Sorry, I I'm in a hurry.
 2. What you in your pockets?
 3. Who the tickets for the basketball match?
 4. What kind of car they? A saloon or a sports utility?
 5. What kind of house Paul? - Detached or semi-detached?
 6. Tom a camera? - Yes, he a digital camera.
-

7. Scrivi *mini-dialoghi* come nell'esempio.

➤ *Mary / headache / stomach-ache*

A: *What's the matter with Mary? Has she got a headache?*

B: *I don't think so. I think she's got a stomach-ache.*

1. Bob / a sore throat / a temperature
 2. Alan / a pain in his leg / a pain in his arm
 3. Bill and Susan / a cold / flu
 4. Barbara / a toothache / a sore throat.
-

8. Completa il dialogo adeguatamente con le parti fornite in ordine sparso.

<i>At an estate agency</i>	
A: There is a very nice flat for rent quite near the city centre.	(a) Has it got a balcony
B: (1)	(b) has got a lot of windows
A: It (2), a dining room, a kitchen, a bathroom, and two bedrooms. So that's six rooms.	(c) Has it got a hall
A: (3)	(d) has got a living room
B: Sorry, it (4) a balcony but it (5) Lots of light!	(e) hasn't got
A: (6)	(f) How many rooms has it got
B: Yes, there's a hall immediately inside.	1 ... 2 ... 3 ... 4 ... 5 ... 6 ...

9. Leggi il testo e rispondi alle domande.

BRIGHTON YOUTH HOLIDAY CENTRE



This beautiful country house is on four floors and can accomodate up to 60 people. Each upstairs floor has five dormitories (bedrooms) each with four beds, two bathrooms and two toilets.

On the ground floor, there is a sitting room, a large recreation room for games including table tennis, 5 snooker tables, dartboard and TV. There is also a sauna in the basement. It has also got a heated swimming pool and a football ground.

The holiday centre is situated just outside Brighton at about five minutes from the sea. Connections with Brighton and London are good.

For bookings or brochure please e-mail

haddon@brightholidaycentre.co.uk

1. How many bedrooms has this holiday centre got?
2. How many bathrooms has it got?
3. How many toilets has it got?
4. Have the rooms got a private bathroom?
5. Has the centre got a sitting room?
6. Has it got a recreation room?
7. Has the centre got a sauna?
8. Has the centre got a swimming pool?
9. What kind of swimming pool has it got?
10. Has it got a tennis court?
11. Has it got a football ground?

10. *To have o to be?* Ricordi le espressioni idiomatiche in cui si usa *to be* invece di *to have*? Completa le frasi con la *forma affermativa* del *present simple* di *to have* o *to be*. Utilizza le forme contratte.

(vedi a **PAG. 10**)

1. I thirsty.
2. We cold.
3. I a cold.
4. She a long nose.
5. He hungry.
6. I a mobile.
7. Paul a nice house.
8. Mary flu.
9. You right.
10. They in a hurry.

11. Riscrivi le frasi sostituendo la forma contratta del verbo *to be* o *have got* con la forma intera.

➤ *Sharon's a top model. She's got short blond hair and green eyes.*
Sharon is a top model. She has got short blond hair and green eyes.

1. It's cold today.
2. She's got a brother. He's an engineer.
3. He's got an interview tomorrow.
4. Tom's afraid of insects.
5. She's in bed. She's got flu.
6. Mark's thirteen years old.
7. Mum's in the kitchen.
8. The weather's good today. It's sunny.

★ B GLI INDEFINITI *some, any, no, none*

<p>Gli indefiniti SOME e ANY si usano con sostantivi singolari non numerabili e con sostantivi plurali, per esprimere una quantità indefinita (<i>del, dello, dei, degli, della, delle, un po' di, qualche, alcuni, ne</i>)</p>	SOME	- in frasi affermative	<i>I've got some money/new friends.</i> Ho del danaro/dei nuovi amici.
		- nelle richieste	<i>Can I have some tea/sandwiches, please?</i> Posso avere del tè/dei sandwich, per favore?
<p>ANY</p>		- nelle offerte	<i>Would you like some cheese/biscuits?</i> Vorresti del formaggio/dei biscotti?
		- in frasi negative	<i>We haven't got any money/newspapers.</i> Non abbiamo del danaro/dei giornali.
		- in frasi interrogative	<i>Have we got any petrol/new CDs?</i> Abbiamo della benzina/dei nuovi CD?

<p>Per offrire qualcosa si possono usare le espressioni: Would you like ...? / Will you have ...?</p> <p>accettare <i>Yes, please.</i></p> <p>rifiutare <i>No, thank you/thanks.</i></p> <p>- <i>Would you like / Will you have some cake?</i> - <i>Yes, please. / No, thank you.</i></p>	<p>Per fare una richiesta si può usare l'espressione : Can I/we have ...?</p> <p>risposta positiva: <i>Yes, of course / certainly. Here you are.</i></p> <p>risposta negativa: <i>Sorry but ...</i></p> <p>- <i>Can I have some cheese?</i> - <i>Yes, of course. Here you are. / Sorry but ...</i></p>
---	--

<p>NO e NONE possono sostituire not any</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - no è aggettivo e deve pertanto essere seguito da un sostantivo - none è pronome e pertanto non può essere seguito da un sostantivo <p>- no e none si usano anche all'inizio di frase (ma non <i>not any</i>)</p>	<p>- <i>Is there any meat left?</i> - <i>Sorry, there's no meat left.</i> (= <i>there isn't any meat</i>)</p> <p>- <i>Sorry, there's none left.</i> (= <i>there isn't any</i>)</p> <p>No visitors are allowed from 2.00 pm to 4.00 pm. Non sono consentiti visitatori dalle 14 alle 16.</p> <p>None of my friends are in the football team. Nessuno dei miei amici è nella squadra di calcio.</p>
--	---

PRACTICE

1. Trasforma le frasi prima in *forma interrogativa* poi in *forma negativa* modificando correttamente gli indefiniti, come nell'esempio.

- *There are some trees in the garden.*
There aren't any trees in the garden.
1. We've got some money.
 2. They've got some children.
 3. There's some coffee in the cup.
 4. There are some students in the classroom.
 5. She's got some new CDs.

Are there any trees in the garden?
There are no trees in the garden.

6. There are some books on that shelf.
7. There are some people in the square.
8. He's got some American friends.
9. There are some dirty glasses in the sink.
10. There are some empty bottles in the cupboard.

2. Guarda la lista e scrivi *mini-dialoghi* come nell'esempio.

➤ A: *Have we got any carrots?*

B: *Yes, we've got some carrots but we haven't got any tomatoes.*

YES	NO
➤ carrots	tomatoes
1. potatoes	onions
2. coffee	tea
3. flour	eggs
4. bananas	oranges
5. cherries	strawberries
6. sugar	salt

3. Scrivi *mini-dialoghi* usando le parole fornite, come negli esempi.

➤ lemonade / Coke

A: *I'm thirsty. Is there anything to drink?*

B: *Would you like some lemonade?*

A: *No, thanks. I don't like lemonade.*

B: *How about some Coke?*

A: *Oh, yes, please! I'd love some Coke!*

1. coffee / tea

2. beer / mineral water

➤ chips / salad

A: *I'm hungry. Is there anything to eat?*

B: *Would you like some chips?*

A: *No, thanks. I don't like chips.*

B: *How about some salad?*

A: *Oh, yes, please! I'd love some salad!*

3. spaghetti / soup

4. chicken / fish

4. Scrivi *mini-dialoghi* usando le parole fornite come nell'esempio.

➤ red wine / white wine / ice

A: *Will you have some red wine?*

B: *No, thanks. I don't like red wine.*

Can I have some white wine, instead?

A: *Yes, of course. Here you are.*

B: *Can I have some ice, too?*

A: *Sorry, I haven't got any.*

1. orange juice / coffee / biscuits

2. cheese / ham / bread

3. cherries / strawberries / cream

4. chips / salad / olive oil

5. Completa le frasi con *some, any, no*.

1. There aren't eggs. We can't make a cake.

2. Is there flour? No, there isn't

3. There are oranges and bananas.

4. There isn't sugar in the bowl.

5. There are cars in the car park. It's empty today.

6. Are there people in the swimming pool? -Yes, there are

7. Can I have sugar, please? -Yes, of course. Here you are!

8. Would you like biscuits? - Yes, please.

6. Completa le frasi con *no o none*.

1. Have we got any milk?- No, we've got

2. Have we got any eggs ? - No, we've got eggs.

3. Is there any wine in the bottle? - No, there's wine left.

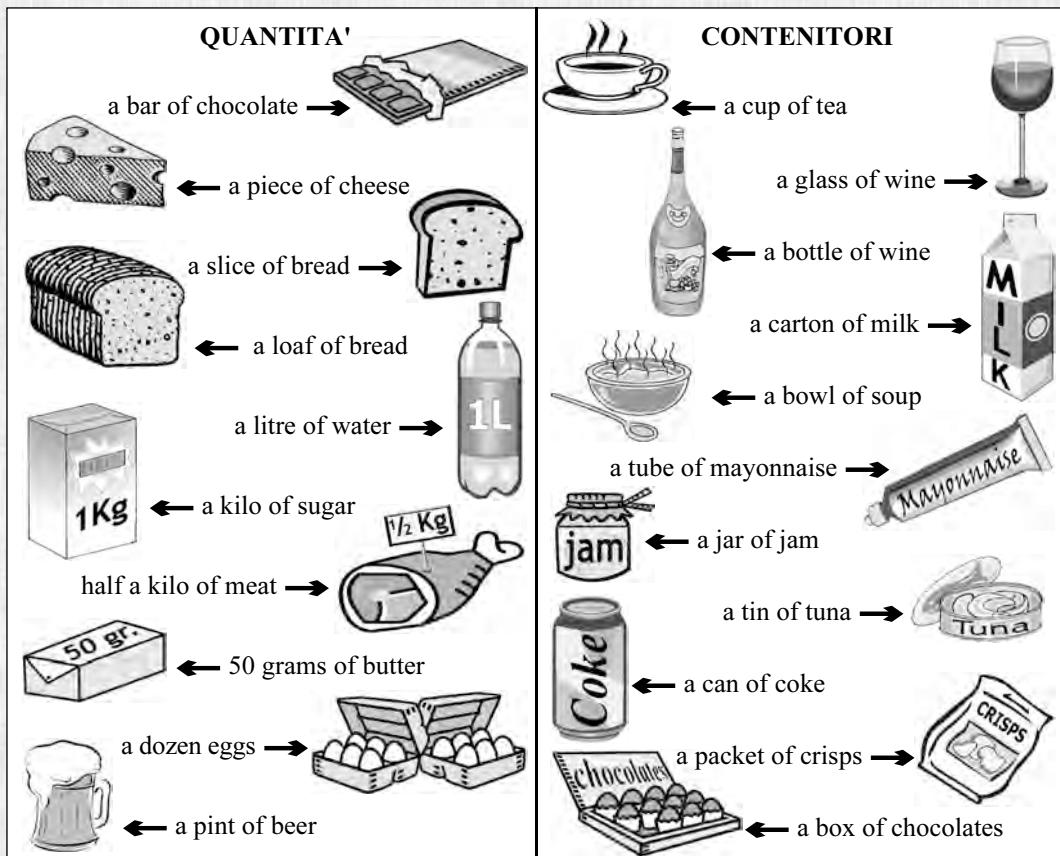
4. Is there any tea in the pot? - No, there's left.

5. Are there any oranges in the basket?- No, there are oranges.

★ C SOSTANTIVI NUMERABILI E NON NUMERABILI

SOSTANTIVI NUMERABILI (countable nouns)	SOSTANTIVI NON NUMERABILI (uncountable nouns)
Sono numerabili sostantivi come: <i>chair, cigarettes, lamp, bed, desk, table, ...</i>	Sono non numerabili soprattutto sostanze solide, liquide o gassose come: <i>sugar, meat, bread, wine, water, milk, ...</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • possono avere il singolare ed il plurale • al singolare possono essere preceduti da a/an • possono essere preceduti da un numero • al plurale possono essere preceduti da some, any, no <p>Esempi: <i>a chair / two chairs / some chairs / no chairs</i> <i>a cigarette / two cigarettes / some cigarettes / no cigarettes</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • non hanno il plurale • non possono essere preceduti da a/an • non possono essere preceduti da un numero • possono essere preceduti da some, any, no <p>Esempi: <i>wine / some wine / no wine</i> <i>meat / some meat / no meat</i></p>

I **sostantivi numerabili** (e in alcuni casi anche quelli **non numerabili**) possono essere preceduti da un sostantivo che ne definisce la **quantità** o il **contenitore**. Osserva la tabella.



Per fare domande sulla **quantità** si usa :

How much ...? Quanto/a ...?
 - con sostativi singolari non numerabili
How much cheese have we got?
Quanto formaggio abbiamo?

How many ...? Quanti/e ...?
 - con sostativi plurali
How many eggs have we got?
Quante uova abbiamo?

Tra i sostantivi **NON NUMERABILI**

ricorda anche:

advice	consiglio/i
furniture	mobiglio/mobili
fruit	frutta/i
information	informazioni
luggage	bagaglio/i
news	notizie

Attenzione!!!

Per numerare questi sostantivi bisogna farli precedere da
a piece of / two pieces of
a piece of advice/furniture/fruit/information/luggage/news
Un consiglio/un mobile/un frutto/un'informazione/un
bagaglio/una notizia

Sono **NON NUMERABILI** anche:

money	danaro/soldi
hair	capelli
spaghetti	
homework	compiti per casa
housework	faccende domestiche

Per approfondire vedi
anche a **PAG.** **426**

PRACTICE

1. Indica quali sostantivi sono *numerabili* (C) e quali sono *non numerabili* (U).

➤	<i>petrol</i>	U	8. flower	16. knife
1.	desk	9. flour	17. loaf
2.	meat	10. butter	18. ham
3.	egg	11. gold	19. mayonnaise
4.	beer	12. table	20. cheese
5.	water	13. toothpaste	21. salt
6.	boy	14. sandwich	22. sugar
7.	orange	15. fork	23. cup

2. Scrivi *mini-dialoghi* come negli esempi.

A: Is there any **milk**?

B: Yes, there is some.

A: How much milk is there?

B: There are two bottles.



A: Are there any **bananas**?

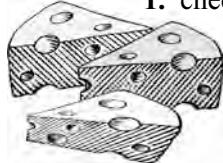
B: Yes, there are some.

A: How many bananas are there?

B: There are three.



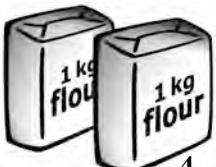
1. cheese



2. oranges



3. wine



4. flour



5. potatoes



6. chairs

3. Abbina le espressioni in A con i sostantivi in B e poi formula richieste come nell'esempio.

➤ *Can I have a bar of chocolate, please?*

A	B	
1. a bar of	a) eggs	1 <i>f</i>
2. a loaf of	b) cheese	2 ...
3. a piece of	c) wine	3 ...
4. a litre of	d) bread	4 ...
5. a dozen	e) coke	5 ...
6. a box of	f) chocolate	6 ...
7. a tin of	g) peeled tomatoes	7 ...
8. a can of	h) chocolates	8 ...

4. Completa le frasi con *some*, *any*, *no*, o con l'articolo *a / an*.

- There's cup of coffee on the table.
- Are there clean glasses?
- Would you like glass of wine?
- There are apples left. Can you buy?
- Have we got petrol? - No, we haven't got
- There's nice girl over there.
- There's beer in the fridge. Would you like

5. Completa il dialogo con le battute fornite in ordine sparso. (Man =M; Eileen = E)

<i>At the greengrocer's</i>	
M: Good morning. Can I help you?	(a) Two kilos.
E: (1)	(b) I'd like some oranges, please.
M: What would you like, madam?	(c) Yes, I'd like some fruit, please.
E: (2)	(d) Half a kilo, please.
M: How many oranges would you like?	(e) I'd like some strawberries, too.
E: (3)	(f) Yes, beautiful. Thank you very much. Goodbye.
M: Anything else?	(g) No, thanks. No cherries. We've got some.
E: (4)	(h) Yes, that's all. How much is that?
M: How many strawberries would you like?	
E: (5)	
M: Half a kilo of strawberries. We've also got very good cherries. Would you like some cherries too?	
E: (6)	
M: So --- two kilos of oranges and half a kilo of strawberries. Is that all?	
E: (7)	1 ... 2 ... 3 ... 4 ...
M: £4.30, please. Lovely day, isn't it?	5 ... 6 ... 7 ... 8 ...
E: (8)	
M: Goodbye.	

6. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

➤ *Can you lend me **a** / **some** money, please?*

- Can I have **some information / informations**, please?
- Have you got **a / any** luggage with you?
- There is **a nice / a nice piece of** furniture in their sitting room.
- Can I have **some / a** fruit, please?
- We've got a lot of **homework / homeworks** to do for tomorrow.
- Mandy's got beautiful long **hair / hairs**.
- The spaghetti **are / is** delicious!

REVISION

1. Bob e Susan stanno andando a trovare una coppia di amici nella loro casa in montagna. Completa il dialogo con la forma corretta (affermativa, negativa, interrogativa, interrogativo-negativa) del verbo *to be* o *to have* (*got*). Utilizza le forme contratte quando è possibile.

S: I 1) cold and I 2) a coat or an anorak with me. I hope it 3) very cold in the mountains today. 4) there a central heating in their house?
B: Of course there 5) It 6) a very comfortable house.
S: 7) (*they*) got a garden?
B: Yes, they 8) It 9) very big but it 10) nice.
S: 11) it a big house?
B: Yes, it 12) It 13) nine rooms.
S: Mm --- It 14) very big.
B: But they 15) a big family.
S: How many children 16) (*they*)?
B: They 17) four children. By the way, they 18) two dogs, too. 19) you afraid of dogs?
S: No, I 20) 21) you?
B: Yes, I 22) But they usually keep the dogs in the back garden.
S: 23) (*Clare*) anybody to help her with the cleaning?
B: No, she 24) In fact she 25) a lot of work to do, and she never 26) much free time.
S: What about George? He's a vet, 27) he?
B: Yes, that 28) right. Well, here we 29) Their house 30) the one at the end of the road.

2. Completa le frasi con *some*, *any*, *no*, *a/an*.

1. We've got meat but we haven't got vegetables. Can you buy?
2. I haven't got free time these days. I'm very busy.
3. Have we got jam? - Yes, there's in the cupboard.
4. Are there good films on TV tonight? - Yes, there's good one on BBC 2.
5. I'm thirsty. - Would you like cup of tea? - No, thanks. Can I have coffee, instead?
6. Have you got newspaper? - Yes, there's one in the sitting room.
7. Have you got luggage, madam? - Yes, I've got two suitcases.
8. Have we got cheese? - Sorry, there's cheese left.

3. Completa ciascuna frase con la *preposizione* corretta.

1. My mother is afraid spiders.
2. I live a block of flats, the fourth floor.
3. Their house is the west coast.
4. Mary and John live a village the mountains. It's quite cold there and the temperature is often zero.
5. Grandma is the kitchen now.
6. Milan is the north of Italy.
7. We've got some good books wild life.
8. What's the price this CD?
9. Is this present me?
10. The woman the window is my sister.

Grammar and practice

A. Aggettivi possessivi -
*Whose ...?*B. Genitivo sassone e
doppio genitivo

C. Pronomi possessivi

★ A AGGETTIVI POSSESSIVI – *WHOSE...?*Forma

my	mio/a, miei, mie
your	tuo/a, tuoi, tue
his	suo/a, suoi, sue (di lui)
her	suo/a, suoi, sue (di lei)
its	suo/a, suoi, sue (di cosa/animale)
our	nostro/a/i/e
your	vostro/a/i/e
their	(di) loro

- Sono **sempre** seguiti da un **sostantivo** e non sono **mai** preceduti dall' **articolo**
That's my bike.
- Sono **invariabili**, cioè hanno la stessa forma per il maschile, il femminile, il neutro, il singolare e il plurale
your brother / your brothers
his sister / his sisters
their bicycle / their bicycles
- Gli aggettivi **his, her, its** **concordano con il possessore** e non con la cosa posseduta
Peter has got a sister. She is his sister.
Mary has got a brother. He is her brother.
The dog has got some good food. It is its food.

UsoGli **aggettivi possessivi** si usano:

- per esprimere **possesso e relazione**

These are our bikes.

Queste sono le nostre moto.

Tom is my cousin.

Tom è mio cugino.

Si usano anche

- per chiedere il **nome e la professione**

What's her name?

Come si chiama lei?

What's your job/occupation?

Qual' è la tua professione? / Che lavoro fai?

WHOSE...? (di chi?) è la **question word**

usata per chiedere a chi appartiene qualcosa o la relazione.

- Diversamente dall'italiano, è seguito dalla cosa posseduta/persona in relazione

Whose daughter is Jane?

Di chi è figlia Jane?

- In presenza di un dimostrativo sono possibili le **due costruzioni**:

*Whose book is that?*Di chi è quel libro?
*Whose is that book?***Attenzione!!!**Non confondere *whose* con *who's*.*Whose car is this?*

Di chi è questa macchina?

Who's that boy?

Chi è quel ragazzo?

PRACTICE

1. Scegli la soluzione corretta.

- *She's my English teacher. Her name's Miss Jones.*
- I'm Pamela and this is ... cousin Peter.
 - Mr and Mrs Evans are Irish but ... home is in England.
 - Our car is a Fiat Punto. ... registration number is BC 426 NP.
 - We're from Manchester. ... phone number is 6759439.
 - What's ... surname? - My surname? Sullivan.
 - Is she your sister? - Yes, ... name's Jennifer.
 - What are ... names? - I'm Jane and this is Mark.
 - Is he your English teacher? - Yes, ... name's George Parker.

A His B Her C My

A my B his C her

A its B their C her

A His B Her C Its

A Its B Our C Their

A my B your C his

A its B his C her

A their B your C our

A her B his C its

2. Collega adeguatamente le parole delle 4 colonne per costruire frasi come nell'esempio.

➤ *We work in the same office. Our office is in Central London.*

1. We	am a student.	Our	tests are excellent, children.
2. Tom Cruise	are a rock band.	His	<i>office is in Central London.</i>
3. I	<i>work in the same office.</i>	Their	real name is Louise Ciccone.
4. Madonna	are clever students.	My	head office is in Seattle.
5. The U2	is an American singer.	Your	school is near my house.
6. You	is a software company.	Her	home town is in Ireland.
7. Microsoft	is an American actor.	Its	real name is Thomas Mapother.

3. Completa i *mini-dialoghi* con i corretti *aggettivi possessivi* (*my, your, his, ecc.*) e i *pronomi personali soggetto* (*I, you, he, ecc.*) adeguatamente.

1. A: What's name?
B: Charles. 's my best friend.
2. A: What's phone number?
B: My phone number? 's 4657893.
3. A: Who are those girls over there?
B: 're my cousins.
A: What are names?
B: names are Polly and Mina.
4. A: Who's that girl over there?
B: That's Susan.
A: What's job?
B: 's a secretary at Johnson & Johnson.
5. A: Tom and Mike, are these bikes?
B: Yes, 're bikes.
6. A: Whose dog is this? - Is your dog, Sam?
B: No, it isn't dog.
7. A: Is Mr Peterson an engineer?
B: No, isn't an engineer.
A: What's job?
B: 's an architect.

4. Completa le domande con *whose* o *who's*.

➤ *Whose rucksacks are these? Are they their rucksacks?*

1. boyfriend is that boy over there? Isn't he Susan's boyfriend?
2. that woman over there? Isn't she your mother?
3. shoes are these? Are they his shoes?
4. cousin is Charles? Is he your cousin?
5. umbrella is this? Isn't it their umbrella?
6. that boy? Isn't he your new classmate?

★ B GENITIVO SASSONE E DOPPIO GENITIVO

Forma

• Regola generale possessore + 's + cosa posseduta	<i>Mary's bedroom</i> la camera di Mary
• Possessore singolare terminante per -s, -ss, -sh, -ch, -x, -z possessore + 's oppure possessore + '	<i>Charles's / Charles' bedroom</i> la camera di Charles
• Possessore = sostantivo plurale regolare possessore + ' + cosa posseduta	<i>the boys' bedroom</i> la camera dei ragazzi
• Possessore = sostantivo plurale irregolare possessore + 's + cosa posseduta	<i>the children's bedroom</i> la camera dei bambini
• Più di un possessore: - se il possesso non è condiviso dai possessori si aggiunge 's a tutti i possessori - se il possesso è condiviso da più possessori si aggiunge 's all'ultimo possessore	<i>Tom's and Carol's shoes</i> le scarpe di Tom e di Carol (le scarpe non sono in comune) <i>Tom and Carol's car</i> l'auto di Tom e Carol (l'auto appartiene ad entrambi)

Uso

Il genitivo sassone esprime possesso o relazione

SI USA quando il possessore è una **persona** o un **animale**

This is my brother's rucksack.

Questa è lo zaino di mio fratello.

That's the dog's kennel.

Quella è la cuccia del cane.

NON SI USA con gli **oggetti**

Con gli oggetti si usa **of / for**

oppure

la struttura **sostantivo + sostantivo**

The handle of the door

The door handle

Vedi sostantivi composti
a PAG. 421 422

SI USA anche:

- con alcune espressioni geografiche: **nazioni e città**

Italy's cities are all very beautiful.

Le città d'Italia sono tutte molto belle.

- con alcune espressioni di **tempo** e di **distanza**

The article is in yesterday's newspaper.

L'articolo è nel giornale di ieri.

My house is fifteen minutes' walk from school.

La mia casa è a quindici minuti di cammino da scuola.

It's a four miles' journey.

È un viaggio di quattro miglia.

- nei seguenti casi:

A women's magazine Una rivista per donne

Men's shoes Scarpe da uomo

Omissione del sostantivo

- Il **nome della cosa posseduta** viene generalmente **omesso** quando lo si deduce dal contesto

Whose shoes are these? - They're David's.

Di chi sono queste scarpe? - Sono di David.

- Anche le seguenti **parole** vengono generalmente **omesse** dopo il genitivo sassone: **house, church, cathedral, shop, hospital, restaurant.**

I'm going to the greengrocer's (shop).

Sto andando dall'ortolano.

She's going to St. Paul's (Cathedral).

Sta andando alla cattedrale di St Paul.

DOPPIO GENITIVO

Se nella frase italiana la cosa posseduta è preceduta da un **articolo indeterminativo**, da un **numerale**, un **indefinito** o un **dimostrativo**, in inglese sono possibili **due costruzioni** che si strutturano come segue (vedi tabella). La costruzione alternativa al doppio genitivo però non è possibile con i dimostrativi (*this, that, these, those*).

	DOPPIO GENITIVO	COSTRUZIONE ALTERNATIVA
un'amica di mia madre	<i>a friend of my mother's</i>	<i>one of my mother's friends</i>
due amiche di mia sorella	<i>two friends of my sister's</i>	<i>two of my sister's friends</i>
alcune amiche di John	<i>some friends of John's</i>	<i>some of John's friends</i>
quelle amiche di Susan	<i>those friends of Susan's</i>	<i>those of Susan's friends</i> (non possibile)



La struttura italiana **un mio/tuo/.../ + sostantivo** si rende in inglese con una struttura analoga al doppio genitivo con l'utilizzo del **pronomo possessivo**
A friend of mine/yours/.... (vedi a PAG. 52)

PRACTICE

- 1.** Costruisci frasi con il *genitivo sassone* e poi sostituisci il possessore con l'*aggettivo possessivo* corrispondente.

- *This / car / Tom* ***This is Tom's car.*** ***This is his car.***
- 1.** That / sister / Bill
- 2.** Those / friends / my mother
- 3.** This / boyfriend / her sister
- 4.** These / teachers / David
- 5.** Those / toys / the children
- 6.** These / hats / Pam / Susan
- 7.** That / house / Martin / Betty
- 8.** These / parents / my cousins

- 2.** Rispondi alle domande utilizzando i suggerimenti tra parentesi.

- *Is that Barbara's sister? (Susan)* ***No, that's Susan's sister.***
- 1.** Is this your mobile phone? (*Bob*)
- 2.** Are those Tom's and Sheila's shoes? (*Bob and Clare*)
- 3.** Is that Alan's father? (*Tom and Paul*)
- 4.** Is your house ten minutes' walk from here? (*twenty minutes*)
- 5.** Is that today's newspaper (*yesterday*)
- 6.** Is this your sweater? (*Charles*)
- 7.** Are those Betty's suitcases? (*her parents*)
- 8.** Is this your bedroom? (*the children*)

- 3.** Abbina le domande in A agli oggetti in B e scrivi frasi come nell'esempio.

- ***At the florist's you can buy flowers and plants.***

A

- 1.** *What can you buy at the florist's?*
- 2.** *What can you buy at the newsagent's?*
- 3.** *What can you buy at the greengrocer's?*
- 4.** *What can you buy at the butcher's?*
- 5.** *What can you buy at the baker's?*

B

- a)** Bread
- b)** Fruit and vegetables
- c)** Meat
- d)** Flowers and plants
- e)** Newspapers

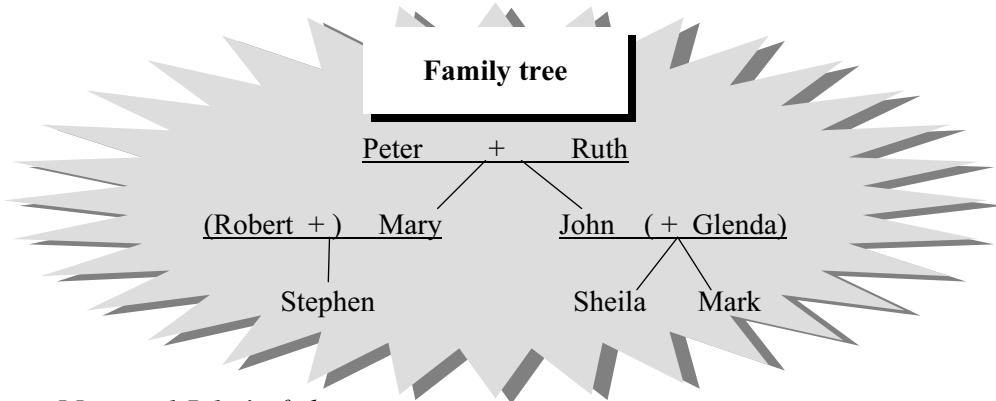
1	d
2	...
3	...
4	...
5	...

4. Scegli l'espressione adeguata per completare le frasi.

the barber's / the jeweller's / the chemist's / the stationer's / the tobacconist's

1. If I want to buy a packet of cigarettes I go to
2. If I want to buy a pen and writing-paper I go to
3. If I need a haircut I go to
4. If I want to buy a gold watch I go to
5. If I need some pills I go to

5. Guarda l'albero genealogico e scrivi i rapporti di parentela usando il *genitivo sassone*.



➤ *Peter is Mary and John's father.*

1. Mary is sister and wife.
2. John is brother and father.
3. Robert is husband and father.
4. Robert is uncle.
5. John is son and husband.
6. Glenda is wife and mother.
7. Glenda is aunt.
8. Stephen is son and grandson.
9. Sheila and Mark are cousins.
10. Sheila is daughter and sister.
11. Mark is brother and cousin.
12. Peter and Ruth are grandparents.
13. Sheila and Mark are children.
14. Sheila is niece.
15. Mark is nephew.

6. Guarda l'albero genealogico e rispondi alle domande.

➤ *Is Mark Stephen's brother? No, he is Stephen's cousin.*

1. Is John Glenda's brother?
2. Are Sheila and Mark John and Glenda's grandchildren?
3. Are Robert and Mary Stephen's grandparents?
4. Is Sheila Robert and Mary's daughter?

7. Guarda di nuovo l'albero genealogico e rispondi alle domande, come nell'esempio.

➤ *Whose husband is Peter? He's Ruth's husband.*

1. Whose wife is Mary?
2. Whose father is John?
3. Whose children are Sheila and Mark?
4. Whose son is Stephen?

8. Guarda di nuovo l'albero genealogico e scrivi le domande alle risposte fornite, come nell'esempio.

➤ **Whose son is Mark?** *He's John and Glenda's son.*

1.? They're Stephen, Sheila and Mark's grandparents.
2.? She's Stephen's mother.
3.? He's Glenda's husband.
4.? They're Peter and Ruth's children.

9. Costruisci domande e risposte come nell'esempio.

➤ *book / this ? - Jane* **Whose book is this? - It's Jane's.**

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| 1. desk / that? - Robert | 5. video games / these? - Albert |
| 2. shoes / those? - Mark / Alan | 6. toys / those? - the children |
| 3. sister / she? - Sheila / Bob | 7. cardigans / those? - those girls |
| 4. cousin / he? - Sally / Tom | 8. sunglasses / these? - Paul / Martin |

10. Completa le domande con *who's* o *whose*.

1. that girl over there? - She's Mr Seldon's secretary.
2. scooter is that? - It's Mark's.
3. glass is this? - It's Alan's.
4. Bob? - He's Jane's brother.

11. Trasforma i gruppi di parole usando la struttura *sostantivo + sostantivo*, come nell'esempio.

➤ *a present for Christmas* **a Christmas present**

- | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. a car of the police | 5. a sandwich with cheese |
| 2. a teacher of English | 6. a resort at the seaside |
| 3. a match of football | 7. a window of a car |
| 4. a room for waiting | 8. a window of a shop |

12. Riscrivi le frasi utilizzando il *genitivo sassone* o la struttura *sostantivo + sostantivo*.

➤ *That girl is the old friend of Sharon.* **That girl is Sharon's old friend.**

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. He is the cousin of Nick. | 5. Those are T-shirts for women. |
| 2. This is the kennel of Snoopy. | 6. The Cathedral of St.Paul is in London. |
| 3. The tickets for the play are very expensive. | 7. This is the car of Mary and Robert. |
| 4. These are the cars of those women. | 8. He is at the reception of the hotel. |

13. Riformula le frasi.

➤ *One of Tom's friends is in New York.* **A friend of Tom's is in New York.**

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Some of Stuart's cousins have got red hair. | 3. Four of Paul's CDs are new. |
| 2. One of David's cousins is a famous actor. | 4. Two of Peter's schoolmates are Spanish. |

14. Riformula le frasi quando è possibile. Metti una *X* quando non è possibile.

➤ *Some schoolmates of Sheila's are very clever.* **Some of Sheila's schoolmates are very clever.**

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. A brother of Alan's is in Paris. | 3. Two friends of Jane's are on holiday. |
| 2. Some friends of my father's are policemen. | 4. That friend of Mary's is American. |

★ C PRONOMI POSSESSIVI

Forma

Confronta i pronomi possessivi con gli aggettivi possessivi

Aggettivi possessivi	Pronomi possessivi	
my	mine	mio/a, miei, mie
your	yours	tuo/a, tuoi, tue
his	his	suo/a, suoi, sue (di lui)
her	hers	suo/a, suoi, sue (di lei)
its		(non usato)
our	ours	nostro/a/i/e
your	yours	vostro/a/i/e
their	theirs	(di) loro

I pronomi possessivi

- si formano aggiungendo -s agli aggettivi possessivi ad eccezione di **mine** e **his**

This house is hers. / This car is ours.

- come gli aggettivi possessivi, sono **invariabili** e non sono **mai** preceduti da articolo

This camper is ours. / These ski boots are ours.

- come gli aggettivi possessivi alla 3a persona singolare **concordano con il possessore e non con la cosa posseduta**

*Jane has got a nice scooter. It's **hers**. (suo di lei)*

*Bob has got a nice scooter. It's **his**. (suo di lui)*

Uso

I pronomi possessivi, come gli **aggettivi possessivi**, esprimono **possesso e relazione**, ma a differenza degli aggettivi possessivi, non sono mai seguiti da sostantivo, ma lo sostituiscono.

Si **usano anche** quando in italiano l'aggettivo possessivo è preceduto dall'articolo indeterminativo, da un numerale, un indefinito o un dimostrativo.
Sono possibili **2 costruzioni**. La seconda costruzione però non è possibile con i dimostrativi (*this/that/these/those*).

Confronta gli esempi:

*This is **their** camper.* (aggettivo)

Questo è il loro camper.

*This camper is **theirs**.* (pronomo)

Questo camper è il loro.

un mio amico

a friend of mine /

one of my friends

due miei amici

two friends of mine /

two of my friends

alcuni miei amici

some friends of mine /

some of my friends

quei miei amici

those friends of mine /

those of my friends

(non possibile)

PRACTICE

1. Trasforma le seguenti frasi come nell'esempio.

➤ *This is our boat.* *This boat is ours.*

1. This is my new video game.
2. These are their bicycles.
3. That isn't his watch.
4. That is her bag.
5. Those are your cassettes.
6. These are our tennis rackets.

2. Completa le frasi con i corretti *pronomi possessivi*.

➤ *Is that Bill's mobile phone? - Yes, it's his.*

1. That's my bike and the car is too.
2. Is that Paul's coat?- No, is black.
3. This cottage is and we like it very much.
4. This perfume is It's my birthday present for you.
5. Are these Bill's and Jane's tennis rackets? - No, they aren't

3. Scrivi *mini-dialoghi* come nell'esempio.

➤ *That / our restaurant. A: That is **our** restaurant. B: Sorry? **Whose** restaurant is it? A: It's **ours**.*

1. That / my mobile phone
2. Those / their trainers
3. Those / her colleagues

4. These / his parents
5. This / our camper
6. This / your present

4. Riformula le frasi come nell'esempio.

➤ *These are some of my schoolmates. **These are some schoolmates of mine.***

1. Mrs Parker is one of her teachers.
 2. Jane and Peter are two of our friends.
 3. Paul and Alan are two of his students.
4. Black is one of our dogs.
 5. Here are some of their cousins.
 6. Here are three of my colleagues.

5. Riformula le frasi come nell'esempio. Metti una X quando non è possibile.

➤ *Some books of hers are about kangaroos. **Some of her books are about kangaroos.***

1. Two friends of his are in Africa.
2. A schoolmate of ours is in America on an exchange.
3. Some colleagues of ours are abroad on business.
4. That friend of hers is in China.
5. Those colleagues of theirs are really nice people.
6. A friend of mine is really good at Maths.

6. Completa le frasi con *pronomi o aggettivi possessivi*.

➤ *Are these **your** ski boots, David? - No, they aren't **mine**.*

1. They're from Manchester but parents are from Leeds.
2. He likes collecting stamps. It's favourite hobby.
3. Is this Susan's hat? - No, it isn't It's Martha's.
4. Look at those glasses! Are they glasses, Sarah? - No, they aren't
5. Are these your friends' bikes? - Yes, they're

7. Completa la lettera con i *pronomi personali soggetto e complemento, gli aggettivi e pronomi possessivi* corretti.

File Modifica Visualizza Strumenti Messaggio ?

Rispondi Rispondi a ... Inoltra Stampa Elimina Precedente Successivo Indirizzi

Da: roberta@mail.com
A: lucy@mail.com
Oggetto: my first e-mail

Dear Lucy,

This is my first e-mail to **1)** My name's Roberta Rossi and **2)** 'm 15 years old. **3)** live in a small town near Florence, in Italy.

There are four of **4)** in **5)** family. Dad is 43 years old and **6)** works in a bank in the centre of Florence. **7)** hobbies are football and playing chess. Mum is 42 and **8)**'s a nurse at the local hospital. In **9)** free time **10)** likes going to the gym with some friends of **11)** My sister is 20 and **12)** 's a university student.

I attend the second year at a high school. **13)** 's quite modern and very well equipped. **14)** 's got quite a number of laboratories and good sports facilities. **15)** best friend is Monica, a classmate of **16)** We both like music and **17)** favourite group is The Corrs. Do you like **18)**? What's **19)** favourite group?

We've also got two dogs. **20)** kennels are in the garden. **21)** sleep there during the night, but **22)** like sleeping on the sofa during the day.

What about you? Write to **23)** soon and tell **24)** about **25)** and **26)** family.

Love, Roberta

Grammar and practice

A. Numeri cardinali
B. Età, indirizzi, numeri di telefono

C. Prezzi
D. Misure: *How big? / How long? / ...*

★ A NUMERI CARDINALI

numeri da 0 a 100

O	zero - nought	10	ten	20	twenty	
1	one	11	eleven	21	twenty-one	
2	two	12	twelve	22	twenty-two	
3	three	13	thirteen	23	twenty-three	30 thirty
4	four	14	fourteen	24	twenty-four	40 forty
5	five	15	fifteen	25	twenty-five	50 fifty
6	six	16	sixteen	26	twenty-six	60 sixty
7	seven	17	seventeen	27	twenty-seven	70 seventy
8	eight	18	eighteen	28	twenty-eight	80 eighty
9	nine	19	nineteen	29	twenty-nine	90 ninety
						100 one hundred

numeri da 101 a 1 miliardo

101 a / one hundred and one	1,001 a / one thousand and one
102 a / one hundred and two	1,002 a / one thousand and two
110 a / one hundred and ten	1,010 a / one thousand and ten
120 a / one hundred and twenty	1,020 a / one thousand and twenty
200 two hundred	1,200 a / one thousand two hundred
220 two hundred and twenty	1,220 a / one thousand two hundred and twenty
1,000 a / one thousand	2,000 two thousand
	10,000 ten thousand
	100,000 a / one hundred thousand
	1,000,000 a / one million
	1,000,000,000 a / one billion

- Lo **zero** in inglese si può rendere in vari modi.
 - **zero** per esprimere la temperatura ed in testi economici e scientifici
above / below zero sopra / sotto zero
zero inflation inflazione zero
 - **nought** in matematica, come parte di un numero decimale
0.18 *nought point one eight*
 - **O** (pronunciato come la lettera **o** dell'alfabeto) nei numeri di telefono, di fax, numero civico di abitazione di almeno tre cifre, codici postali, conti bancari
101 Park Road. (101 pronunciato *one - oh - one*)
 - **nil** nei risultati di eventi sportivi
2 - 0 *two - nil* (ma **love** nelle partite di tennis)
- Nello scritto, tra le decine e le unità si mette un **trattino**
22 *twenty-two* 39 *thirty-nine*
- Per unire le centinaia alla decine e alle unità si usa la congiunzione **and**
104 *a/one hundred and four*
350 *three hundred and fifty*
- Nello scritto, tra le migliaia e le centinaia in inglese si mette la virgola invece del punto
3,300 *three thousand three hundred*
- **hundred, thousand e million** prendono la -s del **plurale** solo per indicare quantità imprecise *hundreds of* centinaia di *thousands of* migliaia di *millions of* milioni di *thousands of people* migliaia di persone

Attenzione!!!

L'anno viene generalmente espresso nel parlato dividendolo in due gruppi di due cifre: *1990 nineteen ninety.*

Ma si dice :

2000 two thousand	2005 two thousand and five
1600 sixteen hundred	1601 sixteen oh one

PRACTICE

1. Scrivi i seguenti gruppi di numeri in lettere e poi esercitati a leggerli a voce alta.

a) 7 - 17 - 70 - 77 - 700 - 777 - 7,000 - 7,700	b) 3 - 13 - 30 - 33 - 300 - 333 - 3,000 - 3,300
c) 5 - 15 - 50 - 55 - 500 - 555 - 5,000 - 5,500	d) 8 - 18 - 80 - 88 - 800 - 888 - 8,000 - 8,800

2. Scrivi le coppie di numeri in lettere e poi esercitati a leggerli a voce alta.

a) 0.7 0.56	b) 11 12	c) 19 30	d) 123 587
e) 1,400 2,450	f) 10,790 23,998	g) 100,000 300,000	h) 2,000,000 4,400,000

3. Scrivi i seguenti numeri in cifre.

- a) thirteen b) twenty-three c) forty-five d) ten e) four hundred
f) five thousand four hundred and five g) nine hundred and fifty-three
h) two hundred thousand i) eighty-two j) eighteen

4. Scrivi in lettere i seguenti anni così come vengono generalmente espressi nel parlato.

➤ 1784 **seventeen eighty-four**

1. 1974 4. 2010 7. 1789
2. 1843 5. 1782 8. 1700
3. 1492 6. 1988 9. 1801

5. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

1. We've got two **thousand / thousands** euros to go on holiday.
2. **Millions / Million** of people in the world haven't got enough food.
3. **Thousand / Thousands** of people are at the stadium today.
4. Mont Blanc is four **thousand / thousands** eight hundred and ten metres high.
5. The supermarket is two **hundreds / hundred** metres from the station.
6. There are one hundred **thousand / thousands** inhabitants in this town.
7. About ten **million / millions** people go on holiday at this time of year.

6. Guarda la tabella e scrivi frasi come nell'esempio.

The size of Eire is seventy thousand two hundred and eighty-two square kilometres. It has got three million inhabitants. Its average temperature is five point six degrees in January and thirteen point nine degrees in July.

	➤ Eire	1. Switzerland	2. Cyprus
• Area	70,282 km ²	41,288 km ²	9,251 km ²
• Inhabitants	3,000,000	6,603,000	665,000
• Average temperature	5.6°C (Jan.) 13.9° C (July)	0°C (Jan.) 20°C (July)	13°C (Jan.) 27°C (July)

★ B ETA' - INDIRIZZI - NUMERI DI TELEFONO

How old are you?

I'm fourteen (years old).

How old is that tower?

It's three hundred years old.

What's your address?

*It's 12 Leicester Road,
London SW 5.*

What's yours?

*I live at 14 Gordon Road,
Manchester 8.*

What's your telephone number?

It's 051 720974

In inglese l'età si esprime utilizzando il verbo “**to be**” e l'espressione “**years old**”.

- L'espressione “**years old**” può essere omessa soltanto in riferimento a persone.

- Per chiedere l'età si può anche dire :
What age are/is ...?

- In inglese il numero civico precede il nome della strada.

- Quando si scrive una lettera si scrive il proprio indirizzo in alto a destra.

- I numeri che costituiscono il numero telefonico vengono scanditi uno alla volta.

- Quando vi sono **due cifre uguali** consecutive si usa l'espressione **double**.

- Lo **zero** si legge “**oh**” come la vocale **o** dell'alfabeto.

704 33 96 seven-oh-four double three-nine-six.

PRACTICE

1. Scrivi domande e risposte, come nell'esempio.

➤ Brenda / 18

How old is Brenda? - She's eighteen years old

1. Susan / 12

4. Bob's sister / 15

2. Mark and Peter / 21

5. Mr Benson / 77

3. Susan's brother / 17

6. That building / 200

2. Scrivi gli *indirizzi* rispettando l'ordine, la punteggiatura e le lettere maiuscole, come nell'esempio.

Mr J.Barnes,
73 Aston Street,
London SW 22.

- 112 grange road
- 72 poplar street
- 101 penny lane

- liverpool 8
manchester 7
liverpool 15

- mr a bolton
miss b gordon
mrs j williamson

- 3.** Scrivi i numeri di telefono per esteso come nell'esempio, poi esercitati a pronunciarli a voce alta.

➤ 053 445392 **oh-five-three double four-five-three-nine-two**

1. 335 679452
2. 06 8872566
3. 0534 907233
4. 01893 811374

- 4.** Scrivi mini-dialoghi utilizzando le informazioni fornite, come nell'esempio.

A: What's the name of the disco in Coptic Street?

B: Exodus.

A: Can you spell that, please?

B: E-X-O-D-U-S.

A: What's the phone number?

B: It's 3499.

A: And what's the code number?

B: 01580.

EXODUS
Disco dance

24 Coptic Street - London WC1A 1ED
Tel. 01580 / 3499

MORRIS & Co.
Estate Agents

12 Great Marlborough Street
London W1 1DE
Tel. 01434 / 2667

VEENA
Fitness Club

11 Swallow Street - London W1R 7HD
Tel. 01432 / 7742

OASIS
Indian Restaurant

3 Westbourne Grove - London W2 4UA
Tel. 01763 / 3322

CAFÉ LOIRE

7 South Bank Centre - London SE1
Tel. 01734 / 4756

- 5.** Completa i mini-dialoghi con le parole mancanti.

1. A: What you, Mr Parker?
B: I'm fifty-two
2. A: old Jane?
B: twenty-three years old.
3. A: age Mark and Richard?
B: fifteen.
4. A: Tom and Steve six years old?
B: Yes,
5. A: his?
B: 01798 489742
6. A: their 15 Church Street?
B: Yes,

SENTENCE TRANSFORMATION (PET)

- 6.** Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando non più di tre parole.

1. How old is Mr Johnson?

What Mr Johnson?

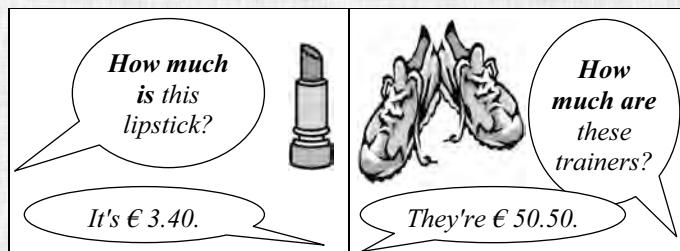
2. We live at 26 Park Road, Liverpool 15.

Our Park Road, Liverpool 15.

3. Can you tell me your telephone number?

What telephone number?

★ C PREZZI



Per chiedere il prezzo si può dire anche:

What's the price of...?
How much do/does ... cost?

MONEY	Si scrive	Si dice
1 pound (1 sterlina) = 100 pence	£ 7.50	<i>seven pounds fifty</i>
1 euro (1 euro) = 100 cents	70 p	<i>seventy p (pence)</i>
1 dollar (1 dollaro) = 100 cents	€ 4.50	<i>four euros fifty</i>
	20 c	<i>twenty cents</i>
	\$ 3.65	<i>three dollars sixty-five</i>

PAYMENTS		
<p>A: <i>Can I pay</i></p> <p>B: <i>Yes, of course/certainly.</i></p>	<p><i>cash?</i> <i>by credit card?</i> <i>by cheque?</i> <i>by travellers cheque?</i> <i>in euros/dollars/pounds?</i></p>	<p><i>A: How much is it?</i> <i>B: That's £. 3.70</i> <i>A: Can I pay in euros?</i> <i>B: Yes, of course.</i> <i>A: Here's a 10 euro note.</i> <i>B: And here's your change.</i> <i>A: Thank you.</i></p>

PRACTICE

1. Scrivi i *prezzi* in lettere seguendo l'esempio.

➤ £15.30 **fifteen pounds thirty**

1. \$ 10.00

3. £ 30.99

5. 55 c

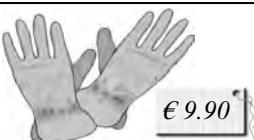
2. € 12.50

4. 50 p

6. € 13.70

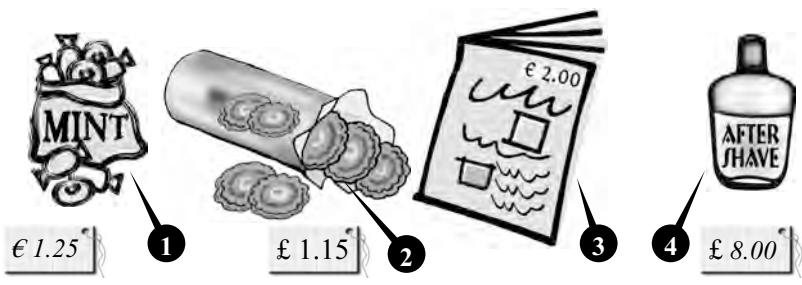
2. Scrivi *mini-dialoghi* seguendo l'esempio.

➤ gloves / € 9.90
a ten euro note



A: Excuse me. How much are these gloves?
B: They're nine euros ninety.
A: Here's a ten euro note.
B: Thank you. And here's your change, ten cents.

1. liquorice mints / € 1.25
a five euro note
2. chocolate biscuits / £ 1.15
a five pound note
3. magazine / € 2.00
a ten euro note
4. aftershave / £ 8.00
a ten pound note



3. Scrivi mini-dialoghi facendo riferimento al menu.

➤ a ham sandwich / a cup of tea

A: **A cheese and ham sandwich, please.**

B: *Ok. Anything else?*

A: Yes, **a cup of tea, please.**

B: **That's two pounds forty-nine, please.**

A: *Here you are.*

B: *Thank you.*

1. a cheese and salad sandwich / a lemonade
2. a ham and cheese roll / a cup of coffee
3. a boiled egg sandwich / a Diet Coke
4. a cheese and salad roll / a Sprite

MENU

Sandwiches £1.89 Rolls £2.20

Ham	Ham and cheese
Cheese and salad	Cheese and salad
Cheese and tomato	
Tuna and	
mayonnaise	
Boiled egg	

Drinks

Coffee	75p
Tea	60p
Lemonade	80p
Coke / Diet Coke / Sprite	80 p

4. Scrivi mini-dialoghi come nell'esempio.

➤ *That sweater / £19.95 / by credit card?*

A: *How much is that sweater?*

B: *It's nineteen pounds ninety-five.*

A: *Can I pay by credit card?*

B: *Yes, of course.*

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. This coat / £100 / cash? | 3. These jeans / £40 / cash? |
| 2. These shoes / £79 / in euros? | 4. That bag / £55 / by credit card? |

5. Riordina le battute del dialogo.

- a) Here you are. A cheese sandwich and a coffee.
- b) That's 2 pounds sixty-four.
- c) And here's your change.
- d) Good afternoon. A cheese and salad sandwich and a cup of coffee, please.
- e) How much is that?
- f) Here's a five pound note.
- g) Thanks.
- h) *Good afternoon.*

1 **h**

2 ...

3 ...

4 ...

5 ...

6 ...

7 ...

8 ...

6. Riordina le battute del dialogo.

- a) Yes, no problem. So that's 42 euros change.
- b) Yes, these two magazines, please. Can I pay in euros?
- c) Of course. That's 8 euros.
- d) *Good morning. Can I help you?*
- e) Sorry, I've only got a fifty euro note. Can you change it?

1 **d**

2 ...

3 ...

4 ...

5 ...

★ D MISURE: **how big... ? how long ...? ecc.**

How long is the Suez Canal?

It's 161 kilometres (long).

Distanza (distance)	How far is it from ... to ...?
Lunghezza (length)	How long is / are ...?
Larghezza (width)	How wide is / are ...?
Altezza (height)	How tall is / are ...? (per persone) How high is / are ...?
Profondità (depth)	How deep is / are ...?
Dimensione (size)	How big is / are ...?
Peso (weight)	How much do / does ... weigh?

- Osserva la **posizione dell'aggettivo** nelle domande e nelle risposte.

How tall are you? - I'm six feet tall.

Quanto sei alto? - Sono alto sei piedi.

How high is Mont Blanc? - It's 4,810 metres high.

Quanto è alto il Monte Bianco? - È alto 4.810 metri.

- Se la domanda è **How far ...?** si possono usare **from e to** (da ... a ...) con i luoghi di cui si vuole conoscere la distanza. In ogni caso nella risposta **non si ripete far**.

How far is it from Paris to Amsterdam? - It's 475 kilometres.

How far is the bus stop from here? - It's 200 metres from here.

- Per chiedere la distanza, la lunghezza, la larghezza, l'altezza, la profondità, la dimensione, il peso si può usare anche la costruzione:

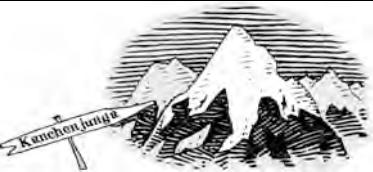
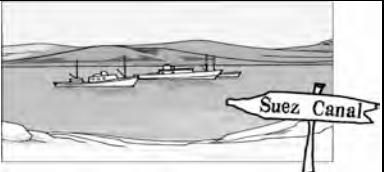
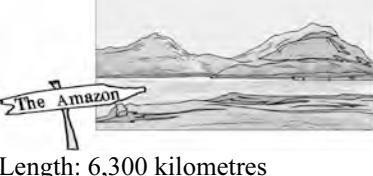
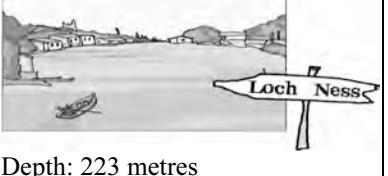
What's the distance / length / width / height / depth / size / weight of ...?

What's the height of Mont Blanc?

What's your height?

PRACTICE

1. Completa le domande adeguatamente facendo riferimento alle informazioni fornite.

 Height: 8,586 metres	Bill Carson  Height: 2 metres	 Width: 60 metres
Greenland  Area: 2,175,592 square kilometres	 Length: 6,300 kilometres	 Depth: 223 metres
 Distance: 475 kilometres	Robert  Weight: 150 kilos	 Area: 423,400 square kilometres

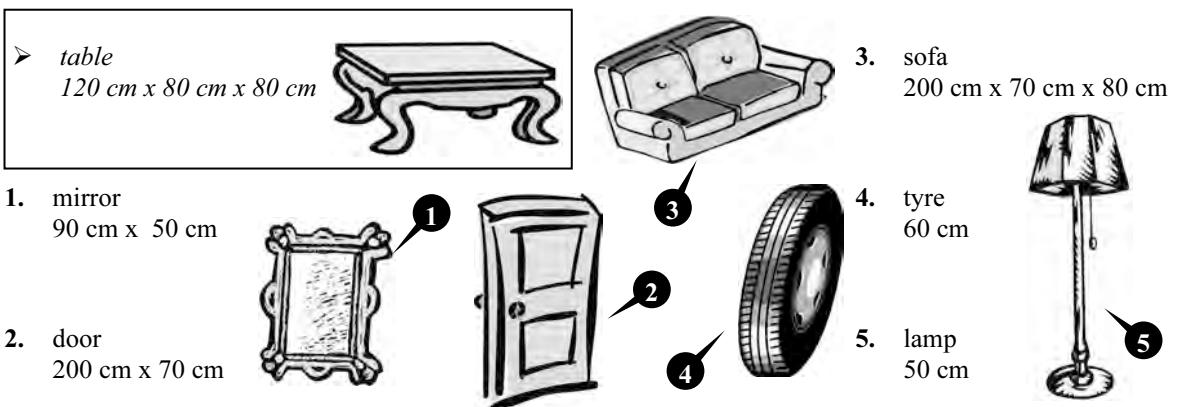
- *What's the height of Kanchenjunga?* *It's 8,586 metres high.*
1. How? *It's 6,300 metres long.*
 2. What? *He weighs 150 kilos.*
 3. How? *It's 223 metres deep.*
 4. What? *It's 423,400 kilometres.*
 5. How? *It's 60 metres wide.*
 6. How? *He's 2 metres tall.*
 7. What? *It's 2,175,592 square kilometres.*
 8. How? *It's 475 kilometres.*

2. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

A  The igloo is the traditional home of the Inuit people in Canada. An igloo is usually about 60 cm (1) long / length and 30 cm (2) width / wide . A large igloo can be 3 metres (3) wide / width and 3.5 metres (4) high / height .	B  Some people in England and in Holland live in houseboats. Houseboats can have a (5) long / length of about 10/15 metres. They are usually narrow with a (6) width / wide of about 2 metres.	C  Lots of people in south east Asia live in stilt houses (houses that are built on stilts). The stilts are about 5 metres (7) length / long .
---	---	---

3. Descrivi gli oggetti usando gli aggettivi *long / wide / high* seguendo l'esempio.

➤ *The table is 120 centimetres long, 80 centimetres wide and 80 centimetres high.*



SENTENCE TRANSFORMATION (PET)

4. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando non più di tre parole.
1. How long is the Thames? // What the Thames?
 2. Mont Blanc is 4,810 metres high. // The Mont Blanc is 4,810 metres.
 3. How wide is a football ground? // What of a football ground?
 4. What's the distance from Oxford to London? // How from Oxford to London?
 5. What's the depth of this lake? // How this lake?
 6. How big is Liechtenstein? // What of Liechtenstein?
 7. Mount Everest is 8,848 metres high. // The Mount Everest is 8,848 metres.

★ A L'ORA

*What time is it, please?**What's the time?**It's eight o'clock.**Can you tell me the time, please?*

8.00	eight o'clock	8.35	twenty-five to nine
8.10	ten past eight	8.40	twenty to nine
8.15	(a) quarter past eight	8.45	(a) quarter to nine
8.18	eighteen minutes past eight	8.48	twelve minutes to nine
8.20	twenty past eight	8.50	ten to nine
8.25	twenty-five past eight	8.55	five to nine
8.30	half past eight	9.00	nine o'clock



Si usa l'espressione **o'clock** per indicare l'ora esatta (può essere omessa).
It's eight (o'clock).
 Sono le otto (in punto).



Si usa **past** per indicare i minuti che seguono l'ora piena fino alla mezza ora compresa.
It's ten past eight.
 Sono le otto e dieci.



Si usa **to** per indicare i minuti che precedono l'ora successiva, dalla mezza ora in poi.
It's ten to nine.
 Sono le otto e cinquanta.
 (nove meno dieci / dieci minuti alle nove).

- I numeri da 13 a 24 per esprimere l'ora non vengono di solito usati nella lingua parlata; per distinguere le ore del mattino da quelle pomeridiane e serali si usano le espressioni:
a.m. (ante meridiem) = da mezzanotte a mezzogiorno
p.m. (post meridiem) = da mezzogiorno a mezzanotte
 oppure
in the morning (fino alle ore 12.00)
in the afternoon (fino alle ore 18.00)
in the evening (dopo le 18.00) e **at night**
7.30 half past seven a.m. / in the morning
19.30 half past seven p.m. / in the evening
- Si esprime la parola **minutes** quando i minuti non sono multipli di cinque
3.53 It's seven minutes to four.
- **Ricorda**
 12 a. m. = **midday / noon** mezzogiorno
 12 p. m. = **midnight** mezzanotte
- L'ora può essere espressa anche con i numeri in sequenza:
(ora) + (minuti)
11.50 It's eleven fifty.
12.05 It's twelve - o - five
- L'orario di partenza di un mezzo di trasporto si indica nel seguente modo:
the 20.15 train il treno delle 20.15.
the 8.50 plane l'aereo delle 8.50.
- Negli orari dei treni e degli aerei si usa l'orario a 24 ore.
The Manchester train leaves at 15.00
(si legge: fifteen hundred).
 Il treno per Manchester parte alle 15.00.

ESPRESSIONI RIFERITE AL TEMPO	
(At) What time ...? - At ... A che ora ...? - Alle ...	to be on time / early / late essere puntuale / in anticipo / in ritardo
When...? Quando...?	a (twenty minute) delay un ritardo di (20 minuti)
about/almost (one o'clock) quasi (l'una) by my watch al mio orologio my watch is (10 minutes) fast / slow il mio orologio è (dieci minuti) avanti / indietro	a quarter of an hour un quarto d'ora half an hour mezz'ora an hour and a half un'ora e mezza two and a half hours due ore e mezza

PRACTICE

1. Scrivi le ore per esteso usando prima le forme con *past* e *to*, e poi la forma con i numeri in sequenza (ora + minuti) come nell'esempio.

➤ 7.55 *It's five to eight am. / It's seven fifty-five am.*



2. Scrivi l'ora per esteso usando le espressioni *in the morning*, *in the afternoon*, *in the evening*.

➤ 4.15 a.m. *It's a quarter past four in the morning.*

- | | | |
|--------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. 4.10 a.m. | 3. 8.25 p.m. | 5. 9.50 a.m. |
| 2. 3.20 p.m. | 4. 11.05 p.m. | 6. 4.40 p.m. |

3. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

➤ 20.20 *It's twenty past eight in the afternoon / evening*

- | | |
|---------------|---|
| 1. 8.55 | It's five past / to nine. |
| 2. 13.35 | It's twenty-five / thirty-five to two. |
| 3. 23.10 | It's ten past eleven p.m. / a.m. |
| 4. 12.30 a.m. | It's twelve thirty at night / in the evening . |
| 5. 19.20 | It's twenty past seven in the afternoon / evening . |
| 6. 5.30 | It's half past five / half to six . |
| 7. 17.45 | It's a quarter past / to six. |
| 8. 12.00 a.m. | It's noon / midnight . |

4. Scrivi *mini-dialoghi* utilizzando gli elementi forniti nella tabella come nell'esempio.

the right time	the wrong time (fast / slow)
➤ 9.35	9.40
1. 12.25	12.22
2. 6.15	6.20
3. 11.20	11.18
4. 18.50	19.00
5. 12.45	12.50
6. 21.30	21.28

A: *What's the time by your watch?*
B: *It's exactly twenty-five to ten.*
A: *My watch is five minutes fast, then.*

- 5.** Rispondi alle seguenti domande. Utilizza le espressioni *in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening* come nell'esempio.

➤ *What time is the news? (20.30)* ***It's at eight thirty in the evening.***

1. What time is your favourite TV programme? (17.30)
2. What time is the football match? (14.15)
3. What time is the concert? (21.30)
4. What time is the flight to Paris? (08.50)
5. What time is dinner? (18.30)

- 6.** Leggi i programmi televisivi e rispondi alle domande.

BBC 1		ITV	
8.30 p.m.	Wildlife Documentary film: the world of the orangutans in the rainforests.	8.00 p.m.	Who wants to be a millionaire? Quiz show with a top prize of £ one million!!!
9.20 p.m.	U2 in concert Live concert at the Reading Festival.	9.00 p.m.	That Crazy Show Crazy ideas for presents.
10.00 p.m.	BBC News at Ten O'Clock. Regional News and weather.	9.30 p.m.	Gladiator Historical drama with R. Crowe.
10.35 p.m.	Question Time Political debate. Phone in to ask questions.	11.00 p.m.	ITV Nightly News
23.20 p.m.	Cape Fear Thriller with R. De Niro, N. Nolte and J. Lange	11.30 p.m.	The Night Show Topical satire
		12.00 p.m.	Blade Runner Futuristic thriller with H. Ford.

➤ *Where is the political debate on? At what time?*

The political debate is on BBC1 at 10.30 pm.

1. Where and when is the quiz show "Who wants to be a millionaire?" on?
2. Is there a film on BBC1? What time is it on?
3. What kind of film is "Gladiator"? Where and when is it on?
4. What time is ITV Nightly News on?
5. Is there a documentary film on? Where and when is it on?
6. What time is the U2 concert on?

- 7.** Abbina le frasi in A alle frasi in B adeguatamente.

A	B	
1. When's the next train to London, please?	a) At 9 o'clock. It's ready to take off.	1 ...
2. Is the Paris flight delayed?	b) It gets in at 13.50.	2 ...
3. When does the New York flight get in?	c) Yes, it's got a 10 minute delay.	3 ...
4. What time is the plane to Berlin?	d) No, we aren't. Don't worry.	4 ...
5. Flight BA 6734 isn't on time.	e) How long is the delay?	5 ...
6. Hurry up! We're late.	f) What's the gate number?	6 ...
7. The 9.30 flight to Los Angeles is ready to take off.	g) The next one's at 9.30, madam.	7 ...

★ B NUMERI ORDINALI - LA DATA

Forma

1 st the first	11 th the eleventh	21 st the twenty-first	40 th the fortieth
2 nd the second	12 th the twelfth	22 nd the twenty-second	50 th the fiftieth
3 rd the third	13 th the thirteenth	23 rd the twenty-third	60 th the sixtieth
4 th the fourth	14 th the fourteenth	24 th the twenty-fourth	70 th the seventieth
5 th the fifth	15 th the fifteenth	25 th the twenty-fifth	80 th the eightieth
6 th the sixth	16 th the sixteenth	26 th the twenty-sixth	90 th the ninetieth
7 th the seventh	17 th the seventeenth	27 th the twenty-seventh	100 th the hundredth
8 th the eighth	18 th the eighteenth	28 th the twenty-eighth	1,000 th the thousandth
9 th the ninth	19 th the nineteenth	29 th the twenty-ninth	
10 th the tenth	20 th the twentieth	30 th the thirtieth	

- I numeri ordinali si formano aggiungendo **th** ai numeri cardinali con alcune **eccezioni**: **the first** (*il primo*), **the second** (*il secondo*), **the third** (*il terzo*), **the twenty-first** (*il ventunesimo*), **the twenty-second** (*il ventiduesimo*), **the twenty-third** (*il ventitreesimo*), ecc.
- sono generalmente preceduti dall'articolo **the**
- presentano alcune **variazioni ortografiche** evidenziate in grassetto nella tabella

Uso

I numeri ordinali si usano per:

- indicare l'ordine di cose, persone o eventi
*February is **the second** month of the year.*
Febbraio è il secondo mese dell'anno.
- esprimere le frazioni: *a/one third* un terzo
a /one tenth un decimo
Ma si dice: *a half* un mezzo
two halves due mezzi
- esprimere la data

LA DATA

What's the date today?

It's ...

Si scrive	Si legge
<i>1st April / April 1st.</i> (British English)	<i>the first of April / April the first</i>
<i>1April / April 1</i> (American English)	

La data si può scrivere omettendo *st, nd, rd, th* però la pronuncia rimane invariata.

GIORNI DELLA SETTIMANA	MESI	STAGIONI
What day is it today? It's ...	What month is it ? It's ...	What season is it? It's ...
Monday	January	July
Tuesday	February	August
Wednesday	March	September
Thursday	April	October
Friday	May	November
Saturday	June	December
Sunday		winter

I giorni della settimana e i mesi si scrivono con la lettera maiuscola.

ON	IN
<p>Si usa la preposizione ON davanti alle date e ai giorni della settimana</p> <p><i>My birthday is on 2nd October.</i> Il mio compleanno è il 2 di ottobre. <i>I get up late on Sundays.</i> Mi alzo tardi alla domenica. Ma si dice: <i>It's Monday.</i> È lunedì. <i>It's 2nd July.</i> È il 2 di luglio.</p>	<p>Si usa IN davanti ai mesi e alle stagioni</p> <p><i>I was born in April.</i> Sono nato in aprile. <i>I go on holiday in summer.</i> Vado in vacanza in estate.</p>

PRACTICE

- 1.** Trasforma i numeri cardinali in numeri ordinali seguendo l'esempio

➤ 9 **9 th** **the ninth**

1	30
15	21
20	2
3	23
13	31

- 2.** Scrivi i seguenti numeri ordinali in cifre.

➤ *The twenty-second* **22 nd**

- | | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. The sixtieth | 4. The twelfth | 7. The tenth |
| 2. The thirty-third | 5. The seventeenth | 8. The seventy-fourth |
| 3. The twenty-fifth | 6. The fortieth | 9. The eleventh |

- 3.** Scrivi le seguenti date come nell'esempio

➤ *12 settembre 1999* **12 th September, 1999**

- | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. 22 agosto 1953 | 4. 23 ottobre 1943 |
| 2. 29 maggio 1984 | 5. 12 dicembre 1988 |
| 3. 31 gennaio 1963 | 6. 1 febbraio 1987 |

- 4.** Guarda la pagina di calendario e scrivi domande e risposte, come nell'esempio.

AUGUST		AUGUST	
17 Sun.	Peter	24 Sun.	Clare
18 Mon.	Mary	25 Mon.	
19 Tues.		26 Tues.	
20 Wed.	Susan	27 Wed.	
21 Thu.		28 Thu.	John
22 Fri.	Alan	29 Fri.	
23 Sat.		30 Sat.	Glenda

➤ *A: When's Peter's birthday?*
*B: It's **on** Sunday, August 17 th.*

- 1.** Mary? **2.** Susan? **3.** Alan? **4.** John? **5.** Glenda? **6.** Clare?

5. Riscrivi le frasi in modo corretto, come nell'esempio.

- *March is the second month of the year.* ***March is the third month of the year.***
1. A centimetre is a **thousandth** of a metre.
 2. 20 is a **fourth** of 100.
 3. Christmas Day is on the **3 rd** of December.
 4. "I" is the **sixth** letter of the alphabet.
 5. A millimetre is a **hundredth** of a metre.
 6. December is the **eleventh** month of the year.
 7. A minute is the **fortieth** part of an hour.

6. Abbina le festività alle loro date e definizioni, poi scrivi frasi come nell'esempio.

- | | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------|---|
| 1. <i>Halloween</i> | A. between 22 nd | a) the day of people in love |
| 2. St Valentine's Day | March and 25 th | b) <i>the night before All Saints</i> |
| 3. Boxing day | April | c) the day when Jesus was born |
| 4. Christmas Day | B. 31 st December | d) the last day of the year |
| 5. New Year's Eve | C. 14 th February | e) the day which celebrates the resurrection of Jesus |
| 6. Independence Day | D. 31 st October | f) the day after Christmas Day |
| 7. Easter | E. 4 th July | g) the day when America became independent from England |
| | F. 25 th December | |
| | G. 26 th December | |

1. D - b 2. - ... 3. - ... 4. - ... 5. - ... 6. - ... 7. - ...

➤ *Halloween is on 31 st October. It is the night before All Saints.*

7. Completa i *mini-dialoghi* adeguatamente con le parole mancanti.

1. A: the date today?
B: It's March 11 th.
2. A: What today?
B: It's Thursday.
3. A: Susan's birthday?
B: It's on 13 th December.
4. A: When's Easter?
B: It's spring.
5. A: When's Halloween?
B: It's
6. A: When's?
B: on 14 th February.

8. Riordina le battute del seguente dialogo.

- a) It's a quarter to seven. Yes, they're still open. They close at 7.30.
b) Oh, dear. We must buy him a present.
c) It's Saturday, the eighth.
d) *What's the date today?*
e) What time is it? Are the shops still (*ancora*) open?
f) The eighth of September!? But it's Colin's birthday tomorrow!

1 d

2 ...

3 ...

4 ...

5 ...

6 ...

★ C PREPOSIZIONI DI TEMPO

SI USA	NON SI USA
IN davanti • a parti del giorno <i>in the morning/afternoon/ ...</i> • ai mesi <i>in May / June / ...</i> • agli anni <i>in 1972 / 2003 / ...</i> • ai secoli <i>in the 17th century / ...</i> • alle stagioni <i>in spring /summer/ ...</i> • a periodi storici <i>in the Middle Ages/ ...</i>	IN e ON non si usano davanti a: • complementi di tempo preceduti da this / that, next / last <i>Paul's birthday is next Monday.</i> Il compleanno di Paul è il prossimo lunedì. <i>We arrived last Tuesday.</i> Siamo arrivati martedì scorso. però si dice: <i>on that day, on that occasion</i> • a date, giorni della settimana con funzione di soggetto <i>Monday in my birthday.</i> (soggetto) Lunedì è il mio compleanno. Ma si dice: <i>My birthday is on Monday.</i> (complemento di tempo) Il mio compleanno è lunedì.
ON davanti • ai giorni della settimana <i>on Monday</i> • a parti del giorno precedute dal nome del giorno <i>on Monday morning</i> • alle date <i>on 11th February</i> • a ricorrenze o giorni particolari come: <i>on my birthday, on our anniversary,</i> <i>on Christmas/Easter day,</i> <i>on a sunny/rainy day, ...</i>	
AT davanti • alle ore <i>at seven o'clock</i> • a parti del giorno come: <i>at night, at midnight,</i> <i>at midday, at noon</i> • ai pasti <i>at breakfast/lunch/dinner-time</i> • a "fine settimana" <i>at the weekend, at weekends</i> • alle festività <i>at Christmas, at Easter (time)</i> • in espressioni come: <i>at the beginning/end of ...</i>	

ALTRE PREPOSIZIONI DI TEMPO		
from ...to	da ... a ...	<i>from 9 a.m. to 10 a.m.</i> (dalle nove alle dieci)
between ... and ...	tra ... e ...	<i>between 7 a.m and 10 a.m.</i> (tra le sette e le dieci)
after	dopo	<i>after dinner</i> (dopo cena)
before	prima	<i>before breakfast</i> (prima di colazione)
till/until	fino a	<i>till / until Monday</i> (fino a lunedì)
during	durante	<i>during the weekend</i> (durante il weekend)
in (+ periodo di tempo)	fra/tra	<i>in a month</i> (tra un mese)
within (+periodo di tempo)	entro	<i>within a month</i> (entro un mese)
by (+momento preciso)	per/entro	<i>by the end of the month</i> (per la fine del mese)
for* (+ periodo di tempo)	per	<i>for a week</i> (per una settimana)
since* (+ momento iniziale)	da	<i>since Monday</i> (da lunedì)
throughout	per tutto/a il/la	<i>throughout the week</i> (per tutta la settimana)

*Per **for** e **since** vedi
anche a **PAG.** 196

PRACTICE

1. Inserisci *at, in, on*.

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. ... midnight | 8. ... Easter | 15. ... dinner-time |
| 2. ... 1999 | 9. ... autumn | 16. ... five o'clock |
| 3. ... the morning | 10. ... 15 th November | 17. ... noon |
| 4. ... winter | 11. ... the weekend | 18. ... that day |
| 5. ... Christmas Day | 12. ... midday | 19. ... that occasion |
| 6. ... Sunday afternoon | 13. ... the 18 th century | 20. ... a sunny day |
| 7. ... 4 th August | 14. ... the Renaissance | 21. ... the end of the day |

2. Completa le seguenti frasi con la corretta preposizione di tempo: *at, in, on*.

1. There is a football match three o'clock.
2. The history test is Monday.
3. It's very cold winter.
4. Mary's party starts seven o'clock.
5. I receive a lot of presents Christmas.
6. He gets up at 5 o'clock the morning.
7. We eat chocolate eggs Easter Day.
8. My parents usually go on holiday
9. She was born 1982.
10. I never go to bed late night.
11. The weather is usually nice spring.
12. Are you going to the pub lunch-time?
13. Peter's birthday is 30 th November.
14. Are they going to the mountains the weekend?

3. Completa il dialogo con le corrette preposizioni di tempo: *at, in, on*.

A: We're invited to Mark's birthday party.
B: Oh! When is it?
A: It's 1) November 12 th. It's 2) Saturday.
B: At what time?
A: 3) nine o'clock .
B: There are a lot of birthdays 4) November.
A: Yes, that's right. Susan's birthday is 5) November, too. 6) the 14 th.
B: When's Bob's birthday, by the way (*a proposito*)?
A: It's 7) Christmas Day, don't you remember?
B: Yes, I remember now.

4. Sottolinea la preposizione corretta.

1. Mark watches TV **after** / **between** dinner.
2. The Pet exam is **between** / **in** two days.
3. Tom and I play video games **till** / **during** the weekend.
4. The bank is open **till** / **by** 3.30.
5. My American friends are in London **by** / **for** a week.
6. The post office is open **from** / **by** 9 a.m. **at** / **to** 5.30 p.m.
7. I can finish this work **in** / **by** the end of the week.
8. Can you finish this work **throughout** / **within** a week?
9. The match is **at** / **on** Saturday afternoon.
10. I'm going to Spain - / **on** next Sunday.
11. I never go to bed **from** / **before** midnight.
12. Sharon's birthday is **on** / **in** April.
13. The children slept **throughout** / **until** the journey.

5. Costruisci frasi abbinando adeguatamente gli elementi forniti nelle tre colonne.

- | | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------|--------------|
| 1. We never go to bed | A. in | a) noon. |
| 2. Some department stores are open | B. after | b) Sundays. |
| 3. It's often cold and snowy | C. on | c) midnight. |
| 4. I usually watch TV | D. before | d) winter. |
| 5. Lunch is | E. at | e) dinner. |

1. D - c

2. ... - ...

3. ... - ...

4. ... - ...

5. ... - ...

➤ *We never go to bed before midnight.*

6. Guarda questo orario scolastico e completa le domande e le risposte con le *preposizioni di tempo* corrette.

	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday
Registration and assembly					
8.30 - 9.00	R.E.	Art	Maths	D.T	French
9.00 - 9.45	Science	Art	Maths	French	Geography
10.30 - 11.15	French	English	English	Science	History
Break					
11.30 - 12.15	D.T	French	Geography	Maths	Science
12.15 - 1.00	D.T	French	History	Maths	Science
Lunch					
2.00 - 2.45	P.E	Art	Geography	Art	Music
2.45 - 3.30	P.E	Music	History	Art	Music

➤ *What time is the registration? - It's at 8.30.*

1. What time is the break? - It's 11.15 11.30
2. When is the Religious Education lesson? - It's Monday 9.00.
3. What time is the Science lesson Monday? - It's 9.45.
4. Is there a History lesson Thursday? - Yes, there is. It's 10.30.
5. Is there a Design and Technology lesson Monday? - Yes, there is. It's 11.30 1.00.
6. Is there a Geography lesson Wednesday? - Yes, there is. It's lunch, 2.00 2.45.
7. When is the Science lesson Friday? Is it or lunch? - It's lunch.
8. What lesson do they have 2.45 Tuesday? - They have a Music lesson.
9. Do they have lessons Saturdays? - No, they don't.

7. Nelle seguenti frasi la preposizione usata è sbagliata. Correggi l'errore contenuto in ciascuna frase usando adeguatamente le preposizioni fornite: *on / at / during / between / after*.

- | | |
|---|-------|
| 1. Ted reads the newspaper for dinner. | |
| 2. They play with the computer before the weekend. | |
| 3. The flight to London is on 8.35. | |
| 4. Breakfast is since 7.30 and 10 o'clock. | |
| 5. Shops close in Thursday afternoon in my town. | |

REVISION

- 1.** Inserisci le *preposizioni* corrette: *in, at, on* (tempo e luogo).
1. My birthday is November.
 2. I live Milan.
 3. Dad is sitting an armchair.
 4. Tom's birthday is Monday.
 5. The film is BBC 1 half past seven.
 6. George is home.
 7. Susan is bed.
 8. Tom is the dentist's.
 9. The supermarket is the left.
 10. Sarah and Mark are school.
 11. The Geography lesson is 10.30.
 12. She was born 1998.
 13. We usually go to bed midnight.
 14. Alan and Jane are sitting the back of the car.
 15. I meet my friends my way to school.
 16. The answers are page 52.

- 2.** Completa le frasi con le *preposizioni* fornite in ordine sparso. Ciascuna preposizione deve essere usata una sola volta.

of, on, with, in, at, for, about, from, without, before

1. Is this present me?
2. No sugar, please. I like coffee sugar.
3. George is on holiday his friends.
4. What's that documentary film?
5. The supermarket is Gorman Street.
6. I live 14 Gordon Avenue.
7. He never gets up eight in the morning.
8. The handle the door is broken.
9. The cat is sleeping the sofa.
10. What's the distance Cambridge to London?

SENTENCE TRANSFORMATION (PET)

- 3.** Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando non più di tre parole.
1. How much is this lipstick?
What's this lipstick?
 2. What's the size of the Vatican City?
How Vatican City?
 3. Can you tell me the time, please?
What please?
 4. Where do you live?
What address?
 5. Where are you from?
What you?
 6. What age is Pamela?
How Pamela?
 7. I'm George Sway.
My George Sway.
 8. Warsaw is the capital of Poland. Am I right?
Warsaw is the capital of Peru, it?
 9. What's this river called?
What's the river?
 10. What is this book about? Kangaroos?
Is kangaroos?

★ A PRESENT SIMPLE

Forma

Affermativa	I/you/we/they + forma base he/she/it + forma base + -s
Negativa	I/you/we/they + do not (don't) + forma base He/she/it + does not (doesn't) + forma base
Interrogativa	Do + I/you/we/they + forma base ...? Does + he/she/it + forma base ...?
Interrogativo-negativa	Don't + I/you/we/they + forma base ...? Doesn't he/she/it + forma base ...?
Risposte brevi	Yes, I/you/we/they do / Yes, he/she/it does No, I/you/we/they don't / No, he/she/it doesn't

They live in Manchester. / They don't live in Manchester.

Do they live in Manchester? / Don't they live in Manchester? - Yes, they do. / No, they don't.

 **Attenzione**  alla 3a persona singolare!!!

Forma affermativa	3a pers.sing.	esempi
La maggior parte dei verbi	+ -s	<i>He loves reading.</i>
Verbi terminanti in: -ss, -sh, -ch, -x, -o -y preceduta da consonante	+ -es → -ies	<i>He often goes to the pub. She studies very hard.</i>

L'ausiliare della **3a persona** nella forma interrogativa è **does**, e nella forma negativa è **doesn't**. Il verbo viene espresso nella **forma base** (senza -s)
Does he/she live in London?
He/She doesn't live in London.

Frase	Question tag (vero? / non è vero?)
affermativa <i>They work in London, Loro lavorano a Londra,</i>	don't / doesn't + soggetto? <i>don't they? vero?</i>
negativa <i>She doesn't live in London, Lei non vive a Londra</i>	do / does + soggetto? <i>does she? vero?</i>

Uso

Il **present simple** corrisponde al presente indicativo e si usa:

- per parlare di **azioni abituali o ricorrenti** (spesso con avverbi ed espressioni di frequenza)
- per **affermazioni di tipo generale**
- per **fatti che sono sempre veri**
- con funzione di **presente narrativo**, per raccontare storie
- per parlare di **orari fissi**
- nella forma interrogativo-negativa **per dare suggerimenti/consigli**

*She usually gets up at seven o' clock.
Lei di solito si alza alle sette.*

I like music.

Mi piace la musica.

The sun rises in the east.

Il sole sorge ad est.

Finally they fall in love and get married.

Infine si innamorano e si sposano.

The train to London leaves at 7.30.

Il treno per Londra parte alle 7.30.

Why don't you put on a pullover?

Perché non ti metti un pullover?

PRACTICE

1. Costruisci la 3a persona singolare del *present simple* dei seguenti verbi.

➤ make	makes	5. grow	10. cross
1. hurry	6. miss	11. say
2. carry	7. kiss	12. read
3. do	8. catch	13. wash
4. enjoy	9. teach	14. go

2. Correggi gli *errori di ortografia* della 3a persona singolare del *present simple* affermativo.

➤ *He teaches French. teaches*

1. Mark gos to primary school.
2. Tom workes in a factory.
3. Bill studyes at university.
4. Joe watchs TV four hours a day.
5. He often plaies tennis.
6. The baby often crys.

3. Abbina adeguatamente le professioni in A con le parti in B e poi scrivi frasi come nell'esempio.

➤ *She's a baby-sitter. She looks after children.*

A	B	
1. baby-sitter	a) he / cure / animals	1 f
2. vet	b) he / direct / actors and actresses	2 ...
3. air-hostess	c) he / repair / cars	3 ...
4. mechanic	d) she / paint / wonderful pictures	4 ...
5. film director	e) she / help / passengers	5 ...
6. pop star	f) she / look / after children	6 ...
7. photographer	g) she / sing / and / play / the guitar	7 ...
8. artist	h) he / take / pictures for a fashion magazine	8 ...

4. Completa le frasi utilizzando i verbi forniti nella forma corretta del *present simple*. Usa ciascun verbo una sola volta.

fly / finish / eat / sell / drink / live / speak

➤ *I eat toast for breakfast.*

1. I coffee twice a day.
2. They two foreign languages.
3. He to Paris once a month.
4. She work at six o'clock.
5. We shoes in a shop.
6. They in Scotland.

5. Completa le frasi con la *forma affermativa* del *present simple* dei verbi tra parentesi.

➤ *It (get) gets dark very early.*

1. Bill and Mary (*live*) in Liverpool.
2. Tom (*sing*) in a pop group.
3. She (*watch*) TV after dinner.
4. You (*study*) hard.
5. Tim (*go*) to the swimming pool every day.
6. Nick and I (*need*) more training.

6. Trasforma le frasi dell'esercizio precedente nella forma *negativa*, *interrogativa* e *interrogativo-negativa*.

- *It doesn't get dark very early.*
Does it get dark very early?

Doesn't it get dark very early?

7. Rispondi con *risposte brevi*.

- *Do you spend much on clothes? - Yes, I do.*

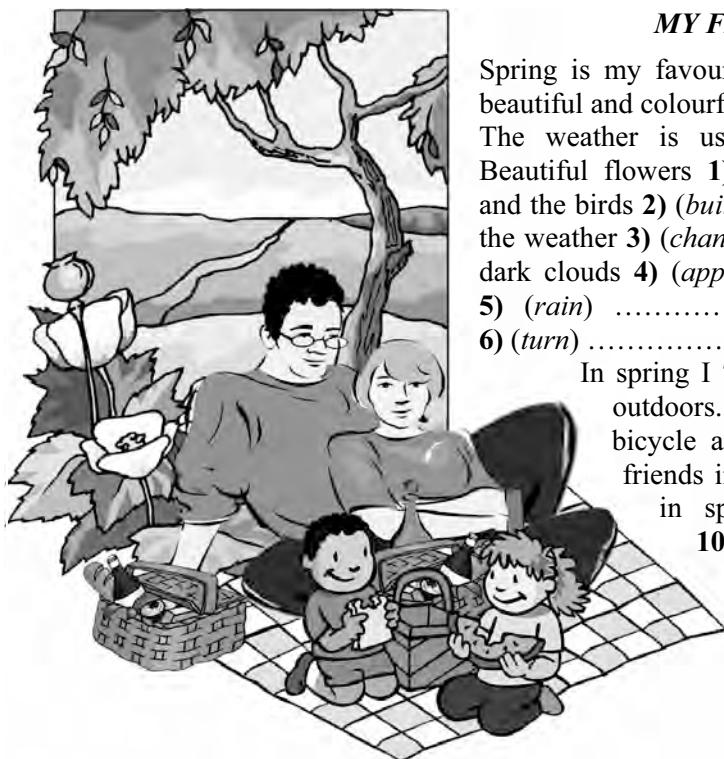
1. Does she like coffee? - No, ...
2. Do you and John often go to the gym? - Yes, ...
3. Does Sharon go to the theatre once a month? - Yes, ...
4. Does the post office open at nine o'clock? - Yes, ...
5. Does Peter live in a suburb north of Manchester? - No, ...
6. Do Mark and Mary go to work by underground? - No, ...

8. Aggiungi in coda a ciascuna frase la corretta *question tag*.

- *The Italians eat a lot of spaghetti, don't they?*

1. The English don't usually drink wine,?
2. You don't eat meat,?
3. He often goes to the mountains,?
4. She doesn't like coffee,?
5. You smoke,?
6. He doesn't go to bed late,?
7. Your cat likes milk,?
8. People drive on the left in England,?

9. Completa il testo con la forma corretta del *present simple* dei verbi tra parentesi.



MY FAVOURITE SEASON

Spring is my favourite season because everything is so beautiful and colourful.

The weather is usually warm and sunny in spring. Beautiful flowers 1) (*grow*) everywhere and the birds 2) (*build*) their nests. However, the weather 3) (*change*) quickly. Sometimes, dark clouds 4) (*appear*) in the sky and it 5) (*rain*) , but after the rain, the sky 6) (*turn*) blue again.

In spring I 7) (*spend*) a lot of time outdoors. I often 8) (*ride*) my bicycle and 9) (*play*) with my friends in the park. The countryside is lovely in spring, so my family and I often 10) (*go*) on picnics on Sundays.

I 11) (*love*) spring. It 12) (*make*) me feel happy.

10. Usa la tabella e i verbi forniti tra parentesi per scrivere frasi su David, come nell'esempio.

YES	<i>from Australia</i>	in a restaurant	in a house	German	rock music	the guitar
NO	<i>from Ireland</i>	in a shop	in a flat	French	classical music	the piano

➤ *(come) He comes from Australia.*

He doesn't come from Ireland.

1. *(work)*
2. *(live)*
3. *(speak)*
4. *(like)*
5. *(play)*

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

11. Completa le frasi con *don't* o *doesn't*, come nell'esempio.

➤ *I play the piano but Bill doesn't.*

1. I smoke but my sister ...
2. They drink a lot of beer but we ...
3. He goes to bed late but Norma
4. We eat meat but he ...
5. We come from London but they ...
6. My father smokes but I ...

12. Sei all'Ufficio Informazioni Turistiche. Completa le domande con *do* o *does*.

➤ *Do all the banks change money?*

1. the number 45 bus stop near the museum?
2. July's restaurant serve typical English food?
3. the sightseeing tour start here?
4. the concert finish before midnight?
5. all the shops accept credit cards?
6. you sell maps of the city?

13. Completa le seguenti frasi con *do*, *does*, *don't*, *doesn't*.

1. they like Italian food?
2. she live in Scotland?
3. They go to school by bus.
4. We see our parents very often.
5. John spend much on clothes.
6. you live in a house or in a flat?
7. I speak German.
8. Mary speak French?
9. Tom often play football?
10. Glenda and Brenda live in a big city.
11. they use the Internet?
12. you get good marks in English?
13. Jasmine speak English at home.

14. Abbina le frasi alle espressioni fornite, poi usa le espressioni e la forma *interrogativo-negativa* per dare suggerimenti seguendo l'esempio.

➤ *Alan's got a toothache. - Why doesn't he go to the dentist's?*

1. *Alan's got a toothache.*
2. We're thirsty.
3. I'm hungry.
4. They're dead tired.
5. I'm cold.
6. I'm in a hurry.
7. Jane is quite fat.

- a) have some coke
b) put on a warm pullover
c) take a taxi
d) go on a diet
e) *go to the dentist's*
f) have a sandwich
g) go to bed

1	<i>e</i>
2	...
3	...
4	...
5	...
6	...
7	...

★ B AVVERBI ED ESPRESSIONI DI FREQUENZA

AVVERBI DI FREQUENZA						
0 % never, (ever) mai	10% hardly ever quasi mai	20% seldom / rarely raramente	40% sometimes talvolta	60% often spesso	80% usually / generally di solito / generalmente	100 % always sempre
• Posizione nella frase:	- prima del verbo principale				<i>They often eat meat.</i>	
					<i>They don't often eat meat.</i>	
					<i>Do they often eat meat?</i>	
	- dopo il verbo <i>to be</i>				<i>She is always late.</i>	
	- sometimes può trovarsi anche all'inizio o alla fine della frase					
Attenzione!!!						
Ever è usato in frasi interrogative <i>Do you ever buy CDs?</i>						
e affermative <i>This is the best book I have ever read.</i>						
Con never il verbo è alla forma affermativa <i>I never drink coffee.</i>						

ESPRESSIONI DI FREQUENZA	
once a day / a week / a month / a year	una volta al giorno / alla settimana / al mese / all'anno
twice a day / ...	due volte al giorno / ...
three / four times a day / ...	tre volte / quattro volte al giorno / ...
every day / ...	ogni giorno / ...
every two days / ...	ogni due giorni / ...
many times	molte volte
several times	parecchie volte
• Posizione nella frase: al termine della frase	<i>I go to the cinema about twice a month.</i>
• Osserva l'uso dell'articolo indeterminativo a :	<i>once a month / twice a week / ...</i>

Gli avverbi e le espressioni di frequenza vengono usati per esprimere la **frequenza con cui un'azione viene compiuta**.

I go to the pub twice a week.
Vado al pub due volte alla settimana.

Per fare **domande sulla frequenza** si usa:

How often...?

Quante volte/Quanto spesso...?
How often do you go to the pub?
Quante volte vai al pub?

PRACTICE

1. Scrivi che cosa fa abitualmente *Jane*. Usa le informazioni fornite ed inserisci gli avverbi di frequenza nella posizione corretta.

- *get up early*
- 1. have breakfast at home
- 2. get to school late
- 3. finish school at 3.30
- 4. stay at home in the afternoon
- 5. read before going to bed
- 6. go to bed before midnight

- always*
never
sometimes
usually
rarely
often
hardly ever

- *Jane always gets up early.*
- She.....*
-
-
-
-
-

2. Riscrivi le frasi inserendo l'*avverbio di frequenza* nella posizione corretta.

- *I get up early. (never)* ***I never get up early.***
1. He is tired. (*always*)
 2. She is at home. (*never*)
 3. Do you go to the mountains with your parents. (*sometimes*)
 4. Does Mary send SMSs to her friends? (*often*)
 5. Do your schoolmates invite you to parties? (*ever*)
 6. I don't get up late. (*usually*)
 7. Sally is at home in the evening. (*often*)
 8. They don't spend their holidays abroad. (*usually*)
 9. She is at school. (*hardly ever*)
 10. She doesn't hang out with friends in the evening. (*often*)

3. Inserisci correttamente *ever* o *never*.

- *She **never** stops talking. She's a real chatter box.*
1. Do you play football? - No,
 2. We go dancing.
 3. Do your teachers get angry?
 4. This is the best film I've seen.

4. Guarda le immagini e scrivi *mini-dialoghi* seguendo l'esempio. Usa correttamente *never*, *always*, *rarely*, *sometimes*, *hardly ever* ed aggiungi tutti gli elementi necessari.

➤ *do / homework / afternoon - 80%*



A: *Does Paul **ever** do his homework in the afternoon?*
B: *He **usually** does his homework in the afternoon.*

1. have breakfast / morning - 100%
2. watch / TV / evening - 40%
3. have lunch / school - 20%
4. cycle / to school - 10%
5. go / to bed / after 11 p.m - 0%



5. Riordina le parole e costruisci frasi di senso compiuto.

- *goes / to / the swimming pool / Mary / in the afternoon / always*
Mary always goes to the swimming pool in the afternoon.
1. we / before eleven o'clock / to / go / never / bed
 2. Robert and Sally / do / go / on Sundays / to / ever / church / ?
 3. to / often / London / we / in summer / go
 4. to / twice / Tom and Jennifer / go / the cinema / a month
 5. go / do / at the weekend / ever / you / the seaside / to / ?
 6. often / she / doesn't / her mother / help
 7. never / Tom / tennis / in the afternoon / plays
 8. hardly ever / to / the pub / my brother and I / in the evening / go
 9. our friends / often / don't / see / we
 10. 7 o'clock / Bill / before / wakes up / rarely
 11. your hair / you / do / wash / how often / ?
 12. have / I / every day / a shower

★ C USO DI DO/DOES NELLE WH-QUESTIONS

QUESTION ORD	DO/DOES	SOGGETTO	AVV. DI FREQUENZA	INFINITO SENZA TO	EVENTUALI COMPLEMENTI
Who	do	you	-	love?	-
What	does	your mother	-	do?	-
What time	do	you	usually	get up?	-
Where	do	they	-	live?	-
When	does	she	generally	go	on holiday?
How	do	they	usually	go	to work?
How much	does	this skirt	-	cost?	-
How often	do	you	-	buy	books?
How long	do	elephants	usually	live?	-
Why	does	he	often	get	to school late?

- Nota la **posizione** degli ausiliari **do/does** nelle **WH-questions**:
- dopo la question word e prima del soggetto
Where do you live? Dove abiti?

- In presenza di **preposizione**, questa si colloca **alla fine della domanda**
*Who do you usually spend your free time **with**? (Who è complemento indiretto)*
Con chi di solito trascorri il tuo tempo libero?
*What music do you usually listen **to**? (What music è complemento indiretto)*
Che musica ascolti di solito?

- Gli interrogativi **Who..?** e **What...?** **rifiutano** gli ausiliari **do / does** quando fungono da **soggetto** della frase nella forma interrogativa

Confronta gli esempi:

- Who **do** you love? (Who è compl. diretto)*
Chi ami (tu)?
*Who **loves** you? (Who è soggetto)*
Chi ti ama?
*What **do** you **want** to happen? (What è compl. diretto)*
Che cosa vuoi che succeda?
*What **happens** when you are late? (What è soggetto)*
Che cosa succede quando sei in ritardo?

PRACTICE

1. Completa le domande alle risposte fornite.

- *Where **does** Tom live?* - Tom lives in California.
- Where ? - Martin and Paul work in Los Angeles.
 - What time ? - We get up at 7.30.
 - How ? - She goes to school by bus.
 - How often ? - I go to concerts about three times a year.
 - How much ? - On CDs? I spend about £30 a month.
 - Why ? - He smokes a lot of cigarettes because he's nervous.
 - When ? - I usually go to the library in the afternoon.
 - What ? - Mark? He's a computer programmer.
 - How much ? - These shoes? They cost £40.50.
 - How long ? - Kangaroos? I think they live about twenty years.

2. Guarda la tabella e scrivi domande e risposte, come nell'esempio.

➤ *What time does the bus leave? - It leaves at 9.30.*

	leave	arrive		start	finish	open	close
BUS	9.30	9.45	FILM	7.30	9.45		
TRAIN	10.35	11.15	MATCH	2.30	4.15		
PLANE	1.30	3.50	BANK			9.30	3.30
			POST OFFICE			9.00	5.30

3. Leggi il testo e costruisci domande utilizzando adeguatamente *how long, why, where, what, how much* e le parole fornite, poi rispondi alle domande, come nell'esempio.

➤ *live?* *Where do kangaroos live?* *They live in Australia.*



Kangaroos are mammals. They live in Australia. They are about two metres tall and weigh about sixty kilos. They have got two long back legs, two short front legs and a long tail. They jump very high because their back legs are very strong. They eat leaves. They carry their babies in a pouch and feed them on milk. Kangaroos live for about fifteen to twenty years.

1. weigh? 2. jump very high? 3. eat?
 4. carry their babies? 5. feed their babies on? 6. live?

4. Riordina le parole per scrivere domande di senso compiuto.

➤ *Mary / does / the / usually / what / afternoon / do / in / ?*
What does Mary usually do in the afternoon?

1. leave / usually / do / home / you / what time / ?
2. do / when / and / Peter / go / holiday / Jenny / on / ?
3. generally / do / do / what / your friends / on Saturday nights / ?
4. how much / do / earn / your parents / ?
5. do / where / usually / your friends / their holidays / spend / ?
6. do / you / to / go / with / the pub / who / ?
7. a knife / do / what / use / you / for / ?
8. do / usually / live / penguins / how long / ?
9. does / how often / play / your brother / tennis / ?
10. to stay / want / why / she / does / at home / ?

5. Indica se le *question words* hanno funzione di *soggetto (S)* o di *complemento (C)*.

➤ *Who uses a paintbrush? (S)*

1. **What** do you use a computer for?
2. **Who** do you often go to the cinema with?
3. **Who** sells flowers?
4. **Who** does she buy flowers for?
5. **What** cuts things?
6. **What** do you cut things with?
7. **What** happens if you miss the train?
8. **What** does she want me to do?

6. Scrivi domande corrette, come negli esempi.

➤ *They never go out with the Browns.*

Who (soggetto) ***Who never goes out with the Browns?***

Who (complemento indiretto) ***Who do they never go out with?***

1. Mark never buys flowers for his wife.

Who (soggetto)

Who (comp. indiretto.)

2. Sarah often sees her friends at the club.

Who (soggetto)

Who (comp. diretto.)

3. They often play tennis with the Smiths.

Who (soggetto)

Who (comp. indiretto.)

4. Heat melts ice.

What (soggetto)

What (compl. diretto.)

7. Costruisci domande al *present simple* le cui risposte sono contenute nelle seguenti frasi, usando le *question words* tra parentesi.

➤ *They listen to the radio before going to work. (Who? What? When?)*

Who listens to the radio before going to work?

What do they do before going to work?

When do they listen to the radio?

1. Betty is so nervous that she smokes a packet of cigarettes every day.

(*How many? Why?*)

2. David likes going to the cinema on Saturday evenings.

(*Who? What? When?*)

3. Tom spends a lot of money on video games.

(*Who? How much?*)

4. The Browns always go to work by car.

(*Who? How?*)

5. Susan likes spending her holidays in Sicily because the weather is very nice there.

(*Who? Where? Why?*)

6. They go to the theatre twice a month because they think it is a very interesting way to spend their free time.

(*Where? How often? Why?*)

8. Le domande sono formulate in modo errato. Riscrivile correttamente.

1. What time you usually have lunch?

2. What does happen when you miss the bus?

3. Who he goes often on holiday with?

4. Where do live kangaroos?

5. Who often meet David at the pub? - Michael does.

6. Who you never play tennis with? - I never play tennis with Jane.

7. Who does often play tennis with you? - Peter does.

REVISION

1. Multiple choice cloze test (PET)

- Leggi il testo e scegli la risposta corretta per ciascun spazio vuoto.
- Per ciascuna domanda, indica la lettera di fianco alla parola corretta (A, B, C o D).

		EXAMPLE ANSWER			
	0	A <input type="checkbox"/>	B <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	C <input type="checkbox"/>	D <input type="checkbox"/>

SNOW WHITE AND THE SEVEN DWARFS

Snow White (0) a beautiful young girl (1) black (2) and rosy cheeks. (3) name is Snow White because her skin is as white as snow. She lives happily (4) a castle with her mother, the queen, and her father, the king.

One day the queen (5) and after a year the king (6) another woman. The king's new wife is proud and vain and every day she (7) her mirror:

*Mirror, mirror, on the wall,
Who is the fairest one of all?*

And the mirror always (8) :

You are the fairest one of all

But Snow White grows up so beautiful that one day the mirror answers:

*Queen, you are very fair,
'tis true,
But Snow White is lovelier
Far than you.*



The queen turns pale and begins to (9) Snow White. Her envy (*invidia*) becomes so violent that she sends for (*manda a chiamare*) a huntsman and tells him to take Snow White into the forest and kill (10).....

0. A are	<input type="checkbox"/>	B is	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	C has	<input type="checkbox"/>	D have	<input type="checkbox"/>
1. A with	<input type="checkbox"/>	B for	<input type="checkbox"/>	C from	<input type="checkbox"/>	D without	<input type="checkbox"/>
2. A hairs	<input type="checkbox"/>	B hair	<input type="checkbox"/>	C foot	<input type="checkbox"/>	D tooth	<input type="checkbox"/>
3. A His	<input type="checkbox"/>	B Hers	<input type="checkbox"/>	C Her	<input type="checkbox"/>	D She	<input type="checkbox"/>
4. A on	<input type="checkbox"/>	B in	<input type="checkbox"/>	C behind	<input type="checkbox"/>	D under	<input type="checkbox"/>
5. A dyes	<input type="checkbox"/>	B dies	<input type="checkbox"/>	C dyed	<input type="checkbox"/>	D die	<input type="checkbox"/>
6. A marry	<input type="checkbox"/>	B marryes	<input type="checkbox"/>	C marri	<input type="checkbox"/>	D marries	<input type="checkbox"/>
7. A asks	<input type="checkbox"/>	B ask	<input type="checkbox"/>	C replies	<input type="checkbox"/>	D answer	<input type="checkbox"/>
8. A replays	<input type="checkbox"/>	B replyes	<input type="checkbox"/>	C answer	<input type="checkbox"/>	D replies	<input type="checkbox"/>
9. A love	<input type="checkbox"/>	B loves	<input type="checkbox"/>	C hates	<input type="checkbox"/>	D hate	<input type="checkbox"/>
10. A him	<input type="checkbox"/>	B she	<input type="checkbox"/>	C her	<input type="checkbox"/>	D hers	<input type="checkbox"/>

2. Conosci il seguito della favola? Abbina le domande alle risposte adeguatamente. Questo ti aiuterà a ricostruire la storia.

- Does the huntsman kill her?
- What does Snow White find in the forest?
- Who does she meet there?
- Do they help her or do they kill her?
- How many times does the queen try to kill her?
- How does the queen kill Snow White?
- Who brings Snow White back to life?
- How does he bring her back to life?
- What happens in the end?
- What happens to the queen?

- a) A young prince does.
 b) No, he doesn't. He abandons her in the forest.
 c) A nice little house.
 d) She kills her with a poisoned apple.
 e) With a kiss.
 f) She turns pale with rage and dies.
 g) They fall in love and get married.
 h) They help her.
 i) Seven dwarfs.
 j) Three times: with a silken cord, with a poisoned comb and with a poisoned apple.

1 ...
2 ...
3 ...
4 ...
5 ...
6 ...
7 ...
8 ...
9 ...
10 ...

Grammar and practice

- A. Espressioni idiomatiche con *to have*
 B. Mi piace ... *I like ...*
 C. Mi occorre ... *I need ... / I take ...*

- D. Preposizioni di mezzo
 E. Pronomi riflessivi e reciproci

★ A ESPRESSIONI IDIOMATICHE CON TO HAVE

Il verbo **to have** è usato anche in alcune **espressioni idiomatiche** in cui non esprime possesso o relazione, ma ha valore di **verbo principale**.

What time do you have breakfast?

I never have breakfast.

TO HAVE

<i>breakfast</i>	fare colazione	<i>a chat</i>	fare una chiacchierata
<i>lunch</i>	pranzare	<i>a walk</i>	fare una passeggiata
<i>dinner/supper</i>	cenare	<i>a ride</i>	fare un giro (in moto/a cavallo)
<i>fun / a good time</i>	divertirsi	<i>a holiday</i>	fare una vacanza
<i>a meal</i>	fare un pasto	<i>a party</i>	fare una festa
<i>a snack</i>	fare uno spuntino	<i>a trip / a journey</i>	fare un viaggio
<i>a sandwich</i>	mangiare un sandwich	<i>a nap</i>	fare un pisolino
<i>a drink</i>	bere una bibita	<i>a rest</i>	riposarsi
<i>a cup of tea/coffee</i>	bere una tazza di tè/caffè	<i>a break</i>	fare una pausa
<i>a bath</i>	fare un bagno	<i>an accident</i>	avere un incidente
<i>a shower</i>	fare una doccia	<i>a dream</i>	fare un sogno
<i>a swim</i>	fare una nuotata		

In questi casi **to have**

- non è seguito da **got**
- le **interrogative**, le **negative**, le **risposte brevi** e le **question tags** richiedono l'uso degli ausiliari **do/does** al present simple (**did** al past simple)

I usually have a big breakfast.
I don't usually have a big breakfast.
Do you usually have a big breakfast?
Yes, I do. / No, I don't.
You don't usually have a big breakfast, do you?

PRACTICE

1. Scegli l'alternativa corretta.

➤ *I like to have A when my friends come to see me.*

1. Are you thirsty? Why don't you have ... ?
2. We often have ... in the park when the weather is good.
3. Sam usually has ... in June.
4. I'm hungry. Can I have ... ?
5. She has She'd like to become a famous dancer.
6. We have ... at lunch-time.

(A) *a chat*

(B) *a nap*

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| (A) <i>a sandwich</i> | (B) <i>a drink</i> |
| (A) <i>a shower</i> | (B) <i>a walk</i> |
| (A) <i>a dream</i> | (B) <i>a holiday</i> |
| (A) <i>a snack</i> | (B) <i>Coke</i> |
| (A) <i>a rest</i> | (B) <i>a dream</i> |
| (A) <i>a break</i> | (B) <i>an accident</i> |

2. Completa le frasi con *have, has, do, does, don't, doesn't*.

1. She have lunch at home. She lunch at school.
2. I always a shower before going to bed.
3. He a light dinner. He doesn't eat much.
4. She always a lot of fun when she meets her friends.
5. They often a walk in the park.
6. Why you have a rest if you are tired?
7. he ever have a meal at Mario's?
8. you have a snack in the afternoon?

3. Rispondi con *risposte brevi*.

- *Do you have an apple for breakfast? - No, I don't.*
1. Do the British usually have a cup of tea in the afternoon? - Yes, ...
 2. Does Paul ever have lunch with his family? - No, ...
 3. Do Peter and Alan have a big lunch? - No, ...
 4. Does Lucy have a rest after work? - Yes, ...
 5. Do you usually have a shower in the morning? - Yes, I ...

4. Aggiungi in coda a ciascuna frase la *question tag* corretta.

- *You don't have buttered toast for breakfast, do you?*
1. They have a swim in the local pool once a week,?
 2. You don't have lunch with your family,?
 3. They have a party on the last day of school,?
 4. She doesn't have a rest after lunch,?
 5. Susan has just salad for lunch,?

5. Completa le domande la cui risposta è contenuta nelle frasi.

- *They have corn flakes for breakfast. What do they have for breakfast?*
1. Tom usually has a shower when he gets home from work.
When?
 2. Mark and Jane have a walk in the park every day.
How often?
 3. Mum has a rest at two o'clock every day.
What time?
 4. Simon usually has a ride on his horse on Sunday mornings.
When?
 5. Mr Jones usually has lunch with his colleagues.
Who (compl. indiretto)with?
 6. They often have a picnic in the country.
Where?

6. Leggi il testo e completa gli spazi con i verbi forniti alla *forma affermativa* del *present simple*.

work, like, go, have, meet, get up, listen, read

A DAY IN THE LIFE OF MARK THOMPSON

Mark Thompson, the author of "Ten Miles" and "Friends", 1) at five o'clock every morning and 2) a shower. He 3) breakfast at five thirty, then he 4) to his study and 5) till twelve, when he 6) lunch. Mark usually 7) back to his study to work from one till five. Sometimes he 8) his publisher to talk about his new novels. He always 9) to the news on the radio at five, and after that he 10) dinner. After dinner, he usually 11) a book or 12) to music. In his free time, Mark often 13) a bike ride along the river. Sometimes he 14) out with his friends. He usually 15) to bed at about eleven.

★ B MI PIACE ... / LIKE ...

LIKE (piacere / amare)	
soggetto + like + oggetto <i>I like apples.</i> Mi piacciono le mele.	soggetto + like + forma in -ing del verbo <i>He likes watching TV.</i> Gli piace guardare la TV.

Per la formazione della forma in **-ing**
vedi a **PAG. 93**

Anche i verbi love (amare) hate (odiare), prefer (preferire) hanno le stesse costruzioni.	<i>I love rock music.</i> Amo la musica rock.	<i>I love listening to music.</i> Amo ascoltare la musica.
	<i>She hates fish.</i> Lei odia il pesce.	<i>She hates doing the housework.</i> Lei odia fare i lavori domestici.
	<i>I prefer oranges to apples.</i> Preferisco le arance alle mele.	<i>I prefer reading to watching TV.</i> Preferisco leggere che guardare la TV.

Ricorda inoltre che like , love , hate , prefer possono essere seguiti oltre che dalla forma in -ing , anche dall' infinito con to . (vedi anche a PAG. 374)	+ forma in -ing	+ infinito
	Quando ci si riferisce ad azioni abituali/attività in generale. <i>I like reading.</i> Mi piace leggere.	Quando ci si riferisce ad una situazione particolare. Per questo motivo le forme condizionali would like , would love , would prefer richiedono sempre l' infinito . <i>I would ('d) like to read that novel.</i> Mi piacerebbe leggere quel romanzo.

PRACTICE

1. Scrivi *mini-dialoghi* utilizzando le parole fornite come nell'esempio.

➤ Maria / tea? / tea with milk

A: **Does Maria like tea?**

B: **Yes, but she doesn't like tea with milk**

1. John / coffee? / black coffee
2. Susan / music? / jazz

3. They / England? / the weather
4. You / dogs? / small dogs

2. Abbina le tre parti adeguatamente.

- | | | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Do you like rap? | A. He's all right. | a) It's my favourite. |
| 2. Do you like science fiction films? | B. Yes, I love them. | b) But I'm not crazy about him. |
| 3. Do you like Eminem? | C. Yes, I like rap. | c) I think they're brilliant. |
| 4. Do you like heavy metal? | D. No, I don't like it at all. | d) I think it's rubbish. |

1. C - a

2 ... - ...

3 ... - ...

4 ... - ...

3. Completa i *mini-dialoghi* con la forma corretta del verbo *like*.

1. A:you westerns?
B: No, I them very much.
2. A: Mary thrillers?
B: Yes, she them very much.
3. A: they classical music?
B: No, they it at all.
4. A: Susan Shakira?
B: Yes, she her a lot.

4. Completa la tabella con le tue preferenze e poi scrivi frasi come nell'esempio.

++ like very much -- not like +- prefer to	football	volleyball	basketball	tennis
Paul	++	--	-	+
Jane	-	+	++	--
Mark and Bob	++	--	+	-
You				

- *Paul likes football very much.*
He doesn't like volleyball.
He prefers tennis to basketball.
1. Jane likes
She
She
 2. Mark and Bob like
They
They prefer
 3. I like
I
I prefer

5. Scrivi frasi seguendo l'esempio. Coniuga *like* correttamente seguito dalla forma in *-ing*.

- *Mary / like / dance* ***Mary likes dancing.***
1. Paul / not like / go / to parties.
 2. They / like / live / in the country / ?
 3. I / not like / play / cards.
 4. She / like / listen / to music.

6. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

- *I prefer spending / to spend my free time with friends to playing with a computer.*
1. **Does Mary like / Would Mary like** travelling so frequently?
 2. **Do you like / Would you like** pizza? - Yes, I love it.
 3. **I would like / like** to see that film. They say it's very interesting.
 4. **Would you like / Do you like** to see a Tom Cruise film tonight?
 5. Do you think Bob **likes / would like** spending so many hours at work?

7. Completa le frasi con la forma corretta dei verbi tra parentesi (infinito o forma in *-ing*?)

1. Does she like (*listen*) to music?
2. I don't think Mr Jones likes (*travel*)
3. What would you like (*do*) tonight?
4. He prefers (*listen*) to the radio to (*watch*) TV.
5. She hates (*do*) the housework.

★ C MI OCCORRE ... / I NEED ... / I TAKE ...

NEED (occorrere / aver bisogno di)	TAKE (occorrere / volerci / impiegarci)
<p>soggetto + need + oggetto <i>I need a lawnmower</i> Ho bisogno di un tagliaerba.</p> <p>soggetto + need + infinito (con <i>to</i>) <i>I need to cut the grass.</i> Ho bisogno di tagliare l'erba.</p> <p>(Per "need" come verbo semi-modale vedi a PAG. 280)</p>	<p>soggetto + take + tempo (costruzione personale, poco frequente) <i>I take twenty minutes to get to work.</i> Io impiego venti minuti per andare al lavoro.</p> <p><i>How long do you take to get to school?</i> Quanto tempo impieghi per andare al lavoro?</p> <p>it + takes + tempo (costruzione impersonale, più frequente) <i>It takes (me) twenty minutes to get to work.</i> (Mi) ci vogliono venti minuti per andare a scuola.</p> <p><i>How long does it take (you) to get to school?</i> Quanto tempo (ti) ci vuole per andare a scuola?</p> <p>It doesn't take long. Non ci vuole molto.</p>

★ D PREPOSIZIONI DI MEZZO

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • with davanti a strumento o mezzo 	<p><i>We cut the grass with a lawnmower.</i> Tagliamo l'erba con un tagliaerba.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • by davanti a mezzo di trasporto o comunicazione <p><i>by bus by train by underground</i> <i>by boat by car by bicycle</i> <i>by plane by post by air mail</i></p> <p><i>to go by car = to drive</i> <i>to go by plane = to fly</i> <i>to go by bicycle = to cycle</i> Ma si dice: <i>to go on foot</i> = to walk <i>to go on horseback</i> = to ride a horse</p>	<p><i>They often travel by train.</i> Loro spesso viaggiano in treno. <i>It takes ten minutes by underground.</i> Ci vogliono dieci minuti con la metropolitana.</p> <p><i>I usually go to work by car.</i> (= <i>I usually drive to work.</i>) Di solito vado al lavoro in macchina.</p> <p><i>He usually goes to school on foot.</i> (= <i>He usually walks to school</i>) Lui di solito va a scuola a piedi.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • by o on davanti a <i>bus, train, plane</i> quando è specificato l'orario. 	<p><i>He goes to work by/on the 8.30 train.</i> Lui va al lavoro con il treno delle 8.30.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • on o in quando il mezzo di trasporto è specificato da un articolo, un aggettivo possessivo, un genitivo sassone, o altro. 	<p><i>in Ted's car / his car / a car</i> <i>in / on the train in / on a boat</i> <i>on a yellow bicycle</i></p>

PRACTICE

1. (a) Abbina le frasi in A alle frasi in B adeguatamente.

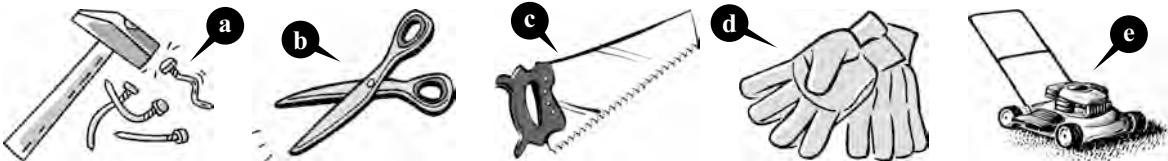
A

1. Peter needs to protect his hands.
2. Mark needs to cut the grass.
3. John needs to fix the fence.
4. Alan needs to cut the wood.
5. Paul needs to cut some paper.

B

- a) He needs a hammer and some nails.
- b) He needs a pair of scissors.
- c) He needs a saw.
- d) *He needs a pair of gloves.*
- e) He needs a lawnmower.

- 1 d
- 2 ...
- 3 ...
- 4 ...
- 5 ...



(b) Utilizza gli abbinamenti che hai ottenuto per scrivere frasi come nell'esempio.

➤ **Peter needs a pair of gloves to protect his hands.**

(c) Ora scrivi frasi utilizzando la preposizione di mezzo *with* come nell'esempio.

➤ **Peter protects his hands with a pair of gloves.**

2. Guarda la tabella e scrivi tre *mini-dialoghi* come nell'esempio.

name	Samuel	Mary	Peter	Mark
transport	train	car	tube	foot
distance	10 miles	5 miles	2 miles	half a mile
time	30 minutes	20 minutes	10 minutes	15 minutes

A: *How do you get to work, Samuel?*

B: *I usually go by train.*

A: *How far is it?*

B: *It's ten miles.*

A: *How long does it take?*

B: *It takes 30 minutes.*

3. Completa le frasi con la forma corretta di *need* o *take*.

1. I some money to buy a travel card.
2. It half an hour to get there.
3. How long do you to get to the station?
4. We some food for dinner.
5. He's got very long hair. I think he a haircut.
6. How long does it you to reach your shop?
7. She can't see very well. I think she to see an optician.
8. Does it long to make dinner?

4. Completa le frasi con le *preposizioni di mezzo* corrette (*with, by, in, on*).

1. The Chinese eat chopsticks.
2. You can wash that dress powder soap.
3. He usually goes to work his father's car.
4. We wash the dishes a dishwasher.
5. They usually go to their country house car.
6. I often go to school foot.
7. He never takes the 8.30 plane. He usually travels the 9.30 plane.
8. There is Bob. He's going to school his new red bicycle.
9. You play tennis a tennis racket and a ball.

★ E PRONOMI RIFLESSIVI E PRONOMI RECIPROCI

Forma

PRONOMI RIFLESSIVI	
singolare	plurale
myself	ourselves
yourself	yourselves
himself (maschile)	
herself (femminile)	themselves
itself (neutro)	
oneself se stesso	

- I pronomi riflessivi **singolari** terminano in **self**, quelli **plurali** terminano in **selves**.
- I pronomi riflessivi concordano con il soggetto cui si riferiscono.
He often hurts himself.
Lui spesso si fa male.
Children often hurt themselves.
I bambini spesso si fanno male.
- Oneself** è il pronomo riflessivo impersonale che segue un verbo riflessivo all'infinito. Nel dizionario infatti troverai, per esempio:
to enjoy oneself = divertirsi

Uso

I pronomi riflessivi SI USANO

- nella **coniugazione riflessiva** con alcuni verbi che esprimono
 - dolore o pericolo come:
cut oneself, hurt oneself, burn oneself, ...
 - un comportamento
enjoy oneself, amuse oneself, ...
 - un pensiero o opinione
consider oneself, count oneself ...

She often cuts herself while cooking.
Lei spesso si taglia mentre cucina.
We enjoy ourselves at parties.
Noi ci divertiamo alle feste.
He considers himself very intelligent.
Lui si considera molto intelligente.

- per dare **enfasi al soggetto** e sottolineare che un'azione viene svolta personalmente
He usually paints the house himself.
Lui di solito dipinge la casa personalmente.
- per esprimere che un'azione viene svolta "da solo/i" = **by + riflessivo**
(La costruzione **on** + agg. possessivo + **own** può essere usata con significato analogo)
Does she live by herself?
(= *Does she live on her own?*)
Abita **da sola**?
- quando l'azione espressa si riflette sul soggetto
She often makes herself a cup of tea.
Lei si fa spesso una tazza di tè.

Ricorda

queste espressioni:

to help oneself
to take care of oneself
to look after oneself
to make oneself at home

servirsi
aver cura di se stessi
badare a se stessi
fare come a casa propria

I pronomi riflessivi NON SI USANO

- con verbi riflessivi in italiano che non sono riflessivi in inglese come:
to get up to wake up to stand up to sit down to move to stop to hurry to meet * to feel to relax to forget to remember to worry to rest to take off to wonder to concentrate to apologize to congratulate to complain

She doesn't feel very well.
Non si sente molto bene.

- con verbi che sono riflessivi in italiano ma che in inglese si rendono con l'uso di **get** e **fall** come:
to get angry to get bored to get ready to get dressed to get drunk to fall in love to get washed to get worried to fall asleep
Teachers get angry when their students don't do their homework.

Gli insegnanti **si arrabbiano** quando i loro studenti non fanno i compiti.

- Alcuni verbi riflessivi in italiano che esprimono **azioni abituali** che la gente normalmente fa nei confronti di sé stessi vengono **generalmente** espressi in inglese **senza pronome riflessivo**.

Tra questi ricorda:

**to wash to dress to change
to shave to behave to hide**

He washes and shaves in a great hurry.

Lui si lava e si rade in grande fretta.

Ma si dice: *to dry oneself* asciugarsi

Ricorda: *to get washed = to wash (oneself)*
to get dressed = to dress (oneself)

- Il pronome riflessivo non è usato anche in presenza di un complemento oggetto, per lo più **parti del corpo o abbigliamento**. In questo caso si usa l'**aggettivo possessivo**.

Confronta gli esempi:

She often cuts herself when she peels onions.

Lei spesso si taglia quando pula le cipolle.

She often cuts her fingers when she peels onions.

Lei spesso si taglia le dita quando pula le cipolle.

PRONOMI RECIPROCI

each other

Rapporto di reciprocità **tra due entità**

They love each other.

Loro si amano.

one another

Relazione **tra più di due entità**

Students often help one another.

Gli studenti spesso si aiutano.

Spesso tuttavia **each other** e **one another** si usano abbastanza indifferentemente.



Attenzione!!!

Non confondere *themselves* con *each other*

The girls are looking at themselves in the mirror.

Le ragazze si stanno guardando allo specchio.

They are looking at each other.

Loro si stanno guardando.

* Ricorda

To meet è un verbo reciproco, non riflessivo. Il pronome reciproco è comunque generalmente omesso.

They usually meet at the pub.

Loro di solito **si incontrano** al pub.

PRACTICE

- Completa le frasi con i *pronomi riflessivi* corretti.

➤ *She makes all her clothes **herself**.*

- This exercise is too difficult. I can't do it by
- She likes Italian food and she often makes some pasta.
- Tom is very selfish. He only cares about
- She's looking at in the mirror.
- They are teaching how to use the new computer programmes.
- Her boyfriend wants to give her the good news.
- Stop talking to John. Talk to me, instead!
- Be a good boy. Behave
- Have a nice journey, Tom, and take care of
- Bye John, bye Pam. Look after

2. Completa le frasi con un *pronomo riflessivo* o un *aggettivo possessivo*.

1. My brother lives on own in a nice flat in the city centre.
2. My sister Jennifer lives by
3. She has just had a shower and is drying
4. Bill, can you answer the phone, please? I'm drying hair.
5. Tom is in the bathroom. He is brushing teeth.
6. The children are washing hands.
7. Be careful, Peter. You may cut chin.
8. Be careful with that knife, Freddie. You may cut
9. They're having a great time in Greece. They're really enjoying holiday.
10. We always have a good time at the seaside. We really enjoy
11. Why don't you take off coat?
12. The children are too young to look after
13. Don't play with those matches, Bob. You may burn
14. Be careful with that candle. You may burn fingers.
15. Children often scratch knees when they're playing.

3. Completa le frasi con i *pronomi riflessivi* corretti. Metti una X quando il pronomo riflessivo non è richiesto o può essere omesso.

1. I often hurt while I'm doing the housework.
2. I'm very tired and I just can't concentrate
3. He's a very bad driver. He never stops when the traffic lights are yellow.
4. I usually get up quite early.
5. Tom, Susan, help to the cakes.
6. Why don't we introduce to our new neighbours?
7. They consider quite intelligent, but I don't think they are.
8. Tom's in his bedroom. He's relaxing
9. Can Fiona wash and dress in ten minutes?
10. He's always complaining about something.
11. She often feels sad.
12. I wonder why he said that.

4. Completa le frasi con un *un pronomo riflessivo* o un *pronomo reciproco*. Metti una X quando il pronomo reciproco è generalmente omesso.

1. Some girls worry about their look. They often look at in the mirror.
2. Tom and Pamela are looking into's eyes. They must be in love.
3. Mary and Colin don't love any more.
4. John and Freddy often meet after dinner.
5. We protect from the rain with an umbrella.

5. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

➤ *Bob and Charles often argue with each other / themselves.*

1. Robert and his American friend write to **themselves / each other** every now and then.
2. I don't think students often help **one another / themselves**.
3. Brenda and Sheila are not friends. In fact they don't like **themselves / each other** at all.
4. Don't ask me for help. You must do your homework by **one another / yourselves**.
5. Bill and I live in the same street and we see **ourselves / each other** quite often.
6. Why don't you help **each other / yourselves** to the cake?

6. Completa le frasi correttamente con le parole mancanti fornite in ordine sparso.

married / angry / bored / asleep / ready / dressed / tired / drunk / in love



1. When I watch TV, I often fall



4. Brenda is getting for school



7. When she reads about politics, she gets
.....



2. Tom and Sheila are getting



5. Susan isn't ready yet. She is getting



8. They are working hard and are getting
.....



3. When she goes back home late at night, her father gets



6. They are falling
.....



9. This man often gets
.....

SENTENCE TRANSFORMATION (PET)

- 7.** Completa la seconda frase in modo che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando non più di tre parole.

1. She is always by herself. //
2. They never meet in the evening. //
3. He lives on his own. //
4. I am always by myself. //

She is always own.
They never see in the evening.
He himself.
I am always own.

Grammar and practice

- | | |
|--|--|
| A. Present continuous - Forma in <i>-ing</i> | C. Verbi di stato (verbi che non ammettono la forma progressiva) |
| B. Present simple / Present continuous | D. Costruzione con doppio accusativo |

★ A PRESENT CONTINUOUS - FORMA IN *-ING*Forma

Affermativa	soggetto + am ('m) / is ('s) / are ('re) + forma in -ing
Negativa	soggetto + am / is / are + not ('m not / isn't / aren't) + forma in -ing
Interrogativa	am / is / are + soggetto + forma in -ing
Interrogativo-negativa	isn't / aren't + soggetto + forma in -ing
Risposte brevi	Yes, soggetto + am / is / are No, soggetto + am / 'm not / isn't / aren't

They are('re) swimming. / They are not (aren't) swimming./

Are they swimming? / Aren't they swimming?

Yes, they are. / No, they aren't.

Frase	Question tag (vero? / non è vero?)
affermativa <i>They are swimming,</i> Loro stanno nuotando,	isn't / aren't + soggetto? <i>aren't they?</i> vero?
negativa <i>They aren't swimming,</i> Loro non stanno nuotando,	am / is / are + soggetto? <i>are they?</i> vero?

Uso

- Il **present continuous** si usa per parlare di: **azioni in corso di svolgimento** nel momento in cui si parla o per esprimere la temporaneità di un'azione in corso nel periodo in cui si parla.

Mary is studying at the moment.

Mary sta studiando al momento.

Susan is living at Paul's house.

Susan vive a casa di Paul. (temporaneamente)

Espressioni di tempo usate con il present continuous:

now ora

at the moment al momento

at present attualmente

these days in questi giorni

today oggi

Il **present continuous** si usa anche per parlare di **progetti/piani futuri**. (Vedi a **PAG. 216**)

They're leaving tomorrow.

Partono domani.

FORMA IN-ING

La **forma in -ing (-ing form)** si ottiene aggiungendo **-ing** alla forma base del verbo ma ricorda che in alcuni casi è necessario effettuare delle **variazioni ortografiche**.

VARIAZIONI ORTOGRAFICHE	
• nei verbi che terminano con -e muta, la e cade	<i>arrive</i> → <i>arriving</i>
• i verbi monosillabi che terminano con una sola consonante preceduta da una sola vocale raddoppiano la consonante finale	<i>stop</i> → <i>stopping</i> <i>run</i> → <i>running</i>
• i verbi bisillabi che terminano con una consonante preceduta da una sola vocale accentata raddoppiano la consonante finale	<i>begin</i> → <i>beginning</i> <i>prefer</i> → <i>preferring</i>
• i verbi che terminano in -l preceduta da una sola vocale raddoppiano la l	<i>travel</i> → <i>travelling</i>
• i verbi che terminano in -y mantengono la y ed aggiungono -ing	<i>study</i> → <i>studying</i> <i>play</i> → <i>playing</i>
• i verbi che terminano in -ie costruiscono la -ing form come segue:	<i>die</i> → <i>dying</i> <i>lie</i> → <i>lying</i> .

PRACTICE

- 1.** Costruisci la *forma in -ing* dei seguenti verbi.

➤ stop	stopping	6. develop	12. stay
1. sit	7. cry	13. boil
2. die	8. go	14. travel
3. ride	9. give	15. reply
4. enjoy	10. win	16. cut
5. begin	11. plan	17. leave

- 2.** Uno studente distratto ha costruito la *forma in -ing* in modo errato. Riscrivila in modo corretto.

➤ putting	putting	4. lieying	8. readding
1. swiming	5. dieying	9. haveing
2. studing	6. dryng	10. developping
3. signaling	7. runing	11. writeing

- 3.** Completa le frasi con la forma affermativa del *present continuous* dei verbi tra parentesi.

➤ *Mark (study) is studying in his room.*

1. They (*go*) to the station. 2. John (*play*) the piano now. 3. Jenny (*sit*) on the sofa. 4. They (*wear*) jeans. 5. The porter (*carry*) two heavy cases. 6. Alan (*dry*) his hair.

- 4.** Trasforma le frasi dell'esercizio precedente alla *forma negativa, interrogativa e interrogativo-negativa*.

➤ *Mark is studying in his room.*

Mark isn't studying in his room.

Is Mark studying in his room?

Isn't Mark studying in his room?

5. Rispondi con *risposte brevi*.

- *Are you doing your homework?* - Yes, **I am**.
1. Is he eating his breakfast? - No, ...
2. Are they helping you? - Yes, ...
3. Is she putting the children to bed? - Yes, ...
4. Are you and your brother watching TV? - No, ...
5. Is Mum making dinner? - Yes, ...
6. Are you having lunch? - Yes, ...
-

6. Aggiungi in coda a ciascuna frase la *question tag* corretta.

- *James is making a phone call now, isn't he?*
1. She's eating a lot these days,?
2. David isn't writing a new novel at present,?
3. Mark and Paul aren't playing video games again,?
4. You're studying for the Pet exam,?
5. We're having a good time,?
6. Gary's still sleeping,?

7. Completa la descrizione del quadro con i verbi tra parentesi alla *forma affermativa del present continuous*.



The painting *Peasant Wedding* was painted by Peter Brueghel in 1568. The scene takes place in the dining room of a country inn.

In the foreground, on the right, there are two waiters. They 1) (*carry*) dishes of food. On the left there are two other men. One of them 2) (*pour*) wine or beer into some jugs. The other 3) (*wear*) an enormous cap. He 4) (*lick*) his fingers.

There are also two musicians. They 5) (*play*) their

bagpipes in the middle of the room. A guest 6) (*sit*) on a bench and next to him we can see a dog.

In the background we can see the bride, the bridegroom and a lot of guests. They 7) (*sit*) at the tables and all of them 8) (*enjoy*) the feast.

8. Costruisci frasi utilizzando le parole fornite, come nell'esempio.

- *I / watch TV // I / read a book I'm not watching TV. I'm reading a book.*
1. Sheila / paint the kitchen // She / paint her bedroom
2. They / look after the children // They / play cards
3. Nick / water the flowers // He / cut the grass
4. Jane / get up // She / sleep
5. They / play football // They / watch a football match on TV

9. Scrivi mini-dialoghi usando i suggerimenti forniti come nell'esempio.

➤ Susan / David / have a shower

A: Hello David! Susan here.

B: Oh, hello, Susan.

A: Er ... are you busy? Am I ringing at a bad time?

B: Well, yes, actually. I'm having a shower.

A: Oh, sorry. I'll ring back later.

1. Robert / Mark / have a bath

2. Mary / Martha / write an important letter

3. Paul / Barbara / paint the kitchen

4. Peter / Pamela / put the children to bed

10. Leggi la cartolina e rispondi alle domande, come nell'esempio.

28 th Dec. 20...

Dear Tony,

Greetings from Australia.

We're at the beach at the moment. The weather is fantastic.

The sun is shining and it's quite hot. I'm writing postcards.

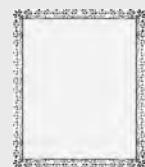
Susan is swimming. Mark is windsurfing. Mary and Bob are lying in the sun.

We're having a great time.

See you soon.

Love,

Betty



Tony Parker
25 Carlton Road
Coventry
Great Britain

➤ Is it raining? - No, it isn't. The sun is shining.

1. Are these people having a holiday in Italy?
2. Is Betty swimming?
3. Is Mark playing the guitar?
4. Is Susan sunbathing?
5. Are Mary and Bob writing postcards?
6. Are they getting bored?

11. Un gruppo di studenti sta trascorrendo alcuni giorni a Parigi. Leggi il programma di un giorno e rispondi alle domande seguendo gli esempi.

➤ It's 8.30 am.. Are the students still in bed? - No, they aren't. They're having breakfast.

➤ It's 9.45 am. What are the students doing? - They're visiting the Louvre.

7.30 am
8.00 - 8.30 am
9.30 - 12.00 am
12.30 - 1.30 pm
2.00 - 4.00 pm

5.00 - 6.00 pm
7.00 - 8.00 pm
9.00 p.m.

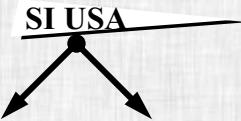
11.00 p.m.

everybody out of bed
breakfast
visit the Louvre
lunch in a restaurant
shopping at the
Galleries La Fayette
boat trip on the Seine
dinner at the hotel
games in the hotel
lounge
everybody in bed

1. It's 12.40 pm. Are the students having lunch at the hotel?
2. It's 2.40 pm. Are the students having a boat trip on the Seine?
3. It's 5.30 pm. What are the students doing?
4. It's 7.45 pm. Where are the students having dinner?
5. It's 9.10 pm. Are the students playing games in the hotel lounge?
6. It's 11.00 pm. Where are the students going?

★ B PRESENT SIMPLE / PRESENT CONTINUOUS

Il **presente indicativo italiano** si rende in inglese con il **present simple** o con il **present continuous**. Confronta il **diverso uso** dei due tempi verbali.



PRESENT SIMPLE	PRESENT CONTINUOUS
per parlare di: • azioni abituali o ripetute, fatti sempre veri, o situazioni permanenti <i>I usually get up early.</i> Di solito mi alzo presto. <i>I live in Milan.</i> Vivo a Milano. (abitualmente)	per parlare di: • azioni in corso di svolgimento nel momento in cui si parla o per azioni temporanee in corso nel periodo in cui si parla <i>I'm getting up.</i> Mi sto alzando. <i>I'm living in a hotel at the moment.</i> Vivo in un albergo al momento. (temporaneamente)



Il **present continuous** NON SI USA con alcune categorie di verbi che non ammettono la forma progressiva (**verbi di stato**). Vedi paragrafo successivo.

★ C VERBI DI STATO (verbi che non ammettono la forma progressiva)

La **forma progressiva** (o **continua**) indica sempre un'attività, un processo in corso di svolgimento, e pertanto **si usa solo con verbi che esprimono azioni**. Di norma **non si usa con i verbi di stato**, che esprimono:

- | | |
|--|---|
| • opinione, pensiero, attività mentale:
believe, know, think, understand, remember, suppose, imagine, realise, ... | • caratteristiche più o meno stabili come:
appear, seem, be, consist of, depend on, mean, cost, weigh, ... |
| • emozione, sentimento o volontà:
love, like, dislike, hate, prefer, wish, want, need, ... | • percezione involontaria
see, hear, smell, taste, ...
(con i verbi di percezione involontaria si usa spesso <i>can</i>)
<i>I can't hear you.</i>
Non ti sento/Non riesco a sentirti. |



Alcuni **verbi di stato** a volte possono essere usati con significato diverso ed esprimere quindi un'azione o un processo in fase di svolgimento. In questo caso ammettono la forma progressiva. **Confronta gli esempi:**

have (= avere, possedere) <i>I have a brother and a sister.</i> Ho un fratello e una sorella.	have in frasi idiomatiche. (Vedi a PAG. 82) <i>I'm having lunch.</i> Sto pranzando.
think (= credere, ritenere) <i>I think he is a nice person.</i> Penso che lui sia una brava persona.	think (= considerare, pensare) <i>I'm thinking about my future career.</i> Sto pensando alla mia carriera futura.
smell (= odorare, puzzare) <i>This cake smells good.</i> Questa torta ha un buon profumo.	smell (= annusare) <i>She is smelling the perfume of the flowers.</i> Lei sta annusando il profumo dei fiori.
see (= vedere) <i>I can see children playing.</i> Vedo dei bambini giocare.	see (= incontrare) <i>We are seeing our friends quite often these days.</i> Stiamo vedendo/incontrando i nostri amici piuttosto spesso in questi giorni.
be (= essere) <i>Tom is a bit rude.</i> Tom è un po' maleducato.	be (= comportarsi) <i>Tom is being rude.</i> Tom si sta comportando in modo maleducato.

PRACTICE

1. Indica quali frasi esprimono un'azione abituale (AA) e quali frasi esprimono un'azione in corso di svolgimento (AC)

➤ *Mr Benson is a doctor and he is treating a patient at the moment.* (AC)

1. Kate is in the garden. She is mowing the lawn. (....)
2. I read the newspaper every day. (....)
3. We never lie in the sun for hours. (....)
4. A lot of people are waiting for the bus. (....)
5. She receives a lot of presents at Christmas. (....)
6. Mark often phones Mary after dinner. (....)

2. Completa le frasi con il *present simple* o il *present continuous* dei verbi tra parentesi nella forma corretta.

➤ *Mr Cooper is in the garden. He (repair) is repairing the gate.*

➤ *Mary (cycle) cycles to work every day.*

1. Where are your friends? - They (*play*) cards in the sitting room.
2. Look! It (*snow*)
3. It usually (*rain*) a lot at this time of year.
4. Hello, Peter. What (*you / do*) here?
5. What (*you / do*) , Barbara? - I (*have*) dinner.
6. They are busy now. They (*study*) English for the Pet exam.
7. What (*he / do*) ? - He's a student.
8. Pat (*not / smoke*) at the moment.
9. Peter and Mary (*look for*) a house. At the moment they (*live*) with their parents.
10. Pamela's parents are abroad, so she (*stay*) with her grandparents.

3. Guarda le immagini e scrivi frasi come nell'esempio.

➤ ***Mr Bowen usually teaches Maths but today he is grading tests.***

USUALLY

- *Mr Bowen / teach / Maths*



1. Robert / do / his homework



2. Mr and Mrs Fox / cycle / to work



3. Mrs Clark / do / the ironing



**TODAY
(Saturday)**

He / grade / tests



He / listen / to music



They / take / a taxi to the station



She / read / a book



4. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

➤ ***Why are you looking / do you look at me?***

1. We always **have** / **are having** lunch at the factory canteen.
2. This spaghetti **tastes** / **is tasting** good.
3. The cook is in the kitchen. He **tastes** / **is tasting** the meat at the moment.
4. What **are you thinking** / **do you think** of your job? **Are you liking** / **Do you like** it ?
5. Mm, this cake **smells** / **is smelling** good.
6. Jane **doesn't know** / **isn't knowing** my phone number.
7. I'm **hating** / **hate** listening to music.
8. Sorry. I **don't understand** / **'m not understanding** what you **say** / **are saying**.

5. Completa le frasi con il *present simple* o il *present continuous* dei verbi tra parentesi nella forma corretta.

1. You look unhappy. What (*you / think*) about?
2. It (*be*) 8 o'clock. Bob usually (*get up*) 7.30, but today *he (still / sleep)* in bed because *he (have)* got flu.
3. They (*have*) a big new car and a big house. I (*think*) they are very rich.
4. (*Michael / like*) jazz? - Oh, yes. He (*love*) it.
5. What (*you / think*) of Paul? - *I (think)* he's a nice person.
6. (*Mary / have*) a good time in Mallorca? - Yes, I (*think*) so.
7. Is Alan a friend of yours? - Alan? No, I (*not / know*) him.
8. I (*want*) to phone Mary but I (*not / remember*) her phone number.
9. Mary is in the garden. She (*smell*) the perfume of the flowers.
10. Hello, Bob. This is Mark. (*I / disturb*) you? - No, you aren't. We (*just / watch*) TV.

- 6.** Completa il dialogo con la forma corretta dei verbi tra parentesi (*present simple* o *present continuous*).

Situazione: Mary e Sarah sono vecchie compagne di scuola e si incontrano per caso dopo qualche anno dalla fine della scuola a Parigi nei pressi della stazione ferroviaria.

M: Sarah! You're Sarah, aren't you?
S: Yes,--- Mary!! What a surprise!! What **1)** (*you / do*) here? You **2)** (*live*) in London, don't you?
M: Yes, that's right. I **3)** (*have*) a week's holiday here.
S: Oh, are you?
M: You see, I **4)** (*have*) got some friends here in Paris and I **5)** (*stay*) with them.
S: Lucky you! I'm here for work.
M: What **6)** (*you / do*)?
S: Well --- I'm the manageress of a chain of shops which sell clothes and underwear.
M: That's interesting. And what **7)** (*you / do*) here?
S: I **8)** (*visit*) one of the most important fashion fairs. You know, Paris is one of the capital cities for fashion and I **9)** (*want*) to see the new trends.
M: But you **10)** (*live*) in London, don't you?
S: Yes, that's right. At the moment I **11)** (*live*) not far from Peter Dodson. **12)** (*you / remember*) him? Our old schoolmate?
M: Oh, yes, I **13)** (*remember*) him. How is he?
S: I **14)** (*not / see*) him very often, but I think he's fine. He's getting married next month.
M: Oh, is he? That's great! What about you? Are you married?
S: No, I'm not.
M: Neither am I. I **15)** (*have*) got a boyfriend.
S: Oh, dear! It's late. I must go. Why **16)** (*you / not / come*) and see me in London some day? Here's my card with my new address and phone number.
M: Yes, I will. Well ---- Look after yourself and don't work too hard.
S: You too. Have a nice holiday. Bye, Mary.
M: Thanks. Bye, Sarah!

- 7.** Rispondi alle domande sul dialogo.

1. What is Mary doing in Paris?
2. Who's Mary staying with in Paris?
3. What does Sarah do?
4. What is Sarah doing in Paris?
5. What does she want to see?
6. Does Sarah live in London?
7. Where is she living at the moment?
8. Does Mary remember Peter Dodson?
9. Does Sarah often see Peter Dodson?
10. Does Sarah invite Mary to visit her?

★ D COSTRUZIONE CON DOPPIO ACCUSATIVO (oggetto indiretto e diretto)

Alcuni verbi quando sono seguiti da un complemento oggetto e da un complemento indiretto - di termine (introdotto dalla preposizione **to**) e di vantaggio (introdotto dalla preposizione **for**) - possono avere **2 costruzioni**: la **costruzione base** e la **costruzione con doppio accusativo**.

Tra questi ricorda:

- alcuni verbi (solitamente seguiti da **to**) come: **ask, bring, give, lend, offer, pass, promise, sell, send, show, teach, take**
- alcuni verbi (solitamente seguiti da **for**) come: **buy, pay, make, find, get, carry, order, leave, cook**

1 Costruzione base	2 Costruzione con doppio accusativo
verbo + compl.oggetto + to / for + compl. indiretto <i>Tom is giving a bunch of flowers to Mary.</i> <i>Tom is giving a bunch of flowers to her.</i> <i>Tom is giving it to Mary.</i> <i>Tom is giving it to her.</i> Questa costruzione si usa <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • quando si vuole enfatizzare la persona a cui o per cui si compie un'azione; • quando il complemento oggetto è un pronome personale (it o them). 	verbo + compl.indiretto + compl. oggetto <i>Tom is giving Mary a bunch of flowers.</i> <i>Tom is giving her a bunch of flowers.</i> <i>NO: Tom is giving Mary it.</i> <i>NO: Tom is giving her it.</i> Questa costruzione non è possibile <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • quando il complemento oggetto è un pronome personale (it o them) o ambedue i complementi sono pronomi personali.

Alcuni verbi ammettono **solo la costruzione base** e pertanto non sono mai seguiti dal doppio accusativo.

Tra questi ricorda:
confess, describe, explain, dictate, introduce, reply, repeat, report, say

Why don't you introduce your boyfriend to your parents?
 Perché non presenti il tuo ragazzo ai tuoi genitori?
Why don't you introduce him to them?
 Perché non glielo presenti?

PRACTICE

1. Riscrivi le frasi come negli esempi.

➤ *They often lend some money to John.*
They often lend John some money.

1. I never send SMSs to her.
2. He rarely buys presents for his girlfriend.
3. Why don't we make a cake for Pamela?
4. Why don't you tell a story to the children?
5. My grandparents often bring sweets to me.

➤ *I often lend my dictionary to him.*
I often lend him my dictionary.

6. Dad always gives pocket money to Peter on Saturdays.
7. He never offers a drink to his friends.
8. Susan wants to buy a souvenir for me in New York.
9. What about telling the truth to them?
10. Can you pass that book to me, please?

2. Riscrivi le frasi utilizzando la costruzione con il *doppio accusativo* quando è possibile. Metti una *X* quando non è possibile.

- (a) *Why don't we give this CD to Bill?* → ***Why don't we give Bill this CD?***
(b) *Why don't you give it to Bill?* → ***X***
1. (a) Can you show the kitchen to her?
(b) Can you show it to Jane?
2. (a) Pass it to Mary, please.
(b) Pass the salt to Mary, please.
3. (a) Can you give them to Peter?
(b) Can you give those books to Peter?
4. (a) She's offering it to him.
(b) She's offering a cup of tea to Jack.
5. (a) Can you show those posters to me?
(b) Can you show them to me?
6. (a) Tell the truth to her.
(b) Tell it to your mother.

3. Riscrivi le frasi utilizzando la *costruzione base* e le preposizioni *to o for* correttamente.

- *Can you get Mark a pint of beer?* ***Can you get a pint of beer for Mark?***
1. Can you find her a seat?
2. Can you show me those photos?
3. Can you buy me a sandwich?
4. Can you lend me your umbrella?

4. Scrivi *mini-dialoghi* utilizzando le parole fornite, come nell'esempio.

- *Susan's birthday / a box of chocolates / a bunch of flowers*
A: It's Susan's birthday soon. Why don't we give her a box of chocolates?
B: No, not a box of chocolates. Why don't we give her a bunch of flowers, instead?
A: Good idea!

1. Tom's birthday / a DVD / a CD
2. Mr and Mrs Pitt's anniversary / a bottle of Italian wine / a bottle of champagne
3. The twins' birthday / some new toys / some pocket money
4. Sheila's birthday / a bottle of perfume / some make-up

5. Decidi quali frasi sono corrette (C) e quali contengono un errore (W). Riscrivi correttamente le frasi sbagliate.

- *Why don't you confess me the truth? (W)* ***Why don't you confess the truth to me?***
1. Can you explain me that grammar rule again, please? (...)
2. Describe your brother to me. What does he look like? (...)
3. Why don't you send her a postcard from Paris? (...)
4. Can you deliver Mr Parket this parcel? (...)
5. When she sends me SMSs, I reply her by e-mail. (...)
6. Please, Susan, make a cup of tea for Mr Clark! (...)
7. Mrs Sway tells to his grandchildren a story every night. (...)
8. Tom always introduces his new friends to his parents. (...)

6. Riordina le parole per costruire frasi di senso compiuto.

- *often / he / play station / his / lends / me* ***He often lends me his play station.***
1. always / he / me / from abroad / presents / brings
2. me / ordering / he / a cup of coffee / is / for / ?
3. to buy / Mr Sullivan / his daughter / a / new PC / wants
4. don't / give / why / you / this note / Andrew / ?
5. him / Glenda / a question / is / asking
6. a hand / never / she / her mother / in the kitchen / gives

Grammar and practice

- A. Molto - Quanto?
 B. Un po' / Poco / Alcuni / Pochi
 C. Troppo

- D. Abbastanza (*enough*)
 E. Piuttosto (*quite / rather*)

★ A MOLTO - QUANTO?

◆ Per parlare di **quantità elevata (molto/i)** si usa:

a lot (of)	in frase affermativa <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • con sostantivi singolari non numerabili <i>They've got a lot of money.</i> Loro hanno molto danaro. • con sostantivi plurali <i>She's got a lot of friends.</i> Lei ha molti amici.
much	in frase interrogativa e negativa <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • con sostantivi singolari non numerabili <i>Have they got much money?</i> Hanno molto danaro? <i>They haven't got much money.</i> Loro non hanno molto danaro.
many	in frase interrogativa e negativa <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • con sostantivi plurali <i>Has she got many friends?</i> Lei ha molti amici? <i>She hasn't got many friends.</i> Lei non ha molti amici.

Così tanto / così tanti
 si rendono in inglese con
so much / so many.

Espressioni alternative

lots of	} con tutti i sostantivi (singolari e plurali)	<i>lots of money, lots of friends</i>
plenty of		<i>plenty of money, plenty of friends</i>
a great deal of - con sostantivi singolari non numerabili		<i>a great deal of money</i>
a large number of - con sostantivi plurali		<i>a large number of friends</i>

◆ Molto con aggettivi e avverbi

very	<i>Susan is a very good dancer.</i> Susan è una ballerina molto brava. <i>Susan dances very well.</i> Susan balla molto bene.
-------------	--

◆ Molto dopo un verbo

very much / a lot	in frase affermativa <i>I like him very much / a lot.</i> Lui mi piace molto.
very much / much	in frase interrogativa e negativa <i>Do you like him very much / much?</i> Lui ti piace molto? <i>I don't like him much / very much.</i> Lui non mi piace molto.

Dopo i verbi **to rain, to study, to try, to work** è preferibile usare l'avverbio **hard** (duramente)

He's working hard to get a pay rise.

Sta lavorando molto/duramente per ottenere un aumento di stipendio.

◆ Per fare **domande sulla quantità** si usa:

How much...? quanto/a...?	• con sostantivi singolari <i>How much petrol have you got?</i> Quanta benzina hai?	How many...? quanti/e...?	• con sostantivi plurali <i>How many people are there?</i> Quante persone ci sono?
-------------------------------------	--	-------------------------------------	---

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi con uno degli aggettivi forniti preceduto da *very*.

slow / easy / expensive / pretty / difficult / successful / comfortable

➤ *I think Maths is **very difficult** but it's interesting.*

1. This sofa is old but it's
2. My town is a bit far away, but it's to reach thanks to a good bus service.
3. My car is old and I think I should buy a new one.
4. Melanie is She's got big blue eyes and a nice smile.
5. This dress is very beautiful, but it's too.
6. Leonardo di Caprio is a film star.

2. Trasforma le seguenti frasi in *forma interrogativa* e poi in *forma negativa*.

➤ *There are a lot of people at the cinema.*
There aren't many people at the cinema.

Are there many people at the cinema?

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. There is a lot of sugar in my coffee. | 6. Ged has got a lot of presents for his birthday. |
| 2. They've got a lot of friends. | 7. There are a lot of pubs in this area. |
| 3. We've got a lot of meat. | 8. Mrs Sullivan has got a lot of work to do. |
| 4. There's a lot of traffic in this town. | |
| 5. There are a lot of eggs in this cake. | |

3. Scrivi *mini-dialoghi* usando *much, many, a lot* come negli esempi.

➤ *Jane / cousins*

A: Has Jane got many cousins?

B: No, she hasn't got many.

C: Yes, she has! She's got a lot!

➤ *Your school / equipment*

A: Has your school got much equipment?

B: No, it hasn't got much.

C: Yes, it has. It's got a lot!

1. You / CDs
2. They / time for their interests
3. She / hobbies

4. Your sister / things to do
5. He / luggage to carry
6. Their house / rooms

4. Completa le frasi con *much, many, a lot of, very, very much*.

1. Her children haven't got toys.
2. I haven't got time.
3. We've got eggs but we haven't got sugar.
4. Are there books in this library?

5. Is that book interesting?
6. I like this film
7. This computer is useful.
8. There are so things to do.

5. Completa le domande con *How much* o *How many*.

➤ *How much luggage has Peter got?*

1. children have they got?
2. classrooms are there in your school?
3. traffic is there in your town?

4. water is there in an adult human body?
5. grams are there in a kilo?
6. students are there in your class?

★ B UN PO' / POCO / ALCUNI / POCHI

◆ Per parlare di **quantità ridotta** si usa:

a little (= <i>some</i>) un po'	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> con sostantivi singolari non numerabili <p><i>There's a little cheese.</i> C'è un po' di formaggio.</p>	a little e a few indicano quantità ridotta, ma sufficiente little e few indicano quantità ridotta e non sufficiente
little (= <i>not much</i>) poco/a	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> con sostantivi plurali <p><i>There's little cheese.</i> C'è poco formaggio.</p>	Così poco / così pochi si rendono con so little / so few
a few (= <i>some</i>) alcuni/e	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> con sostantivi plurali <p><i>There are a few oranges.</i> Ci sono alcune arance.</p>	a bit (of) può essere usato in alternativa a a little . Entrambi possono essere seguiti da aggettivo <i>I'm a little / a bit bored.</i> Sono un po' annoiato.
few (= <i>not many</i>) pochi/e	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> con sostantivi plurali <p><i>There are few oranges.</i> Ci sono poche arance.</p>	

◆ Poco con aggettivi

Forma negativa del verbo + **very** + aggettivo

Bob isn't very lucky.

Bob è poco fortunato/non è molto fortunato.

◆ Poco dopo un verbo

Forma negativa del verbo + **much** + verbo

Mary doesn't study much.

Mary studia poco/non studia molto.

★ C TROPPO

◆ Per parlare di **quantità eccessiva (troppo/i)** si usa:

too much	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> con sostantivi singolari non numerabili <p><i>There is too much traffic.</i> C'è troppo traffico.</p>
too many	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> con i sostantivi plurali <p><i>There are too many shops.</i> Ci sono troppi negozi.</p>

◆ Troppo con aggettivi e avverbi

too

This suitcase is too heavy.
Questa valigia è troppo pesante.

It's too late!
È troppo tardi!

◆ Troppo dopo un verbo

too much

He earns too much.
Guadagna troppo.

Troppo poco / troppo pochi si rende con **too little / too few**

There's too little salt in this soup.
C'è troppo poco sale in questa zuppa.

There are too few car parks in this town.
Ci sono troppo pochi parcheggi in questa città.

PRACTICE

1. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

1. **A few / Few** tourists visit that town because it isn't very interesting.
2. We've got **a little / little** money left so we can't go to the theatre.
3. We've got **a little / little** money left so we can go and eat a pizza.
4. There are **few / a few** people that I like more than Pamela.

2. Scrivi *mini-dialoghi* usando *a little* o *a few*, come negli esempi.

- A: *Would you like some beer?*
B: *Yes, please, but just a little.*
- A: *Would you like some strawberries?*
B: *Yes, please, but just a few.*

1. cherries? 2. bread? 3. coffee? 4. sugar? 5. oranges? 6. tomatoes?

3. Completa le frasi con *a little*, *a few*.

1. There is butter on the toast.
2. There are only cars in the square.
3. There is food left.
4. There is petrol in the tank.
5. There are tickets left.
6. There are only pubs in my town.

4. Completa le frasi con *little* o *few*.

1. We've got very coffee. Can you buy some?
2. We've got very bananas. Can you buy some?
3. She's got very money. She's quite poor.
4. They've got very rooms. Their house is quite small.
5. There are very students at school today.
6. There's very flour. It's not enough to make a cake

5. Trasforma le frasi date alla forma affermativa utilizzando *little* o *few* come nell'esempio.

- *There aren't many workers in that factory.* ***There are few workers in that factory.***
1. There isn't much work today.
 2. There aren't many mistakes in your test.
 3. There isn't much wine left.
 4. We haven't got many friends.
 5. We haven't got much petrol.
 6. There aren't many visitors today.

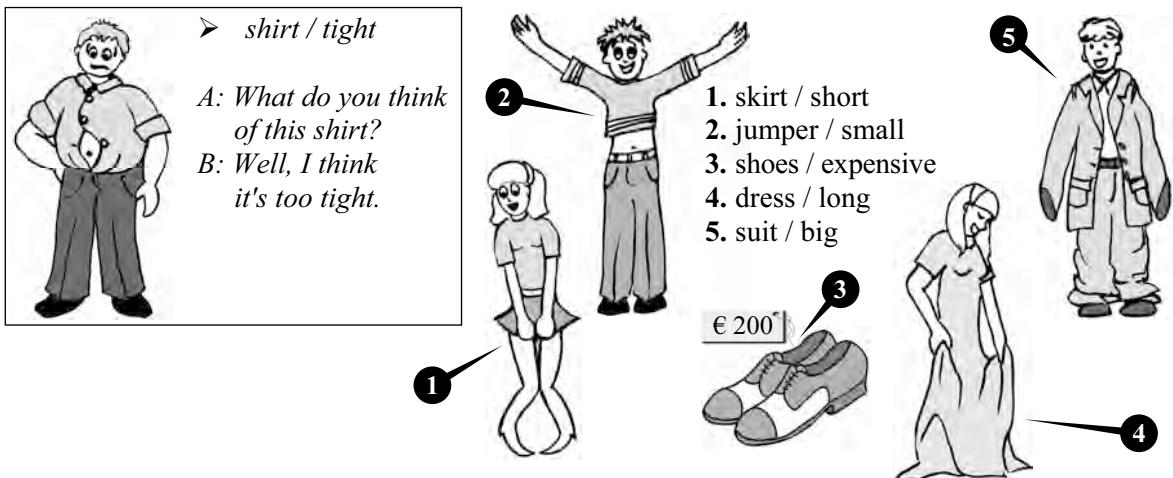
6. Completa le frasi adeguatamente con *little*, *a little*, *few*, *a few*.

1. Jennifer is going to spend a week in London. She's got friends there.
2. I'm a bit bored because I've got to do.
3. I don't like living in this little village because there are so attractions.
4. We rarely go out for dinner because there are so good restaurants in this area.
5. We've got so money that we can't go to the concert.
6. Can I have some wine? - Yes, but just

SENTENCE TRANSFORMATION (PET)

7. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando non più di tre parole.
- *There's little homework today.*
 - 1. We haven't got much money.
We
money.
 - 2. There's some cheese left.
There
cheese left.
 - 3. I'm doing some technical translations for a German company.
I'm doing
technical translations for a German company.
 - 4. There are a few tickets left.
There
tickets left.
- There isn't much homework today.*
- 5. There isn't much entertainment in my town.
There's
my town.
 - 6. He's a bit bored at the moment.
He's
at the moment.
 - 7. Dad is a little tired. Don't disturb him.
Dad is
Don't disturb him.
 - 8. The campsite hasn't got many car parking spaces.
There are
spaces in the campsite.

8. Osserva le immagini e scrivi *mini-dialoghi* usando le parole fornite come nell'esempio.



9. Abbina le parole in A con le parole in B e scrivi frasi complete come nell'esempio.

➤ *He's too short to play basketball.*

A	B	
1. He / short	a) to go on holiday without their parents	1 c
2. They / young	b) to go out without a coat on	2 ...
3. It / cold	c) to play basketball	3 ...
4. It / early	d) to get there on time	4 ...
5. It / late	e) to go on foot	5 ...
6. It / far	f) to go to bed	6 ...

10. Completa le frasi con *too, too much, too many*.

1. There are people at the conference.
2. He is old for you.
3. There is butter in this cake.
4. There is homework to do.
5. It's cold this evening. Let's go out tomorrow evening.
6. There are desks in this classroom.
7. He's short to play basketball.
8. There is spaghetti on the plate.
9. He is a bad driver and he drives fast.
10. There is sugar in my tea.
11. I like Florence but there are tourists.
12. He speaks slowly.
13. They're young to get married.
14. It's windy to go for a walk.
15. He spends

11. Completa le frasi con *too much, too many, too little, too few*.

➤ *My tea is too sweet. There's **too much** sugar in it.*

1. My coffee is bitter. There's sugar in it.
2. This office is understaffed. There are people working here.
3. This beach is overcrowded. There are people on this beach.
4. You are overweight. You eat sweet things or fats.
5. This house is small. There are rooms in it.
6. This soup is salty. There's salt in it.

12. Completa il dialogo con le battute fornite in ordine sparso.

A: Good morning. Can I help you?
B: (1)
A: Yes, of course.
B: (2)
A: Certainly. What size are you?
B: (3)
A: Then you want a Medium. They come in Small, Medium and Large.
B: (4)
A: Certainly. Here you are. ... It suits you.
B: (5)
A: £40.50.
B: (6)

- (a) Size 12. I think.
(b) How much does it cost?
(c) It's nice but it's too big. Can you give me a Small size, please?
(d) It's too expensive. Haven't you got anything cheaper ?
(e) They're nice. Can I try a black one on?
(f) Good morning. Can I have a look at those sweaters?

★ D ABBASTANZA (*enough*)

ENOUGH rende l'italiano abbastanza con il significato di a sufficienza / sufficientemente Osserva la sua posizione nella frase.	• precede i sostantivi	<i>We haven't got enough time.</i> Non abbiamo abbastanza tempo.
	• segue aggettivi	<i>He isn't old enough to go to the disco.</i> Lui non è abbastanza grande per andare in discoteca.
	avverbi	<i>He doesn't play well enough.</i> Non gioca abbastanza bene.
	verbi	<i>You don't practise enough.</i> Non ti eserciti abbastanza.

Ricorda:

It's too cold to go for a walk.
=
It isn't warm enough to go for a walk.

★ E PIUTTOSTO (*quite / rather*)

QUITE e RATHER rendono l'italiano piuttosto con il significato di alquanto/ abbastanza	• precedono sempre un aggettivo o un avverbio	<i>Uncle John is quite/rather old.</i> Lo zio John è piuttosto vecchio.
	un avverbio	<i>We meet our friends quite/rather often.</i> Incontriamo i nostri amici piuttosto spesso.

Confronta:

very + aggettivo o avverbio	95%	<i>I can cook very well.</i>
quite + aggettivo o avverbio	70%	<i>She can cook quite well.</i>
not very + aggettivo o avverbio	40%	<i>He can cook, but not very well.</i>

Quite assume il significato di **completamente/totalmente** con alcuni aggettivi come:

right, wrong, different, impossible, safe

You're quite right. He's dishonest. / Hai totalmente ragione. Lui è disonesto.

PRACTICE

1. Riscrivi le frasi usando *not ... enough*, come nell'esempio.

➤ *The car is too small. (big)* ***The car isn't big enough.***

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. It is too cold. (<i>warm</i>) | 3. The music is too quiet. (<i>loud</i>) |
| 2. These trousers are too short. (<i>long</i>) | 4. You're too young to drive. (<i>old</i>) |

2. Completa le frasi usando le parole tra parentesi ed inserendo *enough* al posto giusto.

➤ *Tom is not (tall) tall enough to play basketball.*

1. Mary is not (*strong*) to walk for so many miles.
2. The driver in car 2 isn't driving (*fast*) to win the race.
3. I'm sorry, but we haven't got (*eggs*) to make a big omelette.
4. Is the recipe (*clear*) to make a good meat sauce?
5. Is Susan dancing (*well*) to win the competition?
6. Have we got (*sugar*) to make a cake?

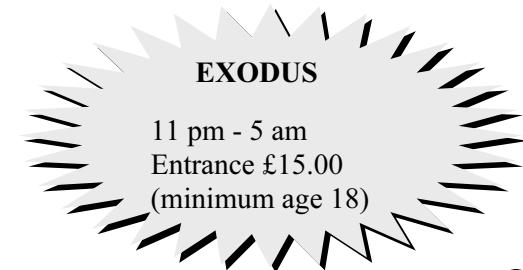
3. Riscrivi le frasi usando *enough* inserito al posto giusto.

➤ *We haven't got much food.*

We haven't got enough food.

1. We haven't got much petrol.
2. There aren't many apples.
3. There isn't much sugar.
4. It isn't very good.
5. These books aren't very interesting.
6. These shoes aren't very cheap.
7. He doesn't run very fast.
8. They don't speak English very well.

4. Leggi l'insegna e la ricetta e completa i testi usando le parole tra parentesi e *enough* nella posizione corretta.



Mary and Bob would like to go to the disco.
Bob is 19 and Mary is 17 years old. Bob is **1) (old)** but Mary isn't
2) (old) to go to the disco.
Besides, they haven't got **3) (money)**
..... for the tickets.

DANISH POTATO SALAD

Ingredients (for 6 people)

1 kg potatoes	1/2 tbsp. lemon juice
3 onions	chopped parsley
2 dl. mayonnaise	salt and pepper

time: 30 minutes

Susan and Jennifer have invited some friends to supper. They would like to make a Danish potato salad. They've got **4) (potatoes)** They've also got
5) (onions) , parsley, lemon juice, salt and pepper but they haven't got **6) (mayonnaise)** Besides, it's too late. The guests will be there in ten minutes. There isn't **7) (time)** Maybe they should buy something at the Chinese Take Away next door.

5. Scegli l'alternativa corretta.

➤ *We haven't got A to drive to London.*

A enough petrol

B petrol enough

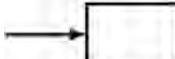
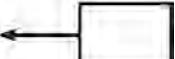
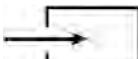
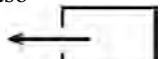
1. Have you got ... or would you like some more? *A enough pasta* *B pasta enough*
2. I haven't got ... to finish the test. *A time enough* *B enough time*
3. You're ... right. She's a clever girl. *A enough* *B quite*
4. Your eyes are ... different from mine. *A quite* *B rather*
5. This exercise is ... difficult. *A enough* *B quite*
6. This dress is ... cheap. *A rather* *B enough*
7. I'm afraid you're ... wrong! *A rather* *B quite*
8. You don't study ...! *A quite* *B enough*
9. We haven't got ... for the tickets. *A money enough* *B enough money*
10. He can't see ... *A enough clearly* *B clearly enough*

SENTENCE TRANSFORMATION (PET)

6. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che mantenga lo stesso significato della prima, usando non più di tre parole.

1. She is too short to reach the bottle on the top shelf.
She isn't reach the bottle on the top shelf.
2. There are too few eggs to make a cake.
We haven't got to make a cake.
3. Mark is too young to go on holiday on his own.
Mark isn't to go on holiday on his own.

★ A PREPOSIZIONI DI MOTO

Moto a luogo		Moto da luogo	
to	esprime movimento verso un luogo 	from	esprime la provenienza da un luogo o l'origine 
into	esprime l'entrare in un luogo chiuso 	out of	esprime l'uscire da un luogo chiuso 

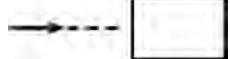
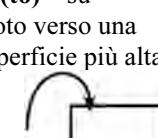
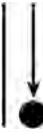
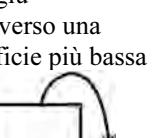
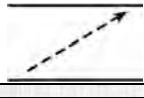
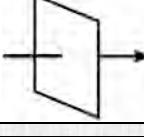
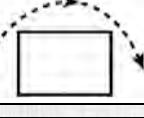
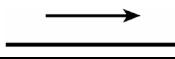
Attenzione!!!

La parola **home**, che indica la propria abitazione, non è mai preceduta da **to**

to go home andare a casa

Ma si dice: *to go to Tom's house*
andare a casa di Tom.

Altre preposizioni di moto

towards verso avvicinamento 	as far as fino a raggiungimento 	away (from) via (da) allontanamento 	
up su moto verso l'alto 	on(to) su moto verso una superficie più alta 	down giù moto verso il basso 	off giù moto verso una superficie più bassa 
across attraverso attraversamento di una superficie aperta/da un lato all'altro 	through attraverso attraversamento di un luogo tridimensionale, verticale o di una barriera 	over sopra moto sopra qualcosa/da un lato all'altro 	past oltre moto da un lato all'altro di qualcosa 
along lungo moto lineare lungo una strada, fiume, ecc. 	around/round attorno moto circolare attorno a qualcosa 		

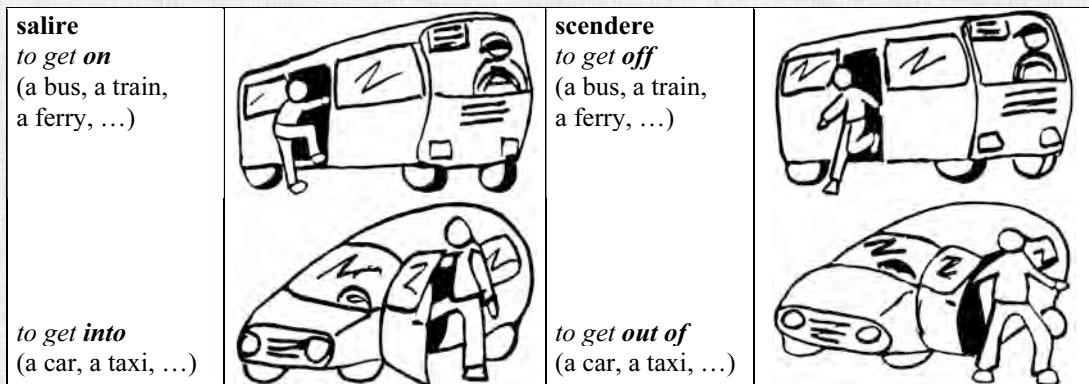
Le preposizioni di moto seguono verbi che esprimono movimento.

★ B VERBI DI MOVIMENTO

Tra i principali verbi di movimento ricorda:

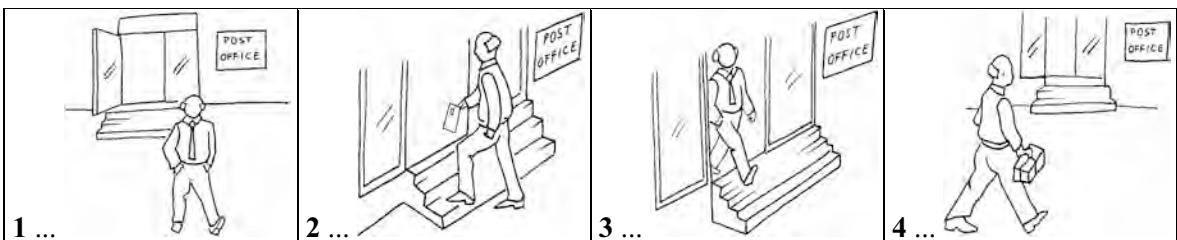
andare	<i>to go</i>	venire	<i>to come</i>
andare a piedi	<i>to walk (= to go on foot)</i>		
andare in macchina	<i>to drive (= to go by car)</i>		
andare in bicicletta	<i>to cycle (= to go by bicycle)</i>		
andare con l'aereo	<i>to fly (= to go by plane)</i>	atterrare decollare	<i>to land</i> <i>to take off</i>
entrare	<i>to go/come in</i> <i>to go/come into (+ luogo)</i> <i>to enter (senza preposizione)</i>	uscire	<i>to go/come out</i> <i>to go/come out of (+ luogo)</i> <i>to leave home</i>
partire	<i>to leave (for)</i>	ritornare	<i>to go/come back (from/to)</i> <i>to return (from/to)</i>
arrivare	<i>to arrive (at/in)</i> Attenzione!!! Il verbo <i>arrive</i> è seguito da preposizioni di stato in luogo	raggiungere	<i>to get (to)</i> <i>to reach (senza preposizione)</i>
viaggiare	<i>to travel</i>	correre	<i>to run</i>

Salire e scendere da un mezzo di trasporto



PRACTICE

1. Abbina le frasi alle immagini.



- (a) Mr Gorman is coming from the post office.
- (b) Mr Gorman is going to the post office.
- (c) Mr Gorman is coming out of the post office.
- (d) Mr Gorman is going into the post office.

2. Inserisci correttamente *to* o *into*.

- *I often fly **to** New York for work.*
1. Look! That's Peter. He's just going that shop.
 2. In August they usually go Spain on holiday.
 3. Can you see Bill and Jane over there? They're just going the bank.
 4. We go the theatre very often.
 5. We often eat out. We usually go an Italian restaurant.
-

3. Inserisci correttamente *from* o *out of*.

- *Where do you come **from**? - Madrid. I'm Spanish.*
1. Oh! Hello, Bob! Where are you coming
 2. Look! That's John over there! Can you see him? He's just coming the bank.
 3. Jane lives in Cambridge. She drives Cambridge to London every day.
 4. Mr Sway is Boston but he lives in San Diego.
 5. Those are my children. They're just coming school.
-

4. Completa le frasi con la *preposizione* corretta, scegliendo tra le preposizioni fornite. In un caso nessuna preposizione è richiesta.

for / in / to / away / as far as / - / towards / out

- *Who's that man coming **towards** us?*
1. Walk the traffic lights then turn right.
 2. They are leaving Scotland tomorrow.
 3. Oh, hello John! Come
 4. Dad, can I go this evening? - No, you can't.
 5. My grandparents arrived yesterday. They're going tomorrow.
 6. I'd like to go home and go bed.
-

5. Completa le frasi con la *preposizione* corretta, scegliendo tra le preposizioni fornite.

to / into(x2) / up / up to / onto / off (x2) / on / out of / down to / at

- *He lives in Scotland but he wants to move **down to** London to find a better job.*
1. The cat is climbing the tree because there's a dog chasing it.
 2. Peter works in the south of England but next month he's moving the north.
 3. When you arrive the station, get bus 15 , in front of the station, and get at the fourth stop.
 4. Come on, Jane! Hurry up! We must leave. Get the car.
 5. Look! That's Michael. He's just getting that taxi over there.
 6. The cat is jumping the table. He wants to eat the cake.
 7. Look! That man is falling the ladder!
 8. When she is in a hurry, she gets a taxi which drives her work.
-

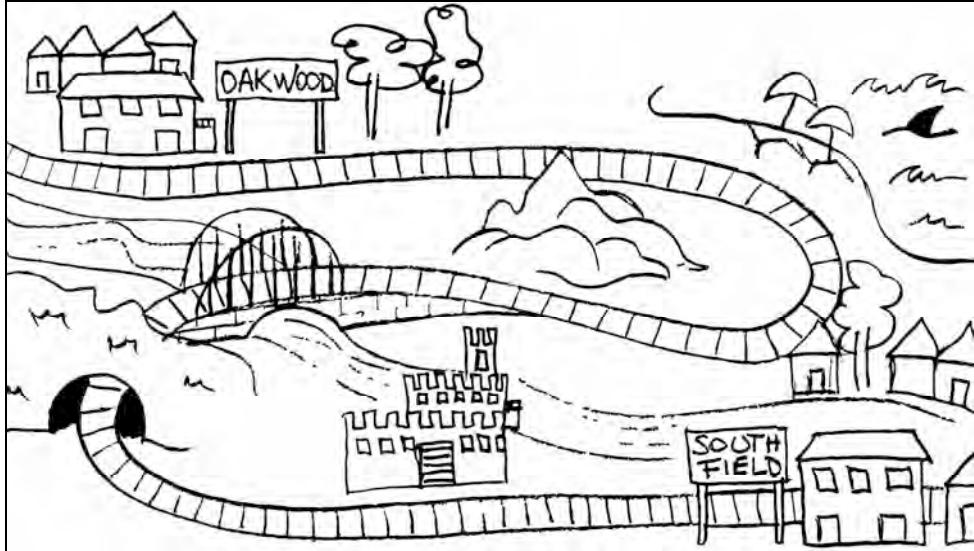
6. Sottolinea la preposizione corretta.

- *It takes a lot of time to drive **through** / **across** the whole country.*

1. She's so fat that she has problems walking **through** / **across** the door.
2. She's swimming **across** / **over** the river.
3. Walk **over** / **past** the church. The supermarket is just there, on your right.
4. Some people are dancing **along** / **around** a fire.
5. Bob is jumping **across** / **over** the gate.
6. They're driving **across** / **over** the desert.
7. Tom is jogging **along** / **across** the river.
8. She flies all **over** / **through** Europe every week.

7. Leggi la pagina di diario che Lucy ha scritto dopo la sua visita a Southfield e completala adeguatamente con le preposizioni fornite. In un caso nessuna preposizione è richiesta.

towards (x2)
into
on
through /
over
past
off
along
round



Dear diary,

I think Southfield is a really nice place to visit. There are some very interesting things to see and you can also enjoy a railway trip to Oakwood. You get 1) the train at the little station in Southfield. First the train runs 2) a castle, then it goes 3) a tunnel. It takes a few minutes to go 4) the tunnel, then the train goes 5) the river and runs 6) the coast. It runs 7) the coast for a few miles. At one point you can see some rocks on the left. After the rocks, the train turns left again and travels inland 8) Oakwood. You get 9) at Oakwood station and you can enjoy a pleasant walk 10) Oakwood, a traditional English village, with old little houses and narrow streets. I must tell my friends about Southfield and Oakwood when I return 11) home.

8. Completa le frasi adeguatamente con i verbi forniti nella forma corretta.

to drive / to go back / to take off / to get / to land / to arrive / to reach / to leave / to travel

➤ Can you tell me how **to get** to the station from here?

1. The plane to New York just now.
2. Susan doesn't want to Glasgow immediately. She wants to stay with us a bit longer.
3. They want the top of the hill.
4. Phone me when you at the airport.
5. I usually home at 7.45, then I catch the bus to school.
6. The plane from London just now. It is on time.
7. His dream is to around the world.
8. Mum usually me to school in her car.

★ C IMPERATIVO 2a PERSONA SINGOLARE E PLURALE

Forma

Affermativa	forma base del verbo <i>Turn right.</i> Gira a destra.
Negativa	do not (don't) + forma base del verbo <i>Don't turn left.</i> Non girare a sinistra.

Uso

L'imperativo di 2a persona singolare e plurale si usa per:

• impartire ordini	<i>Sit down.</i> Siediti
• impartire regole e divieti	<i>Don't swim in this river.</i> Non nuotate in questo fiume.
• dare istruzioni	<i>Insert the battery.</i> Inserire la batteria.
• dare indicazioni stradali	<i>Walk down this road.</i> Vada giù per questa strada.
• dare consigli	<i>Put on a pullover.</i> Mettiti un maglione.
• fare raccomandazioni	<i>Remember/Don't forget to call me.</i> Ricordati/Non dimenticare di telefonarmi.
• fare richieste	<i>Pass me the salt, will you?</i> Passami il sale, vuoi?
• fare inviti	<i>Come and see me one day.</i> Vieni a trovarmi un giorno.
• fare un augurio	<i>Have a nice holiday.</i> Fai una buona vacanza.

Chiedere e dare indicazioni stradali

A

Excuse me, how do I get to the museum?

Can you tell me the way to the museum, please?

Can you tell me how to reach the museum, please?

Thank you very much.

B

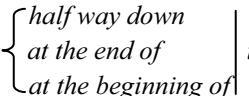
Go/Walk/Drive down ... as far as the

*junction
pedestrian crossing
traffic lights
roundabout
crossroads*

Turn left/right into ...

Cross over ...

Take the first/second turning on your left/right

The museum is  *the street, on the left/right*

You won't miss it. / You can't miss it.

You're welcome.

PRACTICE

1. Trasforma le seguenti frasi all'*imperativo negativo*.

➤ *Close the door.* ***Don't close the door.***

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Phone Mary. | 4. Switch off the light. |
| 2. Give Bob some money. | 5. Turn on the radio. |
| 3. Listen to him. | 6. Go out! |

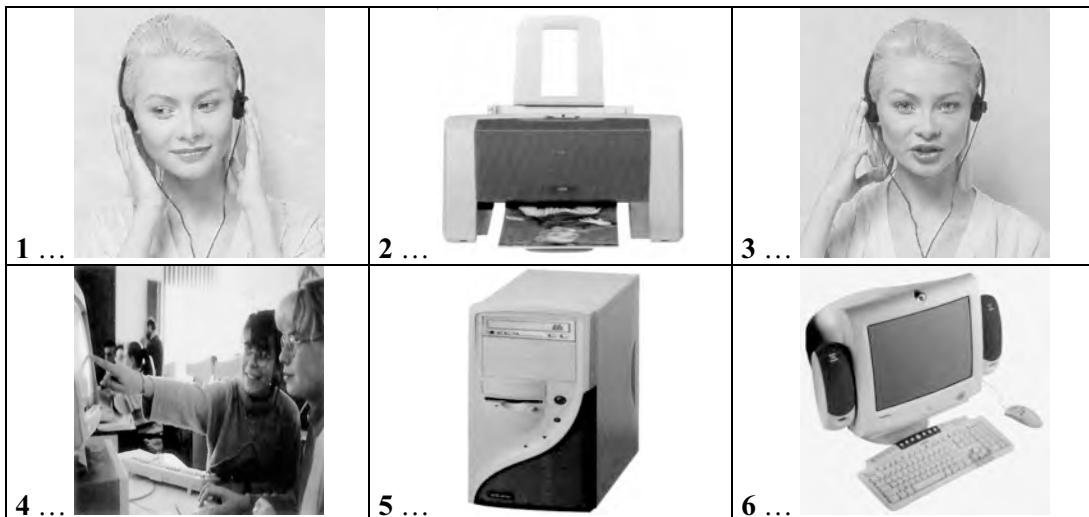
2. Abbina ciascuna frase al luogo dove può essere udita o letta.

1. *Do not lean out of the window.*
2. *Look left.*
3. *Fasten your seat belts.*
4. *Don't smoke.*
5. *Queue this side.*
6. *Do not feed the animals.*
7. *Listen and repeat.*

- a) At the doctor's
- b) In a train
- c) On a road
- d) At the bus stop
- e) On a plane
- f) In a language laboratory
- g) In a zoo.

1	b
2	...
3	...
4	...
5	...
6	...
7	...

3. Abbina alle immagini le istruzioni che vengono normalmente impartite a scuola.



- a) Repeat what you hear. b) Work in pairs. c) Insert the CD-Rom. d) Turn on the computer.
 e) Turn off the printer. f) Listen to the dialogue.

4. La madre di Jennifer ha lasciato un messaggio sul tavolo prima di uscire. Completalo con l'imperativo affermativo o negativo dei verbi forniti in ordine sparso.

feed / eat / make / wash / go / do

Jennifer,

I'll be back late so please

- | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1) <i>your homework</i> | 4) <i>too much</i> |
| 2) <i>the cat</i> | 5) <i>too many</i> |
| | <i>phonecalls</i> |
| 3) <i>the dishes</i> | 6) <i>to bed early</i> |

Love,

Mum

5. Completa le seguenti frasi con l'imperativo affermativo o negativo dei verbi tra parentesi.

➤ (play) **Don't play** with matches. You can burn yourself.

1. (study) your lesson first, then you can go out. 2. (be) late for dinner!

3. (remember) to send me a postcard. 4. (forget) to buy a souvenir for

Mary. 5. (have) a nice journey! 6. (put) some salt in the boiling water.

7. Hello, Pamela. (come) in and (take) a seat.

6. Completa le seguenti frasi su che cosa fare e non fare durante un'escursione, con l'imperativo affermativo o negativo dei verbi tra parentesi.

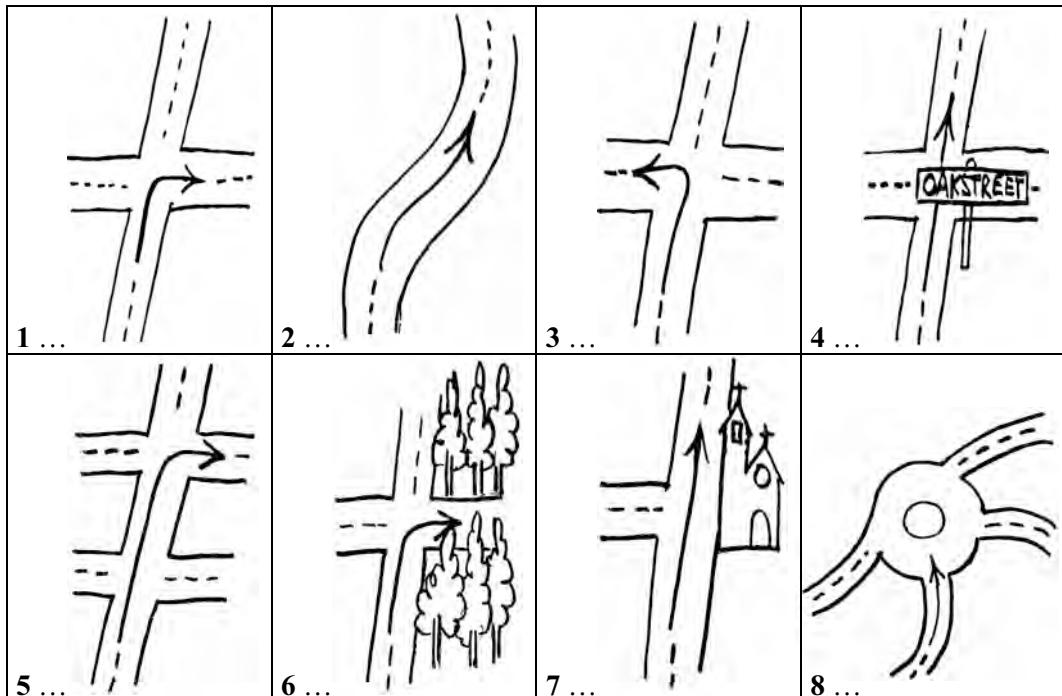
➤ (wear) **Wear** comfortable shoes.

1. (carry) a map. 2. (leave) litter around. 3. (start)

..... a fire in the woods. 4. (take) warm clothes. 5. (disturb)

..... animals. 6. (pick) flowers.

7. Abbina le indicazioni stradali alle immagini.



- a) Go on until you reach the roundabout
- b) Go along this road
- c) Turn right
- d) Turn left into Oak Street
- e) Cross Oak Street
- f) Go past the church
- g) Walk through the park
- h) Take the second on your right

8. Guarda le immagini e completa le risposte alle richieste di indicazioni stradali utilizzando le espressioni fornite in ordine sparso.

a) *Excuse me. Can you tell me the way to the Odeon Cinema?*

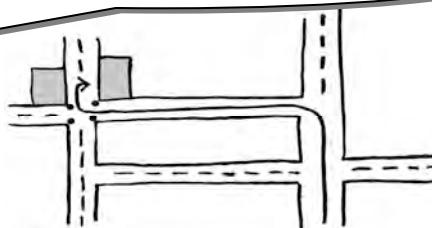
turn right
cross
on your right
go down



1) Go down this road and
2) Market Street.
Then 3) into Birch Street. The Odeon is
4) just past the museum.

b) *Excuse me. How do I get to the Indian restaurant?*

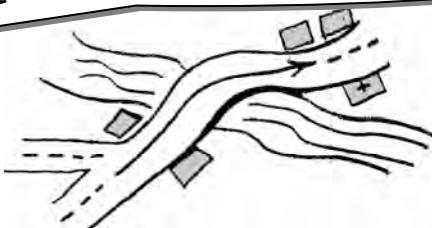
turn right
on your right
walk down
take the second



1) this road and 2) on your left. Walk as far as the traffic lights then 3)
The Indian restaurant is 4) just opposite the Auditorium.

c) *Excuse me. Can you tell me how to reach the Cathedral?*

on your right
cross
go past



Go down this road.
1) the pub and
2) the bridge.
The Cathedral is immediately after the bridge, 3)

9. Completa il dialogo adeguatamente con le battute fornite in ordine sparso.

- A: Excuse me?
B: (1)?
A: Can you tell me the way to the Auditorium?
B: (2)?
A: Yes, that's right. How far is it?
B: (3)
A: Yes, I can see it.
B: (4)
A: Left before the roundabout.
B: (5)
A: Thank you very much.
B: (6)

- a) That's right. The Auditorium is on your right. It's near a church. You can't miss it.
b) Oh, it isn't very far ... ten minutes. Now, we're here. Mount Park Road is over there. Go along this road as far as the junction.
c) The Auditorium in Mount Park Road?
d) You're welcome.
e) Turn right there, then left into the first street before you get to the roundabout.
f) f) Yes? Can I help you?

Grammar and practice

- | | |
|---|--|
| A. Uso dell'articolo determinativo <i>the</i> | C. Uso dell'articolo determinativo <i>the</i> con nomi propri di luogo |
| B. Uso dell'articolo determinativo <i>the</i> con luoghi geografici e punti cardinali | D. Uso dell'articolo indeterminativo <i>a/an</i> |
| | E. Esclamazioni |

★ A USO DELL'ARTICOLO DETERMINATIVO THE

Regola generale L'articolo determinativo THE	
SI USA davanti a: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> sostantivi singolari e plurali usati in senso definito, cioè con riferimento a qualcosa di noto o specificato dal contesto. <i>Can you pass me the sugar?</i> Mi puoi passare lo zucchero? (si tratta dello zucchero che è sul tavolo) 	NON SI USA davanti a : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> tutti i sostantivi usati in senso generico, cioè con riferimento a qualcosa di generale. <i>Sugar is bad for your teeth.</i> Lo zucchero fa male ai denti. (si tratta dello zucchero in generale)

inoltre	
SI USA davanti a: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> cognomi al plurale per indicare la famiglia <i>the Browns, the Smiths, ...</i> cariche e titoli senza nome proprio <i>the Prince, the President, ...</i> nomi di popoli <i>the English, the Americans, ...</i> categorie di persone <i>the poor, the rich, the young, the old, ...</i> nomi collettivi/istituzioni <i>the Police, the Law, the Church, ...</i> 	NON SI USA davanti a: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> nomi propri di persone <i>Tom, Tom Brown, ...</i> cariche e titoli seguiti da nome proprio <i>Prince Edward, Mr Brown, ...</i> nomi di parentela <i>uncle John, aunt Mary, ...</i> categorie di persone (con la parola <i>people</i>) <i>poor/rich/young/old people</i>

inoltre	
SI USA davanti a: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> nomi come: <i>the radio, the Internet/Net...</i> nomi di strumenti musicali (dopo <i>play</i>) <i>to play the piano/trumpet/violin, ...</i> nomi di quotidiani <i>The "Daily Express", the "Financial Times", ...</i> le lingue (seguite dalla parola <i>language</i>) <i>the German/English language, ...</i> nomi che esprimono entità uniche <i>the earth, the moon, the sun, the universe, the world, the sky, the environment, the air, the wind, ...</i> numeri ordinali <i>the first, the second, the third, ...</i> parti del giorno <i>in the morning/afternoon/evening</i> 	NON SI USA davanti a: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> il sostantivo <i>television/TV</i> (dopo <i>watch</i>) nomi di sport e giochi <i>to play cards/basketball/tennis/...</i> nomi di periodici e riviste <i>"Time", "Time Out", ...</i> le lingue (non seguite dalla parola <i>language</i>) <i>German, French, ...</i> le materie scolastiche, i colori, i pasti <i>Blue is my favourite colour. History is my favourite subject. Dinner's ready!</i> numeri cardinali preceduti da <i>number, page, picture, room, ...</i> <i>This room is number 201.</i> parti del giorno <i>at midday, at noon, at midnight, at night</i>

inoltre	
<p>SI USA davanti a:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • nomi di locali di un'abitazione <i>the sitting room, the dining room, ...</i> • nomi di negozi, di luoghi di svago e di lavoro: <i>the baker's, the butcher's, the cinema, the office, ... (to go to the office)</i> • alle parole: <i>sea(side), country(side), mountains, city</i> <i>They are at the seaside.</i> • alle parole: <i>school, bed, college, court,</i> <i>church, hospital, prison,</i> <i>university, holiday</i> - con riferimento al luogo <p><i>I'm going to the hospital to visit my mother.</i> Sto andando in ospedale a trovare mia madre.</p>	<p>NON SI USA davanti a:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>home</i> (<i>to be at home / to go home</i>) • <i>work</i> come luogo di lavoro (<i>to be at work / to go to work</i>) • <i>sea</i> se si intende "essere in mare aperto" "andar per mare" <i>He spent many years at sea.</i> • alle parole: <i>school, bed, college, court,</i> <i>church, hospital, prison,</i> <i>university, holiday</i> - con riferimento alla funzione specifica in essi svolta e non al luogo <i>She's still in hospital after the operation.</i> Lei è ancora in ospedale dopo l'operazione.

<p>Con le malattie si può usare o omettere l'articolo <i>the</i>:</p> <p><i>flu / the flu</i> l'influenza <i>misles / the misles</i> il morbillo <i>mumps / the mumps</i> gli orecchioni</p> <p>Ma si dice: <i>He's got pneumonia.</i> Lui ha la polmonite.</p>	<p>Ma si dice: a temperature, a cold, a sore throat, a stomachache, ...</p> <p>(Vedi a PAG. 37)</p>
--	--

PRACTICE

- Inserisci l'articolo determinativo *the* dove è richiesto. Metti una X se non è richiesto.
(Rifletti: i sostantivi sono usati in senso definito o in senso generico?)
- *X Cats are domestic animals.*
 ➤ *The cat sitting on that chair has got a broken leg.*
- Can you pass me salt, please?
 - salt can be dangerous for your blood pressure.
 - Sometimes teachers are very demanding.
 - teacher is telling students to pay attention.
 - I don't usually like cakes, but cakes you make are delicious.
 - Tessa doesn't like coffee, but she likes tea.
 - shoes cost a lot!
 - black shoes are under bed.
 - Where are children?
 - children usually love fizzy drinks, chocolate and cakes.

2. Inserisci l'articolo determinativo *the* dove è richiesto. Metti una X dove non è richiesto.

➤ *The Smiths are on X holiday.*

1. Mr and Mrs Brown are at cinema with their children.
2. uncle Frank is very old. old often feel lonely.
3. Where's Princess? - She's in garden.
4. Queen isn't in London these days.
5. police have just arrested the thief.
6. young people usually like listening to music.
7. Where's President? - He's in his study.
8. Queen Elizabeth has got four children.
9. French are usually very proud. What are Italians like?
10. Sullivans are playing cards.

3. Inserisci l'articolo determinativo *the* dove è richiesto. Metti una X dove non è richiesto.

1. Tom and Mary are watching television. Bob is listening to radio.
2. My parents often play tennis on Saturday afternoons.
3. I think German language is very difficult. English is much easier.
4. Tom is very ill. I think he's got pneumonia.
5. cricket is a popular sport in Great Britain.
6. Maths is my favourite subject. What's yours?
7. There's a lot of poverty in world.
8. This room is number 230.
9. Is sea smooth today?
10. Today Tom is reading a newspaper, " Independent", I think.
11. On Saturdays he usually reads a magazine, like "Time out".
12. Peter likes surfing Net.
13. blue is my favourite colour. What's yours?
14. The exercise is on page 220.
15. breakfast's ready!

4. Inserisci l'articolo determinativo *the* dove è richiesto. Metti una X dove non è richiesto.

1. John is in dining room. . He's having lunch.
2. Tom is at gym. He's playing basketball.
3. Mr Kuzmin is a musician. He plays violin.
4. Mark and Alan are at work, but Jane is at home. She's ill in bed.
5. We haven't got any meat. Can you go to butcher's?
6. Smiths are on holiday in mountains.
7. Why don't we go to seaside on Sunday?
8. Why don't we go to cinema tonight? - No, not to cinema again! Why don't we go to theatre, instead?
9. environment is in danger. What can we do to save it from pollution?
10. Tom isn't at home. Where's he? - I think he's at club.
11. He always goes to bed late at night and gets up early in morning.

5. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

➤ *Mary is still in the hospital / hospital after the operation.*

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. I'm going to hospital / the hospital to visit my wife. | 4. Paul Sutton is in prison / the prison now. He robbed a bank. |
| 2. She often goes to church / the church on Sunday mornings. | 5. Your coat is on the bed / bed . |
| 3. Let's meet in front of the church / church . | 6. Paul is still in the bed / bed . |

★ **B** USO DELL'ARTICOLO DETERMINATIVO *THE*
CON LUOGHI GEOGRAFICI E PUNTI CARDINALI

L'articolo determinativo THE	
SI USA davanti a: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> nomi di fiumi, canali, mari e oceani <i>the Po, the Suez Canal, the Pacific Ocean, ...</i> nomi di catene montuose e deserti <i>the Alps, the Sahara Desert, ...</i> nomi di arcipelaghi, gruppi di isole (al plurale) <i>the Seychelles, the Maldives, the Shilly Isles, the Shetlands, ...</i> nomi di stato plurali <i>The Netherlands, ...</i> nomi di stato che contengono le parole <i>republic, kingdom, states</i> <i>The Republic of Ireland, The United Kingdom, The United States</i> 	NON SI USA davanti a: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> nomi di laghi <i>Loch Ness, Lake Garda, ...</i> nomi di montagne singolari <i>Mount Everest, Mont Blanc, ...</i> nomi di isole singolari <i>Sicily, Sardinia, ...</i> Ma si dice: <i>the Isle of Wight, the Isle of Man, ...</i> nomi di stato singolari, continenti, regioni, città <i>Italy, Europe, Sussex, Paris, London, ...</i>

inoltre

SI USA davanti ai punti cardinali	NON SI USA davanti ai punti cardinali
south, north, east, west <ul style="list-style-type: none"> quando si intende all'interno di un luogo <i>They live in the north of Italy.</i> Abitano nel nord d'Italia. 	south, north, east, west <ul style="list-style-type: none"> quando si intende al di fuori di un luogo <i>They live north of Manchester.</i> Abitano a nord di Manchester. quando il punto cardinale è parte integrante del nome di una regione: <i>North Wales, South Italy, ...</i> <i>Mount Snowdon is in North Wales.</i> Il Monte Snowdon è nel Galles del Nord.



★ **C** USO DELL'ARTICOLO DETERMINATIVO *THE*
CON NOMI PROPRI DI LUOGHI

L'articolo determinativo THE	
SI USA davanti a nomi propri di: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> musei, gallerie, monumenti <i>The National Gallery, ...</i> teatri, cinema <i>The Odeon, the Cinecentre, ...</i> alberghi, ristoranti <i>The Hilton Hotel, ...</i> 	NON SI USA davanti a nomi propri di: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> aeroporti, stazioni <i>Gatwick Airport, Union Station, ...</i> castelli, chiese, cattedrali, palazzi <i>Windsor Castle, ...</i> strade, piazze, ponti, università, parchi <i>Oxford Street, Trafalgar Square, Cambridge University, Regent's Park Westminster Bridge, ...</i> Ma si dice: <i>the Bridge of Sights, the Bridge of Severn, the Golden Gate</i>

PRACTICE

1. Inserisci l'articolo determinativo *the* dove è richiesto. Metti una X dove non è richiesto.

- *The English Channel is between X Great Britain and X France.*
1. They're from Australia, not from United Kingdom.
 2. Rocky Mountains are in United States.
 3. Po flows into Adriatic Sea.
 4. Mincio flows out of Lake Garda.
 5. Loch Ness is famous for its monster, Nessie.
 6. Apennines are a chain of mountains that runs from ... north to south of Italy.
 7. They live in a small village south of Milan, a big city in north of Italy.
 8. Great Britain is a big island which includes three countries: England,..... Scotland and Wales.
 9. British Isles are a group of islands which includes two big islands, Great Britain, Ireland, and about one thousand small islands.
 10. We often go on holiday to Lipari islands, in Tyrrhenian Sea, but I'd like to go to Sardinia this year.
 11. Mount Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
 12. Suez Canal is 60 metres wide, 10.4 metres long deep and 161 kilometres long.
 13. The distance from Rome to Sydney is 16,395 kilometres.
 14. Nile is the longest river in the world. It's in Africa.
 15. Prague is the capital of Czech Republic.

2. Correggi l'errore contenuto in ciascuna frase.

- *British Museum is famous all over the world.*
The British Museum is famous all over the world.

1. They live in Gordon Road, near the Lady Godiva Square.
2. All the rooms at Boscolo Hotel are very comfortable.
3. Why don't we go to the cinema? There's a good film on at Odeon.
4. The Tower Bridge is in London. It is also called London Bridge.
5. The Buckingham Palace is the residence of the monarch.
6. The Harvard University is one of the most prestigious universities in the United States.
7. Archeological Museum is closed on Mondays.
8. They're going to the Maldives. They're leaving from the Heathrow Airport.
9. If you go to London, go to the Trafalgar Square where you can see Nelson's Column.
10. It is dangerous to go to the Central Park at night.

3. Completa il testo sul Galles con l'articolo determinativo *the*, dove è richiesto. Metti una X dove non è richiesto.

WALES: Most of 1) Wales is mountainous. 2) highest peak is 3) Mount Snowdon (1,085 m), in 4) North Wales. 5) Snowdonia National Park covers part of 6)..... North Wales, but it extends mainly in 7) Mid Wales, where it merges with 8) Cumbrian Mountains. In 9) Mid Wales 10) mountains gradually sweep down towards 11) Cardigan Bay, which is full of 12) fishing centres and 13) resorts. 14) South Wales is a land of contrasts: 15) mountains in 16) mainland, 17) beaches, 18) bays and 19) coves along 20) coast, 21) busy industrial areas around 22) Cardiff, 23) capital of 24) Wales, in 25) South-East.



★ D USO DELL'ARTICOLO INDETERMINATIVO A/AN

L'artico indeterminativo A/AN	
SI USA <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • davanti a sostantivi singolari numerabili • davanti alle professioni • dopo <i>as</i> • davanti a parti del corpo (singolari) • davanti ad alcuni malesseri • in espressioni come: <i>to have a shower/a bath</i> • in alcune espressioni di frequenza • in espressioni di peso • nelle esclamazioni con sostantivi singolari numerabili (vedi PAG. 125) 	<i>Have you got a car/an orange/...?</i> <i>He's a doctor/an architect/...</i> <i>I work as a secretary in a bank.</i> <i>She's got a long nose.</i> <i>Tom's got a cold/headache/temperature/...</i> <i>Before going to bed, I have a shower.</i> <i>We go to the cinema once/twice a month.</i> <i>It costs two euros a kilo.</i> <i>What a (beautiful) day!</i>
NON SI USA <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • davanti a sostantivi singolari non numerabili 	<i>petrol, money, flour, wine, water, coffee, tea, beer, ...</i>

N.B. Si può tuttavia dire:

a tea, a coffee, a beer

intendendo: *a cup of tea, a cup of coffee, a glass of beer*

Ma non si dice: *a wine, a water, ...*

Ricorda: *a glass/bottle/litre/pint of ...* (vedi PAG. 42)

A/AN - THE : contrasto

Oltre a tutti i casi considerati fino ad ora **ricorda anche che:**

A/AN	THE
SI USA davanti a sostantivi singolari numerabili non menzionati in precedenza	SI USA davanti a sostantivi singolari e plurali menzionati in precedenza

There is a dog and a cat in the picture.

The dog is barking and the cat is climbing up a tree.
 Ci sono un cane e un gatto nel quadro.

Il cane sta abbaiando e il gatto sta arrampicandosi su per un albero.



PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi con *a/an* o *the*.

- *I bought a painting and a poster. My wife likes the painting but she doesn't like the poster.*
1. Why don't we make cake? children have already eaten cake you made yesterday.
2. I've got two new books. English book is good, but Science book isn't.
3. I have chair and armchair in my bedroom. armchair is comfortable, but chair isn't.
4. Peter is drawing picture. There's house and dog. house is white and dog is black.

- 2.** Completa le frasi con *a/an* o *the*. Metti una *X* quando nessun articolo è richiesto.
- Sheila's making **a** cake for **the** Sullivans' wedding anniversary.
 1. Why don't you buy David T-shirt? - He likes T-shirts.
 2. Browns live in small town near London.
 3. Bob, there's phonecall for you. - I'm having shower. Can you answer for me, please?
 4. Can you give me knife, please? I need sharp knife. The one I've got is blunt.
 5. I can't speak English, but I want to attend course and next summer I want to go to England.
 6. There's nice park next to Gorman Road. Its name is Warren Park.
 7. Mary has got doll with blue eyes and long fair hair.
 8. I'd like ham sandwich and cup of coffee, please.
 9. coffee and two cokes, please.
 10. There's letter for you. postman put it under door.
 11. Alan is studying Maths at the moment. He's taking examination next week.
 12. soccer is very popular sport.
 13. I don't think Terry is good-looking. He's got long nose.
 14. He's watching documentary film on television.
 15. Have glass of wine. red wine is good for your health.
 16. Pamela works as teacher at Hamilton Comprehensive School.

- 3.** Completa il testo su Stratford-upon-Avon con *a/an* o *the* dove necessario. Metti una *X* dove nessun articolo è richiesto.

STRATFORD-UPON-AVON

Shakespeare's birthplace

Stratford-upon-Avon is 1) ... romantic town in 2) ... south-west of England and is Shakespeare's birthplace.

Accommodation

3) ... Swans Nest and 4) ... Dukes Hotel are two lovely hotels in Stratford. 5) ... Swans Nest is next to 6) ... River Avon, and 7) ... Dukes Hotel is 8) ... three-star hotel in 9) ... centre of 10) ... town.

Places to visit

For sightseeing, you can get on 11) ... open-topped double-decker bus and see 12) ... town. You can also visit 13) ... New Place, Shakespeare's home, go for 14) ... walk in 15) ... beautiful Bancroft Gardens, or visit 16) ... Warwick Castle, one of the oldest castles in Britain, not far from Stratford.



Eating out

There are some fantastic restaurants in Stratford. You can have 17) ... lunch at one of 18) ... many restaurants in 19) ... Sheep Street, or you can have 20) ... romantic dinner on 21) ... canal boat in 22) ... Canal Basin.

Shopping

The best place to buy presents and souvenirs is 23) ... street market in 24) ... Rother Street, but you can also buy yourself something nice in one of 25) ... excellent shops in 26) ... High Street.

Entertainment and nightlife

Stratford is 27) ... small town and there aren't many nightclubs but you can spend 28) ... evening at 29) ... Royal Shakespeare Theatre, have 30) ... pleasant walk along 31) ... riverside under 32) ... moon and 33) ... stars, or enjoy 34) ... drink at one of 35) ... town's friendly pubs.

★ E ESCLAMAZIONI

Per esprimere **piacere** o **sorpresa** si possono usare le seguenti strutture:

• What a/an + (aggettivo) + sostantivo singolare numerabile <i>What a (beautiful) day!</i> Che (bella) giornata!	• such a/an + aggettivo + sostantivo singolare numerabile <i>It's such a beautiful day!</i> E' una giornata così bella!
• What + (aggettivo) + sostantivo singolare non numerabile <i>What (lovely) weather!</i> Che (bel) tempo! Ma si dice: <i>What a mess!</i> Che confusione! <i>What a pity!</i> Che peccato! <i>What a shame!</i> Che peccato / Che vergogna!	• such + aggettivo + sostantivo singolare non numerabile <i>It's such lovely weather!</i> E' un tempo così bello!
• What + (aggettivo) + sostantivo plurale <i>What (beautiful) flowers!</i> Che (bei) fiori!	• such + aggettivo + sostantivo plurale <i>They're such beautiful flowers!</i> Sono fiori così belli!
• What + a lot of/a big quantity of/a great deal of + sostantivo singolare o plurale <i>What a lot of beer he's drinking!</i> Che grande quantità di birra sta bevendo!	• such + a lot of/a big quantity of/a great deal of + sostantivo singolare o plurale <i>He's drinking such a lot of beer!</i> Sta bevendo così tanta birra.
• How + aggettivo o avverbio <i>How tall you are!</i> Come sei alto! <i>How fast he drives!</i> Come guida forte!	• so + aggettivo o avverbio <i>You are so tall!</i> Sei così alto! <i>He drives so fast!</i> Guida così forte!

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi adeguatamente con *what*, *what a/an*, *how*.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. boring film! | 8. lovely day! |
| 2. good strawberries! | 9. fantastic match! |
| 3. difficult exercise! | 10. nice your bracelet is! |
| 4. difficult this exercise is! | 11. right you are! |
| 5. idiotic idea! | 12. lot of food there is! |
| 6. miserable weather! | 13. awfully they are playing! |
| 7. nice people! | 14. pity you can't come with us! |

2. Trasforma le frasi seguendo l'esempio.

- *What a difficult exercise this is!* ***This is such a difficult exercise!***
1. What heavy luggage you've got!
 2. What a nice necklace she's got!
 3. What fast bikes they've got!
 4. What a terrible noise your car makes!
 5. What lovely weather it is!
 6. What a great time we're having!

SENTENCE TRANSFORMATION (PET)

3. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima, usando non più di tre parole.

- *What awful weather!* ***It is such awful weather!***
1. This film is so boring!
 2. This soup is so salty!
 3. They're such nice people!
 4. That boy is so sad!
 5. What big teeth the wolf has got!
 6. How cold it is in here!
- It boring film!
How is!
What are!
He is boy!
The wolf big teeth!
It in here!

Grammar and practice

A. Verbi modali: caratteristiche generali
 B. *Can*

C. *May*
 D. *Can / May*

★ A VERBI MODALI: caratteristiche generali

I verbi modali sono definiti tali perché esprimono le **tre modalità** di eseguire un'azione: **potere, dovere, volere**. Possono essere considerati ausiliari perché reggono sempre un verbo (anche se a volte può essere sottinteso).

can	could	diversi significati di potere
may	might	
must		diversi significati di dovere
shall	should	
	ought to	
will	would	diversi significati di volere

I verbi modali hanno **regole particolari** rispetto ai verbi ordinari.

- Non hanno la forma base e quindi nessuna delle forme da questa derivate, come infinito, forma in *-ing* o participio passato. Nei tempi e nelle forme verbali mancanti vengono sostituiti da altri verbi o espressioni verbali.
- Sono sempre **seguiti dall'infinito senza *to*** (con l'**eccezione di *ought to***) *I can swim very well.*
- Non prendono la **-s** alla 3a persona singolare del presente *He/She must leave immediately.*
- La **forma negativa** si costruisce aggiungendo **"not"** dopo il modale *They may not arrive.*
- La **forma interrogativa** si costruisce anteponendo il verbo modale al soggetto *May I leave a message for Mr Spears?*

★ B CAN

Forma

Affermativa	sogg. + can + infinito senza to
Negativa	sogg. + cannot (can't) + infinito senza to
Interrogativa	Can + sogg. + infinito senza to
Interrogativo-negativa	Can't + sogg. + infinito senza to
Risposte brevi	Yes , soggetto + can No , soggetto + can't <i>They can play tennis./ They can't play tennis.</i> <i>Can they play tennis? / Can't they play tennis?</i> <i>Yes, they can. / No, they can't.</i>

Frase	Question tag (vero?/ non è vero?)
Affermativa <i>She can surf the Net,</i> Lei sa navigare in Rete,	can't + soggetto? <i>can't she?</i> vero?
Negativa <i>She can't surf the Net,</i> Lei non sa navigare in Rete,	can + soggetto? <i>can she?</i> vero?

Uso

Can rende il presente indicativo italiano del verbo "potere" e si usa per:	
• esprimere capacità/abilità (in questo caso corrisponde all'italiano "sapere")	<i>She can swim very well.</i> Lei sa nuotare molto bene.
• esprimere possibilità	<i>Skiing can be dangerous.</i> Sciare può essere pericoloso.
• fare richieste	<i>Can you open the window, please?</i> Puoi aprire la finestra per favore?
• chiedere, dare, rifiutare il permesso (informale)	<i>Can I use your car this evening, Dad?</i> Posso usare la tua auto questa sera, babbo? <i>Of course, you can. / No, you can't.</i> Certo che puoi. / No, non puoi.
• esprimere incredulità/deduzione negativa	<i>That man can't be Mr Brown. Mr Brown is much older.</i> Quell'uomo non può essere Mr Brown. Mr Brown è molto più vecchio.



Nelle **risposte brevi** si ripete il verbo/ausiliare **can** in forma affermativa o negativa per esprimere **capacità/abilità**.

Per rispondere alle richieste ed alle richieste di permesso in modo cortese in genere si usano altri modi. Osserva gli esempi.

	POSSIBILI RISPOSTE	
	Risposta affermativa	Risposta negativa
Chiedere sulla capacità <i>Can you dance?</i>	<i>Yes, I can.</i>	<i>No, I can't.</i>
Fare richieste <i>Can you lend me your pen, please?</i>	<i>Yes, sure. / Yes, OK.</i>	<i>Sorry, I can't. (+ motivazione) (I'm) sorry but (+ motivazione)</i>
Chiedere il permesso <i>Mum, can I go out? (informale)</i>	<i>Yes, sure /OK/all right. Yes, you can. Yes, of course/certainly.</i>	<i>No, you can't. (+ motivazione) (I'm) sorry but (+ motivazione)</i>

PRACTICE

1. Scrivi frasi usando *can* alla forma *affermativa* e poi trasformale in forma *negativa, interrogativa e interrogativo-negativa*.

➤ *Michael / use a computer*

Michael can use a computer.
Michael can't use a computer.

Can Michael use a computer?
Can't Michael use a computer?

1. *Mary / speak Japanese*
2. *Sarah / sing very well*
3. *We / leave tomorrow*

4. *They / dance*
5. *She / cook*
6. *You / ride a horse*

2. (a) Fai riferimento alla tabella e rispondi alle domande con *risposte brevi*.

	surf the Net	drive a car	ride a horse	dance	swim
Mark	yes	yes	no	no	yes
Sarah	no	no	yes	no	yes

➤ *Can Mark surf the Net ? - Yes, he can.*

1. Can Sarah surf the Net? -
2. Can Mark drive a car? -
3. Can Sarah drive a car? -
4. Can Mark ride a horse? -
5. Can Sarah ride a horse? -
6. Can they dance? -
7. Can they swim? -

(b) Ora completa le frasi con *can* o *can't*.

1. Mark surf the Net, drive a car and swim but he ride a horse or dance.
2. Sarah surf the Net, drive a car or dance, but she ride a horse and swim.

3. Aggiungi in coda a ciascuna frase la *question tag* adeguata.

➤ *You can't draw with a computer, can you?*

1. She can't write text messages, ?
2. They can come to the party, ?
3. Mr Bowen can see us tomorrow, ?
4. You can translate into French, ?
5. You can't ski, ?
6. He can ride a mini-scooter, ?

4. Completa le frasi con *can* o *can't* e i verbi forniti in ordine sparso.

smell / taste / find / believe / hear / see

➤ *The music is too loud. I can't hear you!*

1. The woman in front of Tom is wearing such a large hat that he anything.
2. Where are my glasses? I them.
3. Peter in a suit? I he's wearing a suit.
4. Tom's got a terrible cold. He anything.
5. Mum is making dinner. I the delicious roast beef she's cooking.

5. Abbina le richieste alle immagini.

- (a) *Can you give this to Mr Johnson, please?*
- (b) *Can you help me up, please?*
- (c) *Can you read this for me, please?*
- (d) *Can you open your book at page 18, please?*



6. Abbina le richieste di permesso alle immagini.

- (a) Can I borrow your pen, please?
- (b) Can I leave a message for Mr Grey, please?
- (c) Can I make a phone call, please?
- (d) Can I sit here?



7. Indica quali frasi esprimono una richiesta (R) e quali una richiesta di permesso (RP).

➤ *Can I use your telephone, please?* (RP)

- 1. Can you turn down the radio a bit, please? (...)
- 2. Can we go to Tom's party, Dad? (...)
- 3. Can I borrow your U2 album, Peter? (...)
- 4. Can I send an-email, please? (...)
- 5. Can you buy some fruit, please? (...)
- 6. Can I have a look at your newspaper, please? (...)

8. Scrivi mini-dialoghi usando le parole fornite ed il modale *can* come nell'esempio.

In a department store

➤ *toys? / fifth floor*
A: Excuse me. Where can I find toys?
B: You can find toys on the fifth floor.

- 1. gas cookers? / fourth floor
- 2. tights? / third floor
- 3. swimming costumes? / first floor
- 4. menswear? / second floor

9. Abbina le frasi adeguatamente.

- 1. *Can you lend me your bicycle, please?*
- 2. *Can you play tennis?*
- 3. *Jane can speak Chinese.*
- 4. *I can't hear well.*
- 5. *Can you pass me the water, please?*
- 6. *Can I take a biscuit, Mum?*
- 7. *Can I borrow your dictionary, Bob?*
- 8. *Excuse me. Where can I buy stamps?*

- a) Yes, you can, but just one.
- b) Go to an ear nose and throat specialist.
- c) Yes, I can. Can you?
- d) Yes, sure. Here you are.
- e) Oh, really? That's interesting!
- f) Sorry, it's got a flat tyre.
- g) At the post office.
- h) Sorry but I need it myself just now.

1 f

2 ...

3 ...

4 ...

5 ...

6 ...

7 ...

8 ...

10. Riscrivi le frasi usando *can't* per esprimere *incredulità/deduzione negativa*, come nell'esempio.

➤ *I don't believe she's that silly!* ***She can't be that silly.***

- 1. I don't believe it's so far away!
- 2. I don't believe he's late again!
- 3. I don't believe he drinks such a lot of beer!
- 4. I don't believe they have thirty cats!
- 5. I don't believe this dress costs so much!
- 6. I don't believe it's windy again!

Forma e uso

Affermativa	soggetto + may + infinito senza to
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> per esprimere probabilità, possibilità nel presente o nel futuro (= <i>Perhaps/Maybe</i> (forse) ... <i>Probably ... It is possible that ...</i> <i>It is probable that ...</i>) 	<i>John may arrive late.</i> <i>John può arrivare tardi. (E' probabile che ...)</i> <i>(= Perhaps / Maybe / Probably / It is possible that / It is probable that he will arrive late.)</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> per indicare un permesso di tipo ufficiale/regolativo (= <i>to be allowed to</i> - avere il permesso) 	<i>Only authorized personnel may use this exit.</i> <i>Solo personale autorizzato può usare questa uscita.</i> <i>(= Only authorized personnel are allowed to use this exit.)</i>
Negativa	soggetto + may + not + infinito senza to
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> per esprimere probabilità al negativo 	<i>He may not win again.</i> <i>Lui può non vincere di nuovo. (È probabile che non ...)</i> <i>(= Perhaps / Maybe / Probably / It is possible that / It is probable that he will not win again)</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> per indicare proibizione/mancanza di permesso di tipo ufficiale/regolativo (= <i>not to be allowed</i> - non avere il permesso) 	<i>Students may not park their bikes here.</i> <i>Gli studenti non possono parcheggiare i loro motorini qui.</i> <i>(= Students are not allowed to park their bikes here.)</i>
Interrogativa	May + I / we + infinito senza to ...?
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> per chiedere il permesso in modo formale alla 1a persona singolare e plurale 	<i>May I/we smoke in here?</i> <i>Posso/Possiamo fumare qui?</i>

Sia **can** che **may** possono essere usati per **chiedere, dare, rifiutare il permesso**.
Osserva l'uso e le possibili risposte.

Chiedere il permesso	POSSIBILI RISPOSTE	
	Risposta affermativa (dare il permesso)	Risposta negativa (rifiutare il permesso)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> in modo informale <i>Can I go out, Mum?</i> 	<i>Yes, you can.</i> <i>Yes, sure/OK/all right.</i>	<i>No, you can't. (+ motivazione)</i> <i>Sorry but ... (+ motivazione)</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> in modo formale <i>Excuse me. May I sit here?</i> 	<i>Yes, of course (you may)</i> <i>Yes, certainly.</i> <i>Please, do.</i>	<i>(I'm) sorry but ... (+ motivazione)</i> <i>No, you may not (generalmente non usato perché troppo scortese)</i>

Ricorda:

Linguaggio **informale e formale**

- informale** quando ci si rivolge ad amici, persone della famiglia o che si conoscono bene.
- formale** quando ci si rivolge a persone di livello gerarchico superiore, o che non si conoscono o si conoscono appena.

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi con *may* o *may not*. (Probabile o non probabile?)

➤ *Paul is not very well so he **may not** come to the mountains with us at the weekend. He **may** stay at home for a few days.*

1. Look at those clouds. It rain again today. 2. Michael Sullivan isn't running fast. He win the race. 3. I want to learn the German language so I go to evening classes this year. 4. There's a lot of traffic so Kevin be late. 5. There's a bus strike today so the bus be on time. 6. Be careful. They say the roads be icy.

2. Trasforma le frasi usando *may* o *may not* adeguatamente.

➤ *Maybe he is at home.* **He **may** be at home.**

1. Perhaps he is 20 years old. 2. It is possible that there is a history test on Tuesday. 3. Probably mobile phones don't work in this area. 4. It is possible that we meet them tonight at the pub. 5. Perhaps I'm wrong. 6. Maybe this pullover is not too big for James.

3. Trasforma le frasi usando l'espressione "*in case*", come nell'esempio.

➤ *You need a compass. You may get lost.*

You **need a compass **in case** you get lost.**

1. You need a pair of gloves. It may get cold. 2. Let's buy some food for the journey. We may get hungry. 3. Revise your vocabulary. There may be an English test next week. 4. Give Mary my phone number. She may not have it. 5. Let's buy John a scarf for his birthday. He may not have one.

4. Osserva i cartelli e trasforma le frasi usando *may* o *may not*.

DOGS ON LEADS

*Only dogs on leads are allowed to enter this park.
Only dogs on leads **may** enter this park.*

PARKING PROHIBITED

1. You are not allowed to park here.

MACKINTOSH LIBRARY
Borrowings: maximum four books

2. Students are allowed to borrow four books from the library.



3. You are not allowed to smoke in here.

5. Completa le richieste di permesso con *can* o *may* a seconda del diverso livello di formalità.

1. I use the telephone, Mr Jordan? - Yes, of course.

2. I listen to your new CD, Bob? - Yes, sure.

3. I borrow your dictionary, Susan? - Sorry but I need it myself.

4. I have a day off, Mr Gray? - I'm sorry but there's a lot of work this week.

★ A MUST

Forma

Affermativa	sogg. + must + infinito senza to
Negativa	sogg. + must not (mustn't) + infinito senza to
Interrogativa	Must + sogg. + infinito senza to?
Interrogativo-negativa	Mustn't + sogg. + infinito senza to?

You must do your homework. / You mustn't disturb.

Must I finish this work? / Mustn't she be at work at 8 o'clock?

Uso

Must corrisponde al presente indicativo italiano del verbo "**dovere**" e si usa per:

• esprimere un obbligo morale del parlante	<i>I must study this afternoon.</i> Debbo studiare oggi pomeriggio. <i>I mustn't be late again.</i> Non debbo essere di nuovo in ritardo.
• esprimere un comando, regola, proibizione da parte di un'autorità esterna	<i>You must follow the Highway Code.</i> Devi seguire / Bisogna seguire il codice stradale. <i>You mustn't smoke in here.</i> Non devi / Non si deve fumare qui.
• dare un consiglio forte	<i>This book is really interesting. You must read it.</i> Questo libro è veramente interessante. Devi (assolutamente) leggerlo.
• esprimere deduzione affermativa	<i>John isn't at home. He must be at his grandparents'.</i> John non è a casa. Deve essere dai suoi nonni.

Ricorda:

un **comando**, un **obbligo**, una **regola** ed una **proibizione** possono essere resi anche con **l'imperativo** alla 2a persona singolare e plurale

(Vedi a **PAG. 114**)

*Follow the Highway Code.
Don't smoke in here.*

Ricorda:

deduzione negativa: can't
(Vedi a **PAG. 127**)

He can't be at his grandparents'.
Non può essere dai suoi nonni.

Nella **forma affermativa**

• **must** e **have (got)** **to** hanno un significato molto simile e possono essere usati in modo abbastanza intercambiabile.
I must feed the dog. / I have ('ve got) to feed the dog.
Debbo dare da mangiare al cane.

Nella **forma negativa** invece

• **mustn't** e **don't/doesn't have to** hanno un significato diverso.
(Vedi a **PAG. 276**)

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi con *must* o *mustn't* adeguatamente.

- Remember that in the UK you **mustn't** drive on the right. You **must** drive on the left.
1. We hurry or we'll miss the train.
 2. You eat a lot of fruit and vegetables if you want to be healthy.
 3. "Keep off the grass" means that you walk on the grass.
 4. In Italy you drive on the right.
 5. You forget to check the battery and the car engine before going on a long car journey.
 6. You remember to look both ways when you cross the street.

2. Guarda i cartelli stradali e completa le frasi con *must* o *mustn't* e i verbi forniti in ordine sparso.

go / exceed / turn / enter / overtake / keep



➤ You **must** *keep* right.



1. You right here.



2. You this road.



3. You



4. You straight on.



5. You the speed limit.

3. Usa le espressioni fornite e *must* o *mustn't* per dire ciò che si deve o non si deve fare in classe.

1. be quiet in class
 2. chew gum in class
 3. write on the walls
 4. cheat in tests
 5. sleep in class
 6. fight in class
 7. keep the classroom clean.

4. Trasforma le frasi usando *must* o *mustn't* adeguatamente.

➤ *Don't turn right.* ***You mustn't turn right.***

1. Listen to me.
 2. Don't eat too much.
 3. Don't miss the bus.
 4. Turn off your mobile phone on a plane.
 5. Don't be late.
 6. Be careful here.

- 5.** Riscrivi le frasi utilizzando *must* per esprimere *deduzione affermativa*.

➤ (The lights are on) I think they are at home. ***They must be at home.***

1. (*The teacher is late*) I suppose she's ill.
 2. (*The dog is not in*) I suppose it's in the garden.
 3. (*You work too hard*) I'm sure you are very tired.
 4. (*Mark is worried*) I think he has problems.

6. Completa le frasi adeguatamente con *must* o *can't* per esprimere deduzione affermativa o negativa.

1. Paul be very angry with Pamela. He doesn't want to speak to her.
 2. All the lights are off. They be at home. They be at the cinema.
 3. Susan eats a lot. She be on a diet.
 4. Mr and Mrs Jones have got a wonderful house with a swimming pool. They be very rich. They be poor.
 5. James is at the bus stop. He be waiting for the bus home.
 6. I'm sure Bob is an only child. He have a sister.

7. Scrivi due frasi per ciascuna situazione utilizzando adeguatamente le espressioni fornite, come nell'esempio.

*buy a ticket / pass the driving test / ~~get a passport~~ /
pass the school-leaving exam / drive on the left*

➤ Peter wants to go to the United States.

He has to get a passport. *He must get a passport.*

1. Tom wants to go to university.
 2. Sheila wants to drive a car.
 3. They want to drive a car in Britain.
 4. Pamela wants to take the train home.

★ **B IMPERATIVO 1a PERSONA PLURALE: LET'S**

Forma

Affermativa	Let's + infinito senza to <i>Let's go to the pub.</i> Andiamo al pub.
Negativa	Let's not + infinito senza to <i>Let's not watch TV.</i> Non guardiamo la televisione.

Uso

L'imperativo alla 1a persona plurale con let's si usa per:
fare proposte, dare suggerimenti, fare esortazioni ed inviti

Forme alternative

What/How about + forma in -ing ...?	<i>What about listening to music now?</i>
Why don't we + infinito senza to ...?	<i>Why don't we listen to music now?</i>
Why not + infinito senza to ...?	<i>Why not listen to music now?</i>

★ **C SHALL**

Forma

Shall è un **verbo modale** che si usa generalmente alla **forma interrogativa** della 1a persona singolare e 1a persona plurale.

Shall I / we + infinito **senza to** ...?

Uso

Shall si usa per:	POSSIBILI RISPOSTE	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • chiedere un consiglio/suggerimento <i>Shall I phone Tom?</i> Debbo telefonare a Tom? <i>What shall I wear tonight?</i> Che cosa debbo indossare questa sera? 	dare un consiglio/suggerimento <i>Yes, do it. / No, don't do it. That's not a good idea.</i> <i>Why don't you wear the blue dress?</i>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • fare proposte <i>Shall we go to the cinema?</i> Andiamo al cinema? 	accettare <i>Yes, let's.</i> <i>Yes, good idea.</i> <i>Yes, great!</i>	rifiutare (+ motivazione) <i>Sorry, I can't. I've got to ...</i> <i>I'm afraid I can't. I've got to ...</i> rifiutare (+ proposta alternativa) <i>No, let's not. Let's ... instead.</i> <i>I hate/don't like going to the cinema. Let's ... instead.</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • chiedere una proposta <i>What shall we do tonight?</i> Che cosa facciamo questa sera? 	fare una proposta <i>Let's (go to...)/ Why don't we (go to...?) /</i> <i>What/How about (going to...?) /</i> <i>Why not (go to ...)?</i>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • offrirsi di fare qualcosa <i>Shall I clean the kitchen?</i> Debbo pulire la cucina? 	accettare <i>Yes, please.</i> <i>Yes, all right. I'll give you a hand.</i> <i>Thanks a lot.</i> <i>That's nice of you.</i>	rifiutare (+ motivazione) <i>No, thanks. I can do it myself later.</i> <i>No, don't worry, I'll do that myself.</i>

PRACTICE

1. Abbina adeguatamente le *proposte* alle risposte.

1. Let's have a party!
2. Let's go swimming!
3. Let's go out!
4. Let's go trekking!
5. Let's open the window!

- a) No, I'm too tired.
- b) Good idea! Who shall we invite?
- c) No, it's too cold in here!
- d) No, the sea is rough today.
- e) Good idea! Where shall we go?

1 ...
2 ...
3 ...
4 ...
5 ...

2. Usa *let's* e i suggerimenti forniti per costruire *mini-dialoghi* come nell'esempio.

➤ *hungry / sandwich / sandwich bar* A: *I'm hungry. What about a sandwich?*
B: *Good idea! Let's go to a sandwich bar.*

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. thirsty / coke / café | 3. thirsty / pint of beer / pub |
| 2. hot / ice-cream / ice-cream bar | 4. cold / nice cup of tea / tea-room |

3. Completa le frasi con *let's* o *let's not* seguiti dai verbi forniti in ordine sparso.

play / ask / eat / go / travel / buy / invite

➤ *Let's not go for a walk. It's too windy today.*

1. at that Italian restaurant. I like Italian food.
2. that man where the station is.
3. chess. It's too boring!
4. Frank and Martha to our party. They're nice people.
5. something original for Jenny's 16th birthday.
6. by car. Let's go by train.

4. Abbina le situazioni alle *richieste di consiglio*.

1. I don't know who my son's girlfriend is.
2. My mother (86 years old) wants to wear contact lenses.
3. My daughter (16 years old) insists on going on holiday on her own.
4. My son Mark (11 years old) is not very good at Maths.
5. My husband wants to go to the pub in the evening.

- a) Shall I take her to an optician's?
- b) Shall I allow him to go out on his own?
- c) Shall I invite her for dinner?
- d) Shall I allow her to go to the seaside with her friends this summer?
- e) Shall I help him do his homework?

1 ...
2 ...
3 ...
4 ...
5 ...

5. Usa i suggerimenti forniti per scrivere *mini-dialoghi* come nell'esempio.

➤ *Go away for the weekend? // visit my aunt*
A: *Shall we go away for the weekend?*
B: *Sorry, I can't. I've got to visit my aunt.*
A: *Oh. What a pity!*

1. Go out for a drink on Saturday evening? // write some letters
2. Go to a concert tomorrow night? // wait for an important phone call
3. Go out for a pizza tonight? // wash my hair
4. Go to the mountains next weekend? // do some work

6. Usa i suggerimenti forniti per costruire *mini-dialoghi* come nell'esempio. Aggiungi tutti gli elementi necessari.

➤ *Go / cinema / on Thursday evening? // outside the cinema / 7.30 p.m.*

A: What about going to the cinema on Thursday evening?

B: Good idea. Where and when shall we meet?

A: Let's meet outside the cinema at half past seven.

1. Go / out for a meal / Friday evening? // in Gorman Road in front of the restaurant / 7.00 p.m.

2. Go / disco / Saturday night? // in Kent Road near the café / 10.30 p.m.

3. Go / out for a walk / Friday afternoon? // in front of the supermarket / 4.00 p.m.

4. Go / theatre / Thursday evening? // outside the Theatre Royal / 8.00 p.m.

7. Usa i suggerimenti forniti per costruire *mini-dialoghi* come nell'esempio. Aggiungi tutti gli elementi necessari.

➤ *Tessa / her birthday / some flowers / a CD*

A: What shall we buy Tessa for her birthday?

B: Let's buy her some flowers.

A: No, not flowers. That's not a good idea. What about buying her a CD?

B: Yes, great!

1. Peter / his 18 th birthday / some aftershave / a poster

2. Mum / Mother's day / a book about flowers / some perfume

3. Uncle John / his retirement / a watch / a pipe

4. John / Christmas / a book / a bottle of whisky

8. A scuola un gruppo di studenti sta organizzando una festa. Leggi l'elenco delle cose da fare ed offri il tuo aiuto come nell'esempio.

1. Buying the drinks
2. Helping with the sandwiches
3. Finding a DJ
4. Making the decorations
5. Printing the tickets on the computer
6. Organising the games

➤ *Shall I buy the drinks?*

.....

.....

.....

.....

9. Completa le frasi con la forma corretta dei verbi tra parentesi (infinito senza *to* o forma in *-ing*?)

1. What about (*listen*) to music? **2.** Why don't we (*go*) to a concert on Saturday? **3.** Let's (*spend*) a few days at the seaside. **4.** Shall we (*leave*) tomorrow? **5.** How about (*travel*) by train? **6.** Why not (*visit*) the castle today?

SENTENCE TRANSFORMATION (PET)

10. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando non più di tre parole.

➤ *Shall we play tennis?*

Let's play tennis.

1. Shall we make some tea?

What about tea?

2. Shall we go to the seaside tomorrow?

Why don't the seaside tomorrow?

3. Let's make a cake

Shall cake?

4. How about having a holiday on a tropical island?

Why don't holiday on a tropical island?

5. What about going for a walk ?

Let's walk.

A. Will - Would

B. To want e verbi di volontà –
Costruzione oggettivaC. What? / Which? - One / Ones
Revision

★ A WILL - WOULD

Forma e Uso

POSSIBILI RISPOSTE		
	Risposta affermativa	Risposta negativa
WILL , oltre ad essere l'ausiliare con cui si forma il futuro semplice, è anche un verbo modale che si usa per: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • fare richieste (informale = <i>can</i>) Will + sogg. + infinito senza to? <i>Will you buy me some fruit, please?</i> Vuoi comperarmi/Mi compreri della frutta, per favore? 	Yes, OK. Yes, sure. Yes, I will.	<i>Sorry, but</i> (+ motivazione) No, I won't.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • offrire qualcosa Will + sogg. + have + oggetto? <i>Will you have some more tea?</i> Vuoi dell'altro tè? 	Accettare Yes, please.	Rifiutare <i>No, thanks.</i>

POSSIBILI RISPOSTE		
	Risposta affermativa	Risposta negativa
WOULD , oltre ad essere l'ausiliare con cui si costruisce il condizionale, è anche un verbo modale che si usa per: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • fare richieste (più formale di <i>can</i> e <i>will</i>) Would + sogg. + infinito senza to?* <i>Would you buy me some fruit, please?</i> Vorrebbe comprarmi/ Mi comprerebbe della frutta, per favore? 	Yes, of course. Yes, certainly.	<i>I'm sorry but</i> ... (+ motivazione)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • offrire qualcosa Would + sogg. + like + oggetto ? <i>Would you like a sandwich?</i> Vorrebbe/Vorresti un sandwich? 	Accettare Yes, please.	Rifiutare <i>No, thank you.</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • fare inviti Would + sogg. + like + infinito senza to? <i>Would you like to go to the cinema?</i> Vorresti andare al cinema? 	Accettare Yes, I'd love to. Oh, that sounds lovely!	Rifiutare e motivare <i>That's very kind of you, but ...</i> <i>I'd love to, but ...</i> <i>I'm sorry but</i> ... (+ motivazione)

* Per fare una **richiesta** in modo **formale** si può usare:**Would you mind** + forma in **-ing***Would you mind signing this form, please?*

Le dispiacerebbe firmare questo modulo, per favore?

Would like si usa anche per esprimere **desiderio o volontà**Sogg. + **would ('d)** + **like** + oggetto*I would ('d) like a cup of coffee.*

Vorrei una tazza di caffè.

Sogg. + **would ('d)** + **like** + infinito **senza to***I would ('d) like to go to the Maldives.*

Vorrei andare alle Maldive.

Attenzione!!!

Non confondere:

Do you like oranges?

Ti piacciono le arance?

Would you like an orange?

Vorresti un arancio?

Do you like going to concerts?

Ti piace andare ai concerti?

Would you like to go to a concert?

Vorresti andare ad un concerto?

PRACTICE

1. Formula richieste rivolgendoti alle persone indicate tra parentesi in modo formale o informale.
Usa correttamente *will* o *would* ed effettua tutti i cambiamenti necessari.

➤ (*your sister*) *give you a pullover*. ***Will you give me a pullover, please?***
➤ (*a stranger on the train*) *close the window*. ***Would you close the window, please?***

1. (*your mum*) make you a sandwich.
2. (*your teacher*) show you your test.
3. (*the doctor*) prescribe you some medicine for your stomach.
4. (*your friend*) lend you his book about motorcycles.
5. (*your brother*) make a phone call for you.

2. Completa le frasi adeguatamente con *will* o *would*.

1. you have some more tea? - Yes, please.
2. you like a sandwich? - No, thank you.
3. I like to spend a few days in Prague. - That's a good idea.
4. you like to go out tomorrow evening? - Oh, yes. I'd love to.
5. Will you make your bed, please? - Yes, I
6. I like a glass of wine. - Here you are.
7. Where you like to go on holiday? - I like to go to Italy.
8. you mind looking after my dog while I'm away?

3. Completa i mini-dialoghi con *do you like* o *would you like*.

➤ A: ***Would you like a biscuit?***
B: *No, thanks. Just a cup of tea.*

1. A: a glass of coke or a glass of beer?
B: A glass of coke, please.
2. A: milk in your tea?
B: No, not milk. Just sugar, please.
3. A: coca cola?
B: It's all right, but I prefer orange juice.
4. A: tea with lemon, Paola?
B: Of course I do! I'm Italian.
5. A: white wine?
B: Yes, I do, but I prefer red wine.
6. A: a cup of tea?
B: Yes, please

4. Inserisci *do*, *does* o *would*.

➤ ***Do you like strawberries?*** - Yes, I do.

1. she like vegetables? - No, she doesn't.
2. you like something to drink? - Yes, please.
3. Tom like listening to music? - Oh, yes, he does! He loves it.
4. you like to go to a party next Saturday? - Yes, I'd love to.
5. you like to dance? - Sorry but I've got a pain in my back.
6. they like travelling? - Yes, they do. They like it very much.

★ B TO WANT E VERBI DI VOLONTÀ - COSTRUZIONE OGGETTIVA

Per esprimere **desiderio o volontà, offrire qualcosa o fare un invito** si può usare il verbo **to want** (= volere, meno cortese di **would like**) in contesti molto informali.

To want + complemento oggetto	To want + infinito con <i>to</i>
• esprimere desiderio di qualcosa <i>I want a new job.</i> Voglio un nuovo lavoro. <i>I don't want a new job.</i> Non voglio un nuovo lavoro. <i>Do you want a new job?</i> Vuoi un nuovo lavoro?	• esprimere desiderio/volontà di fare qualcosa <i>We want to move to London.</i> Vogliamo trasferirci a Londra. <i>We don't want to move to London.</i> Non vogliamo trasferirci a Londra. <i>Do you want to move to London?</i> Volete trasferirvi a Londra?
• offrire qualcosa <i>Do you want a cup of coffee?</i>	• fare un invito <i>Do you want to go to the cinema?</i>

COSTRUZIONE OGGETTIVA / INFINITIVA

L'italiano **volere che + congiuntivo**, che esprime il **desiderio/volontà che qualcuno faccia qualcosa**, si rende in inglese con la seguente struttura in cui il complemento oggetto corrisponde al soggetto della subordinata italiana.

To want	+ complemento oggetto (nome o pronome)	+ infinito con <i>to</i>
<i>Dad wants</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>to come home early.</i>
Il babbo vuole che	noi	veniamo a casa presto.
<i>Mum doesn't want</i>	<i>me</i>	<i>to stay out late.</i>
La mamma non vuole che	io	stia fuori fino a tardi.
<i>Do you want</i>	<i>Tom</i>	<i>to help you?</i>
Vuoi che	Tom	ti aiuti?

La **costruzione oggettiva** è usata anche con altri verbi di volontà come **to like, to prefer** (più spesso usati al condizionale - **would like, would prefer**).
Would you like me to repeat? Vuoi/Volete che ripeta?
We would prefer John not to come back home late.
 Preferiremmo che John non tornasse a casa tardi.

Per la costruzione oggettiva
vedi anche a PAG. 367
e "costruzioni sintattiche dei verbi"
a PAG. 470 471

PRACTICE

- Immagina di *offrire qualcosa o fare un invito* alle persone indicate. Costruisci domande con *do you want* o *would you like*. Fai attenzione al diverso livello di formalità considerando la persona cui ti rivolgi.
 - (your sister) *a piece of cake* **Do you want a piece of cake?**
 - (Mr Smith) *a cup of tea* **Would you like a cup of tea?**
 1. (a friend) go to the cinema
 2. (your boss) come to dinner at your house
 3. (your brother) go to the mountains next weekend
 4. (a friend) listen to this new CD
 5. (Mr Robson) a sandwich

2. Scrivi frasi con *want + infinito* oppure *want + compl. oggetto + infinito*.

- *Jennifer / want / buy some fruit.* ***Jennifer wants to buy some fruit.***
 - *Jennifer / want / us / buy some fruit.* ***Jennifer wants us to buy some fruit.***

1. I / not want / be late.
 2. I / not want / us / be late.
 3. They / want / go to university.
 4. They / want / me / go to university.
 5. You / want / come / to London with us?
 6. You / want / me / come to London with you?
 7. I / want / listen to the lesson.
 8. The teacher / want / the students / listen to the lesson.
 9. My father / would like / wash the car.
 10. My father / would like / me and my brother / wash the car.
 11. Her parents / would prefer / stay at home tonight.
 12. Her parents / would prefer / her / stay at home tonight.

3. I ragazzi del comitato studentesco stanno organizzando una festa e vogliono che ciascuno faccia qualcosa. Scrivi frasi come nell'esempio.

- *John and Peter / find a DJ* ***They want John and Peter to find a DJ.***

 1. Rose / make a big pizza
 2. Mary and Betty / prepare the sandwiches
 3. Frank / write the invitations
 4. Alan / organise a lottery
 5. Mark / get the drinks
 6. Bob and Jane / make the decorations

4. Riferisci ciò che l'insegnante vuole o non vuole che gli studenti facciano. Usa adeguatamente *wants* o *doesn't want* + costruzione oggettiva.

- "Stop talking!" ***The teacher wants the students to stop talking.***
 - 1. "Don't chew gum!" 3. "Keep the classroom tidy!"
 - 2. "Listen and repeat!" 4. "Don't cheat in tests!"

5. Jane è fuori città per alcuni giorni. Leggi il promemoria che ha lasciato per suo marito e rispondi alle domande.

Robert.
don't forget to take the children to school.
Then remember to tell:
- Betty to do the ironing
- Clare to take out the rubbish
- Tim and Bob to do the gardening
- the electrician to come on Thursday, when
I'm at home.
See you on Wednesday.
Bye! *Jane*

- *What does Jane want her husband to do?
She wants him to take the children to school.*
 - 1. What does she want Betty to do?
 - 2. What does she want Clare to do?
 - 3. What does she want Tim and Bob to do?
 - 4. What does she want the electrician to do?

★ C WHAT? / WHICH? - ONE / ONES

What e which possono essere sia pronomi che aggettivi.	Pronome	Aggettivo
What? (si riferisce ad un numero illimitato di cose o persone)	Che cosa? / Quale? <i>What's your address?</i> Qual'è il tuo indirizzo?	Che? / Quale? / Che genere di? <i>What books do you like?</i> Che libri ti piacciono?
Which? (si usa per esprimere una scelta tra un numero limitato di cose o persone)	Quale? / Chi? <i>Which of them is Peter?</i> Quale / Chi di loro è Peter?	Quale? <i>Which T-shirt do you prefer?</i> <i>The blue one or the red one?</i> Quale maglietta preferisci? La blu o la rossa?

Which si trova spesso seguito da **one** o **ones** che sostituiscono rispettivamente un sostantivo singolare e plurale e vengono usati per evitare la ripetizione del sostantivo.

Here are two cars: a black one and a green one. Which one do you prefer?

Ecco qui due macchine: una nera e una verde. Quale preferisci?

I'd like some apples. - Which ones would you like? The Goldens or the Granny Smiths?

Vorrei delle mele. - Quali desidera? Le Golden o le Granny Smith?

PRACTICE

1. Completa le domande con *what* o *which*.

1. books do you like?
2. is your phone number?
3. of these umbrellas is yours?
4. is her name?
5. of you is Alan?
6. films do you like?
7. of these two films do you prefer?
8. of these CDs do you prefer?

2. Completa le frasi con *one* o *ones*.

1. Which do you want? The big apples or the small?
2. Which oranges would you like? - Those over there, please.
3. Which do you prefer? The gold ring or the silver?
4. Which book would you like to buy? The adventure novel or the science fiction?
5. Which of those boys is James? - The tall , in a black sweater.
6. Which of those girls do you prefer? - The with long black hair.

3. Completa i *mini-dialoghi* con le parole mancanti.

- A: *Can I have a can of beer, please?*
 B: Yes, **which one** would you like?
 A: *This one here.*
1. A: Can I have an apple, please?
 B: Yes, would you like?
 A: That over there.
 2. A: I'd like some apples, please.
 B: Yes, would you like?
 A: Those over there.
 3. A: Can I have some bananas, please?
 B: Yes, would you like?
 A: These here.

REVISION

1. Abbina le frasi alla funzione che esprimono.

A.

1. She can speak English very well.
2. Can I use your dictionary?
3. Can you close the door, please?
4. Clothes can be expensive.
5. May I speak to the manager, please?
6. It may rain.
7. Students may not park their bikes in front of the school entrance.

- a) Esprimere possibilità
- b) Chiedere il permesso (formale)
- c) Chiedere il permesso (informale)
- d) Esprimere mancanza di permesso/proibizione di tipo regolativo
- e) Esprimere capacità
- f) Fare una richiesta (informale)
- g) Esprimere probabilità

1 ...
2 ...
3 ...
4 ...
5 ...
6 ...
7 ...

B.

1. All the lights are off. They must be out.
2. All the lights are on. They can't be out.
3. Officers must wear their uniforms.
4. You mustn't say dirty words.
5. That novel is wonderful. You must read it.
6. Shall we go out tonight?
7. What shall I wear tonight?
8. Shall I make a cup of tea?
9. Will you have some more coffee?
10. Would you like something to eat?
11. Would you like to go out for a meal tonight?

- a) Offrire qualcosa (informale)
- b) Fare un invito
- c) Esprimere deduzione negativa
- d) Esprimere proibizione
- e) Fare una proposta
- f) Offrirsi di fare qualcosa.
- g) Offrire qualcosa (modo cortese)
- h) Esprimere obbligo
- i) Esprimere deduzione affermativa
- j) Esprimere un consiglio forte
- k) Chiedere un consiglio

1 ...
2 ...
3 ...
4 ...
5 ...
6 ...
7 ...
8 ...
9 ...
10 ...
11 ...

SENTENCE TRANSFORMATION (PET)

2. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando non più di tre parole.
1. Don't forget to apply for a visa before going to Australia.
You to apply for a visa before going to Australia.
2. Can you tell Peter that I'm here?
I'd like Peter that I'm here.
3. Shall I wash the dishes?
Do you want the dishes?
4. Our children must respect the country code.
We want respect the country code.
5. We may not go on holiday on my own.
Our parents don't want on holiday on our own.
6. Can you wait for me?
I'd like for me.
7. Will you sit down, please?
I want down.
8. Shall we buy uncle Richard a watch for his retirement?
What about a watch for his retirement?
9. What about another cup of tea?
Would cup of tea?
10. James looks sad. I think he has got family problems.
James looks sad. He family problems.

Grammar and practice

A. Past simple di *to be*

B. Past simple dei verbi ordinari (regolari e irregolari)

C. Past simple di *to have*

Revision: tempi verbali

★ A PAST SIMPLE DI *TO BE*Forma

Il **past simple** del verbo **to be** è: **was** per la **1a** e per la **3a persona singolare**,
were per tutte le altre persone.

Affermativa	Negativa	Interrogativa	Interrogativo-negativa
I / he / she / it was	I / he / she / it was not (wasn't)	was I / he / she / it ?	wasn't I / he / she / it ?
you / we / they were	you / we / they were not (weren't)	were you / we / they?	weren't you / we / they?

Risposte brevi	Yes, I / he / she / it was . Yes, you / we / they were .	No, I / he / she / it wasn't . No, you / we / they weren't .
-----------------------	---	---

He was at school yesterday morning./ He wasn't at school yesterday morning.

Was he at school yesterday morning? / Wasn't he at school yesterday morning?

Yes, he was. / No, he wasn't.

They were at the bus stop at eight o'clock./ They weren't at the bus stop at eight o' clock.

Were they at the bus stop at eight o'clock? / Weren't they at the bus stop at eight o'clock?

Yes, they were. / No, they weren't.

Frase	Question tag (vero? / non è vero?)
Affermativa <i>It was a good film,</i> Era un buon film,	wasn't / weren't + soggetto? <i>wasn't it?</i> vero?
Negativa <i>It wasn't a good film,</i> Non era un buon film,	was / were + soggetto? <i>was it?</i> vero?

Uso

Il **past simple** di **to be** può corrispondere all'**imperfetto**, al **passato remoto** e al **passato prossimo** dell'italiano e si usa per:

- parlare di **situazioni riferite ad un tempo determinato del passato ed interamente trascorso**

They were at home last night.

Loro erano a casa ieri sera.

- parlare della nascita (**was/were + born**)

Where and when were you born? - I was born in London on 12 th April 1989.

Dove e quando sei nato? - Sono nato a Londra il 12 aprile 1989.

Il **past simple** è generalmente accompagnato da **avverbi ed espressioni di tempo determinato**

yesterday, the day before yesterday

yesterday morning/afternoon/evening

last night/week/month/year

two days/three weeks/a few years ago

in November, in 1987, on Monday/Tuesday, ...

Attenzione!!!

yesterday evening

ma: *last night*

NO: *last evening*

PRACTICE

1. Completa le seguenti frasi con *was* o *were*.

➤ *He was in New York last month.*

1. Susan's friends at the pub on Saturday evening. 2. The children in the garden five minutes ago. 3. Mum in the kitchen ten minutes ago. 4. Michael and Paul born in York. 5. Bill and I at the gym on Saturday afternoon. 6. I at work on Friday morning.

2. Trasforma le frasi dell'esercizio precedente in forma *negativa, interrogativa, interrogativo-negativa*.

➤ *He wasn't in New York last month.* *Was he in New York last month?*
 Wasn't he in New York last month?

3. Rispondi con *risposte brevi*.

➤ *Were they at the cinema last night? - Yes, **they were**.*

1. Was Susan at school this morning? - No,
2. Was Mr Davidson in Boston last week? - No,
3. Were you in Trafalgar Square this morning at 9.00? - Yes, we
4. Were you born in February? - No, I
5. Were Tom and Bob at the match on Sunday afternoon? - No,

4. Aggiungi in coda a ciascuna frase la *question tag* corretta.

➤ *You were at the football match yesterday afternoon, **weren't you?***
1. She was at the supermarket yesterday morning,?
2. They weren't at home last night,?
3. Tom wasn't at school this morning,?
4. The party was a success,?
5. That pullover wasn't too expensive,?

5. Costruisci *mini-dialoghi* come nell'esempio. Usa il *passato di to be*, i suggerimenti forniti e aggiungi tutti gli elementi necessari.

➤ A: *They / post office / 9.00?* A: *Were they at the post office at 9.00?*
B: *No / they / bank.* B: *No, they weren't. They were at the bank*
1. A: Susan / home/ Saturday night? 3. A: You / traffic lights?
B: No / she / theatre. B: No / we / bus stop.
2. A: Paul and Simon / pub / last night? 4. A: It / cold?
B: No / they / disco. B: No / it / warm and sunny.

6. Scrivi le domande per le risposte sottolineate. Usa il *past simple* di *to be* e le question words *where, when, how, how long, why* correttamente.

➤ *Where were you last night?* *Last night? I was at home.*

1.? Bob? He was at school this morning.
2.? Susan and Mary? They were at the cinema last night.
3.? Mary? Oh, she was fine.
4.? They were on holiday last month.
5.? Yesterday afternoon? We were at the zoo.
6.? He was born on 15 th February.
7.? She was in Milan to visit some relatives.
8.? I was in Madrid for ten days.

★ **B** PAST SIMPLE DEI VERBI ORDINARI (regolari e irregolari)

Forma

Il **past simple** dei verbi ordinari (regolari ed irregolari) è **uguale per tutte le persone**

	Verbi regolari	Verbi irregolari
Affermativa	sogg. + forma base+ed	sogg. + forma propria
Negativa	sogg. + did not (didn't) + forma base	
Interrogativa		did + sogg. + forma base ...?
Interrogativo-negativa		didn't + sogg. + forma base ...?
Risposte brevi	Yes, sogg. + did	/ No, sogg. + didn't

Vedi elenco verbi
irregolari,
a **PAG.** **480**

Frase	Question tag (vero? / non è vero?)
Affermativa <i>They stayed at a hotel, Alloggiavano in un albergo,</i>	didn't + soggetto? <i>didn't they?</i> vero?
Negativa <i>They didn't stay at a hotel, Non alloggiavano in un albergo,</i>	did + soggetto? <i>did they?</i> vero?



FORMA AFFERMATIVA - VERBI REGOLARI

La **forma affermativa** del *past simple* dei verbi regolari si forma aggiungendo **-ed** alla forma base del verbo con le seguenti **variazioni ortografiche**:

• verbi terminanti in -e	+ -d <i>arrive → arrived</i>
• verbi terminanti in -y preceduta da consonante	→ -ied <i>study → studied</i>
• verbi monosillabici terminanti con una sola consonante preceduta da una sola vocale	raddoppiano la consonante <i>stop → stopped</i>
• verbi bisillabici terminanti con una sola consonante preceduta da una sola vocale accentata	raddoppiano la consonante <i>admit → admitted</i>
• verbi terminanti in -l preceduta da una sola vocale	raddoppiano la -l <i>travel → travelled</i>

FORMA AFFERMATIVA - VERBI IRREGOLARI

La **forma affermativa** del *past simple* dei verbi irregolari ha una **forma propria** (vedi elenco dei verbi irregolari al termine di questo volume) che corrisponde alla **2a voce del paradigma**:

base form	<u>past simple</u>	<u>past participle</u>	
go	went	gone	(paradigma con tre forme diverse)
buy	bought	bought	(paradigma con due forme diverse)
cost	cost	cost	(paradigma con tre forme uguali)

FORMA NEGATIVA, INTERROGATIVA,

INTERROGATIVO-NEGATIVA , RISPOSTE BREVI, QUESTION TAGS

La forma negativa, interrogativa, interrogativo-negativa, le risposte brevi e le question tags richiedono l'uso dell'ausiliare **did** (uguale per tutte le persone).

*Did he wash the car yesterday? / He **didn't** wash the car yesterday. /*

*Didn't he wash the car yesterday? - Yes, he **did**. / No, he **didn't**.*

*He washed the car yesterday, **didn't** he? / He didn't wash the car yesterday, **did** he?*

*Did they go to the party last night? / They **didn't** go to the party last night. /*

*Didn't they go to the party last night? - Yes, they **did**. / No, they **didn't**.*

*They went to the party last night, **didn't** they? / They didn't go to the party last night, **did** they?*

Attenzione!!!

Nella forma negativa, interrogativa e interrogativo-negativa bisogna utilizzare la **forma base del verbo**.

*She **didn't phone** me last night.*

e non: *She **didn't phoned** me last night.*

*Did he **buy** a new CD yesterday?*

e non: *Did he **bought** a new CD yesterday?*

*Didn't you **pass** the exam?*

e non: *Didn't you **passed** the exam?*

Uso

Il **past simple** può corrispondere all'**imperfetto**, **passato remoto** e **passato prossimo** dell'italiano, e si usa per parlare di:

- **azioni o eventi avvenuti e conclusi in un tempo passato determinato**

They had an accident two months ago.

Hanno avuto/Ebbero un incidente due mesi fa

- **abitudini del passato ***

(in questo caso il *past simple* corrisponde all'**imperfetto italiano**)

When I was a child I ate a lot.

Quando ero bambino mangiavo molto.

Il **past simple** è generalmente accompagnato da
espressioni di tempo determinato

Vedi a
PAG. 144

Ricorda inoltre:

When I was born ... Quando sono nato/nacqui ...

When I was a child, ... Quando ero bambino ...

At the age of ... All'età di ...

* Per parlare di **abitudini del passato** (e non più del presente) si può usare la struttura

used to + forma base del verbo

When I was a child

*I **used to eat** a lot.*

Quando ero bambino

mangiavo molto.

Vedi a
PAG. 160

PRACTICE

1. Scrivi il *past simple* dei seguenti *verbi regolari*. Fai attenzione alle variazioni ortografiche.

Base form	Past simple	Base form	Past simple
➤ appear	appeared	6. travel
1. decide	7. finish
2. like	8. photocopy
3. play	9. phone
4. study	10. wash
5. quarrel	11. deny

- 2.** Uno studente distratto ha scritto il *past simple* dei seguenti *verbi regolari* in modo errato. Scrivilo in modo corretto.

Base form	Past simple	Base form	Past simple
➤ apply	applyed applied	4. admit	admited
1. visit	visitted	5. stop	stoped
2. invite	inviteed	6. enjoy	enjoied
3. die	dedy	7. marry	marryied

- 3.** Completa le frasi con il *past simple* dei *verbi regolari* forniti in ordine sparso.

stay / attend / dance / return / improve / invite / deserve / receive

- She **deserved** an award because she **danced** beautifully.
 1. We in Venice for three days, then we home.
 2. He a three months' course and he his English.
 3. Tom all his friends to his birthday party and he a lot of presents.

- 4.** Trasforma le seguenti frasi in *forma negativa, interrogativa e interrogativa negativa*.

- They invited James and Mary. **They didn't invite James and Mary.**
Did they invite James and Mary? **Didn't they invite James and Mary?**

1. She visited her cousins for the first time last week. 2. Paul phoned her last night. 3. They arrested the robbers yesterday morning. 4. Tom trained hard. 5. We faxed the information to our customers. 6. She e-mailed him the invitation to her party.

- 5.** Scrivi il *past simple* dei seguenti *verbi irregolari*.

Base form	Past simple	Base form	Past simple
➤ become	became	6. teach
1. bring	7. lose
2. buy	8. think
3. eat	9. read
4. forget	10. write
5. fly	11. drive

- 6.** Uno studente distratto ha scritto alcune forme del *past simple* in modo errato.

Indica le forme corrette (C) e quelle errate (W). Correggi gli errori.

Base form	Past simple	Base form	Past simple
➤ cost	costed (W) cost	5. cut	cutted (...)
➤ forget	forgot (C)	6. take	taked (...)
1. make	made (...)	7. write	written (...)
2. feed	feeded (...)	8. come	came (...)
3. fall	felt (...)	9. feel	fell (...)
4. swim	swum (...)	10. know	knowed (...)

1. The British army (*win*) the battle. **2.** She (*buy*) a present for her boyfriend. **3.** Paul (*lose*) his wallet yesterday. **4.** George (*take*) a bunch of flowers to Glenda in hospital. **5.** He (*drink*) three glasses of champagne. **6.** Jane (*go*) to a concert last night.

8. Rispondi con *risposte brevi*.

Yesterday I **1**) (*go*) to Chester with Don, Lucy and Alan. We **2**) (*travel*) by car. We **3**) (*leave*) at 9.30 and we **4**) (*arrive*) in Chester at about 12.00. It **5**) (*be*) time for lunch so we **6**) (*decide*) to go to a steakhouse . The food **7**) (*be*) good but I think we **8**) (*eat*) too much.
In the afternoon we **9**) (*visit*) the town and **10**) (*do*) some shopping. We **11**) (*buy*) some presents for our parents, brothers or sisters. We also **12**) (*write*) some postcards.
At about 5.30 we **13**) (*decide*) to go back home. Everything **14**) (*be*) okay till then, but half an hour later our car **15**) (*stop*) all of a sudden (*all'improvviso*). Don **16**) (*try*) to repair it but the engine **17**) (*not/start*) Fortunately a motor-cyclist **18**) (*stop*) and **19**) (*help*) us. He **20**) (*be*) a mechanic. We **21**) (*be*) lucky, **22**) (*non è vero*) we?

(b) Rispondi alle domande sul testo.

1. Where did Mary and her friends go yesterday? **2.** How did they travel? **3.** What time did they leave and what time did they arrive there? **4.** Where did they have lunch? **5.** Was the food good? **6.** What did they do in the afternoon? **7.** What time did they leave to go back home? **8.** What happened to the car? **9.** Who helped them?

11. Abbina i nomi dei personaggi alle immagini e poi scrivi *mini-dialoghi* come nell'esempio.

- (a) Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart
- (b) Albert Einstein
- (c) Dante Alighieri
- (d) Diana Spencer
- (e) John F. Kennedy
- (f) Jim Morrison

A: Who was Jim Morrison?
B: He was an American singer.
A: When was he born?
B: He was born in 1943
A: When did he die?
B: He died in 1971.

1f
American singer



2 ...
Austrian composer



3 ...
American president



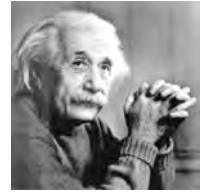
4 ...
Italian poet



5 ...
Princess of Wales



6 ...
German scientist



Jim Morrison (1943 - 1971) (1756 - 1791) (1917 - 1963) (1265 - 1321) (1961 - 1997) (1879 - 1955)

12. Fai riferimento all'esercizio precedente e scrivi 5 frasi come nell'esempio.

➤ 1. **Jim Morrison was an American singer. He was born in 1943 and died in 1971.**

13. Completa le domande con la *forma interrogativa* del *past simple*.

- 1. Who (you / see) at the meeting yesterday?
- 2. Where (they / go) last night?
- 3. When (she / lose) her watch?
- 4. Why (Tom / sell) his motorbike?
- 5. What (Tim / get) for his birthday?

14. Per ciascuna situazione scrivi domande al *past simple* alle risposte fornite. Usa le *question words* tra parentesi come negli esempi.

➤ Paolo passed the English exam.

(who?) **Who passed the English exam?**
(what?) **What did Paolo pass?**

Paolo did.
The English exam.

- 1. Susan and Mary went to the Bahamas.

(who?) ? Susan and Mary did.
(where?) ? To the Bahamas.

- 2. Manchester United won the Cup last year.

(when?) ? Last year.
(who?) ? Manchester United did.

- 3. Betty cut her finger with a knife.

(who?) ? Betty did.
(what ... with?) ? With a knife.

- 4. Mark spent a month in Spain.

(who?) ? Mark did.
(where?) ? In Spain.

- 5. Clare went to the cinema with Bob.

(who ... with?) ? With Bob.
(who?) ? Clare did.

★ C PAST SIMPLE DI TO HAVE

Forma

Affermativa	sogg. + had
Negativa	sogg. + did not (didn't) have
Interrogativa	did + sogg. + have ...?
Interrogativo-negativa	didn't + sogg. + have ...?
Risposte brevi	Yes, sogg. + did / No, sogg. + didn't
	<i>She had long hair when she was five years old.</i>
	<i>She didn't have long hair when she was five years old.</i>
	<i>Did she have long hair when she was five years old?</i>
	<i>Didn't she have long hair when she was five years old?</i>
	<i>Yes, she did. / No, she didn't.</i>

Il verbo **to have** è un verbo irregolare e come tale al **past simple** si costruisce seguendo le stesse regole dei verbi irregolari sia quando esprime possesso o relazione che nelle espressioni idiomatiche come: *to have breakfast/lunch/dinner/a good time/etc.*

Attenzione!!!

Al passato **to have** non è mai seguito da **got**.

Frase	Question tag (vero? / non è vero?)
Affermativa <i>They had a good time,</i> Si sono divertiti,	didn't + soggetto? <i>didn't they?</i> vero?
Negativa <i>They didn't have a good time,</i> Non si sono divertiti,	did + soggetto? <i>did they?</i> vero?

PRACTICE

1. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

- I didn't **have / had** many friends a few years ago.
- We **had / have** a dog three years ago.
- Did you **had / have** breakfast this morning?
- Did they **have got / have** a good time?
- Did she **has / have** lunch with Peter? - Yes, she **had / did**.

2. Trasforma le seguenti frasi nella forma indicata tra parentesi.

- She had a good time in Florida. (*interr.*)
- We had breakfast at 7:30. (*neg.*)
- You had a cup of coffee. (*interr.*)
- Did they have a big house? (*aff.*)
- He had a shower before going to bed. (*neg.*)
- He didn't have a car a few years ago. (*interr-neg.*)

3. Completa le seguenti frasi con *did you have, did, didn't, didn't have, had*.

- When I was twelve years old I a bicycle but I motorbike.
- What for dinner last night? - We caviar and champagne!
- Sorry I didn't phone you last night, but I time.
- Did Andrew have a haircut? - No, he
- My town has a sports centre now, but it a sports centre ten years ago.
- a computer last year? Yes, I

1. Completa le frasi con *am, is, are, was, were*.

1. Where you last night? 2. Where they at the moment? 3. There a lot of shops in my town now. 4. It my birthday yesterday. 5. I at home at the moment. 6. It warm and sunny last week. 7. It cloudy and cold today. 8. Brenda on holiday two weeks ago.

2. John Smith è sospettato di avere rubato in due abitazioni il giorno 17 marzo. Alla stazione di polizia un poliziotto lo sta interrogando. Completa il dialogo con la forma corretta del *past simple* o del *present simple* di *to be*.*AT THE POLICE STATION*

Policeman: So you 1) at home on Saturday morning, March the 17th.
Mr Smith: Yes, I 2) And my wife and my children 3) at home, too.
Policeman: I see. 4) they at home all morning?
Mr Smith: Well, my wife 5) out only for an hour. She always goes to the hairdresser's on Saturday mornings.
Policeman: What about Saturday afternoon? Where 6) you and your family in the afternoon?
Mr Smith: Oh, we 7) at the cinema. At the Cinecentre. You see, the weather 8) not very good, and there 9) a cartoon on, *Beauty and the Beast*. You know, the children like cartoons.
Policeman: And where 10) you on Saturday evening?
Mr Smith: I 11) at home.
Policeman: 12) your wife and children with you?
Mr Smith: Yes, they 13) I remember there 14) a football match on TV. We 15) all fond of football.
Policeman: I 16) sorry, Mr Smith. The Cinecentre 17) closed on Saturday afternoon and there 18) no football match on television on Saturday evening. You 19) under arrest.

3. Completa le frasi con il *present simple*, *present continuous* o *past simple* dei verbi tra parentesi, nella forma corretta.

1. They (*use*) to spend their summer holidays at Blackpool when they (*be*) children.
 2. (*Tom / bring*) you a souvenir when he (*come*) back from Japan?
 3. "What (*Mary / do*) at the moment?" "She (*sleep*)"
 4. Alan (*walk*) the dog in the park every day.
 5. In my free time I usually (*have*) a bike ride along the river.
 6. We (*spend*) a pleasant afternoon there even if the weather (*not / be*) very good.

4. Completa con le *question tags* e le *risposte brevi* corrette. Fai attenzione ai tempi verbali.

1. You took some photos during your stay in London,? - Yes, we
 2. She often misses the bus to school,? - Yes,
 3. Sarah isn't studying,? - No,
 4. Mark and Mandy are at the zoo,? - Yes,
 5. Garibaldi wasn't born in Rome,? - No,
 6. Charles Dickens wrote "*Oliver Twist*",? - Yes,
 7. You didn't have lunch,? - No, I

5. Replica alle affermazioni con domande adeguate utilizzando i suggerimenti forniti.

- *We arrived late at the meeting.* (*arrive*) **What time did you arrive?**
1. Mary is feeding the dog. (*give*)?
2. We slept in a hotel. (*comfortable*)?
3. Tom went to the Maldives. (*Who ... with*)?
4. Sarah goes to work by train. (*take*)?
5. I get up early. (*What time*)?

6. Completa la seguente breve favola di Esopo con il *present simple* o il *past simple* dei verbi tra parentesi alla forma corretta.

Sour Grapes

A hungry fox 1) (*try*) to reach some clusters of grapes which he 2) (*see*) hanging from a vine trained on a tree, but they 3) (*be*) too high. So he 4) (*go*) off and 5) (*comfort*) himself by saying: "They 6) (*not / be*) ripe anyhow."

In the same way some men, when they 7) (*fail*) through their own incapacity, 8) (*blame*) circumstances.



7. Riordina le battute del dialogo fornite in ordine sparso.

Situazione: Judy telefona a Mark per sapere come ha trascorso il weekend.

Mark:	Yes, speaking. (a)	1h
Judy:	Mark, it's Judy here.(b)	2...
Judy:	I'm fine thanks, and you?(c)	3...
Mark:	Yes, we did, thank you. We went to London.(d)	4...
Mark:	Oh, hello, Judy! How are you?(e)	5...
Mark:	I'm fine, too.(f)	6...
Judy:	Hello, is that Mark?(g)	7...
Mark:	5321. Hello.(h)	8...
Judy:	Did you have a nice weekend?(i)	9...
Judy:	Did you leave early?(j)	10...
Judy:	By train? Why did you go by train?(k)	11...
Mark:	Yes, we left quite early and we travelled by train. (l)	12...
Judy:	Oh, no, I didn't. I am sorry.(m)	13...
Mark:	But we're OK. Nothing happened to us.(n)	14...
Mark:	My car is broken. We had a bad accident last week. Didn't you know?(o)	15...
Judy:	I'm glad you didn't get injured.(p)	16...

A. Past continuous

B. Past simple / Past continuous

C. Used to ...

Revision: tempi verbali

★ A PAST CONTINUOUS

Forma

Affermativa	sogg. + was / were + forma in -ing del verbo
Negativa	sogg. + was / were not + (wasn't / weren't) forma in -ing del verbo
Interrogativa	was / were + sogg. + forma in -ing del verbo?
Interrogativo-negativa	wasn't / weren't + sogg. + forma in -ing del verbo?
Risposte brevi	Yes, sogg.+ was/were / No, sogg.+ wasn't/weren't
<i>She was walking towards him. / She wasn't walking towards him. Was she walking towards him? / Wasn't she walking towards him? Yes, she was. / No, she wasn't.</i>	
(Per le variazioni ortografiche della forma in -ing vedi a PAG. 93)	

Frase	Question tag (vero? / non è vero?)
Affermativa <i>He was crossing the street,</i> Lui stava attraversando la strada,	wasn't / weren't + soggetto? <i>wasn't he?</i> vero?
Negativa <i>He wasn't crossing the street,</i> Lui non stava attraversando la strada,	was / were + soggetto? <i>was he?</i> vero?

UsoIl **past continuous** si usa:

- per parlare di un'azione che era in corso di svolgimento in un momento del passato
Yesterday at 12 o'clock I was having lunch.
Ieri alle dodici stavo pranzando.
- solo con i verbi di azione (*play, drive, run, eat, drink, have breakfast, ...*) come il *present continuous*.

Tra le **espressioni di tempo** usate con il **past continuous** ricorda:
while / as mentre

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi con il *past continuous* dei verbi tra parentesi, poi volgi le frasi ottenute alla *forma negativa, interrogativa e interrogativo-negativa*.

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| ➤ <i>Pat (read) was reading a magazine.</i> | <i>Pat wasn't reading a magazine.</i> |
| <i>Was Pat reading a magazine?</i> | <i>Wasn't Pat reading a magazine?</i> |
| 1. The children (<i>play</i>) in the park. | |
| 2. She (<i>run</i>) down the street. | |
| 3. Helen (<i>water</i>) the plants. | |
| 4. Jane and her husband (<i>quarrel</i>) | |

2. Rispondi con *risposte brevi*.

- *Were you having a shower when I phoned you? - Yes, **I was**.*
1. Was Mark going into the bathroom when he slipped? - No,
 2. Were we having lunch when they arrived? - Yes,
 3. Were the students writing an essay when the bell rang? - No,
 4. Were you sleeping when I rang you? - Yes,
 5. Was it raining? - Yes,

3. Aggiungi in coda a ciascuna frase la *question tag* corretta.

- *He was reading e-mails at 9.00, **wasn't he?***
1. You weren't waiting for Susan,?
 2. They were standing at the taxi rank,?
 3. Mr Johnson was walking along Park Road,?
 4. She wasn't talking to Bob,?
 5. Tim and Mark weren't drinking beer,?

4. Scrivi ciò che Mary stava facendo nelle ore indicate.

- *7.15 get up At 7.15 she was getting up.*
- | | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. 7.30 get dressed | 4. 8.00 buy a newspaper | 7. 13.00 have lunch |
| 2. 7.35 have breakfast | 5. 9.00 work | 8. 17.40 drive back home |
| 3. 7.50 drive to work | 6. 10.00 have a break | 9. 18.40 have dinner |

5. Fai riferimento all'esercizio precedente e scrivi domande e risposte come nell'esempio.

- *7.30 / Mary / have a shower?*
A: Was Mary having a shower at 7.30?
B: No, she wasn't.
A: What was she doing?
B: She was getting dressed.
1. 7.35 / she / drive to work?
 2. 9.00 / she / have a break?
 3. 13.00 / she / drive back home?
 4. 17.40 / she / have dinner?

6. Scrivi domande adeguate alle risposte fornite.

- *A: What were you doing yesterday at five o'clock?*
B: Yesterday at five o'clock? I was working in my office.
1. A:?
B: When you saw me I was going to the station.
 2. A:?
B: No, they weren't driving home when there was the earthquake.
 3. A:?
B: Mary? She was wearing a long white dress.
 4. A:?
B: Yes, he was sleeping when you phoned.
 5. A:?
B: No, Susan wasn't making dinner when she cut herself.

★ B PAST SIMPLE / PAST CONTINUOUS

Confronta la **differenza d'uso** del **past simple** e del **past continuous**

SI USA	
PAST SIMPLE	PAST CONTINUOUS
<p>- con tutti i tipi di verbo per parlare di:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • condizione / azione accaduta e conclusa nel passato <i>It was seven o'clock and Mary got up.</i> Erano le sette e Mary si alzò. • azione breve che ha interrotto un'azione lunga in corso di svolgimento nel passato <i>I was leaving the party when John arrived.</i> Stavo lasciando la festa quando John arrivò. • azioni in successione <i>When Jane arrived, we watched TV.</i> Quando Jane arrivò, noi guardammo la televisione. (Jane arrivò e poi noi guardammo la televisione) 	<p>- solo con verbi di azione per parlare di:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • azione in corso di svolgimento in un momento del passato <i>It was seven o'clock and Mary was getting up.</i> Erano le sette e Mary si stava alzando. • azione lunga in corso di svolgimento nel passato interrotta da un'azione breve <i>I was leaving the party when John arrived.</i> Stavo lasciando la festa quando John arrivò. • azioni di una certa durata che erano in corso di svolgimento contemporaneamente <i>I was watching TV and Dad was reading the newspaper.</i> Io stavo guardando la TV e il babbo stava leggendo il giornale.

Ricorda che quando si racconta una storia si usa:

- il **past continuous** per ambientare la scena iniziale;
- il **past simple** per narrare gli eventi in successione.

The sun was shining, the children were playing happily and I was reading a novel. Suddenly I heard the sound of a helicopter just over my head.

Il sole splendeva, i bambini giocavano felicemente e io leggevo un romanzo.
All'improvviso udii il rumore di un elicottero proprio sopra la testa.

Utilizza questa **strategia**

L'imperfetto italiano può essere tradotto sia con il **past simple** che con il **past continuous**.
Usa il **past continuous** quando l'imperfetto italiano può essere sostituito da "stare + gerundio"

Attenzione!!!

Il **past continuous**, come tutti i tempi verbali progressivi, **non si usa** con i **verbi di stato**

(Vedi a **PAG.** **96** **97**)

Nota l'uso delle **espressioni di tempo**

- **when / while / as + past continuous** (azione lunga)

While I was going home I met Peter.

Mentre andavo/stavo andando a casa ho incontrato Peter.

- **when + past simple** (azione breve)

*I was going home **when I met Peter**.*

Andavo/Stavo andando a casa quando ho incontrato Peter.

PRACTICE

1. Indica quale frase esprime

- (A) azioni accadute in successione (una dopo l'altra);
(B) un'azione lunga in corso di svolgimento nel passato interrotta da un'azione breve;
(C) azioni passate di una certa durata che erano in corso di svolgimento contemporaneamente;
(D) un'azione che è accaduta e conclusa in un momento del passato;
(E) un'azione in corso di svolgimento in un momento del passato.

1. The sun was shining and the birds were singing when ... (...)
2. At 12.00 John was having lunch. (...)
3. I was having a shower when my doorbell rang. (...)
4. I heard a noise downstairs so I went to see what it was. (...)
5. He went to bed early last night because he was tired. (...)

2. Completa le frasi con il *past simple* o il *past continuous* dei verbi tra parentesi nella forma corretta.

➤ While I (go) **was going** to work I (meet) **met** an old friend.

1. Mrs Dodman's son (*fall*) and (*break*) his arm while he (*run*) in the park.
2. We (*visit*) a lot of castles while we (*have*) a holiday in France.
3. I (*not / do*) anything special when John (*phone*) me last night.
4. (*the baby / sleep*) when the baby-sitter (*arrive*) ?
5. The weather (*be*) awful. It (*rain*) heavily and a cold wind (*blow*) Suddenly a flash of lightning (*tear*) across the sky.
6. He (*walk*) back home when he (*hear*) footsteps behind him.
7. He (*work*) in the garden when a strong wind (*start*) blowing.
8. I (*cut*) my finger while I (*make*) dinner.
9. Mary (*send*) e-mails when suddenly the light (*go*) out.
10. Paul (*carry*) a heavy suitcase when he (*fall*) down the stairs.
11. Bob (*break*) into the room shouting while Susan (*do*) her homework.
12. While he (*decorate*) his room, he (*fall*) off the ladder.
13. They (*go*) down Baker Street, when suddenly they (*see*) a strange old man in front of them.
14. I (*learn*) to swim while I (*be*) on holiday in Sardinia.
15. Janet (*shake*) with fear when she (*hear*) that strange noise again.

3. Abbina adeguatamente le azioni in A alle azioni in B e costruisci frasi usando *while*, il *past simple* e il *past continuous* dei verbi tra parentesi.

➤ *The burglar broke into our flat while we were sleeping.*

A	B	
1. The burglar (<i>break</i>) into our flat	W a) we (<i>drive</i>) down to London.	1 e
2. The robber (<i>escape</i>)	H b) the police (<i>take</i>) him to prison.	2 ...
3. We (<i>have</i>) an accident	I c) I (<i>walk</i>) along Benson Street.	3 ...
4. I (<i>meet</i>) an old classmate	L d) we (<i>wait</i>) for the bus.	4 ...
5. We (<i>get</i>) soaking wet	E e) we (<i>sleep</i>). E	5 ...

4. Trasforma le frasi come nell'esempio.

➤ *I cut my finger while I was making dinner.
I was making dinner when I cut my finger.*

1. He burnt himself while he was playing with matches.
2. She saw a car accident while she was walking to school.
3. The doorbell rang while I was having a shower.
4. The telephone rang while we were having dinner.
5. I fell off the ladder while I was painting my bedroom.

5. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

1. We all **went** / **were going** to the pub last night.
2. She **ate** / **was eating** breakfast when the phone **rang** / **was ringing**.
3. We **were taking** / **took** some great photos when we **were being** / **were** in Florida.
4. At 9 o' clock this morning I **slept** / **was sleeping**.
5. I **met** / **was meeting** Jenny yesterday morning in front of the supermarket.

6. Completa il testo con il *past simple* o il *past continuous* dei verbi tra parentesi.

Yesterday morning I 1) (*get up*) at 6.30 as usual. While I 2) (*have*) a bath, the phone 3) (*ring*) I 4) (*go*) to answer but there 5) (*be*) no reply. While I 6) (*go*) back to the bathroom, I 7) (*slip*) on the floor and I 8) (*hurt*) my hand. After the bath I 9) (*have*) breakfast. While I 10) (*have*) a nice cup of tea, I 11) (*drop*) it all over my trousers. I 12) (*change*) but it 13) (*be*) late, so I 14) (*go*) to work without finishing my breakfast. I 15) (*be*) at the bus stop when I 16) (*realize*) that I 17) (*have*) no money for the ticket, so I 18) (*decide*) to walk. While I 19) (*cross*) Chester Road, a cyclist 20) (*run*) over me. Nothing too serious but I 21) (*hurt*) my leg. I 22) (*lie*) on the ground when a car 23) (*drive*) over my hat. What an unlucky day!

7. Una vecchia signora ha assistito ad un incidente tra due auto e viene interrogata dalla polizia come testimone del fatto. Completa il dialogo con le battute fornite in ordine sparso (P = policeman ; L = lady).

P: (1)	a) I see. How fast was the car in front of you going when the accident happened?
L: Well--- I was driving home from the shopping centre. It was about 11.00 a.m. and there was a red car in front of me. We were both driving down Portland Road when a small blue car shot out of a side road right in front of the red car. The driver of the red car tried to stop, but it was impossible. It was too late and he ran into the blue car.	b) And how fast were you going , Madam?
P: (2)	c) How can you be so sure? Were you looking at the speedometer?
L: I can't say exactly, but I think he was going just as fast as me.	d) So, Mrs Cummings. Could you please tell us what you were doing when you saw the accident?
P: (3)	e) Are you sure of that?
L: 30 miles an hour. Certainly no faster than that.	1... 2... 3... 4... 5...
P: (4)	
L: Of course I am.	
P: (5)	
L: Not exactly. I was looking at the road ahead. But I know I never go faster than that on that road . There is a speed limit.	

8. Leggi il testo e formula domande o risposte.

A Strange Meeting

One evening, while I was walking home from the pub, something strange happened. I was near the old castle and I was smoking a cigarette when I saw a dazzling light not far from the tower of the castle. A few minutes later, I noticed an extraordinary being who was coming towards me. He was wearing a sort of helmet and a funny metal jacket. He was quite thin and his skin had an unnatural green colour.

He walked up to me. He certainly was an alien. I was terrified but the strange being looked calm and friendly. I asked him: " Who are you? ". He answered in my own language and said he was a Martian. While he was talking, he kept on looking at the castle and at me. He asked if that was my house and explained that he was looking for a big house for his family. There was no water on Mars and he was looking for another planet where they could live.

I thought I was dreaming or maybe I had drunk too much at the pub.

1. What was the man doing when the strange event happened?
2.? A dazzling light.
3. What else did he notice a few minutes later?
4.? A helmet and a metal jacket.
5. What did he look like?.....
6. Where did he say he was from?
7. What was he looking for on Earth?
8. Why ?.....
9.? He thought that he was dreaming or maybe he had drunk too much at the pub.

Forma

Affermativa	sogg. + used	+ infinito con to
Negativa	sogg. + didn't use	+ infinito con to
Interrogativa	Did + sogg. + use	+ infinito con to ...?
Interrogativo-negativa	Didn't + sogg. + use + infinito con to ...?	
Risposte brevi	Yes, sogg. + did . / No, sogg. + didn't .	
	<i>I used to play with dolls. / I didn't use to play with dolls.</i>	
	<i>Did you use to play with dolls? / Didn't you use to play with dolls?</i>	
	<i>Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.</i>	

Frase	Question tag (vero?/non è vero?)
Affermativa <i>They used to work hard,</i>	didn't + sogg.? <i>didn't they?</i>
Negativa <i>They didn't use to work hard,</i>	did + sogg.? <i>did they?</i>

Uso

Used + infinito **con to** può essere usato al posto del *past simple* per parlare di **abitudini del passato** (e non più del presente). Traduce l'imperfetto italiano / ero solito / avevo l'abitudine di ...

I used to return home very late.
Ritornavo/Ero solito ritornare a casa molto tardi.
oppure
I returned home very late.

Forma alternativa
Anche il modale **would** può essere usato per parlare di **abitudini del passato**. In questo caso è necessario esprimere sempre il riferimento al tempo.
When I was eighteen I would return home very late.
Quando avevo diciotto anni ero solito tornare a casa molto tardi.

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi con la forma corretta di *used to* e i verbi tra parentesi.

- *I (work) **used to work** for a building firm. Now I am unemployed.*
1. We (*live*) in Los Angeles but now we live in San Francisco.
 2. I (*not / eat*) meat because I was vegetarian. Now I'm not vegetarian any more.
 3. I (*go*) jogging, but then I had an accident and I can't go jogging any more.
 4. (*Mark / eat*) a lot of sweets when he was a child?

2. Completa con *risposte brevi* o *question tags*.

1. Did he use to go to bed early when he was five? - Yes,
2. She didn't use to stay up late,?
3. Did you use to go dancing when you were young? - No, I
4. They used to play tennis a lot,?
5. You didn't use to eat tomatoes,?

3. Cinque anni fa **Mary** era ancora studentessa all'università. Ora lavora come impiegata per un'agenzia di assicurazioni.

Usa le informazioni fornite per confrontare le abitudini del passato con il presente, come nell'esempio. Coniuga i verbi correttamente.

➤ *Five years ago Mary used to go to university.*

Now she works for an insurance company.

five years ago	now
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • go to university • study hard • go to university by bus • wear casual clothes • have little money 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • work for an insurance company • work hard • go to work by car • wear elegant clothes • have a lot of money 

4. Fai riferimento all'esercizio precedente e costruisci *mini-dialoghi* come nell'esempio.

➤ A: *Did Mary use to work for an insurance company five years ago?*

B: *No, she didn't. She used to go to university.*

5. Prima di scrivere la sua autobiografia Peter Sway ha scritto alcuni appunti sulla sua infanzia. Fai riferimento alle sue annotazioni e scrivi frasi usando

He used to... / He didn't use to ... / He never used to ...

➤ ***He used to live in a tower block.***

KIDS OF THE SIXTIES
Growing up in the sixties by Peter Sway

Family life <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - lived in a tower block - didn't get on with my parents 	School <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - went to a local comprehensive school - didn't wear a uniform like the other boys did 	Holidays <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - went to Blackpool every summer with my parents - never went abroad for a holiday
Clothes and appearance <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - had short hair - wore an anorak and jeans 	Friends <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - was a member of a street gang - didn't go out with girls until I was 15 	Free time <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - went to a lot of rock concerts - never watched TV

SENTENCE TRANSFORMATION (PET)

6. Completa la seconda frase in modo che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando non più di tre parole.

➤ *When I was a child I swapped comics in the playground after school.*

When I was a child I used to swap comics in the playground after school.

1. At the age of sixteen Tom drove a moped.

When Tom was sixteen he a moped.

2. When I lived in London I would have tea for breakfast. Now I have coffee.

When I lived in London I tea for breakfast. Now I have coffee.

3. Bob didn't study very hard when he was at high-school.

Bob didn't very hard when he was at high-school.

MULTIPLE CHOICE

1. Scegli l'alternativa corretta.

- *We C that group in Rome last year.*
A were seeing **B are seeing** **C saw**
- 1.** First he had dinner then he ... TV.
A watched **B was watching** **C is watching**
- 2.** John was listening to music when Paul ...
A was coming in **B came in** **C comes in**
- 3.** My grandfather often ... old films.
A is watching **B watches** **C was watching**
- 4.** Peter never ... go abroad for a holiday when he was a teenager.
A didn't use to **B didn't** **C used to**
- 5.** Susan was making the beds while Alan ... the grass in the garden.
A cut **B cuts** **C was cutting**
- 6.** What time ... you leave school yesterday?
A do **B did** **C have**
- 7.** Does Bob ... at the weekend?
A work **B works** **C working**
- 8.** Does Jane live in New York? - Yes, she ...
A does **B doesn't** **C is**
- 9.** My sister ... me this top when she was in Spain.
A buys **B bought** **C was buying**
- 10.** Who ... to the concert with?
A went **B was going** **C did you go**

2. Coniuga i verbi tra parentesi al tempo e forma corretti (*present simple, present continuous, past simple, past continuous*).

- 1.** (you / be) at the rock concert last night? - Yes, we (be)
.....
- 2.** I (like) science fiction films. There (be) a good one on TV last night. (you / see) it?
- 3.** Can you turn the TV down a bit? I (do) my homework and I can't concentrate.
- 4.** They (have) dinner when I (ring), so I (call) back later.
- 5.** I (try) to phone Mary lots of times yesterday, but nobody (answer)
- 6.** Jeremy is a lawyer. He (advise) people about the law.
- 7.** Ted is a teacher, but he (work) as a waiter at the moment.
- 8.** Sharon (use) to wear glasses but she doesn't anymore.
- 9.** Yesterday Jane (go) shopping but I couldn't go with her because I (not / feel) well.
- 10.** I (write) you from Madrid. I (be) here on holiday with Tom and we (have) a fantastic time.

3. Completa il racconto con i verbi tra parentesi al tempo corretto (*present simple, present continuous, past simple, past continuous*).

THE WOMAN IN WHITE



It 1) (*be*) a fine Sunday morning in June. Ted 2) (*be*) in the garden. He 3) (*play*) with his ball when suddenly he 4) (*see*) a woman standing in front of him. She 5) (*wear*) a long white dress and 6) (*hold*) a bouquet of flowers.

"Good morning," the woman 7) (*say*) kindly. "I 8) (*look*) for John Sway. 9) (*he / be*) in?"

"I 10) (*be*) sorry, madam," 11) (*say*) Ted, "but there 12) (*be*) no one called John Sway in this house".

"Oh, well, maybe I 13) (*come*) to the wrong house," 14) (*say*) the woman. Then she 15) (*walk*) towards the back garden. "Madam, you 16) (*go*) the wrong way!" 17) (*say*) Ted.

But the woman 18) (*disappear*) round the corner of the house. Ted 19) (*follow*) her, but when he 20) (*get*) to the back garden, the woman 21) (*not / be*) there. Ted 22) (*be*) puzzled. He 23) (*go*) into the house where his mother 24) (*make*) lunch. "Mum," he 25) (*say*) , " 26) (*we / know*) anyone called John Sway?" His mum 27) (*look*) at him in amazement. " 28) (*you / say*) John Sway? That 29) (*be*) my grandfather's name. He 30) (*die*) a long time ago, long before you 31) born, and so did my grandmother. Why?"

Ted 32) (*tell*) his mother about the woman in white. "Today 33) (*be*) the 22nd of June, isn't it? It 34) (*be*) my grandparents' wedding anniversary." Ted's mother 35) (*show*) him an old photo of her grandparents' wedding day. The woman in the photo 36) (*be*) the same woman Ted had seen in the garden. She 37) (*wear*) the same white dress and 38) (*have*) the same bouquet of flowers in her hands.

Grammar and practice

A. Avverbi di modo

B. Comparativo e superlativo relativo
di maggioranza con aggettiviC. Comparativo e superlativo relativo
di maggioranza con avverbi,
sostantivi e dopo un verbo

★ A AVVERBI DI MODO

Gli avverbi di modo si formano nella maggior parte dei casi dagli aggettivi	aggettivo →	avverbio
• con la maggior parte degli aggettivi + -ly	<i>quick</i> veloce	<i>quickly</i> velocemente
• con aggettivi terminanti in -y preceduta da consonante -y + -ily	<i>happy</i> felice	<i>happily</i> felicemente
Eccezioni:		-----
• con aggettivi terminanti in -le e + -y	<i>dry</i> secco	<i>dryly</i> seccamente
• con aggettivi terminanti in -ic + -ally	<i>shy</i> timido	<i>shyly</i> timidamente
	<i>simple</i> semplice	<i>simply</i> semplicemente
	<i>logic</i> logico	<i>logically</i> logicamente

Attenzione!!!

- Alcuni avverbi hanno la stessa forma dell'aggettivo corrispondente
- L'avverbio di **good** cambia dalla radice

aggettivo →	avverbio
<i>fast</i> veloce	<i>fast</i> velocemente
<i>hard</i> duro	<i>hard</i> duramente
<i>high</i> alto	<i>high</i> in alto
<i>straight</i> dritto	<i>straight</i> dritto
<i>good</i> buono	<i>well</i> bene

Attenzione!!!

Non confondere gli aggettivi con gli avverbi di modo. Confronta gli esempi:
Mr Evans is a hard worker.
 Il signor Evans è un duro/gran lavoratore.
Mr Evans works hard.
 Il signor Evans lavora duramente/molto.

L'avverbio **hard** presenta anche la forma **hardly** che però ha il significato di "a mala pena"

He could hardly speak.

Riuscì a mala pena a parlare.

Ricorda: **hardly ever** = quasi mai

PRACTICE

1. Scrivi di fianco all'aggettivo l'avverbio corrispondente.

aggettivo	avverbio	aggettivo	avverbio
> <i>necessary</i>	<i>necessarily</i>	comfortable
dangerous	fast
brave	careful
heavy	fantastic
good	hard /

2. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta (aggettivo o avverbio?).

- *He is a very **trustful / trustfully** person.*
1. We arrived late because Mark drove very **slow / slowly**.
 2. Early computers were very **slow / slowly**.
 3. Their house was built very **bad / badly**.
 4. The workers did a very **bad / badly** job.
 5. Mark read the instructions **careful / carefully**.

3. Completa le frasi con *good* o *well* (aggettivo o avverbio?).

1. He's very at foreign languages.
2. You look pale. What's the matter with you? - I'm not very
3. Mr Jordan is a teacher.
4. Mark is doing at school.
5. I can swim, but not very

4. Abbina il verbo al sostantivo corrispondente e poi trasforma le frasi sottostanti come nell'esempio.

Verbo	Sostantivo	
1. <i>dance</i>	a) tennis player	1 d
2. <i>play tennis</i>	b) teacher	2...
3. <i>play the piano</i>	c) pianist	3...
4. <i>work</i>	d) dancer	4...
5. <i>teach</i>	e) worker	5...

- 1. *She's a good dancer.* ***She dances well.***
2. Mark is a perfect tennis player.
 3. Jane is a skilful pianist.
 4. Paul and John are hard workers.
 5. Mr Brown is a bad teacher.

5. Completa le frasi con l'avverbio corrispondente all'aggettivo tra parentesi.

- *She sat on a chair and waited (**patient**) ***patiently***.*

1. Could you speak (*slow*) , please?
2. He often has accidents. He drives *very* (*dangerous*)
3. She plays the piano (*wonderful*)
4. He answered (*shy*)
5. They can run *very* (*fast*)
6. That man always speaks (*honest*)

6. Completa adeguatamente l'estratto, tratto da un racconto, con gli avverbi adeguati forniti in ordine sparso.

Lightning flashed across the sky. It was late at night and it was raining
 1) Tom was driving 2) along the narrow country road. 3) his car engine died.
 "Blast!" he said 4) He got out of the car and ran
 5) towards a huge building at the end of the road.

*suddenly
carefully
quickly
heavily
angrily*

★ **B** COMPARATIVO E SUPERLATIVO RELATIVO DI MAGGIORANZA con aggettivi

Forma

aggettivo	comparativo (più ... di)	superlativo (il più ... di / tra)
	+ -er ... (than)	the ... -est (of / in)
con una sillaba tall old	taller older	the tallest the oldest
con due sillabe terminanti in -y, -e -le, -er, -ow happy simple clever narrow	happier simpler cleverer narrower	the happiest the simplest the cleverest the narrowest
tutti gli altri tired expensive	more ... (than) more tired more expensive	the most ... (of / in) the most tired the most expensive

Gli aggettivi con **due sillabe** terminanti in **-le, -er, -ow** possono formare il comparativo e il superlativo di maggioranza anche con **more** e **the most**

• variazioni ortografiche
 - agli aggettivi monosillabici terminanti in **-e** si aggiungono rispettivamente solo **-r** e **-st** (*large - larger - the largest*).
 - gli aggettivi monosillabici terminanti in consonante preceduta da una sola vocale accentata **raddoppiano la consonante** (*big - bigger - the biggest*).
 - gli aggettivi che terminano in **-y** preceduta da **consonante** **perdonano la y** e formano il comparativo in **-ier** e il superlativo in **-iest**
(noisy - noisier - the noisiest)

• irregolari

good	better	the best
buono	migliore	il migliore
bad	worse	the worst
cattivo	peggiore	il peggiore
far	farther/further	the farthest / the furthest
lontano	più lontano, ulteriore	il più lontano, l'ulteriore

• 2° termine di paragone	
dopo i comparativi: than	<i>Michael is taller than Bob.</i> Michael è più alto di Bob.
dopo i superlativi: - of (o anche among = tra più di due) - in se il 2° termine di paragone è rappresentato da un luogo Particolarità - on davanti a <i>earth</i> (terra) e <i>island</i> (isola) - that (che può essere sottinteso) se il secondo termine è una frase relativa	<i>Mark is the tallest of the three boys.</i> Mark è il più alto dei tre ragazzi. <i>Mexico City is one of the biggest cities in the world.</i> Mexico city è una delle città più grandi del mondo. <i>Azizia is the hottest place on earth.</i> Azizia è il luogo più caldo della terra. <i>This is the best book (that) I have ever read.</i> Questo è il miglior libro che io abbia mai letto.

Uso

<ul style="list-style-type: none">Il comparativo si usa generalmente per confrontare due entità <p><i>This pullover is more expensive than that one.</i> Questo pullover è più costoso di quello. - A volte than può essere seguito da frase come: <i>than I expected, than I thought, ...</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Il superlativo relativo si usa per confrontare un'entità con il gruppo di appartenenza <p><i>This pullover is the most expensive of all the pullovers in the shop.</i> Questo pullover è il più costoso di tutti i pullover del negozio.</p>
---	--

PRACTICE

1. Completa la tabella con i *comparativi* e i *superlativi di maggioranza* mancanti.

aggettivo	comparativo di magg.	superlativo di magg.
1. cheap	cheaper
2. big	bigger
3. good	the best
4. bad	worse
5. exciting	more exciting
6. lucky	the luckiest
7. far	farther / further /
8. simple	simpler / more simple /

2. Completa le frasi con il *comparativo di maggioranza* degli aggettivi tra parentesi.

- *London is (polluted) **more polluted** than Cambridge.*
1. This hotel is (*comfortable*) than the one we stayed at last year.
 2. Jennifer is (*slim*) than Janet.
 3. My sore throat is (*bad*) today than yesterday.
 4. I think German is (*difficult*) than English.
 5. Living in the country is (*relaxing*) than living in a big city.
 6. This city is (*dirty*) than I expected.
 7. The place was (*far*) than we thought.

3. Completa le frasi con il *comparativo di maggioranza* come nell'esempio.

- *My suitcase is heavy but yours is **heavier**.*
1. Betty is pretty but Brenda is even
 2. Rabbits are fast but antelopes are
 3. Lake Maggiore is big but Lake Garda is
 4. Sharon is beautiful but Julia is
 5. This book is good but that one is even

4. Completa le domande con il *superlativo di maggioranza* degli aggettivi tra parentesi.

- *Which is (large) **the largest** desert in the world?*
1. Which is (*high*) mountain in the world?
 2. Which is (*long*) river in the world?
 3. Where is (*dry*) place in the world?
 4. Which is (*small*) country in the world?
 5. Which is (*hot*) place in the world?
 6. Which is the (*deep*) ocean in the world?

5. Completa le frasi con il *superlativo di maggioranza* come nell'esempio.

➤ *This suitcase is heavy. I think it's **the heaviest** of the three.*

1. Cricket is very popular in England. I think it's one of sports.
2. That watch is very expensive. It's one of things in the shop.
3. That dress is beautiful. It's dress in the shop window.
4. This street is very noisy. It's street in the city.
5. Ireland is a wet country. It's one of countries in the world.
6. Winter is a cold season. It's of all seasons.
7. This village isn't very large, but it is on this island.
8. Acatama desert is a very dry place. I think it's one of places on earth.

6. Completa le frasi come nell'esempio.

➤ *It's such a boring book. It's **the most boring book** I've ever read.*

1. This is such a delicious cake. It's cake I've ever eaten.
2. It's such a strange story. It's story I've ever heard.
3. This is such a delicate shampoo. It's shampoo I've ever used.
4. "Billy Elliot" is such a good film. It's film I've ever seen.

7. Descrivi le immagini usando i corretti *comparativi e superlativi di maggioranza* degli aggettivi forniti come nell'esempio.



Robert / 55



Peter / 35



John / 23

old

Robert is **older** than Peter.

Peter is **older** than John.

Robert is **the oldest** of the three.



Susan / 52



Betty / 25



Jennifer / 17

young

Jennifer.....

Betty.....

Jennifer



car A / 130 mph



car B / 120 mph



car C / 80 mph

fast

Car B

Car A

Car A



ring A / \$1,000



ring B / \$700



ring C / \$300

expensive

Ring A

Ring B

Ring A

8. Completa le frasi con il *comparativo* o il *superlativo di maggioranza* degli aggettivi tra parentesi.

1. Mount Everest is much (*high*) than Mont Blanc.
2. Which is (*good*) restaurant in this town?
3. Sharon is (*pretty*) girl of all the girls I know.
4. Today the weather is (*bad*) than yesterday.
5. That's (*bad*) film I've ever seen.
6. I think Milan is (*polluted*) than Bologna.
7. Which is (*polluted*) city in the world?
8. They say that the fox is (*cunning*) animal of all.

9. Usa le parole fornite per scrivere *mini-dialoghi* come nell'esempio.

➤ *coat / expensive / cheap*

A: This coat is too expensive. Have you got a cheaper one?

B: Sorry. This is the cheapest we've got.

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. skirt / short / long | 3. suit / big / small |
| 2. pullover / small / big | 4. shirt / tight / large |

10. Completa le frasi con *than, of, in*.

1. The Dirty Duck is the most famous pub Stratford.
2. The Mississippi is longer the Po.
3. New York is one of the biggest cities the world.
4. Michael is the tallest his brothers.
5. Tokyo is more populated Rome.
6. I think Beckham is the best player the world.
7. Which is the largest city Italy?
8. Milan is more populated now it was twenty years ago.
9. Which is the highest building the USA?
10. Trains in Britain are more expensive buses.

11. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

- *Sarah is expecting a baby so she's looking for a larger flat / the largest flat.*
1. I hope the next test is **the easiest / easier** than this one.
 2. She's luckier **than / of** her sister.
 3. We need a **larger / largest** fridge.
 4. This exercise is **more difficult / the most difficult** than I expected.
 5. My town is cleaner **in / than** Los Angeles.
 6. Rome is **more fascinating / the most fascinating** city I've ever visited.

12. Correggi l'errore contenuto in ciascuna frase.

➤ <i>Los Angeles is largest than my town.</i>	larger
1. Los Angeles is noisyer than my town.
2. Is Los Angeles most populated than New York?
3. Susan is more pretty than Monica.
4. Which is the most small country in the world?
5. Are these shoes expensiver than those ones?
6. Which is the wetter place in the world?
7. This is the worse book I've ever read.
8. Who is the prettiest girl of the three?
9. This is the most powerful car than I have ever driven.
10. Tom is cleverer that I thought.

★ C

COMPARATIVO E SUPERLATIVO RELATIVO DI MAGGIORANZA**con avverbi, sostantivi e dopo un verbo**

		avverbio	comparativo di magg.	superlativo rel. di magg.
avverbi uguali agli aggettivi corrispondenti		hard fast late early	harder faster later earlier	the hardest the fastest the latest the earliest
avverbi terminanti in -ly		clearly dangerously	more clearly more dangerously	the most clearly the most dangerously
irregolari		well badly	better worse	the best the worst
<i>He runs fast.</i>				Lui corre velocemente.
<i>He runs faster than me.</i>				Lui corre più velocemente di me.
<i>He runs the fastest of all.</i>				Lui corre più velocemente di tutti.
<i>He drives dangerously.</i>				Lui guida pericolosamente.
<i>He drives more dangerously than me.</i>				Lui guida più pericolosamente di me.
<i>He drives the most dangerously of all.</i>				Lui guida più pericolosamente di tutti.

	Sostantivi singolari e plurali	Dopo un verbo
Comparativo di maggioranza	more ... (than) <i>He has more money than me.</i> Lui ha più danaro di me. <i>He has more CDs than me.</i> Lui ha più CD di me.	more (than) <i>He earns more than me.</i> Lui guadagna più di me.
Superlativo di maggioranza	the most ... (of/in) <i>He has the most money of all.</i> Lui ha più danaro di tutti. <i>He has the most CDs of all.</i> Lui ha più CD di tutti.	the most (of/in) <i>He earns the most of all.</i> Lui guadagna più di tutti.

PRACTICE

1. Completa i *mini-dialoghi* con il *comparativo o il superlativo di maggioranza* degli avverbi tra parentesi, come nell'esempio.

- A: Peter runs (*slowly*) **more slowly than me.**
B: Yes. Actually, he runs **the most slowly of all of us.**
1. A: Alan gets up (*early*) than me.
B: Yes. Actually, he gets up
2. A: Robert plays football (*badly*) than me.
B: Yes. Actually, he plays football
3. A: Paola speaks English (*fluently*) than me.
B: Yes. Actually, she speaks English
4. A: Tom learns (*quickly*) than me.
B: Yes. Actually, he learns
5. A: Alan drives (*fast*) than me.
B: Yes. Actually, he drives
6. A: Susan works (*hard*) than me.
B: Yes. Actually, she works
7. A: Jane speaks French (*well*) than me.
B: Yes. Actually, she speaks French

2. Inserisci correttamente *more* o *the most*.

1. There are mistakes in Tom's test than in Paul's.
2. There are a lot of mistakes in Susan's test. She has made mistakes of all.
3. I think Alan is quite rich. He certainly has money than me. Probably he has money of all of us.
4. Tom earns than Peter, but John earns than Tom, so John earns of the three.
5. He reads than me.
6. Andrew reads a lot. He reads of all the students in the class.
7. The beach was crowded. There were people than we expected.
8. Richard is a mobile-phone addict. He uses it of all of us.
9. We eat at dinner than at lunch.
10. I have free time than my friend Ricky.

3. Fai riferimento alle informazioni fornite e completa la descrizione con i corretti *comparativi* e *superlativi di maggioranza*.



Mark



David



James

Age	18	19	22
Height	1.78 metres	1.82 metres	1.85 metres
Sports	tennis (once a week)	football (twice a week) tennis (once a week)	rugby (once a week) football (once a week) swimming (twice a week)
Hobbies	reading comics	playing computer games / reading science fiction novels / astrology	collecting stamps / listening to music / playing the guitar / reading adventure novels
Foreign languages	German and French (not very well)	a little French	French, German (quite well), a little Chinese

David, aged nineteen, is **1) (old)** than Mark who is eighteen years old. He is also **2) (tall)** than Mark and does **3)** sport than him. David has a lot of hobbies, too. He plays computer games, reads science fiction novels and is interested in astrology. He has **4)** hobbies than Mark, who only likes reading comics. On the other hand, Mark can speak **5)** foreign languages than David. He can speak German and French while David can only speak a little French.

James, aged twenty-two, is **6) (old)** and **7) (tall)** of the three. He is also **8) (active)** of the three. He does **9)** sport and has **10)** hobbies. He is also good at languages. He can speak French and German **11) (good)** than Mark, and a little Chinese too.

Grammar and practice

- A. Comparativo di uguaglianza
 B. Comparativo e superlativo di minoranza

- C. Costruzioni particolari con comparativi e superlativi
 D. Rafforzativi dei comparativi e dei superlativi
Revision: comparativi e superlativi

★ A COMPARATIVO DI UGUAGLIANZA
con aggettivi, avverbi, sostantivi e dopo un verbo

Forma

Comparativo di uguaglianza	Aggettivi e avverbi	Sostantivi singolari	Sostantivi plurali	Dopo un verbo
	as* ... as <i>as tall as</i> <i>as clearly as</i>	as much ... as <i>as much money as</i>	as many ... as <i>as many people as</i>	as much as <i>He earns as much as me.</i>

*Nelle frasi negative anche **so ... as**
John isn't so/as tall as Alan.

Ricorda anche: **the same ... as**
*Your hair is **the same** colour **as** mine.*
 I tuoi capelli sono dello stesso colore dei miei.

Uso

Il **comparativo di uguaglianza** si usa per dire che due entità o situazioni sono/non sono uguali o simili.

★ B COMPARATIVO E SUPERLATIVO DI MINORANZA
con aggettivi, avverbi, sostantivi e dopo un verbo

Forma

	Aggettivi e avverbi	Sostantivi singolari	Sostantivi plurali	Dopo un verbo
Comparativo di minoranza	less ... (than) <i>less expensive</i> <i>less clearly</i>	less ... (than) <i>less money</i>	fewer* ... (than) <i>fewer people</i>	less (than) <i>He studies less than me.</i>
Superlativo di minoranza	the least ... (of/in) <i>the least expensive</i> <i>the least clearly</i>	the least ... (of/in) <i>the least money</i>	the fewest... (of/in) <i>the fewest people</i>	the least (of/in) <i>He studies the least of all.</i>

(* la tendenza attuale è quella di utilizzare *less*, al posto di *fewer*, anche con i sostantivi plurali)

Uso

Il **comparativo e il superlativo di minoranza** non sono molto usati. Generalmente si preferisce utilizzare il **comparativo di uguaglianza in frase negativa** al posto del comparativo di minoranza o il **comparativo di maggioranza di significato opposto**.

This machine is less noisy than that one. → *This machine isn't as noisy as that one.*
This car is less fast than that one. → *This car is slower than that one.*

La stessa cosa vale per il superlativo.

This car is the least fast of the three. → *This car is the slowest of the three.*

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi con il *comparativo di uguaglianza* degli aggettivi tra parentesi.

- *Tom is (obstinate) as obstinate as a mule.* 3. He is (*fat*) a pig.
1. Susan is (*blind*) a bat. 4. Betty is (*sweet*) pie.
2. She is (*gentle*) a lamb. 5. The water today is (*cold*) ice.

2. Trasforma le frasi in forma negativa usando il *comparativo di uguaglianza* al posto del comparativo di maggioranza, come nell'esempio.

➤ *Aunt Mary is healthier than uncle John.* ***Uncle John isn't as / so healthy as aunt Mary.***

1. Football is more popular than tennis. 5. This ring is more expensive than this watch.
2. Paul is more intelligent than Kate. 6. London is more populated than Milan.
3. Paris is bigger than Rome. 7. The shirt is cheaper than the dress.
4. The book is more interesting than the film. 8. George is stronger than Roger.

3. Trasforma le frasi in forma negativa usando il *comparativo di uguaglianza* al posto del comparativo di minoranza, come nell'esempio.

➤ *This museum is less interesting than the one we visited yesterday.*
This museum isn't as/so interesting as the one we visited yesterday.

1. Lions are less dangerous than tigers.
2. Rugby is less popular in Italy than in Wales.
3. Adventure films are less exciting than horror films.
4. Silver is less precious than gold.
5. Aunt Mary is less healthy now than she used to be.

4. Completa le frasi con il corretto *comparativo di uguaglianza* utilizzando le parole tra parentesi (aggettivo, avverbio, sostantivo singolare o sostantivo plurale?).

1. Britain isn't Sweden. (*big*)
2. She doesn't dance Carla Fracci. (*well*)
3. I haven't got you. (*books*)
4. He studies me. (*hard*)
5. I haven't got Tom. (*money*)
6. Susan's got Lucy. (*friends*)
7. These seats aren't those seats over there. (*comfortable*)

5. Completa la seconda frase con *as much* o *as many*.

1. He ate a lot of meat. I only ate a little.
I didn't eat meat as him.
2. She wrote five postcards. I wrote two.
I didn't write postcards as her.
3. We study three hours every afternoon. They study two hours.
They don't study hours as us.
4. Colin drank a lot at the party last night. Bob didn't drink much.
Bob didn't drink as Colin at the party last night.
5. I have a lot of free time. Nick has a lot of free time, too.
Nick has free time as me.

-
6. Usa le parole fornite in ordine sparso per completare le frasi con *the same ... as*.

colour / height / hobby / age / day

- *Both Bill and Tom were born on 18th December. Bill's birthday is on **the same day as** Tom's.*
1. Mary and Barbara were both born in March 1990. Mary is Barbara.
 2. We both like playing chess. You've got me.
 3. We both have got brown hair. Your hair is mine.
 4. Jennifer and Jane are both 1 metre 72. Jennifer is Jane.
7. Trasforma le frasi usando il *comparativo di maggioranza* dell'aggettivo di significato opposto al posto del comparativo di minoranza come nell'esempio.
- *The skirt is less expensive than the dress. (*cheap*) **The skirt is cheaper than the dress.***
1. Tom is less lazy than James. (*active*)
 2. This documentary is less interesting than I thought. (*boring*)
 3. The test was less difficult than I expected. (*easy*)
 4. This suitcase is less heavy than I thought. (*light*)
8. Completa le frasi correttamente con *less* o *the least* per esprimere il *comparativo* o il *superlativo di minoranza* degli aggettivi.
1. Mary is active than her sister.
 2. John is active of his schoolmates.
 3. Here are a banana, a biscuit and a big steak. Which is nutritious of the three?
 4. Here are a Ferrari and a Punto. The Punto is certainly powerful than the Ferrari.
 5. Which is expensive of these pullovers?
9. Completa le frasi correttamente con *less, the least, fewer, the fewest*.
1. George studies than Paul.
 2. Barbara has friends than Sarah.
 3. I read novels than magazines.
 4. Jane's husband talks than her.
 5. Well done, Tom! You've made mistakes of all.
 6. I use the mobile-phone very little. I use it of all in my family.
 7. I don't spend much on phonecalls. I spend than my brother.
-
- SENTENCE TRANSFORMATION (PET)**
10. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima, usando non più di tre parole.
1. My scooter is less expensive than yours.
My scooter isn't yours.
 2. For our holidays we spent less than you.
For our holidays we didn't spend you.
 3. The north is wetter than the south.
The south isn't the north.
 4. Which is the cheapest dish on the menu?
Which is the on the menu?
 5. There are fewer people on the cruise this year than last year.
There aren't on the cruise this year as last year.

★ C COSTRUZIONI PARTICOLARI CON COMPARATIVI E SUPERLATIVI

<p>sempre più / sempre meno comparativo + and + comparativo</p>	<p><i>It is getting hotter and hotter.</i> Sta diventando sempre più caldo. <i>The Earth is getting more and more polluted.</i> La Terra sta diventando sempre più inquinata. <i>This book is becoming less and less interesting.</i> Questo libro sta diventando sempre meno interessante.</p>
<p>più ...più / meno...meno / più...meno the + comparativo ... the + comparativo</p>	<p><i>The more you eat, the fatter you get.</i> Più mangi più diventi grasso. <i>The less you spend, the better it is.</i> Meno spendi meglio è. <i>The more I study, the fewer mistakes I make.</i> Più studio meno errori faccio.</p>

PRACTICE

1. Replica alle affermazioni seguendo l'esempio.

➤ *George is too tall.* **Yes, he's getting taller and taller.**

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| <p>1. This town is very dangerous.</p> | <p>4. She's so depressed.</p> |
| <p>2. He's very strong.</p> | <p>5. Jane is too thin.</p> |
| <p>3. The weather's bad.</p> | <p>6. That actor's very popular.</p> |

2. Costruisci frasi seguendo gli esempi.

➤ *Tom / get / clever (+)*
➤ *My job / get / rewarding (-)*

Tom is getting cleverer and cleverer.
My job is getting less and less rewarding.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1. The sight / become / impressive (+)</p> | <p>5. His pronunciation / get / good (+)</p> |
| <p>2. The situation / get / bad (+)</p> | <p>6. George / become / reliable (-)</p> |
| <p>3. Jennifer / get / attractive (+)</p> | <p>7. The streets / get / dirty (+)</p> |
| <p>4. Paul / become / tactful (-)</p> | <p>8. This water / get / drinkable (-)</p> |

3. Completa le frasi adeguatamente seguendo l'esempio.

➤ *Let's write a very short message. **The less** we write, (good) **the better** it is.*

1. You should study harder. you study, (good) it is.
2. If you work more, you will earn more money. you work, you will earn.
3. You must eat less. you eat, (fat) you get.
4. The English language is getting easier and easier to me. I study it, (easy) it becomes.
5. You can learn a lot of things if you read. you read, you learn.
6. You shouldn't drive so fast. (*slowly*) you drive, (good)..... it is.
7. Smoking is bad for your health. you smoke, (bad)..... it is.
8. He is getting more and more stubborn. he grows up, (*stubborn*) he becomes.
9. She doesn't get enough sleep and she sleeps (*nervous*) she becomes.

Per esprimere "molto/i" davanti ai comparativi generalmente si usa:

much / a lot / far (= molto) - con aggettivi, avverbi, sostantivi singolari e verbi	<i>It's much / a lot / far more interesting than I expected.</i> E' molto più interessante di quanto mi aspettassi. <i>He's got much / a lot / far more money than you.</i> Lui ha molto più denaro di te. <i>He speaks much / a lot / far more fluently than he used to.</i> Lui parla molto più scorrevolmente che in passato.
many / a lot / far (= molti) - con sostantivi plurali	<i>She's got many / a lot / far more friends than Susan.</i> Lei ha molti più amici di Susan.
far (= molti) - davanti a fewer + sost. plurale	<i>I've got far fewer friends than you.</i> Ho molti meno amici di te.

Attenzione!!!

Non confondere

L'italiano "molto" si rende con
 - **very** davanti ad aggettivi e avverbi
 - **much / a lot / far** davanti agli aggettivi e avverbi al grado comparativo

Confronta

She's very intelligent. Lei è molto intelligente.
He drives very fast. Lui guida molto forte.
She's much / a lot / far more intelligent than Tom.
 Lei è molto più intelligente di Tom.
He drives much / a lot / far faster than me.
 Lui guida molto più forte di me.

Per esprimere "un po', qualche" davanti ai comparativi si usa:

a little / a bit (= un po') - con aggettivi, avverbi, sostantivi singolari e verbi	<i>He looks a little / a bit older than he is.</i> Sembra un po' più vecchio di quanto non sia. <i>I've got a little / a bit more money than you.</i> Ho un po' più denaro di te. <i>He speaks a little / a bit more fluently than he used to.</i> Lui parla un po' più scorrevolmente che in passato.
a few (= qualche, un po') - con sostantivi plurali	<i>Can I ask you a few more questions?</i> Posso farti qualche altra domanda?

Davanti ai comparativi si possono usare anche altri avverbi come:

even (= ancora, perfino)	<i>He's still quite fat, but a few years ago he was even fatter.</i> Lui è ancora piuttosto grasso, ma qualche anno fa era perfino più grasso.
slightly (= leggermente)	<i>This coat is slightly cheaper than that one.</i> Questo cappotto è leggermente più economico di quello.
rather (= piuttosto, alquanto)	<i>She's rather younger than her husband.</i> Lei è alquanto più giovane di suo marito.
any, no (= per niente, affatto)	<i>We couldn't drive any farther.</i> Non potemmo guidare oltre. <i>I met her no later than yesterday.</i> L'ho incontrata non più tardi di ieri.

Davanti ai superlativi si usa:

by far (= di gran lunga)	<i>This is by far the best video-cassette I've got.</i> Questa è di gran lunga la miglior video cassetta che ho.
the very (= in assoluto), con i superlativi teminanti in <i>-st</i> come <i>best, worst, least, last</i>	<i>That's the very worst restaurant in town.</i> Quello è in assoluto il peggior ristorante della città.

PRACTICE

1. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

1. I think Arabic is **much / many** more difficult than Russian.
2. Our company produced **many / far** fewer cars last year than this year.
3. My flat is **by far / a bit** larger than yours.
4. This year I have earned **many / much** less than last year.
5. I'm very tall but Tom is **by far / even** taller than me.
6. He made **far / many** fewer mistakes than Pamela.
7. This film is **by far / a lot** funnier than I expected.
8. Susan looks **a bit / very** older than she is.
9. Yesterday I learnt **a few / a little** more words of Spanish.
10. She looked **even / the very** more beautiful than usual.
11. I saw her **any / no** later than fifteen minutes ago.
12. I've got **much / many** more friends now than I used to.
13. The situation is **much / by far** better now than last month.
14. There were **far / much** fewer people than I thought.
15. My watch costs 200 pounds. Susan's watch costs 199 pounds. My watch is **slightly / far** more expensive than hers.
16. Jennifer is 19 years old. Her husband is 48 years old. He is **rather / slightly** older than her.

2. Completa le frasi adeguatamente con *much/far, many/far, far, by far*.

1. It is colder in this room than in our office.
2. Mark is the most selfish of the three brothers.
3. I think climbing is more dangerous than skiing.
4. There are more mistakes in your test than in Mark's.
5. Your suitcase is the heaviest among these.
6. Today it is less cold than yesterday.
7. He works the hardest of all the workers in the factory.
8. This is the most boring holiday I have ever had.
9. There are fewer people at the meeting this year than last year.
10. Barbara is quite tall. She's the tallest girl in the school.

3. Alcune frasi sono corrette, altre sono sbagliate. Se la frase è sbagliata scrivi l'espressione corretta a lato (A volte è possibile più di una soluzione corretta). Se la frase è corretta metti un tick (✓). Ti sono forniti 2 esempi.

<p>➤ <i>Can't you stay a bit longer?</i></p> <p>➤ <i>Only a little more questions.</i></p>	<p>✓</p> <p><i>a few</i></p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>
<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. This job is far easier than I expected.2. That footballer is far the best in the team.3. This is the very latest news.4. This skirt is many more expensive than that one.5. If you are young, you learn much more quickly.6. He spends many more than he earns.7. He isn't getting any better.8. This book is very more interesting than that one.	

REVISION

comparativi e superlativi

1. (a) John ha intenzione di visitare Roma ed ha scritto al suo amico Tom , chiedendogli consigli sugli alberghi. Leggi la lettera che Tom gli ha scritto in risposta e completa la tabella.

17 Kostner Road

York

12 th February, 20...

Dear John,

Just a few lines to tell you something about the hotels I stayed at in Rome.

The Royal is beautiful but very expensive. It has very comfortable rooms, with telephone, television, bathroom and shower, and mini-bar. There is a magnificent restaurant where they serve fantastic food, and a bar. It's certainly the best hotel, if you can afford it.

The Sierra costs less than half the price. The rooms are very small. In the room I had there was a television but no shower in the bathroom. It doesn't have a restaurant and there is no bar. There is a lounge but it is always very crowded and noisy. It is much cheaper but I don't recommend it.

In my opinion the Traiano is the most reasonable. The rooms are pleasant, with bathroom and shower. They have a telephone and a television but no mini-bar. The lounge is a bit smaller than in the other hotels, but certainly quieter than in the Sierra. It costs a bit more than the Sierra but it is much better.

In conclusion, the Royal is the most impressive but I would recommend the Traiano. First of all, it's much cheaper; secondly, the food is as good as at the Royal; thirdly, the atmosphere is more friendly.

Hope this information can be useful to you and that you will find suitable accomodation in Rome. Have a nice stay and enjoy yourself.

Yours, Tom

HOTELS IN ROME					
Hotel	Room facilities	Hotel facilities			Cost per night
		Restaurant	Bar	Lounge	
Royal	telephone, TV bathroom, shower, mini-bar	yes		yes	€ 100,00
Sierra					€ 45,00
Traiano				yes	€ 70,00

- (b) Completa le frasi con i comparativi ed i superlativi adeguati.

1. The Sierra is (*cheap*) than the Royal.
2. The Sierra is (*cheap*) than the Traiano.
3. The Sierra is (*cheap*) of the three hotels.
4. The Royal is (*expensive*) than the Traiano.
5. The Traiano is (*expensive*) than the Sierra.
6. The Royal is (*expensive*) of the three hotels.
7. The Sierra is (*expensive*) of the three hotels.
8. The Royal has facilities than the Traiano.
9. The Royal has facilities of the three hotels.
10. The Sierra has facilities of the three hotels.
11. The food at the Traiano is the food at the Royal.

2. (a) Leggi i dati forniti nella tabella e indica le risposte corrette.

Hotel	Room facilities					Hotel facilities				Cost per week (breakfast included)	Location
	telephone	TV	bath	shower	view of sea	restaurant	bar	lounge	swimming pool		
A	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	€ 800	50 m. from beach
B	-	-	+	-	-	+	+	+	-	€ 400	1 km. from beach
C	+	+	+	+	-	+	+	+	-	€ 500	200 m. from beach

➤ Which hotel has the most room facilities?

A B C

- Which hotel has the fewest room facilities?
- Which hotel has the most hotel facilities?
- Which hotel is the most expensive?
- Which hotel is the least expensive?
- Which hotel is the closest to the beach?
- Which hotel is the farthest from the beach?

A B C

A B C

A B C

A B C

A B C

A B C

(b) Ora completa le frasi adeguatamente.

- Hotel C hasn't got room facilities Hotel A.
- Hotel B isn't expensive Hotel A.
- Hotel C isn't close to the beach Hotel A.

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION (FCE)

3. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando da due a cinque parole compreso la parola fornita.

- Rome is bigger than Milan.
as Milan isn't Rome.
- Paul and Mark speak English better than we do.
well We don't Paul and Mark.
- This cartoon isn't so amusing as I thought.
less This cartoon is I thought.
- This Italian restaurant isn't as expensive as the French one over there.
cheaper This Italian restaurant the French one over there.
- You have got less homework than us.
much You haven't got us.
- In a soccer team there aren't as many players as in a rugby team.
fewer In a soccer team in a rugby team.
- The tickets for the concert cost less than we expected.
much The tickets for the concert didn't we expected.
- Mary and Clare are both 1 metre 80.
height Mary is as Clare.

Grammar and practice

- A. Aggettivi terminanti in *-ing* e *-ed*
 B. La forma in *-ing* dopo le preposizioni
 C. *To be used to / To get used to / Used to*
 D. La forma in *-ing* come soggetto/oggetto
 - Proibizioni brevi

★ A AGGETTIVI TERMINANTI IN *-ING* E *-ED*

Vi sono molte **coppie di aggettivi** che si formano da verbi aggiungendo *-ing* e *-ed*.

- Gli aggettivi in *-ing* sono di fatto dei **participi presenti** e descrivono come è qualcosa o qualcuno.
- Gli aggettivi che terminano in *-ed* sono di fatto dei **participi passati** e descrivono come qualcuno si sente.

Tra questi:

verbo			aggettivo in <i>-ing</i>		aggettivo in <i>-ed</i>	
to amaze	stupire	→	amazing	stupefacente	amazed	stupefatto
to amuse	divertire	→	amusing	divertente	amused	divertito
to bore	annoiare	→	boring	noioso	bored	annoiato
to depress	deprimere	→	depressing	deprimente	depressed	depresso
to disappoint	deludere	→	disappointing	deludente	disappointed	deluso
to disgust	disgustare	→	disgusting	disgustoso	disgusted	disgustato
to embarrass	imbarazzare	→	embarrassing	imbarazzante	embarrassed	imbarazzato
to excite	eccitare	→	exciting	eccitante	excited	eccitato
to exhaust	spossare	→	exhausting	faticoso	exhausted	esausto
to fascinate	affascinare	→	fascinating	affascinante	fascinated	affascinato
to frighten	spaventare	→	frightening	spaventoso	frightened	spaventato
to horrify	far inorridire	→	horrifying	raccapricciante	horrified	raccapricciato
to interest	interessare	→	interesting	interessante	interested	interessato
to satisfy	soddisfare	→	satisfying	soddisfacente	satisfied	soddisfatto
to surprise	sorprendere	→	surprising	sorprendente	surprised	sorpreso
to tire	stancare	→	tiring	stancante	tired	stanco
to terrify	terrorizzare	→	terrifying	terrificante	terrified	terrorizzato
to worry	preoccupar/si	→	worrying	preoccupante	worried	preoccupato

◆ **aggettivi composti terminanti in *-ed***

Alcuni sostantivi, generalmente riferiti a parti del corpo o ad abbigliamento, possono venire trasformati in aggettivi composti aggiungendo la terminazione *-ed*. Ecco alcuni esempi.

A boy with brown hair	→	A brown-haired boy Un ragazzo con i capelli marron.
A girl with blue eyes	→	A blue-eyed girl Una ragazza con gli occhi azzurri.
A shirt with short sleeves	→	A short-sleeved shirt Una camicia con le maniche corte.

PRACTICE

1. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

➤ *I'm boring / bored.* This film makes me sleep.

1. This film is **bored** / **boring**. Let's not watch it. 2. I do the same things every day and I'm really **bored** / **boring**. 3. I'm **tired** / **tiring**. I worked too much. 4. My job is **tired** / **tiring**. I have to work too many hours. 5. John was **surprising** / **surprised** that Susan didn't phone him. 6. It was **surprising** / **surprised** that he failed the examination. 7. Peter is **interested** / **interesting** in computer science. 8. He finds computer science very **interested** / **interesting**. 9. I'm really **exciting** / **excited** about going to Australia next month. 10. She found that experience **exciting** / **excited**.

2. Completa due frasi per ciascuna situazione. Usa un aggettivo terminante in -ing o un aggettivo terminante in -ed per completare ciascuna frase.

➤ *It's raining. I hate this weather. (depress-)*

- a) *This weather is **depressing**.*
b) *This weather makes me **depressed**.*

1. To our surprise John passed the examination. (*surpris-*)

- a) Everyone was that he passed the examination.
b) It was quite that he passed the examination.

2. I expected the film to be much better. (*disappoint-*)

- a) I was with the film.
b) The film was

3. I teach at a primary school. It's a hard job. (*exhaust-*)

- a) My job is
b) I'm often when I get back home from work.

3. Completa ciascuna frase con un aggettivo terminante in -ing o in -ed. La prima o le prime lettere ti sono fornite.

➤ *It's sometimes **embarrassing** when you have to ask people for money.*

1. Are you **in**..... in basketball?

2. We went for a very long walk. It was very **t**.....

3. It was a really **ter**..... experience. Everybody was shocked.

4. I was **ho**..... when I heard about the disaster.

5. Mary is one of the most **b**..... people I've ever met. She never says anything **in**.....

4. Trasforma le parole sottolineate in *aggettivi composti*.

➤ *Jane is the girl with curly hair.* Jane is the **curly-haired** girl.

1. Jennifer is wearing shoes with high heels.

Jennifer is wearing shoes.

2. The main character in the film is a pirate with one leg.

The main character in the film is a pirate.

3. The boy with green eyes looks like his father.

The boy looks like his father.

4. She was wearing a dress with short sleeves.

She was wearing a dress.

5. Tom wears glasses with metal frames.

Tom wears glasses.

★ B LA FORMA IN -ING DOPO LE PREPOSIZIONI

In inglese una preposizione, un verbo seguito da preposizione o un aggettivo seguito da preposizione richiedono la forma in -ing del verbo che segue.

preposizioni + forma in -ing

Tra queste:

after	dopo
before	prima
besides	oltre a
instead of	invece di
without	senza

Besides being good at Maths, he's also good at foreign languages.

Oltre ad essere bravo in matematica, è bravo anche nelle lingue straniere.

verbi + preposizione + forma in -ing

Tra questi:

to apologize for	scusarsi di / per
to give up	smettere di
to go on	continuare a
to insist on	insistere per / di
to look forward to	non vedere l'ora di
to succeed in	riuscire a
to thank for	ringraziare di / per
to think of / about	pensare di / a

He apologized for not phoning.

Si scusò per non aver telefonato.

aggettivi + preposizione + forma in -ing

Tra questi:

to be afraid of	aver paura di
to be fond of	essere appassionato di
to be excited about	essere eccitato/emozionato su/riguardo
to be good / bad at	essere bravo / non bravo a
to be interested in	essere interessato a
to be tired of	essere stanco di
to be used to *	essere abituato a
to get used to *	abituarsi a

Per altri aggettivi e verbi seguiti da preposizione
vedi a PAG. 430 456

Attenzione!!!
* Non confondere
be / get used to con used to
(Vedi a PAG. 184)

PRACTICE

1. Completa ciascuna frase con uno dei verbi forniti in ordine sparso alla forma in -ing.

phone / send / revise / be / read / take / go / put

- The spaghetti was a real disaster because I put sugar in the water instead of **putting** salt.
- I never buy a car without a few specialized magazines first.
 - Sheila never sends her translations to the publisher without them carefully.
 - He's good at History besides good at Maths.
 - We reserved a table before to the restaurant.
 - The students needed some more practice before the test.
 - I made a terrible mistake yesterday. I addressed the letter to Jane instead of it to Pamela.
 - After John, Susan went out.

-
2. Scrivi una frase per ciascuna situazione usando *without* + *-ing*.

- *We ran three miles. We didn't stop. We ran five miles without stopping.*
- I translated the letter. I didn't use a dictionary.
 - We went out. We didn't finish our dinner.
 - She left the room. She didn't say goodbye.
 - They waited for hours. They didn't complain.

3. Completa ciascuna frase con la *preposizione* corretta seguita da uno dei verbi forniti in ordine sparso alla *forma in -ing*.

buy / repeat / repair / go / walk

- *Which of you is interested in **buying** my old car? It's a real bargain.*
- Come on, children. Listen to me! I'm really tired the same things every day.
 - The children are excited on holiday.
 - I'm afraid all alone at night.
 - He assured me that Mr Sway was very good watches.

4. Completa ciascuna frase con la *preposizione* corretta seguita da uno dei verbi forniti in ordine sparso alla *forma in -ing*.

smoke / overcome / receive / spend / go

- *We are thinking of **spending** our next holidays in the mountains.*
- Why don't you give? It's bad for your health.
 - Write soon. I'm looking forward your letter.
 - I wanted to stay at home, but he insisted to the cinema.
 - Jane succeeded her fears.

5. Per ciascuna situazione scrivi una frase con *look forward to* + *forma in -ing* seguendo gli esempi.

➤ *Barbara is going on holiday next week. She's very happy about it.*
She is looking forward to going on holiday.

➤ *Tom is going to the dentist's. He is not very happy about it.*
He is not looking forward to going to the dentist's.

- Jennifer hates school but she is leaving school in a month. She is very happy about it.
She
- Pamela is seeing David tonight. She is very happy about it.
She
- An old school friend is coming to visit you tomorrow. You are not happy to see him.
I

SENTENCE TRANSFORMATION (PET)

6. Scrivi una seconda frase che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando non più di tre parole.

➤ *I phoned Paul and then I went out.*

After phoning Paul I went out.

- We didn't eat at home. We went to a restaurant instead.

Instead of we went to a restaurant.

- Jane is a very good cook.

Jane is cooking.

- I had a shower then I went out.

Before had a shower.

- I'm excited about going on holiday.

I'm looking forward on holiday.

★ C TO BE USED TO / TO GET USED TO / USED TO

TO BE USED TO + -ing

(essere abituato a ...)

- si usa per parlare di un'azione consueta con cui si ha familiarità.

I'm used to going to bed late.

Sono abituato ad andare a letto tardi.

TO GET USED TO + -ing

(abituarsi a ...)

- è la **forma riflessiva** di *to be used to*.

I'm getting used to going to bed late.

Mi sto abituando ad andare a letto tardi.

Attenzione!!!

In questi due casi "used" è un aggettivo seguito dalla **preposizione "to"**, che a sua volta è seguita dalla forma in **-ing** del verbo.

- **Be used to** e **get used to** possono essere seguiti anche da **sostantivo o pronome**.

*I'm used to **this weather**.*

*I'm getting used to **this weather**.*

*I didn't like the weather there but then I got used to **it**.*

USED + infinito con "to"

- si usa per parlare di **abitudini del passato** e non più del presente (vedi a **PAG. 160**)

Corrisponde all'imperfetto italiano.

I used to go to bed late when I was twenty.

Andavo a letto tardi quando avevo vent'anni.

Attenzione!!!

In questo caso "used" è un verbo al passato seguito dall'infinito con "to", che **non è preposizione** ma è parte costitutiva dell'infinito.

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi con *used to* o la forma corretta di *be used to*

1. I spend my holidays in the south of France when I was younger.
2. He low temperatures because he's from Norway.
3. Susan have long hair but now she doesn't.
4. I having a camomile before going to bed.
5. Jennifer eating "pasta" because she lived in Italy for a few years.

2. Completa le frasi con la *forma base* o la *forma in -ing* del verbo tra parentesi.

1. We lived in New York for many years so we are used to (*live*) in big cities.
2. We'd better go to bed early. I'm not used to (*go*) to bed late.
3. Susan lives on her own and she's getting used to (*do*) all the housework.
4. When I lived in the mountains I used to (*go*) for long walks.
5. When I was a child my mother used to (*drive*) me to school.
6. I want to lose weight and I'm getting used to (*eat*) less.

SENTENCE TRANSFORMATION (PET)

3. Completa la seconda frase in modo che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando non più di tre parole.

1. I never drink alcohol.
I'm not alcohol.
2. When I was a child I swapped comics in the playground after school.
When I was a child I used in the playground after school.
3. We go to bed early because we have to get up at six.
We going to bed early because we have to get up at six.
4. The children always have a nap in the afternoon.
The children are a nap in the afternoon.
5. I went to Blackpool every summer with my parents until I was sixteen.
I to Blackpool every summer with my parents until I was sixteen.

★ D LA FORMA IN -ING COME SOGGETTO/OGGETTO - PROIBIZIONI BREVI

La **forma in -ing**, come gerundio, può essere usata:

• come soggetto	<i>Smoking</i> is dangerous for your health. Fumare è dannoso per la salute.
• come oggetto	<i>Mr Johnson loves teaching.</i> Il signor Johnson ama insegnare.
• per proibizioni brevi	<i>No smoking.</i> Vietato fumare.

PRACTICE

1. Sostituisci il pronome personale *it* con la *forma in -ing* di uno dei verbi forniti in ordine sparso.

drink / smoke / fly / age / swim / knit / climb

- *It is dangerous for your health.* ***Smoking is dangerous for your health.***
1. It is not recommended before you drive.
 2. It is a fast way of travelling.
 3. It can be relaxing for some women.
 4. It is a natural process for all living things.
 5. It is a very common sport.
 6. It can be a dangerous sport.

2. Trasforma le frasi in modo tale che il *soggetto* sia alla *forma in -ing*.

- *To learn Chinese is not easy.* ***Learning Chinese is not easy.***

1. It is a wonderful pastime to listen to his stories.
2. To be too curious can be dangerous.
3. It is natural to look forward to holidays.
4. To shop after Christmas can be cheaper.
5. It is prohibited to fish in this pool.

3. Completa le frasi con il verbo tra parentesi alla *forma in -ing* come *oggetto* della frase.

1. I love (*dance*)
2. The rules do not permit (*)*
3. I hate (*iron*)
4. I prefer (*watch*) TV to (*listen*) to the radio.
5. They like (*play*) football.

4. Trasforma gli ordini in *proibizioni brevi*.

- *Do not smoke!* ***No smoking.***

1. Do not trespass!
2. Do not litter!
3. Do not fish!
4. Do not dump!
5. Do not spit!
6. Do not cheat!

★ A PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE

Forma

Affermativa	sogg. + have ('ve) / has ('s) + participio passato
Negativa	sogg. + have not (haven't) + participio passato has not (hasn't)
Interrogativa	have / has + sogg. + participio passato?
Interrogativo -negativa	haven't / hasn't + sogg. + participio passato?
Risposte brevi	Yes, sogg. + have / has / No, sogg. + haven't / hasn't

*She has('s) finished her homework. /**She has not (hasn't) finished her homework.**Has she finished her homework? /**Hasn't she finished her homework?**Yes, she has. / No, she hasn't.***Attenzione!!!**

L'ausiliare è **sempre have / has** anche con i verbi che in italiano richiedono l'ausiliare **essere**.

Have you ever been to England?
Sei mai stato in Inghilterra?

Frase	Question tag (vero? / non è vero?)
Affermativa <i>You've turned off the light,</i> Hai spento la luce,	haven't / hasn't + sogg. ? <i>haven't you?</i> vero?
Negativa <i>She hasn't booked the tickets yet,</i> Lei non ha ancora prenotato i biglietti,	have / has + sogg.? <i>has she?</i> vero?

PARTICIPIO PASSATO**(past participle)**

- Il **participio passato** dei verbi **regolari** si forma aggiungendo **-ed** alla forma base ed è **uguale** al **past simple**. (*decide - decided - decided;* *study - studied - studied*)

- Il **participio passato** dei verbi **irregolari** ha **forme proprie** che debbono essere memorizzate (vedi i paradigmi dei verbi irregolari a **PAG. 480**).

Il participio passato è la **3a voce del paradigma**.

(*fly - flew - flown;*
forget - forgot - forgotten)

Attenzione!!!

Confronta le due diverse forme del **participio passato** del verbo **to go / went / gone - been**

andato e non
ancora tornato

andato e
ritornato

They have gone to Rome. *They have been to Rome.*
Sono andati a Roma. Sono stati a Roma.
(e non sono ancora tornati) (e sono già tornati)

Uso

Il **present perfect simple** si usa per:

- a) parlare di un'azione/situazione verificatasi in un **tempo indeterminato del passato**
- b) parlare di un'azione/situazione verificatasi in un **tempo non ancora concluso**
- c) esprimere la **durata** di un'azione/situazione iniziata nel passato e **non ancora conclusa**

(vedi "Present perfect con for e since", **PAG. 196 197**)

Nel caso a) il **present perfect simple** può trovarsi:

• senza espressione di tempo (non è specificato quando l'azione si è verificata. L'attenzione è posta sull'azione e sul risultato dell'azione.)	<i>I'm happy because I've won a prize.</i> Sono felice perché ho vinto un premio.
• con avverbi di frequenza come: <i>ever, never, seldom/rarely, often, always, ...</i> (tali avverbi si collocano prima del participio passato)	<i>Have you ever been to Scotland?</i> Sei mai stato in Scozia? <i>I've never been there.</i> Non ci sono mai stato.
• con espressioni di frequenza come: <i>twice, many times, several times</i> (due volte, molte volte, parecchie volte) (queste espressioni si collocano in fine di frase)	<i>I've been there twice.</i> Ci sono stato due volte.
• con gli avverbi : <i>yet</i> ? (già? - in frase interr.), <i>not .. yet</i> (non .. ancora), <i>almost/nearly</i> (quasi), <i>just</i> (appena), <i>already</i> (già - generalmente in frase affermativa) (questi avverbi si collocano prima del participio passato ad eccezione di <i>yet</i> , in fine di frase)	<i>Have you finished yet?</i> Hai già finito? <i>I haven't finished yet.</i> Non ho ancora finito. <i>I've almost / nearly finished.</i> Ho quasi finito. <i>I've just finished.</i> Ho appena finito. <i>I've already finished.</i> Ho già finito.
• con avverbi ed espressioni di tempo come: <i>so far/up to now</i> (fino ad ora) <i>lately</i> (ultimamente), <i>recently</i> (recentemente), <i>in the last few days/weeks ...</i> (negli ultimi giorni/settimane ...), <i>before</i> (in precedenza) (questi avverbi ed espressioni si collocano generalmente in fine di frase)	<i>Have you read any good books lately?</i> Hai letto qualche buon libro ultimamente? <i>I haven't done much in the last few days.</i> Non ho fatto molto negli ultimi giorni. <i>I've seen this film before.</i> Ho visto questo film in precedenza.

Nel caso b) il **present perfect simple** si trova accompagnato da **espressioni di tempo non concluso** come:

*today, this morning, this afternoon,
this week, this month, this year*

I have worked hard this morning.

Ho lavorato molto questa mattina.

(La mattina non è ancora terminata.)

Attenzione!!!

Si dice:

I worked hard this morning.

(La mattina è già terminata, è già pomeriggio o sera.)

Il **present perfect simple** si usa anche:

- quando la frase inizia con

It's the first / second /... / time

It's the second time I've seen this film.

È la seconda volta che vedo questo film.

- **dopo un superlativo** in frasi come:

That's the best book I've ever read.

Quello è il miglior libro che io abbia mai letto.

PRACTICE

- 1.** Completa i paradigmi dei seguenti *verbi regolari*. Fai attenzione alle variazioni ortografiche.

Base form	Past simple	Past participle
➤ wash	washed	washed
1. watch
2. decide
3. stop
4. study
5. play

- 2.** Completa il paradigma dei seguenti *verbi irregolari*.

Base form	Past simple	Past participle
➤ be	was / were	been
1. buy
2. cost
3. drink
4. eat
5. forget
6. go
7. have
8. leave
9. swim
10. write

- 3.** Scrivi frasi mettendo il verbo al *present perfect simple* in forma estesa ed in forma contratta.

➤ John / arrive / today **John has arrived today. / John's arrived today.**

1. Mary / open / a pub 4. I / read / this book before
 2. Mark / lose / his watch 5. We / see / this film before
 3. You / break / the window 6. They / be / there many times

- 4.** Trasforma le frasi ottenute nell'esercizio precedente in forma *negativa, interrogativa e interrogativo-negativa*.

➤ **John hasn't arrived today. Has John arrived today? Hasn't John arrived today?**

- 5.** Rispondi con *risposte brevi*.

➤ Has the post arrived? - Yes, **it has**.

1. Have the police arrested the robbers? - No,
 2. Have you been to the post office? - Yes,
 3. Has Paul opened a coffee shop? - No,
 4. Have they visited the exhibition? - Yes,

- 6.** Aggiungi in coda a ciascuna frase la corretta *question tag*.

➤ You haven't given Mark his dictionary back, **have you?**

1. She's grown up in Wales,?
 2. They haven't had a good time,?
 3. The kids have gone to the fun-fair,?
 4. David hasn't sold his old car,?

7. Guarda le immagini e scrivi *mini-dialoghi* utilizzando le espressioni fornite.

➤ A: *Why is David proud?*

B: *David is proud because he has won a medal*

- *David / proud
win / a medal*



1



2

- 1 Susan / happy
graduate / from university
- 2 Richard and Carol / excited
book / the tickets for the Maldives
- 3 Ritha / sad
get / a bad mark



3

8. Riscrivi le frasi inserendo gli *avverbi* e le *espressioni* fornite nella posizione corretta.

1. They have left. (*already*)
2. Have you been to the cinema? (*recently*)
3. Hurry up! The conference has started. (*just*)
4. Have you eaten Chinese food? (*ever*)
5. I have been there. (*never*)
6. Have you visited the city-centre? (*yet*)
7. We haven't seen that film. (*yet*)
8. We have been to London. (*many times*).
9. She has finished doing her homework. (*nearly*)
10. I think I have met her. (*before*)

9. Offri consigli ad un amico chiedendogli se ha fatto determinate cose nelle situazioni indicate. Costruisci domande come nell'esempio.

➤ *The car engine doesn't start. (check / the battery?)
Have you checked the battery?*

1. I've got a terrible sore throat. (*see / a doctor?*)
2. My sister's got problems at school. (*tell / your parents?*)
3. My girlfriend and I want to go out for dinner tonight. (*reserve / a table?*)
4. We're going on holiday abroad. (*check / your passports?*)

10. Scrivi frasi con il *present perfect* dei verbi nella forma corretta e metti l'avverbio (se fornito tra parentesi) nella posizione corretta.

1. Bob (*never / like*) dancing.
2. We (*never / visit*) Paris before.
3. You (*just / throw*) my notes away!
4. The Browns (*not / sell*) their house yet.
5. Peter (*just / lose*) his passport.
6. She (*forget*) to lock the door.
7. We (*already / decide*) where to go on holiday.
8. The bus (*not / arrive / yet*)

11. Costrisci domande con il verbo al *present perfect simple* e *ever* nella posizione corretta.

- *Mark / ever / study / German?* **Has Mark ever studied German?**
1. You / ever / be abroad?
2. She / ever / eat snails?
3. You / ever / drink Guinness?
4. They / ever / have Greek salad?
5. He / ever / do / any sailing?
6. You / ever / read any horror stories?

12. Scrivi *mini-dialoghi* usando il *present perfect*, *yet* e *just* come nell'esempio.

- *book a table* *A: Have you booked a table yet?*
 B: Yes, I've just booked it.
1. find the tickets 3. do your homework
2. meet Bob 4. talk to the receptionist

13. Completa le frasi con *have/has been* o *have/has gone*.

1. Sarah to the supermarket. She'll be home soon.
2. My brother to the park. He left fifteen minutes ago.
3. I never to an art gallery.
4. Where you? - I just to the bank.
5. Tom to school. He'll be back by 4.00.
6. Pamela's got a fantastic tan. Where she?
7. I can't find David. Where he?
8. You are all muddy. Where you?
9. Janet just to the railway station. She's leaving for Leeds.
10. you ever to Scotland? - No, never.

14. Alan e Mary sono in vacanza a Londra. Fai riferimento agli elementi forniti e scrivi *mini-dialoghi* come negli esempi.

- *A: Have they seen Buckingham Palace yet? (✓)*
 B: Yes, they have already seen it.
- *A: Have they been to Hampton Court yet? (X)*
 B: No, they haven't been there yet.

1. see Buckingham Palace
2. go to Hampton Court
3. go to Harrods
4. visit Westminster Abbey
5. go to the National Gallery
6. see St. Paul's Cathedral



15. Costruisci frasi come nell'esempio.

- *This is the most interesting museum I / ever / visit*
This is the most interesting museum I've ever visited.
1. This is the best book I / ever / read
 2. Helen is the prettiest girl I / ever / see
 3. This is the most difficult exercise I / ever / do
 4. Tom is the most stupid boy I / ever / meet

16. Trasforma le frasi che hai ottenuto nell'esercizio precedente, come nell'esempio.

- *I've never visited such an interesting museum before.*

17. Scrivi frasi utilizzando le parole fornite, come nell'esempio.

- *It's the first time / he / be / on a plane.* ***It's the first time he's been on a plane.***
1. It's the second time / we / see / this film
 2. It's the first time / she / ride / a bicycle
 3. It's the third time / they / visit / Rome
 4. It's the first time / he / drink / whisky

SENTENCE TRANSFORMATION (PET)

18. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando non più di tre parole.

- *He has never eaten Indian food before.*
It's the first time he has eaten Indian food.
1. This is my first pint of beer.
I have a pint of beer before.
 2. I have visited this museum three times.
This is the third time I this museum.
 3. This is the second time I have quarrelled with Mark.
I Mark twice so far.
 4. This is the first time John has sent me an SMS.
John has never an SMS before.
 5. Mark went to the bank five minutes ago. He'll be back soon.
Mark has just bank. He'll be back soon.

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION (FCE)

19. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando da due a cinque parole compresa la parola fornita.

- *This is the first time I have changed a tyre.*
never *I have never changed a tyre before.*
1. This is the most amusing film I have ever seen.
such I an amusing film before.
 2. We have been to Paris twice.
second This is the to Paris.
 3. This is the first time he has tried ice-skating.
never He before.
 4. Tom went to the post office a few minutes ago.
just Tom to the post office.

★ B PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE / PAST SIMPLE

Confronta il diverso uso del present perfect simple e del past simple

SI USA

PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE	PAST SIMPLE
<p>In generale - Il present perfect simple si usa per parlare di azioni/situazioni che hanno una qualche relazione con il presente.</p> <p>In particolare</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • per parlare di un'azione avvenuta in un tempo indeterminato. L'attenzione è posta più sull'azione che sul tempo o il luogo in cui è avvenuta <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - senza espressione di tempo o con avverbi ed espressioni di tempo indeterminato come: <i>recently, ever, never, just, already, so far, up to now, ...</i> <i>Someone has stolen my bike.</i> Qualcuno ha rubato la mia bicicletta <i>I've read a lot of books recently.</i> Ho letto molti libri recentemente. • per parlare di un'azione avvenuta in un passato recente i cui effetti permangono nel presente <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>He has broken his arm.</i> Si è rotto un braccio. (il suo braccio non è ancora guarito) • quando il tempo non è concluso <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (<i>today, this morning, this month, this year, ...</i>) <i>I've worked a lot this morning.</i> (è ancora mattina) 	<p>In generale - Il past simple si usa per parlare di azioni/situazioni passate che non hanno più alcuna relazione con il presente.</p> <p>In particolare</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • per parlare di un'azione avvenuta e conclusa in un tempo determinato del passato. L'attenzione è posta sul tempo o il luogo in cui l'azione è avvenuta <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - con avverbi ed espressioni di tempo determinato come: <i>yesterday, last year, last month, in 1992, two days ago, when I was born, ...</i> (a volte l'espressione di tempo può essere sottintesa ma è il contesto che la definisce) <i>I read a lot of books last year.</i> Ho letto molti libri l'anno scorso. • per parlare di un'azione passata i cui effetti non permangono nel presente <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>He broke his arm.</i> Siruppe un braccio. (il suo braccio è già guarito) • quando il tempo è concluso <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>I worked a lot this morning.</i> (adesso è pomeriggio o sera)

Attenzione!!!

In conversazione spesso si inizia con una domanda con il **present perfect** e poi si usa il **past simple** quando ci si riferisce ad un tempo, ad un luogo o a una situazione specifici. (*When? Where? Who...with?*)

- *Have you ever been to England?*
- *Yes, I have.*
- *When did you go there?*
- *I went there when I was sixteen.*
- *Who did you go with?*
- *I went with my parents.*

PRACTICE

1 Indica se le seguenti espressioni richiedono il *past simple* (PS) o il *present perfect simple* (PPS).

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-------|------------------------------|-------|
| 1. two days ago | (...) | 8. last week | (...) |
| 2. so far | (...) | 9. when I was five | (...) |
| 3. up to now | (...) | 10. this month | (...) |
| 4. already | (...) | 11. this century | (...) |
| 5. not...yet | (...) | 12. when I was a child | (...) |
| 6. lately | (...) | 13. in February | (...) |
| 7. just | (...) | 14. the day before yesterday | (...) |

2. Indica quali frasi esprimono un'azione definitivamente conclusa nel passato (CP) e quali esprimono un qualche relazione con il presente (RP).

1. We went to the cinema last night. (...)
2. They have read a lot recently. (...)
3. They lived in England for ten years but then they moved to the USA. (...)
4. I have written six letters this morning. (...)
5. I haven't visited Paris so far. (...)
6. I'm happy because I've passed my exam. (...)

3. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

1. We **booked / have booked** the tickets yesterday.
2. I **didn't phone / haven't phoned** Terry yet.
3. **Has Paul read / Did Paul read** the newspaper today?
4. **Did you see / Have you seen** Jim at the party?
5. Who **did you meet / have you met** at the conference?
6. **Has Susan finished / Did Susan finish** the book last week?
7. The class **has been / went** to the cinema yesterday morning.
8. (11.00 am) I **wrote / have written** a lot of letters this morning.
9. (03.00 pm) I **haven't done / didn't do** much this morning.
10. I **have been / was** in the garden when you phoned.

4. Indica se le seguenti frasi sono corrette (C) o sbagliate (W). Riscrivi le frasi sbagliate correttamente.

	C	W	
➤ He's lost his key yesterday	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	He lost his key yesterday.
1. I haven't finished this book yet.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2. J.F. Kennedy has died in 1963.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3. Have you ever tried ice skating?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4. You're so dirty! Where did you go?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5. I've just washed my scooter.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6. We've never changed a tyre before.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7. She quarrelled with her husband last night.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8. Marco Polo went to China in 1271.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9. They already finished the test.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10. Peter is happy these days. He's found a job.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

5. Completa le frasi con il *present perfect simple* o il *past simple* nella forma corretta.

1. (you / ever / be) to London?
2. We (spend) there a month last year.
3. (you / see) Jane at the conference yesterday?
4. (you / ever / eat) Chinese food?
5. (Susan / come) back from work yet?
6. Someone (steal) my bag.
7. Someone (steal) my suitcase at the station last week.
8. I (not / visit) the cathedral yet.
9. "The Browns (move) to Manchester." - "Really? When (they / move) ?"
10. She (not / feel) well yesterday, but now her headache (*improve*)
.....

6. Completa i *mini-dialoghi* utilizzando le parole tra parentesi. Usa il *present perfect simple* o il *past simple* adeguatamente.

- A: *Why is the boy crying?*
B: (*He / cut / his finger*) ***He's cut his finger.***
A: (*How / it / happen?*) ***How did it happen?***
1. A: What's the problem, Mary? Why are you looking so cross?
B: Look. (*Sarah / break / my mobile phone*)
A: (*How / she / break / it?*)
 2. A: What's the matter with you, David?
B: (*I / lose / my camera*)
A: (*When / you / lose it?*)
 3. A: Why are you so happy, Pamela?
B: (*My boyfriend / give / me a present*)
A: (*What / he / give you?*)
 4. A: What's that paper?
B: It's my certificate. (*I / pass / the PET exam*)
A: Oh, have you? (*What mark / you / get?*)

7. Completa il dialogo con il *present perfect simple* o il *past simple* dei verbi tra parentesi nella forma corretta.

A: 1) you ever a holiday on a farm? (*have*)
B: No, I 2) Have you?
A: Yes, I 3)
B: Really? Where 4) you ? (*go*)
A: I 5) to a little village in Wales. (*go*)
B: 6) you it? (*like*)
A: Yes, it 7) nice. (*be*)
B: Who 8) you with? (*go*)
A: I 9) with my girlfriend. (*go*)
B: What 10) you there? (*do*)
A: We 11) much (*not / do*) ,
but it 12) quiet and peaceful (*be*).
B: 13) you ever to a tropical island? (*be*)
A: No, I 14) Have you?
B: Yes, I have. I 15) to Cuba last summer. (*go*)
I 16) a prize in a competition. (*win*)
A: Did you? I can't believe it! 17) you a good time? (*have*)
B: Oh, yes! It 18) fantastic! (*be*)
A: What 19) you there? (*do*)
B: I 20) swimming and surfing! (*go*)
A: How long 21) you there? (*stay*)
B: Not long, unfortunately. The prize 22) for one week. (*be*).

1. MULTIPLE CHOICE - Scegli l'alternativa corretta.

- We **A** a marvellous holiday in Spain last summer.
A had **B have had** **C are having**
1. Where's Tom? - He ... to the basketball game.
A has been **B has gone** **C was going**
 2. What's the matter with Peter? - He's angry because his sister ... his favourite CD.
A is breaking **B broke** **C has broken**
 3. Where are the children? - They're in the sitting room. They ... cartoons on TV.
A were watching **B watched** **C are watching**
 4. ... reading that book yet?
A did you finish **B are you finishing** **C have you finished**
 5. We saw that film in English while we ... some friends in England last summer.
A were visiting **B have visited** **C visited**
- 2.** Completa le frasi con i verbi tra parentesi al *present simple*, *present continuous*, *past simple*, *past continuous*, o *present perfect simple*.
1. "Where's Peter?" "He (*be*) in the sitting room. He (*listen*) to music."
 2. "Where (*you / be*) last night?" "I (*be*) at home."
 3. "(*you / watch*) the film on BBC 1 ?" "Yes, I did, but I (*not / like*) it."
 4. We (*have*) lunch when the phone (*ring*)
 5. "Why is Bill so happy?" "Because he (*win*) a medal." "Really? When (*he / win*) it?" "Two days ago."
 6. As we (*surf*) the Internet we (*find*) a website about horoscopes.
 7. It (*start*) to rain as we (*wait*) for the bus.
 8. "(*you / have*) a good time last night?" "Yes, the party (*be*) great."
 9. "(*you / finish*) packing your suitcase yet?" "Almost. How about you?"
 10. They (*not / know*) how to reach the city centre. It's the first time they (*visit*) this big city.

3. Scrivi domande appropriate alle risposte sottolineate. Usa le corrette *question words* (*who*, *what*, *where*) e fai attenzione ai tempi verbali.

1. ?
She's reading.
2. ?
Last night? I went to the pub.
3. ?
When you phoned me last night? Let me think --- I was surfing the Net.
4. ?
I invited Peter, Jane, Sarah and a lot of other friends.
5. ?
I usually get up at half past six.
6. ?
I've been to the bank.

Grammar and practice

A. Present perfect simple con "for" e "since"
 B. *It is ... since ...*

C. Present perfect continuous
 D. Present perfect simple / Present perfect continuous

★ A PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE con "for" e "since"

Il present perfect simple, oltre ai casi presentati nel File 23, si usa anche:

- per esprimere la **durata** di un'azione/situazione iniziata nel passato e che continua nel presente (in questo caso corrisponde al **presente indicativo** dell'italiano + da)
- con **for** ... e **since** ... (da ...)
- soprattutto con i **verbi di stato** come: *be, have, own, belong, think, know, see, hear,...*
(vedi a PAG. 96 97)

- con i **verbi di azione** soprattutto **in frasi negative**. Con i verbi di azione, in frasi affermative, si preferisce usare il *present perfect continuous* -
(vedi a PAG. 200)

We've been here for two days / since Monday.

Siamo qui da due giorni / da lunedì.

I've known him for ten months / since February.

Lo conosco da dieci mesi / da febbraio.

I haven't written to Peter for a long time.

Non scrivo a Peter da molto tempo.

"FOR" e "SINCE"

In questo tipo di costruzione entrambi rendono l'italiano **da**, ma **confronta** il diverso uso:

FOR + periodo di durata dell'azione/situazione

I've had this car for two months.

Ho questa macchina da due mesi.

SINCE + momento di inizio dell'azione/situazione

I've had this car since March.

Ho questa macchina da marzo.

La **domanda** per chiedere la durata di un'azione/situazione è introdotta da " **How long** ... ? **How long** have you been here? **Da quanto tempo** sei qui?
=
Have you been here (for) long?
Sei qui **da molto tempo**?

"Da molto tempo" si rende nei seguenti modi:**- in frasi affermative:**

for a long time

I've been here for a long time.

Sono qui da molto tempo.

- in frasi interrogative:

(for) long

Have you been here (for) long?

Sei qui da molto tempo?

Confronta gli esempi:

I haven't been here for a long time.

Non sono venuto qui da molto tempo.

(È passato molto tempo dall'ultima volta che sono venuto qui.)

I haven't been here (for) long.

Non sono qui da molto tempo. (È poco tempo che sono qui.)

Attenzione!!!

La **durata negativa** dell'italiano, in **alternativa** alla costruzione con *for* e *since*, può essere resa con:

It is ... since + past simple

(affermativo)

(vedi a PAG. 198)

Verbi che esprimono un'azione compiuta (cioè che non esprimono una continuità nel tempo) come: *leave, arrive, start, begin, finish, stop, die, ...* non possono avere la forma di durata con *for* e *since*.

Pertanto frasi come:

È **arrivato da** un'ora. / È **morto da** tre mesi.

debbono essere rese in inglese con il **past simple + ... ago**

He arrived an hour ago. / He died three months ago.

- La domanda si forma con **When did ...?** oppure con **How long ago did ...?**

When did they arrive? / How long ago did they arrive?

- In **alternativa** si può usare la struttura

It is ... since ... / How long is it since ...?

(vedi a PAG. 198)

PRACTICE

1. Completa gli spazi con *for* o *since*. (Rifletti. Quali espressioni indicano il momento di inizio di un'azione? Quali indicano il periodo di durata di un'azione?)

1. a long time	6. he left	11. Monday
2. ages	7. 4 o'clock	12. 2003
3. July	8. my birthday	13. a few months
4. a few days	9. half an hour	14. Christmas
5. I was born	10. fifteen minutes	15. 1 st August

2. Completa le frasi con il *present perfect simple* dei verbi tra parentesi e gli spazi con *for* o *since*.

➤ They (*own*) **have owned** that house **for** ages.

1. I (*have*) this car August.

2. The weather (*be*) warm and sunny four days.

3. I (*know*) Susan we were children.

4. We (*not / see*) Peter ages.

5. That castle (*belong*) to his family many generations.

6. I (*not / write*) to Jane months.

3. Scrivi *mini-dialoghi* usando le parole fornite. Ricorda di usare *for* o *since* correttamente.

➤ you / have / that scooter? // a long time A: **How long have you had that scooter?**
B: **I've had it for a long time.**

1. they / be / married? // 1998

2. the weather / be / awful / in Paris? // a week

3. he / have / that terrible pain in his shoulder? // two weeks

4. they / own / that house? // February.

4. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

1. I haven't had this pullover **for long / for a long time**. I bought it last week.

2. We've been in Italy **for a long time / for long**. We've been here since 1975.

3. Have you been here **for a long time / for long**?

4. I haven't received a present **for long / for a long time**.

5. I haven't been there **for a long time / for long**. The last time I went there was ten years ago.

6. We haven't been here **for a long time / for long**. We've only been here for a few minutes.

★ **B** *IT IS ... SINCE*

Forma:

It is ... since + past simple (forma affermativa)

Uso:

questa costruzione si usa:

- **in alternativa** ad una forma di **durata negativa** per mettere in rilievo il tempo trascorso da quando una attività è cessata o è avvenuta l'ultima volta

- La domanda "**Da quanto tempo non ...?**" si rende con :

How long is it since ... + past simple ?
(forma affermativa)

It's two weeks since I last saw Paul.
Sono passate due settimane da quando ho visto Paul l'ultima volta / Non vedo Paul da due settimane.

=
I haven't seen Paul for two weeks.

=
The last time I saw Paul was two weeks ago.

How long is it since you (last) saw Paul?
Da quanto tempo non vedi Paul?

=
When did you last see Paul?

Quando hai visto Paul l'ultima volta?

=
How long ago did you see Paul?
Quanto tempo fa hai visto Paul?

- **in alternativa** a forme con **ago**, per mettere in rilievo il tempo trascorso da quando un'azione si è verificata

- con i **verbi che esprimono un'azione compiuta** come: *leave, arrive, start, finish, stop, die, ...*

- La domanda "**Da quanto tempo ...?**" si rende con la stessa costruzione del caso precedente:

How long is it since ... + past simple?
(forma affermativa)

It's two months since they left.
Sono passati due mesi da quando sono partiti.

=
They left two months ago.

Sono partiti due mesi fa.

How long is it since they left?
Da quanto tempo sono partiti?

=
How long ago did they leave?
Quanto tempo fa sono partiti?

PRACTICE

1. Riscrivi le frasi usando la costruzione *It's ... since ...*, come nell'esempio.

➤ *We haven't been to the cinema for ages.* **It's ages since we last went to the cinema.**

1. It hasn't rained for two months.

3. Susan hasn't written for two months.

2. I haven't heard from Paul for two weeks.

4. I haven't read a book for a long time.

2. Riscrivi le frasi usando il *present perfect simple*, come nell'esempio.

➤ *It's three months since he last visited us.* **He hasn't visited us for three months.**

1. It's a long time since we last saw him.

3. It's five years since she last ate meat.

2. It's two years since I last smoked.

4. It's ages since we last had a holiday.

3. Riscrivi le frasi usando il *past simple + ago*, come nell'esempio.

- *It's two years since he died.* ***He died two years ago.***
1. It's two months since they left.
2. It's ten years since they got divorced.
3. It's two hours since they arrived.
4. It's three weeks since Mark broke his arm.

4. Riscrivi le frasi usando *It's ... since ...*, come nell'esempio.

- *They arrived three weeks ago.* ***It's three weeks since they arrived.***
1. I finished working two hours ago.
2. They got divorced five years ago.
3. We played tennis two days ago.
4. I went to the doctor's a few months ago.

5. Riformula le domande e le risposte come nell'esempio. Ricorda di usare *for* e *since* correttamente.

- "When did she last cook spaghetti?" "Ages ago."
"How long is it since she last cooked spaghetti?" "She hasn't cooked spaghetti for ages."
1. "When did you last have a holiday abroad?" "In 2002."
2. "When did they last ring us?" "A month ago."
3. "When did it last snow?" "In December."
4. "When did you last see John?" "Three weeks."
5. "When did we last hear from David?" "Last summer."

6. Riformula le domande dell'esercizio precedente come nell'esempio.

- *When did she last cook spaghetti?* ***How long ago did she last cook spaghetti?***

SENTENCE TRANSFORMATION (PET)

7. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando non più di tre parole.

- *I haven't heard from Tom for two weeks.// It's two weeks since I heard from Tom.*
1. It's three months since I last saw her.
I haven't three months.
2. She hasn't bought a new dress for ages.
It's ages a new dress.
3. The last time we caught a train was four years ago.
It's we last caught a train.
4. I haven't visited my grandparents for a long time.
It's a long time since my grandparents.
5. How long ago did you write to him?
How long is it to him?

★ C PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS

Forma

Affermativa	sogg. + have ('ve) / has ('s) + been + forma in -ing
Negativa *	sogg. + have not / has not + been + forma in -ing (haven't) / (hasn't)
Interrogativa	have / has + sogg. + been + forma in -ing ?
Interrogativo-negativa	haven't / hasn't + sogg. + been + forma in -ing ?
Risposte brevi	Yes, sogg. + have / has / No, sogg. + haven't / hasn't

*She has ('s) been studying. / She hasn't been studying.
Has she been studying? / Hasn't she been studying?
Yes, she has. / No, she hasn't.*

Uso

• esprimere la durata di un'azione non conclusa , iniziata nel passato e che continua nel presente - con for ... e since ... , all morning/afternoon/day/week/ ...	<i>She's been working for two hours.</i> Lavora da due ore.
- solo con i verbi di azione (come: <i>work, study, do, listen to, watch, look at, ...</i>), che possono esprimere la continuità di un'azione - La domanda per chiedere la durata è introdotta da How long ...?	<i>They've been working since 3 o'clock.</i> Lavorano dalle 3. <i>I've been working all day.</i> È tutto il giorno che lavoro. How long have they been working? Da quanto tempo lavorano?
• parlare di un'azione appena conclusa , i cui effetti sono visibili nel presente	<i>Tom is muddy. He's been playing football.</i> Tom è infangato. Ha giocato a calcio. (Ha smesso da poco e si vede che è ancora sporco di fango.)

Ricordi la differenza di uso tra **for** e **since**?

(vedi a **PAG. 196**)

*

Di norma il **present perfect continuous** non si usa nelle frasi con valore negativo. Lo si trova **in forma negativa solo in alcuni casi**:

- per esprimere **irritazione**
You haven't been studying! Non hai studiato!
- nelle "**false negative**", cioè in frasi che nonostante la forma negativa mantengono un significato positivo e possono essere riformulate in forma affermativa
We haven't been waiting long. → *We have been waiting for a short time.*
Non aspettiamo da molto. → Aspettiamo da poco tempo.

PRACTICE

1. Costruisci frasi con il *present perfect continuous*. Esprimi correttamente la durata con *for* o *since* e i suggerimenti tra parentesi.

➤ *They are waiting for Bob. (half an hour)*
They have been waiting for Bob for half an hour.

1. Mary is studying. (*two hours*)
2. They are sleeping. (*two o'clock*)
3. They live in Rome. (*2003*)
4. Paul is talking on the phone. (*fifteen minutes*)
5. It is raining. (*Monday*)

2. Completa le frasi con il *present perfect continuous* dei verbi tra parentesi e completa gli spazi con *for* o *since*. Metti una *X* quando *for* e *since* non sono richiesti.

➤ *They (drive) **have been driving** since 7.00 in the morning.*
 1. Mary (*type*) letters all morning.
 2. They (*play*) tennis 2 o'clock.
 3. How long (*they / wait*) for us? - fifteen minutes.
 4. They (*listen*) to music three hours.

3. Leggi le situazioni e costruisci frasi con il *present perfect continuous* e la durata con *for*...

➤ *Martin and Barbara are playing chess.*
They started playing two hours ago.



Martin and Barbara have been playing chess for two hours.

2) James and Fred are playing golf. They started playing golf fifteen minutes ago.



1) Bob is repairing the car.
 He started repairing it half an hour ago.



3) It's 12.00. Michael started working at 8.00 and he is still working.



4. Le seguenti azioni *si sono appena concluse* e ne permangono gli effetti nel presente. Completa le frasi con il *present perfect continuous* nella forma corretta.

1. You are so dirty! What (*you / do*)?
2. You look angry! What's the matter with you? - I (*quarrel*) with Bob.
3. The workers (*work*) hard all day and they are tired now.
4. There is a lot of snow. It (*snow*) all morning.
5. Mum is still in the kitchen. She has just finished making Christmas lunch. She (*cook*) all morning.
6. The children are soaked to the skin. They (*play*) in the snow till now.



D PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE / PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS

Confronta il **diverso uso** del **present perfect simple** e del **present perfect continuous**.

SI USA

PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE	PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> per parlare della durata di un'azione/situazione non conclusa, iniziata nel passato e che continua nel presente - soprattutto con i verbi di stato <p><i>I've had this car for two months.</i> Ho questa macchina da due mesi. <i>We've been in England since Monday.</i> Siamo in Inghilterra da lunedì.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> per parlare della durata di un'azione non conclusa, iniziata nel passato e che continua nel presente - solo con i verbi di azione <p><i>I've been working for two hours.</i> Lavoro da due ore. <i>We've been waiting since 2 o'clock.</i> Aspettiamo dalle due.</p>

Con i verbi **work, teach, live** si possono usare abbastanza indifferentemente sia il **present perfect simple** che il **present perfect continuous**.

They have lived / have been living in Manchester for two years.

Vivono a Manchester da due anni.

Di norma si preferisce usare

- il **present perfect simple** per **situazioni di lunga durata o permanenti**;
- il **present perfect continuous** per **situazioni brevi o temporanee**;

They have lived there since they were children. (situazione permanente)

Vivono in quella casa da quando erano bambini.

They have been living in a small flat for two months but they are looking for a house. (situazione temporanea)

Vivono in un piccolo appartamento da due mesi ma stanno cercando una casa.

♦ Inoltre

SI USA

PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE	PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> per parlare di un'azione conclusa in un tempo indeterminato. L'enfasi è posta sul risultato. <p><i>Peter has decorated the house.</i> Peter ha dipinto la casa. (la casa ora è dipinta)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> per parlare di un'azione appena conclusa o ancora non del tutto conclusa. L'enfasi è posta sull'azione nel corso del suo svolgimento o sugli effetti procurati dall'azione stessa. <p><i>Peter is tired because he has been decorating the house.</i> Peter è stanco perché ha dipinto la casa.</p>
<p><i>Bob has repaired his bike.</i> Bob ha riparato la sua moto. (ora la può usare)</p>	<p><i>Bob's hands are dirty because he's been repairing his bike.</i> Le mani di Bob sono sporche perché ha riparato la sua moto.</p>
<p><i>I've written six letters.</i> Ho scritto sei lettere. (l'azione è stata completata e l'enfasi è posta sul risultato)</p>	<p><i>I've been writing letters all morning.</i> Ho scritto lettere tutta la mattina. (l'azione è già completata e l'enfasi è posta sull'azione) Oppure: E' tutta la mattina che scrivo lettere. (l'azione non è ancora stata completata e l'enfasi è posta sull'azione ancora in corso di svolgimento)</p>

Attenzione!!!

IL PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS NON SI USA

- con i **verbi di stato** come: *be, have, own, belong, want, know, understand, like, ...*
(vedi a **PAG.** **96**)
- con i **verbi che esprimono un'azione compiuta** come: *leave, arrive, start, finish, stop, break, meet, decide, ...*
- con: *how much, how many, how often ...? just, already, ever, never, yet, not ... yet, once, twice, three times, it's the first time, ...*

- di norma nelle **frasi negative**
Non si dice: *She hasn't been writing any letters for months.*
Ma si dice: *She hasn't written any letters for months.*
- con espressioni che evidenziano una **quantità** o un **numero** perché enfatizzano il risultato
Non si dice: *I have been making five phonecalls.*
Ma si dice: *I have made five phonecalls.*

PRACTICE

1. Completa le risposte con i verbi tra parentesi al *present perfect simple* o al *present perfect continuous* per esprimere la durata di azioni / situazioni non concluse. (Fai attenzione: verbo di stato o verbo di azione?)
 1. Paul and Martin are good friends, aren't they?
Yes, they (*know*) each other for over seven years.
 2. Has Paul got a new car now?
Yes, he (*have*) it for a month.
 3. Has George started his guitar course?
Yes, he (*take*) lessons for two weeks.
 4. Do you know where Mark and Jane are?
Yes, they (*be*) at the seaside for a week.
 5. Am I late?
Yes, we (*wait*) for fifteen minutes.
 6. Are you tired?
Yes, I (*work*) since 8 o'clock.
 7. Is it snowing over there?
Yes, it (*snow*) for hours.
 8. You're living in Florence now, aren't you?
Yes, we (*live*) in Florence since October.
 9. Are they still talking on the phone?
Yes, they (*talk*) for nearly an hour.
 10. Do they own that big house?
Yes, David's family (*own*) that house for generations.
2. Formula domande usando il *present perfect simple* o il *present perfect continuous* adeguatamente (Fai attenzione: verbo di stato o verbo di azione?)
 - *I've got a terrible sore throat.* **How long have you had it?**
 1. Mark and Bob are in New York.
 2. I know Richard very well.
 3. Susan and Betty are learning Chinese.
 4. Alan is studying.
 5. She's got flu.
 6. They are doing their homework.

3. Completa le frasi con il *present perfect simple* o il *present perfect continuous* per parlare di azioni concluse. (Fai attenzione: enfasi sul risultato o enfasi sull'azione e sugli effetti dell'azione stessa?)

- *Why are you tired? - Because I (cut) **have been cutting** the grass.*
- *Is the garden all right? - Yes, I (cut) **have cut** the grass.*

 - 1.** Why are you sweating? - Because I (*clean*) the floor.
 - 2.** Is the floor clean? - Yes, I (*clean*) it.
 - 3.** Why are your eyes red? - Because I (*peel*) the onions.
 - 4.** Are the onions ready? - Yes, I (*peel*) them.
 - 5.** Why are your hands wet? - Because I (*wash*) the dishes.
 - 6.** Are the dishes clean? - Yes, I (*wash*) them.

4. Rispondi alle domande con una frase negativa, come nell'esempio.

- *Do you often see Paul? (no / for ages)*
No, I haven't seen him for ages.

 - 1.** Do they often have a holiday in the mountains? (no / for years)
 - 2.** Does your brother often use the bus? (no / for months)
 - 3.** Do you often send SMS messages? (no / since last Christmas)
 - 4.** Does Sarah often e-mail you? (no / for weeks)
 - 5.** Do you often phone Susan? (no / since 1st January)

5. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

- 1.** How many times **have they arrived / have they been arriving** late this month?
- 2.** I **haven't been talking / haven't talked to** Peter for months.
- 3.** How much money **have you been spending / have you spent** this week?
- 4.** How long **have you waited / have you been waiting** for me?
- 5.** James **hasn't rung / hasn't been ringing** for three weeks.

6. Scrivi frasi complete utilizzando i suggerimenti forniti. Usa il *present perfect simple* o il *present perfect continuous* adeguatamente e aggiungi tutti gli elementi necessari.

- *David and Sue / be / on holiday / two weeks.*
David and Sue have been on holiday for two weeks.

- 1.** They / not win / a tournament / 2000
- 2.** How long / you / have / that jacket?
- 3.** We / not meet / a long time
- 4.** Bob / listen to music / all afternoon
- 5.** They / decorate / the sitting room / all day
- 6.** It / not rain / two months

7. Completa i *mini-dialoghi* con il *present perfect simple* o il *present perfect continuous* dei verbi tra parentesi alla forma corretta.

- 1.** A: (you / already / decide) where to go on holiday?
B: Well, we (*talk*) about it for weeks but we (*not / decide*) anything yet.
- 2.** A: Why are you so worried?
B: Because my sister (*have*) an accident. She (*break*) her left leg and an arm.
- 3.** A: Excuse me. (you / wait) long?
B: Yes, I (*queue*) for almost half an hour but the bus (*not / arrive*) yet.

8. Completa le seguenti frasi con il *present perfect simple* o il *present perfect continuous* alla forma corretta.

1. "Look at you! You're so dirty! What (*you / do*).....?" "I (*play*) football."
2. We'd better stop jogging. We (*jog*) for over an hour.
3. He (*just / stop*) complaining.
4. I can't find my pullover. (*you / see*) it?
5. Mary and Paul (*not / come*) back from holiday yet.
6. "(*you / ever / be*) abroad?" "Yes, I (*be*) to France many times."
7. A rich family (*own*) that castle for many years.
8. David (*have*) that old car since 1995.
9. What a terrible noise! They (*drill*) holes on the wall for hours!
10. They (*talk*) about building a new hospital for years.
11. How long (*you / live*) in Florence? - For three months now.
12. That old couple (*live*) in that house all their life.
13. "How many times (*you / visit*) that museum?" "Three times so far."
14. He (*teach*) in that school since 1998.
15. I (*type*) for hours. I (*type*) ten letters.

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION (FCE)

9. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando da due a cinque parole compreso la parola fornita.

- *She started working on that project two months ago.*
been *She has been working on that project for two months.*
1. It's the first time she has been to Paris.
never She has before.
 2. I came to live here three months ago.
for I have been three months.
 3. I started typing my curriculum vitae at 2 o'clock.
since I have been 2 o'clock.
 4. She got to the station ten minutes ago. Now she is waiting for the train.
waiting She for the train for ten minutes.
 5. Melanie bought that car in October.
had Melanie since October.
 6. Bob arrived a few minutes ago.
just Bob arrived.
 7. They started cleaning the hotel hall an hour ago.
have They the hotel hall for an hour.
 8. He has never flown in an helicopter before.
time It's the in an helicopter.
 9. Mrs Gray started cooking two hours ago.
has Mrs Gray for two hours.
 10. She has never been to Scotland before.
first It's the to Scotland.

Grammar and practice

A. Past perfect simple
B. Past perfect simple
con "for" e "since"

C. Past perfect continuous
D. Past perfect simple / Past perfect continuous
Revision: i tempi del passato

★ A PAST PERFECT SIMPLE

Forma

Affermativa	sogg. + had ('d) + participio passato
Negativa	sogg. + had not (hadn't) + participio passato
Interrogativa	had + sogg. + participio passato?
Interrogativo-negativa	hadn't + sogg. + participio passato?
Risposte brevi	Yes, sogg. + had / No, sogg. + hadn't

*He had seen her before. / He hadn't seen her before.
Had he seen her before? / Hadn't he seen her before?
Yes, he had. / No, he hadn't.*

Frase	Question tag (vero? / non è vero?)
Affermativa <i>They had travelled a lot,</i> Avevano viaggiato molto,	hadn't + soggetto? <i>hadn't they?</i> vero?
Negativa <i>They hadn't travelled much,</i> Non avevano viaggiato molto,	had + soggetto? <i>had they?</i> vero?

Uso

Il **past perfect simple** è il passato del **present perfect simple** e corrisponde al trapassato prossimo dell'italiano. **Confronta** gli esempi.

Present perfect simple	Past perfect simple
<i>I'm not hungry. I have just eaten.</i> Non ho fame. Ho appena mangiato.	<i>I wasn't hungry. I had just eaten.</i> Non avevo fame. Avevo appena mangiato.

Il **past perfect simple** si usa:

• per un'azione che è avvenuta prima di un tempo passato.	<i>She had cooked dinner by six o'clock.</i> Aveva preparato la cena prima delle sei.
• per un'azione avvenuta prima di un'altra azione passata. L'azione che è avvenuta dopo in ordine cronologico va espressa con il past simple .	<i>When I got to the airport the plane had already taken off.</i> Quando arrivai all'aeroporto, l'aereo era già decollato. (<i>The plane had taken off</i> - 1a azione; <i>I got to the airport</i> - 2a azione)

Espressioni di tempo usate con il **past perfect simple**

*before, after, till/until, as soon as, when,
by the time, by six o'clock/midnight,
already, just, ever, never, yet, not ... yet, ...*

Il **past perfect simple** si usa anche:

- quando la frase inizia con:

It was the first/second/ ... time

It was the second time he had broken his leg.

Era la seconda volta che si rompeva una gamba.

- con i **superlativi** in frasi come:

That was the worst film I had ever seen.

Quello era il peggior film che avessi mai visto.

Il **past perfect** è spesso usato in **testi narrativi** e nel **discorso indiretto** introdotto da verbi di "dire" al passato come

"*said*", "*told*", "*explained*", "*wanted to know*", "*asked*", ecc.

He said he had never been to England before.

Disse che non era mai stato in Inghilterra in precedenza.

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi con il *past perfect simple* dei verbi tra parentesi alla forma corretta.

1. Pamela (*meet*) Bill at Chester two years before.
2. Peter (*have*) that car for two years.
3. When I got home, they (*already / have*) dinner.
4. We (*never / see*) Paris before.
5. They (*stay*) at the same hotel the year before.
6. "(*you / fly*) in an helicopter before?" "No, it was the first time."
7. When I saw Mary, she (*not / divorce*) her husband yet.
8. I (*not / cook*) dinner by the time the guests arrived.

2. Completa le frasi con *risposte brevi* e *question tags*.

1. We had seen that film before,? - Yes,
2. We hadn't been there before,? - No,
3. They had checked their passports before leaving,? - Yes,
4. You hadn't met Jason before,? - No, I

3. La madre di Susan era andata via per alcuni giorni. Guarda la tabella e scrivi ciò che Susan aveva o non aveva fatto prima che sua madre tornasse. Usa il *past perfect* alla forma *affermativa* o *negativa*.

➤ feed the dog	yes
1. clean her room	no
2. water the plants	no
3. do the ironing	yes
4. wash the dishes	no

➤ **Susan had fed the dog.**

Susan hadn't cleaned her room yet.....

Susan hadn't watered the plants.....

Susan had already done the ironing.....

Susan hadn't wash dishes yet.....

4. Fai riferimento all'esercizio precedente e scrivi domande e risposte, seguendo l'esempio.

➤ **Had Susan fed the dog? - Yes, she had.**

5. Guarda nella tabella le cose che **Mark** aveva / non aveva fatto prima di avere 7 anni. Poi scrivi frasi su Mark seguendo l'esempio.

 Mark	➤ <i>start / school</i>	yes
	1. travel / by train	no
	2. learn / how to read	yes
	3. use / a computer	yes
	4. see / a lot of films	no

➤ ***By the time Mark was 7 he had started school.***

.....
.....
.....
.....

6. Indica quale azione è avvenuta per prima (F) e quale per seconda (S).

- *When we came out of the cinema, somebody had stolen our car.*
(a) *We came out of the cinema* (S) / (b) *Somebody had stolen our car* (F)
1. We left the pub after we had drunk a few pints of beer.
(a) We left the pub (S) / (b) We had drunk a few pints of beer (F)
 2. When he heard that song he realised he had heard it long time before.
(a) He heard that song (S) / (b) He had heard it long time before (F)
 3. She had quarrelled with her boyfriend so she didn't phone him.
(a) She had quarrelled with her boyfriend (F) / (b) She didn't phone him. (S)
 4. The film had already started by the time we arrived at the cinema.
(a) We arrived at the cinema (S) / (b) The film had started (F)

7. Completa le frasi con i verbi tra parentesi al *past perfect simple* o al *past simple*.

1. Rachel (*not / go*) to bed until she had taken a shower.
2. As soon as the plane had landed, the captain (*turn off*) the seat-belt sign.
3. We (*lock*) the door as soon as everyone had left.
4. By the time Sean woke up, his mother (*already / make*) breakfast.
5. Paul had just finished eating when the doorbell (*ring*)
6. Tom didn't want to go to the cinema as he (*see*) that film before.
7. Susan (*wash*) the dishes after everyone had gone home.

8. Unisci le frasi adeguatamente usando le espressioni di tempo tra parentesi e mettendo i verbi al tempo corretto.

➤ *They played video games. They finished their homework. (after)*
After they had finished their homework, they played video games.

1. Tom was 13 years old. He learnt to speak French. (*by the time*)
2. Mark and Susan lived in Glasgow. They moved to London. (*before*)
3. My sister cooked dinner. I came home from work. (*by the time*)
4. Jeff tried on many pullovers. He decided to buy the blue one. (*after*)
5. Susan finished the washing up. She read the newspaper. (*after*)
6. Tom went to school. He had breakfast. (*as soon as*)

9. Completa le frasi con il *past perfect simple* o il *past simple* dei verbi tra parentesi.

1. When they (*reach*) the station the train (*already / leave*)
..... **had already left**
2. I (*not / know*) **didn't know** any of the people at the conference. I (*never / meet*)
..... **had never met** them before.
3. The students (*ask*) **asked** the teacher to repeat what he (*just / say*)
..... **had just said**
4. We (*not / want*) **didn't want** to go to Chester because we (*already / be*)
..... **had already been** there twice.
5. He (*just / eat*) **had just eaten** so he (*not / be*) **wasn't angry** hungry.

10. Completa le frasi usando correttamente i verbi forniti in ordine sparso al *past perfect simple*.

forget / get up / be / win / not clean / not sleep / bake

➤ *There was a delicious smell in the kitchen. Mum had baked a cake.*

1. The streets were icy. It freezing cold that morning.

2. David was locked out of his house. He to take his keys.

3. Tom was tired. He very early that morning.

4. I was exhausted. I well.

5. Barbara bought a large house with a swimming pool. She the lottery.

6. Her room was a mess. She it for over a month.

11. Riscrivi le frasi in modo tale che abbiano lo stesso significato di quelle date.

➤ *We had never had such a good time before.*

It was the first time we had had such a good time.

➤ *It was the first time she had been on a plane.*

She had never been on a plane before.

1. Jennifer had never visited a big city before.
2. It was the first time John had ridden a bicycle.
3. He had never spoken to me before.
4. I had never eaten Chinese food.
5. It was the first time he had put up a tent.
6. They had never been late before.

12. Completa le frasi adeguatamente con i verbi forniti in ordine sparso al *past perfect simple* come nell'esempio.

read / visit / hear / receive / eat

➤ *That was the best book I had ever read.*

1. That was the worst food I **had ever eaten**

2. That was the best museum I **had ever visited**

3. That was the most beautiful song I **had ever heard**

4. That was the most precious present I **had ever received**

13. Riporta le affermazioni utilizzando il *past perfect simple*.

➤ *I've found a gold watch. // He said he had found a gold watch.*

1. Where's Mandy gone? // He asked where Mandy **had gone**

2. I've passed the Pet exam. // He told me he **had passed the PET exam**

3. Have you ever been to Spain? // He asked me if I **had been to Spain**

4. Why hasn't he accepted my invitation? // He wanted to know why he **hadn't accepted his invitation**

5. Yes, you've broken your leg. // The doctor confirmed I **had broken my leg**

6. Where have you been? // He wanted to know where I **had been**

★ **B PAST PERFECT SIMPLE con "for" e "since"**

Oltre ai casi presentati nel paragrafo precedente, il past perfect simple si usa anche:	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> per esprimere la durata di un'azione/situazione iniziata prima del momento passato cui si fa riferimento o prima di un'altra azione anch'essa passata, negli stessi casi previsti per il present perfect simple, solo che mentre quest'ultimo ha come punto di riferimento il presente, il past perfect simple ha come punto di riferimento il passato <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - con for ... e since ..., all my life, ... - soprattutto con i verbi di stato <p>(vedi a PAG. 96)</p> 	<p><i>I had had that car for two months when someone stole it.</i> Avevo quella macchina da due anni quando qualcuno la rubò.</p> <p><i>They got married in 1997. They had known each other for four years / since 1993.</i> Si sono sposati nel 1997. Si conoscevano da quattro anni / dal 1993.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - con i verbi di azione soprattutto in frasi negative. Per esprimere la durata con i verbi di azione, in frasi affermative si preferisce usare il <i>past perfect continuous</i> – <p>(vedi a PAG. 212)</p>	<p><i>I hadn't written to Peter for two months.</i> Non scrivevo a Peter da due mesi.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> La domanda sulla durata, Da quanto tempo?, si rende con "How long ...?" 	<p><i>How long had they known each other?</i> Da quanto tempo si conoscevano? =</p> <p><i>Had they known each other (for) long?</i> Si conoscevano da molto tempo?</p>

<p>La durata negativa dell'italiano, in alternativa alla costruzione con <i>for</i> e <i>since</i>, può essere resa con la struttura</p> <p>It was ... since + past perfect (affermativo)</p>	<p>It was two months since I had written to Peter. Erano due mesi che non scrivevo a Peter. / Non scrivevo a Peter da due mesi.</p>
<p>La domanda alla forma interrogativo-negativa dell'italiano "Da quanto tempo non ...?" Si rende con</p> <p>How long was it since + past perfect (affermativo)</p>	<p>How long was it since you had (last) written to Peter? Da quanto tempo non scrivevi a Peter?</p>

Ricorda che con i **verbi che esprimono azioni compiute** (verbi cioè che non esprimono una durata nel tempo, come *leave, arrive, finish, stop, die, ...*) non si può avere la costruzione con *for* e *since*.

Pertanto frasi come:

Erano partiti da molto tempo. / Era morto da tre anni.

si rendono in inglese con il **past perfect + before**

They had left a long time before. / *He had died three years before.*

Oppure con la struttura:

It was ... since + past perfect

It was a long time since they had left. / *It was three years since he had died.*

PRACTICE

1 Completa le frasi con il *past perfect simple* dei verbi tra parentesi e gli spazi con *for* o *since*.

- They (*own*) **had owned** that house **for** ages, before they sold it.
1. I (*have*) **had had** that car **since** August.
 2. The weather (*be*) **had been** warm and sunny **for** four days.
 3. I (*know*) **had known** Susan **for** two years.
 4. We (*not / see*) **hadn't seen** Peter **for** ages.
 5. That castle (*belong*) **had belonged** to his family **for** many generations.
 6. I (*not / write*) **hadn't written** to Jane **for** months.

2 Scrivi *mini-dialoghi* usando le parole fornite. Ricorda di usare *for* o *since* correttamente.

- you / have / that scooter? // a long time A: **How long had you had that scooter?**
B: **I had had it for a long time.**

1. they / be / married ??/ 1998
2. they / know / each other ? // two years
3. they / own / that house? // years and years
4. you / have / flu ? // the beginning of the week

3 Riscrivi le frasi usando la costruzione *It was ... since ...*, come nell'esempio.

- We hadn't been to the cinema for ages. **It was ages since we had last been to the cinema.**

1. It hadn't rained for two months.
2. I hadn't heard from Paul for two weeks.
3. Susan hadn't written for two months.
4. I hadn't read a book for a long time.

4 Riscrivi le frasi usando il *past perfect simple*, come nell'esempio.

- It was three months since he had last visited us. **He hadn't visited us for three months.**

1. It was a long time since we had last seen him.
2. It was two years since I had last smoked.
3. It was five years since she had last eaten meat.
4. It was ages since we had last had a holiday.

5 Riscrivi le frasi usando il *past perfect simple + before*, come nell'esempio.

- It was two years since he had died. **He had died two years before.**

1. It was two months since they had left.
2. It was ten years since they had got married.
3. It was two hours since they had arrived.
4. It was three weeks since Mark had broken his arm.

6 Riscrivi le frasi usando *It was ... since ...*, come nell'esempio.

- They had arrived three weeks before. **It was three weeks since they had arrived.**

1. I had finished working two hours before.
2. They had got divorced five years before.
3. We had played tennis two days before.
4. I had seen John a few months before.

7 Scrivi domande come nell'esempio.

- She hadn't cooked spaghetti for ages. **How long was it since she had (last) cooked spaghetti?**

1. They hadn't had a holiday since 2002.
2. They hadn't rung us for a month.
3. It hadn't snowed for a long time.
4. We hadn't heard from Mary since August.

★ C PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS

Forma

Affermativa	sogg. + had + been +	forma in -ing
Negativa	sogg. + had not (hadn't) + been +	forma in -ing
Interrogativa	had + sogg. + been +	forma in -ing?
Interrogativo-negativa	hadn't + sogg. + been +	forma in -ing?
Risposte brevi	Yes , sogg. + had . / No , sogg. + hadn't .	
	<i>She had been working. / She hadn't been working.</i>	
	<i>Had she been working? / Hadn't she been working?</i>	
	<i>Yes, she had. / No, she hadn't.</i>	

Il past perfect continuous è il passato del present perfect continuous.

Confronta gli esempi:

Present perfect continuous	Past perfect continuous
<i>I'm tired. I have been working hard.</i> Sono stanco. Ho lavorato molto.	<i>I was tired. I had been working hard.</i> Ero stanco. Avevo lavorato molto.

★ D PAST PERFECT SIMPLE / PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS

Il past perfect continuous è preferibile al past perfect simple quando si vuole evidenziare l'azione nel corso del suo svolgimento. La differenza d'uso tra il past perfect simple ed il past perfect continuous è la stessa esistente tra il present perfect simple e il present perfect continuous (vedi a PAG. 202)

Attenzione!!!

IL PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS NON SI USA

- | | |
|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">con i verbi di stato come: <i>be, have, own, belong, want, know, understand, like, ...</i>
(vedi a PAG. 96)con i verbi che esprimono un'azione compiuta come: <i>leave, arrive, start, finish, stop, break, meet, decide, ...</i>con: <i>how much, how many, how often ...? just, already, ever, never, yet, not ... yet, once, twice, three times, it was the first time, ...</i> | <ul style="list-style-type: none">di norma nelle frasi negative
Non si dice: <i>She hadn't been writing any letters for months.</i>
Ma si dice: <i>She hadn't written any letters for months.</i>con espressioni che evidenziano una quantità o un numero perché enfatizzano il risultato
Non si dice: <i>I had been making five phonecalls.</i>
Ma si dice: <i>I had made five phonecalls.</i> |
|--|--|

PRACTICE

6. Trasforma le frasi utilizzando il *past perfect simple* o il *past perfect continuous*. Usa i suggerimenti tra parentesi e *for* o *since*. (Fai attenzione: verbo di stato o verbo di azione?)

➤ *They were at the conference. (9 a.m.)*

They had been at the conference since 9 a.m.

1. They were trying to sell their house. (*two years*)
2. The teacher was teaching the students the difference between the past perfect simple and the past perfect continuous. (*an hour*)
3. The coach was training the team for the final match. (*April*)
4. That shop was for sale. (*November*)
5. Mark had a very fast bike. (*two weeks*)

7. Formula domande seguendo l'esempio. Usa correttamente il *past perfect simple* o il *past perfect continuous*. (Fai attenzione: verbo di stato o verbo di azione?)

➤ *When I met Francesca, she was studying English in London.*

Really? How long had she been studying there?

1. Bob and Jane knew each other very well when they got married.
2. They were abroad when their house was broken into.
3. She was working as an au-pair girl in France.
4. They owned a hotel by the sea.
5. Susan and Frank were already married when they returned from the USA.

8. Gli amici di Tom avevano appena finito di svolgere alcune attività nella casa di campagna quando Tom arrivò. Completa le frasi con il *past perfect simple* o il *past perfect continuous*. (Fai attenzione: enfasi sul risultato o sull'azione nel corso del suo svolgimento?)

➤ *Susan was sweating because she (clean) **had been cleaning** the floors.*

➤ *The lawn was finished. Mark (cut) **had cut** the grass.*

1. Sarah's hands were wet because she (*wash*) **had been washing** the curtains.
2. George looked tired because he (*fix*) **had been fixing** the roof.
3. The gate was repaired. Ted (*repair*) **had repaid** it.
4. Mary had cold hands because she (*defrost*) **had been defrosting** the fridge.
5. Dinner was ready. Sheila (*prepare*) **had prepared** it.
6. All the rooms were warm. David (*turn on*) **had turned** the heating.

9. Completa le frasi con il *past perfect simple* o il *past perfect continuous*.

1. How long (*they / be*) **had they been** at the conference by the time you arrived?
2. We (*drive*) **had been driving** for six hours when the accident occurred.
3. By the time we arrived, mum (*just / start*) **had just started** to make dinner.
4. They said that they (*already / sell*) **had already sold** their cottage.
5. She had a red car at that time. She (*have*) **had had** it for two years.
6. That old castle (*belong*) **had belanged** to her family for many years by the time they decided to sell it.
7. (*they / decide*) **had they decided** where to go on holiday when you met them?
8. John (*already / learn*) **had already learnt** to read and write before he started school.
9. I was out of breath. I (*run*) **had been running** since three o'clock. I (*run*) **I had run** six miles.
10. The little boy was crying because he (*not / eat*) **hadn't been eating** enough.
11. She explained she had a terrible headache because she (*type*) **had been typing** all afternoon. She (*type*) **had typed** ten letters.

REVISION

I tempi del passato

1. Scrivi i verbi al tempo corretto (*past simple, past continuous, present perfect simple, present perfect continuous, past perfect simple, past perfect continuous*)

1. "Why is Susan bored?" "Her mum (*talk*) has been talking on the phone for over an hour."
2. (*you / see*) Have you seen my mobile? I (*look*) I have been looking for it since yesterday.
3. "(*you / have*) Did you have a good time at the party last night?" "Yes, I did. The party (*be*) was great."
4. "(*you / study*) Have you been studying all afternoon?" "No, I (*just / start*) have just started "
5. "What (*you / do*) were you doing when it (*start*) sterted to rain?" "I (*drive*) was driving to work."
6. "How long (*they / cycle*) had they been before they stopped for a rest?" "For three hours."
7. "Why didn't he have anything to eat?" "Because he (*already / have*) had already had lunch at home."
8. By the time we got to the station, the train (*already / leave*) had already left
9. Yesterday I met Clare. I (*not / see*) hadn't seen her for ages. She (*tell*) told me she (*be*) had been abroad for two months.
10. "What did you think of the exhibition?" "It (*be*) was great! I (*never / see*) had never seen such beautiful paintings before."
11. When I (*get*) got home, Tom (*relax*) was relaxing on the sofa. He was exhausted because he (*work*) had been working hard all day.
12. "Last night I (*meet*) met Peter at the pub." "Really? How long was it since you (*see*) had seen him?"
13. "I (*not / see*) haven't seen Peter for a long time. (*you / see*) Have you seen him recently?" "No, I haven't. It's ages since I last (*see*) saw him."

2. Completa il testo con il *past simple, present perfect simple, past perfect simple o past perfect continuous*.

Gerard Gorman 1) (*work*) had been working in a bank for two years when he 2) (*realise*) realised that he 3) (*not / like*) didn't like his job. He 4) (*think*) thought it 5) (*be*) was boring and he 6) (*need*) needed a change. He 7) (*always / be*) he has always been fascinated by bikes and he 8) (*gain*) gained some experience in dealing with people so he 9) (*decide*) decided to start a business of his own, selling and repairing bikes. That 10) (*be*) was last year. He 11) (*be*) has been much happier since then.

3. Completa il testo con il *past simple, past continuous, o past perfect simple*.

Sheila and Norman 1) (*set off*) set off early that morning. At 9 o'clock they 2) (*travel*) were travelling on a train heading to Manchester, when suddenly the conductor 3) (*announce*) announced that all the passengers had to get off. The train's engine 4) (*break down*) broke down

4. Completa il testo con il *past simple*, il *past perfect simple* o il *past perfect continuous*.

The first time I 1) (*visit*) visited Golden Beach I was on holiday with my girlfriend. A friend of ours 2) (*tell*) told us that it was the best beach in the area. When we 3) (*arrive*) arrived we 4) (*see*) saw hundreds of people lying on the beach and it 5) (*take*) took about fifteen minutes to find a spot to sit down.

We 6) (*sit*) sat in the sun for about an hour when we suddenly 7) (*realise*) realised that we were getting sunburnt, so we 8) (*decide*) decided to go for a swim. The water 9) (*be*) was so refreshing that we 10) (*swim*) had swam for about an hour. After that, we 11) (*go*) went to the bar for a drink. Much to our surprise, when we 12) (*get*) got back to our spot, the tide 13) (*come*) came in and all our things were soaked! Our friends 14) (*forget*) forgot to tell us not to sit too close to the water.

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION (FCE)

5. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando da due a cinque parole compreso la parola fornita.

- *The last time there was an earthquake in this area was ten years ago.*
since *It's ten years since there was an earthquake in this area.*

1. How long is it since they moved to London?
ago How long to London?
2. When did you last see your sister?
saw How long is it your sister?
3. It was a long time since he had worked overtime.
for He a long time.
4. He left the country two months ago.
since It's the country.
5. How long ago did you buy a new dress?
is How long a new dress?

ERROR CORRECTION

6. Elimina la parola non necessaria contenuta in ciascuna frase.

- *They were been worried because it was the first time they had been on a plane.*

1. He told me that he **had** had been trying to phone me all afternoon.
2. He was very upset when he realised he **had** missed the train.
3. They **had** been walking for three hours by the time they **had** reached the top of the hill.
4. He was **been** waiting for the bus when I saw him.
5. I didn't **have** sleep well last night.
6. How long was it since you **had** not seen him?

Grammar and practice

- | | |
|---|--|
| A. Present continuous con valore di futuro | D. Future simple |
| B. <i>To be going to</i> | E. Future simple / <i>To be going to</i> |
| C. Present continuous / <i>To be going to</i> | Revision: tempi verbali (il futuro) |

★ A PRESENT CONTINUOUS con valore di futuro

Uso

Il **present continuous** si usa con valore di futuro per parlare di **azioni future programmate** prima del momento in cui si parla.

*I'm going to the pub tonight.
I'm not going to the pub tonight.
Are you going to the pub tonight?
Aren't you going to the pub tonight?
Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.*

What are you doing this afternoon?

*I'm going to the supermarket and then
I'm meeting Jenny at 5.*

Espressioni di tempo usate con il **present continuous** con valore di futuro:
tonight/this evening questa sera **tomorrow** domani
next week la prossima settimana **in two weeks** tra due settimane
in July in luglio **on Monday** lunedì

Attenzione!!!

Confronta gli esempi:



He's watching TV.
Sta guardando la televisione.
(azione del presente in corso di svolgimento)



He's watching TV this evening.
Questa sera guarderà la televisione.
(azione futura programmata)

PRACTICE

1. Indica quali frasi esprimono *un'azione del presente* in corso di svolgimento (P) e quali frasi esprimono *un'azione futura programmata* (F).

- *Look! That's Peter over there. Where is he going?* (P)
1. *What are you doing next summer? Have you got any plans?* (...)
 2. *Tom is in the sitting room. He's trying to repair the television.* (...)
 3. *What time are they leaving? - In a few minutes.* (...)
 4. *What are you doing? - I'm sending an e-mail.* (...)
 5. *Mary's working at a supermarket these days.* (...)
 6. *He's taking an exam next week.* (...)

2. Completa le frasi con la *forma affermativa del present continuous* con valore futuro.

1. Jimmy (*work*) until eight o'clock this evening.
 2. Mary and Peter (*visit*) their parents on Saturday.
 3. I (*play*) tennis this afternoon.
 4. Our friends (*come*) to visit us next Sunday.
 5. We (*have*) lunch in a few minutes.
 6. They (*leave*) next Friday.
-

3. Trasforma le frasi nella forma indicata tra parentesi.

➤ *My friends are going to Rome next week. (neg.)*
My friends aren't going to Rome next week.

1. Is David meeting the boss this afternoon? (aff.)
2. George is visiting Cambridge next weekend. (interr.)
3. Are they leaving for India next week? (aff.)
4. The French tourists are arriving on Saturday morning. (interr.-neg.)
5. I'm going to the dentist's on Friday afternoon. (neg.)

4. Leggi i *programmi di Alan* per il prossimo sabato e scrivi *mini-dialoghi* come nell'esempio.

SATURDAY 18 th

9 am	visit the dentist
11 am	meet Jane for coffee
1 pm	have lunch with Peter
5 pm	catch the train to Manchester
10 pm	go to the disco with Pamela

➤ *A: What's Alan doing at 9 o'clock?*
B: He's visiting the dentist at 9 o'clock.

5. Completa i *mini-dialoghi* con le domande adeguate. Usa il *present continuous* e le *question words appropriate* (*who, how, where, how long, how many*)

➤ *A: My friends Sarah and Paul are spending their holidays at the Bahamas this summer.*
B: Really? How long are they spending there?
A: I'm not sure. Two weeks, I presume.

1. A: We're going on a school trip next week.
B:?
A: To Rome.
2. A: Some of my friends are travelling to London next month.
B:?
A: By plane, I presume.
3. A: Megan is staying in Manchester tonight.
B:?
A: At a Bed & Breakfast, I think.
4. A: Some of my schoolmates are going to Italy next week.
B:?
A: 18 out of 22.
5. A: I'm spending a holiday in Greece next summer.
B:?
A: Three weeks.
6. A: Sarah is going to the theatre tonight.
B:?
A: With Alan, I presume.

★ B TO BE GOING TO

Forma

Affermativa	sogg. + am / is / are + ('m / 's / 're) + going to + forma base
Negativa	sogg. + am / is / are not + ('m not / isn't / aren't) + going to + forma base
Interrogativa	am / is / are + sogg. + going to + forma base ?
Interrogativo-negativa	aren't I + isn't he / she / it + aren't we / you / they + } going to + forma base ?
Risposte brevi	Yes, sogg. + am / is / are No, sogg. + 'm not / isn't / aren't

He is ('s) going to take his car to a mechanic.

He is not (isn't) going to take his car to a mechanic.

Is he going to take his car to a mechanic?

Isn't he going to take his car to a mechanic?

Yes, he is. / No, he isn't.

Frase	Question tag (vero? / non è vero?)
Affermativa <i>They're going to spend their holidays in Spain,</i> Hanno intenzione di trascorrere le loro vacanze in Spagna,	aren't / isn't + sogg.? aren't they? vero?
Negativa <i>They aren't going to spend their holidays in Spain,</i> Non hanno intenzione di trascorrere le loro vacanze in Spagna,	am / is / are + sogg.? are they? vero?

Uso

Il futuro con "to be going to" si usa per:	
• esprimere intenzione (azioni che si ha intenzione di realizzare ma che non si è sicuri che si realizzeranno)	<i>Bob is going to save money because he wants to buy a motorbike.</i> Bob ha intenzione di risparmiare del danaro perché vuole comperare una motocicletta.
• parlare di azioni/eventi che quasi certamente si realizzeranno perché ne esistono già i presupposti (previsione basata su ciò che si vede) Può tradurre l'italiano "stare per"	<i>Look at that girl! She's going to fall off her bike.</i> Guarda quella ragazza! Sta per cadere dalla bicicletta.

Attenzione!!!

Confronta gli esempi:



PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi con la forma corretta affermativa di *to be going to* dei verbi tra parentesi, poi trasforma le frasi ottenute in forma *negativa*, *interrogativa* e *interrogativo-negativa*.

➤ *They (give) are going to give Mary a present for her birthday.*

They aren't going to give Mary a present for her birthday.

Are they going to give Mary a present for her birthday?

Aren't they going to give Mary a present for her birthday?

1. He (*buy*) a new car. 2. Pamela (*invite*) a lot of people to her birthday party. 3. Tom and Paul (*watch*) the football match. 4. Alan and Betty (*spend*) their holidays in Greece.

2. Rispondi con *risposte brevi*.

➤ *Are you going to book the tickets for the show? - Yes, I am.*

1. Is Bob going to attend a guitar course? - No,

2. Are they going to sell their flat? - Yes,

3. Are you going to stay in France until the end of September? - No,

4. Is Clare going to move to Manchester? - Yes,

3. Aggiungi in coda a ciascuna frase la *question tag* corretta.

➤ *You are going to invite George and Michael to your party, aren't you?*

1. She's going to fly to Paris,?

2. She isn't going to get up early,?

3. They aren't going to leave immediately,?

4. Tom's going to see a doctor,?

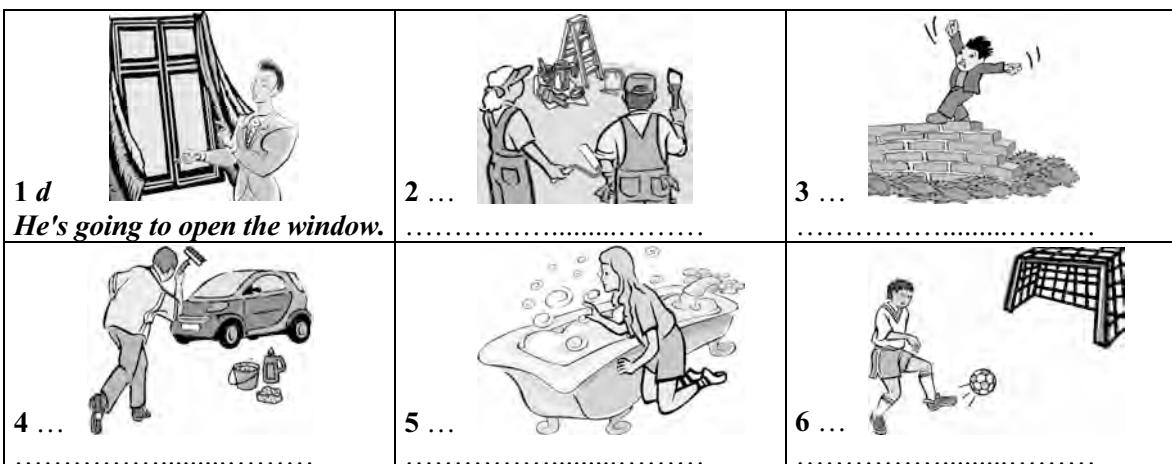
4. Abbina i verbi forniti alle immagini e scrivi che cosa le persone stanno per fare o che cosa sta per accadere, come nell'esempio.

What's going to happen?

- a) fall off the wall
b) wash the car

- c) score a goal
d) open the window

- e) have a bath
f) paint the wall



5. Fai riferimento all'esercizio precedente e scrivi domande e risposte come nell'esempio.

➤ A: *Is he opening the window?*

B: *No, he isn't. He's going to open the window.*

★ C PRESENT CONTINUOUS / TO BE GOING TO (azione programmata / intenzione)

Quando si parla di **programmi futuri** si può usare il **present continuous** oppure **to be going to** ma confronta il diverso uso:

SI USA	
PRESENT CONTINUOUS + espressione di tempo futuro	TO BE GOING TO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> per parlare di un'azione programmata (che si è sicuri di realizzare) <i>We're moving to London next month.</i> Ci trasferiamo a Londra il mese prossimo. (è già deciso) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> per esprimere un'intenzione (che non si è sicuri di realizzare) <i>We're going to move to London.</i> Abbiamo intenzione di trasferirci a Londra. (ma ancora non ne siamo certi)

Usa questa strategia:

Come si può vedere dagli esempi nella tabella si usa **to be going to** quando il verbo al futuro può essere sostituito con "**avere intenzione di fare qualcosa**".

In caso di azione programmata il **present continuous** inglese corrisponde all'**indicativo presente italiano**.

Attenzione!!!

- Il **present continuous** viene usato per parlare di un'azione programmata/progetto futuro se accompagnato da un'espressione di tempo futuro o se è chiaro dal contesto che si tratta di un'azione futura. Nel caso di dubbio se l'azione sia presente o futura, si preferisce usare la forma **to be going to**.
They're having a party. (Quando? In questo momento o in futuro?) diventa:
They're going to have a party.
- Per motivi di stile, generalmente non si usa *to be going to* con il verbo **go**.
Si dice: *I'm going to Scotland next summer.*
E non: *I'm going to go to Scotland next summer.*

PRACTICE

1. Indica quali frasi esprimono un'**intenzione** (I) e quali esprimono un'**azione programmata** (AP).

- I'm meeting my cousin at five o'clock. (...)
- I'm going to work in a department store next summer. (...)
- We're going to the cinema at eight o'clock. (...)
- They're having a party this evening. (...)
- We're going to buy a house. (...)
- She's seeing the dentist at four o'clock. (...)

2. Sottolinea l'alternativa che esprime correttamente il futuro.

➤ *If the weather is nice, I'm going to visit / 'm visiting my friends who live at the seaside.*

- I'm going to buy /'m buying a new car if I can save enough money.
- She's cooking / 's going to cook dinner.
- George is going to complain / is complaining about the night shifts.
- It's fixed. We're leaving / 're going to leave tomorrow at seven o'clock.
- We're going to spend / 're spending our next summer holidays in Italy. We booked the tickets yesterday.

3. Completa le frasi con il *present continuous* o *to be going to* per esprimere correttamente il futuro.

1. Mr and Mrs Gorman (*move*) to Sussex next month. They have already bought a house there. 2. I (*study*) computer science at university.
3. Paul (*look*) for a job after the school-leaving examination. 4. Bill and I (*go*) to the theatre tomorrow evening. I bought the tickets last week.

4. Leggi i programmi che Sarah ha fatto per le sere della prossima settimana e completa le frasi. Usa il *present continuous* quando vedi che Sarah ha preso accordi precisi con qualcuno, altrimenti usa *to be going to*.

Monday	6 p.m. play tennis with Greg
Tuesday	wash my hair
Wednesday	8 p.m. visit aunt Lucy
Thursday	watch a Tom Cruise film on TV
Friday	7 p.m. have dinner with Bob
Saturday	9 p.m. meet David at the station

➤ Sarah can't see Alan on Monday evening because she ***is playing tennis with Greg.***

1. She doesn't want to go out on Tuesday evening because she
2. She can't go to the cinema with Jane on Wednesday evening because she
3. She doesn't want to go out on Thursday evening because she
4. On Friday evening she
5. On Saturday evening she

5. Completa la lettera con il *present continuous* o *to be going to* (azioni programmate o intenzioni?).

7 Park Road
Coventry
22 June, 20 ...

Dear Sam,

I've got some great news. David and I 1) (*go*) on holiday for a whole month. Guess where --- Sardinia!

We 2) (*leave*) on 1st July. We both like swimming so we 3) (*stay*) at a hotel right next to the beach. We 4) (*relax*) as much as possible because we're quite tired after working hard all this year.

We 5) (*come*) back from our holidays on 31st July and I've got a lot of plans for the rest of the summer. First, I 6) (*work*) at a Youth Club because I want to earn some extra money and buy some new clothes and a new car. I 7) (*also / join*) a gym to lose some weight. Finally, I 8) (*start*) a computer course because I want to find a better job.

Oh, I nearly forgot! On 20 th August we 9) (*have*) a party at my house to celebrate David's birthday. I hope you can come.

Well, that's all for now. Hope to see you soon.

Love, Clare

Forma

Affermativa	sogg. + will ('ll)	+ forma base
Negativa	sogg. + will not (won't)	+ forma base
Interrogativa	will + sogg.	+ forma base?
Interrogativo-negativa	won't + sogg.	+ forma base?
Risposte brevi	Yes, sogg. + will / No, sogg. + won't	
	<i>It will ('ll) rain. / It will not (won't) rain. Will it rain? / Won't it rain? Yes, it will. / No, it won't.</i>	

Frase	Question tag (vero? / non è vero?)
Affermativa <i>He will win the championship,</i> Lui vincerà il campionato,	won't + sogg. ? <i>wont' he?</i> vero?
Negativa <i>He won't win the championship,</i> Lui non vincerà il campionato,	will + sogg. ? <i>will he?</i> vero?

Uso

Il **future simple** si usa:

• per fare previsioni basate su ciò che si pensa o ci si aspetta accadrà (spesso con verbi come: <i>expect, think</i> ; con espressioni ed avverbi come: <i>to be certain/sure, certainly, probably, perhaps, ...</i>)	<i>I don't think he will win the championship.</i> Non penso che lui vincerà il campionato. <i>(Perhaps) it will rain.</i> (Forse) pioverà.
• per esprimere una decisione presa nel momento in cui si parla (ad esempio quando ci si offre di fare qualcosa o si formulano promesse o minacce. In questi casi di norma si usa la forma contratta 'll/won't)	<i>This room is dirty. I'll clean it.</i> Questa stanza è sporca. La pulisco. <i>I promise I won't do it again..</i> Prometto che non lo farò più.
• quando qualcosa è inevitabile	<i>He will be eighteen next month.</i> Avrà diciotto anni il mese prossimo.
• per fare raccomandazioni, esprimere accordo o disaccordo	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - <i>You'll remember to lock the door, won't you?</i> - <i>Yes, I will. Don't worry.</i> - Ti ricorderai di chiudere la porta a chiave, vero? - Sì, non ti preoccupare. <p>-----</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - <i>You won't forget to lock the door, will you?</i> - <i>No, I won't. Don't worry.</i> - Non ti dimenticherai di chiudere la porta a chiave, vero? - No, non ti preoccupare.
• per fare richieste e offerte (vedi a PAG. 138)	<i>Will you help me? Mi aiuti?</i> <i>Will you have a sandwich? Vuoi un sandwich?</i>

PRACTICE

- 1.** Trasforma le seguenti frasi in *forma negativa, interrogativa e interrogativo-negativa*.

- *They will get married.* *They won't get married.*
Will they get married? *Won't they get married?*

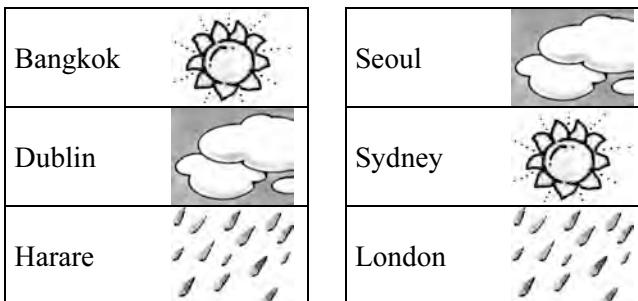
1. They will be tired. 2. She will be late tonight. 3. He will be thirty next week. 4. There will be a lot of traffic in half an hour. 5. They will get a pay rise. 6. The hotels will be full next weekend.

- 2.** Completa con le corrette *question tags* e *risposte brevi*.

➤ *Tonight's TV programmes will be interesting, won't they? - Yes, they will.*

1. They will be here by dinner time,? - Yes,
 2. We won't see our money again,? - No,
 3. It will continue to snow all day,? - Yes,
 4. She will be satisfied with her new job,? - Yes,
 5. Alan won't agree with my idea,? - No,
 6. You'll remember to send Peter an e-mail,? - Yes,

3. Guarda le *previsioni del tempo* per domani e scrivi domande e risposte usando gli elementi forniti, come nell'esempio.



- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Dublin / be cloudy // yes | 4. Sydney / be foggy // no |
| 2. Harare / be windy // no | 5. London / be rainy // yes |
| 3. Seoul / be windy // no | |

4. Scrivi *mini-dialoghi* usando il *future simple* per esprimere *decisioni immediate*.

➤ *table / dirty // clean it*

A: *The table is dirty.*

B: *Sorry, I'll clean it immediately.*

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. glass / chipped // replace it | 3. bill / wrong // correct it |
| 2. soup / cold // heat it up | 4. table cloth / dirty // replace it |

5. Scrivi *mini-dialoghi* per fare *raccomandazioni* ed *esprimere accordo*, come negli esempi.
➤ close all the windows

A: ***You'll remember*** to close all the windows, ***won't you?***
B: Yes, ***I will.*** Don't worry.

A: *You won't forget to close all the windows, will you?*
B: *No, I won't. Don't worry.*

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. feed the dog before you go out | 3. repair the dish-washer |
| 2. do your homework this afternoon | 4. clean the kitchen |

★ E FUTURE SIMPLE / TO BE GOING TO

Sia il **future simple** che **to be going to** si usano per esprimere **previsioni** e **decisioni** ma **confronta il diverso uso.**

SI USA	
FUTURE SIMPLE	TO BE GOING TO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> per fare previsioni basate su ciò che si pensa o ci si aspetta accadrà (spesso con verbi come: <i>expect, think; hope</i>; con espressioni ed avverbi come: <i>to be certain/sure, certainly, probably, perhaps, ...</i>)  <p><i>It will rain.</i> Pioverà.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> per fare previsioni basate su ciò che si vede (qualcosa sta per accadere perché vi sono premesse evidenti).  <p><i>It's going to rain.</i> Sta per piovere.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> per esprimere una decisione presa nel momento in cui si parla <p><i>There's no meat left. - I'll go and get some.</i> Non è rimasta della carne. - Ne vado a prendere.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> per esprimere una decisione presa prima di parlare (intenzione) <p><i>The grass needs cutting. - I know. I'm going to cut it tomorrow.</i> L'erba ha bisogno di essere tagliata. - Lo so. Ho intenzione di tagliarla domani.</p>

PRACTICE

- Completa le frasi con *will* o la forma corretta di *to be going to* (Rifletti: previsione basata su ciò che si pensa o su ciò che si vede?)
 - Look at that dog! He attack us!
 - Do you think Italy win the next World Cup?
 - It's freezing cold and it looks like it snow.
 - I think that people live on other planets in one hundred years' time.
 - Look at that girl on her bicycle. She fall off!
 - The sun's shining. It looks like it be a nice day.
 - I don't expect they be back before the end of the week.
 - I'm sure you enjoy this film.
- Completa i *mini-dialoghi* con *'ll*, *'s going to*, *'m going to* (Rifletti: decisione presa nel momento in cui si parla o presa prima del momento in cui si parla?)
 - A: I'm hungry.
B: I make a sandwich for you.
 - A: Your trousers are dirty.
B: I know. I wash them later.
 - A: Why is Peter wearing his tennis shoes?
B: He play tennis with David.
 - A: Did you e-mail Susan?
B: Oh, I forgot! I e-mail her this afternoon.
 - A: Have you decided which pullover to buy?
B: Yes, I buy the blue one.
 - A: The phone is ringing.
B: I answer it.
 - A: You forgot to phone Mary!
B: I phone her immediately.

1. Sottolinea l'alternativa che esprime correttamente il futuro.

1. Look! There are clouds in the sky. It's **going to rain** / '**ll rain**.
2. It's a nice day today but it **'s going to snow** / '**ll snow** tomorrow.
3. I want to go to university because I**'m going to become** / '**m becoming** a doctor.
4. We **are leaving** / **will leave** for Peru on 14 th July.
5. You'**ll remember** / '**e going to remember** to send her an-email, won't you?
6. I'm sure scientists **are going to find** / **will find** a cure for cancer.
7. People **will spend** / **are going to spend** their holidays on the moon in the future.
8. They **'re having** / **will have** lunch at *Mario's* today. They reserved a table there.
9. She hopes she **is going to find** / **will find** a flat to share.
10. I promise I **won't tell** / '**m not telling** anyone.

2. Completa le frasi con il *present continuous*, il *future simple* o il futuro con *to be going to* dei verbi tra parentesi.

1. Mark and Jennifer (*celebrate*) their wedding anniversary on Saturday.
2. Look at that boy! He (*fall*) into the swimming pool.
3. "What are your plans for the summer?" "*I (travel)* to Italy in July."
4. Jenny didn't study hard for her exam. I don't think she (*pass*) it.
5. "I've got a headache." "*I (turn)* off the CD player."
6. "Mum, I don't feel well." "*I (take)* you to the doctor."
7. "The grass needs cutting." "*I know. I (cut)* it tomorrow."
8. James (*fly*) to the Seychelles on 14th July.
9. "Sheila is thirty minutes late." "*I think I (give)* her a call."
10. "Your shirt is dirty." "*I know. I (wash)* it this afternoon."
11. "Would you like a cup of tea or a cup of coffee?" "*I (have)* a cup of tea, please."
12. "Have you decided which shoes to buy?" "*Yes, I (buy)* the red ones."
13. I'm sure you (*enjoy*) this book.
14. Get out of my restaurant or I (*call*) the police.
15. "You (*remember*) to lock the door, won't you?" "Yes, I will. Don't worry."

3. Completa adeguatamente i *mini-dialoghi* con la forma corretta di futuro.

1. A: I don't understand this Maths problem.
B: That's OK. I (*help*) you.
2. A: Why are you wearing those old clothes?
B: Because I (*paint*) the dining room.
3. A: Miss Swanson left a message for you. I think it's urgent.
B: OK. I (*ring*) her right away.
4. A: Where (*you / go*) for your holidays, now that summer is here?
B: I don't know. I haven't decided yet.
5. A: The sky is very cloudy.
B: Yes, it (*rain*)

Grammar and practice

- | | |
|--|--|
| A. Present simple con valore di futuro | D. Il futuro nelle subordinate ipotetiche e temporali - Principali connettivi di "condizione" e di "tempo" |
| B. Periodo ipotetico di "tipo 0" | E. Altri connettivi di base |
| C. Periodo ipotetico di 1° tipo | |

★ A PRESENT SIMPLE con valore di futuro

Uso

Il present simple può essere usato con **valore di futuro** per:

• parlare di orari prestabiliti di mezzi di trasporto (navi, aerei, treni), luoghi pubblici, spettacoli, ecc.	"What time does the plane take off from Heathrow?" "It takes off at 9.30 p.m." "A che ora decolla l'aereo da Heathrow?" "Decolla alle 21.30."
--	--

PRACTICE

1. Scrivi *mini-dialoghi* usando le parole fornite e il *present simple*.

➤ A: *Can you meet Mary at the station tomorrow afternoon?*
 B: *Yes, of course. What time / the train from Manchester / arrive?*
 A: *It / arrive / at 4.00 p.m.*

A: Can you meet Mary at the station tomorrow afternoon?
B: Yes, of course. What time does the train from Manchester arrive?
A: It arrives at 4.00 p.m.

1. A: Will you hurry up, please? We're late!
 B: What time / be / our flight?
 A: It / be / at half past three.

2. A: Shall we take the boat from Naples to Sicily?
 B: Yes, good idea. What time / it / leave?
 A: It / leave / at 9.00 a.m.

3. A: After the visit to the Tower of London we can go to Kensington Palace.
 B: Fine. What time / it / close?
 A: It / close / at 5.00 p.m.

4. A: Why don't we visit the "Fori Imperiali" tomorrow?
 B: Good idea. What time / the guided tour / start?
 A: It / start / at 10.00 a.m.

5. A: What time / the conference / start?
 B: It / start / at 3.00 p.m.
 A: And what time / it / finish?
 B: It / finish / at 5.30.
 A: One more question. What time / be / the coffee break?
 B: It / be / at 4.15.

★ **B** PERIODO IPOTETICO DI "TIPO 0"

Forma

Il periodo ipotetico di **tipo 0** si costruisce con lo **stesso tempo verbale** sia nella frase subordinata che nella frase principale (**present simple o past simple**).

Uso

Si usa il present simple per:	Frase principale	Frase subordinata
• parlare di verità di tipo generale ed universale	present simple <i>Demand falls</i> La domanda diminuisce	if + present simple <i>if prices rise.</i> se i prezzi aumentano.
• situazioni che si ripetono e fatti sempre veri	<i>I feel tired and nervous</i> Mi sento stanco e nervoso	<i>if I don't get enough sleep.</i> se non dormo abbastanza.

Si usa il past simple per:	Frase principale	Frase subordinata
• parlare di condizioni abituali del passato	past simple <i>I felt embarrassed</i> Mi sentivo imbarazzato	if + past simple <i>if I made a mistake in class.</i> se facevo un errore in classe.

- La frase subordinata introdotta da **if** (se) può precedere o seguire la frase principale.
- Si può usare anche **when** (quando) al posto di **if**.

PRACTICE

1. Abbina correttamente le parti in A alle parti in B.

A	B	
1. Plants grow better	a) it expands.	1 ...
2. If you boil wine,	b) it loses its alcohol content.	2 ...
3. If children eat too many sweets,	c) if they are treated with love and care.	3 ...
4. Ice melts	d) they die.	4 ...
5. If you heat an iron bar,	e) they get tooth-decay.	5 ...
6. If plants don't get enough water,	f) if you heat it.	6 ...

2. Completa le frasi con i verbi tra parentesi nei tempi richiesti dal *periodo ipotetico di tipo 0* (*present simple o past simple?*)

- When a liquid (*freeze*) , it (*solidify*)
- Water (*turn*) into ice, when the temperature (*go*) below zero.
- If copper (*oxidize*) , it (*become*) green.
- When we were in the safari park there (*be*) always a danger of being attacked by the animals if we (*go*) too close to them.
- Butter (*melt*) if you (*heat*) it.
- It (*be*) dangerous if you (*swim*) soon after eating.
- In the United States, before the law against slavery was passed, if you (*be*) a slave, you (*can*) be sold and bought like any other goods.
- "What (*happen*) if you (*press*) button 2?" "If you (*press*) button 2, you (*get*) orange juice."

★ C PERIODO IPOTETICO DI 1° TIPO

Forma

Frase subordinata	Frase principale	
If + present simple <i>If she invites me,</i> Se mi invita / inviterà,	future simple (will + forma base) <i>I will ('ll) go to her party.</i> andrò alla sua festa.	- La frase introdotta da if (se) richiede il present simple . - La frase principale richiede il future simple . - La frase introdotta da if può precedere o seguire la frase principale. <i>I will ('ll) go to her party if she invites me.</i>

Ricorda:

Si può usare **unless** per rendere l'italiano "se non". In questo caso il **present simple** che segue è sempre alla **forma affermativa**.

Confronta gli esempi:

You won't pass the exam unless you study hard.

=

You won't pass the exam if you don't study hard.

Non supererai l'esame se non studi/studierai molto.

Uso

Il periodo ipotetico di I° tipo si usa per	<i>If it snows, I'll go skiing.</i>
• formulare ipotesi ritenute reali o oggettive .	Se nevica, vado/andrò a sciare.

Forme verbali alternative

• Nella frase principale si può trovare un verbo modale (can, may, must, should, ecc), be going to o un imperativo .	<i>If you don't do your homework, you can't go out.</i> Se non fai i compiti non puoi uscire. <i>If I have time, I'm going to visit my friends.</i> Se ho tempo ho intenzione di andare a trovare i miei amici. <i>If you want to buy a new car, buy it now.</i> Se vuoi comperare una nuova macchina comperala ora.
• Nella frase subordinata si può trovare un present perfect	<i>If you have finished reading, I'll switch the light off.</i> Se hai finito di leggere spengo la luce.
• Sia nella frase principale che nella subordinata si possono utilizzare le forme progressive (present continuous, future continuous)	<i>I won't disturb him, if he is working.</i> Non lo disturberò se sta lavorando. <i>If the weather is good, this time tomorrow I'll be lying on the beach.</i> Se il tempo è bello domani a quest'ora sarò sdraiato sulla spiaggia.

PRACTICE

1. Che cosa sta pensando Bob? Scrivi frasi come nell'esempio.



1. *buy a car*
2. *go on a cruise*
3. *move to a bigger house*
4. *buy some new clothes*
5. *have a party*

➤ *If I get promotion, I'll buy a car.*

.....
.....
.....
.....

2. Abbina le condizioni e le conseguenze adeguatamente.

Condizione

1. If the temperature gets hotter,
2. If the ice cap at the North Pole and South Pole melts,
3. If the sea level rises,

Conseguenza

- a) water will cover a lot of the land.
- b) the sea level will rise.
- c) the ice cap at the North Pole and South Pole will melt.

1 ...

2 ...

3 ...

3. Completa i periodi ipotetici di 1° tipo con la forma corretta del *present simple* e del *future simple* dei verbi tra parentesi.

1. If the temperature (*get*) colder, the ice-cap at the North and South Pole (*extend*)
2. If the ice cap at the North and South Pole (*extend*), ice (*cover*) a lot of the land.
3. If ice (*cover*) a lot of the land, a lot of vegetation and a lot of animals (*die*)

4. Completa i periodi ipotetici di 1° tipo con la forma corretta del *future simple* e del *present simple* dei verbi tra parentesi.

1. We (*not / catch*) the train if you (*not / get*) a move on!
2. If I (*not / water*) the plants, mum (*kill*) me.
3. You (*feel*) better if you (*sleep*) a bit longer.
4. I (*understand*) if you (*speak*) slowly.
5. (*we / get*) there by eight o'clock if we (*take*) the 5.30 flight?
6. I (*not / finish*) this work if you (*not / stop*) talking.

5. Trasforma le frasi usando *unless*, come nell'esempio.

➤ *We won't have dinner outside if the weather doesn't improve.*
We won't have dinner outside unless the weather improves.

1. You can't get in if you don't have an invitation.
2. They'll be very upset if we don't apologize.
3. She'll miss the bus if she doesn't get up immediately.
4. The travel agent won't give us the tickets if we don't pay for them first.
5. I won't help you if you don't tell me the truth.

6. Abbina le frasi correttamente.

1. If you go to Rome,
2. If you haven't finished your homework,
3. You may get a good job
4. If he is still studying,
5. If you go to Pisa,
6. If she's washing her hair,

- a) you can see the Leaning Tower.
- b) if you get a degree in Economics.
- c) I won't disturb him.
- d) she won't answer the phone.
- e) you can see the Colosseum.
- f) you can't go out.

1 ...

2 ...

3 ...

4 ...

5 ...

6 ...



D IL FUTURO NELLE SUBORDINATE IPOTETICHE E TEMPORALI – PRINCIPALI CONNETTIVI DI "CONDIZIONE" E DI "TEMPO"

Come è già stato presentato, le **subordinate ipotetiche di 1° tipo**, introdotte dai connettivi **if e unless**, richiedono il **present simple** al posto del futuro italiano (vedi a PAG. 228). Anche le **frasi subordinate temporali**, introdotte dai connettivi **when, while, as soon as, till/until, before, the next time**, richiedono il **present simple** al posto del futuro.

FRASE PRINCIPALE <i>future simple</i>	connettivo	FRASE SUBORDINATA <i>present simple</i>
<i>We will go to the cinema</i> Andremo al cinema	if se	<i>you behave.</i> ti comporti bene.
<i>We won't go to the cinema</i> Non andremo al cinema	unless se non	<i>you behave.</i> ti comporti bene.
<i>I will phone John</i> Telefono/Telefonerò a John	when quando	<i>I am in New York.</i> sarò a New York.
<i>We will take a lot of photos</i> Faremo molte fotografie	while mentre	<i>we are in America.</i> saremo in America.
<i>I will give you a ring</i> Ti chiamo/chiamerò	as soon as appena	<i>I get there.</i> arrivo là.
<i>We will wait for them</i> Li aspettiamo/aspetteremo	till / until finchè non	<i>the train arrives.</i> arriva il treno.
<i>I will ring him up</i> Lo chiamo/chiamerò	before prima che	<i>he leaves.</i> parta.
<i>I will punish you</i> Ti punisco/punirò	the next time la prossima volta che	<i>you lie to me.</i> tu mi menti/mentirai.

Attenzione!!!

I connettivi/congiunzioni **if e when** sono **seguiti dal futuro** quando introducono un'interrogativa indiretta.
I wonder if/when the police will arrest the murderer.
 Mi domando se/quando la polizia arresterà l'assassino.

PRACTICE

1. Sottolinea il connettivo corretto.

1. I will come to your party **if / unless** you invite me.
2. We will celebrate **until / if** I pass the exam.
3. We will contact you **till / as soon as** we get to London.
4. I will wait for them **when / unless** they are too late.
5. We won't start dinner **until / when** Dad comes home.
6. I will be able to see many plays and films in English **before / while** I am in England.
7. I will feel lonely **unless / while** I am abroad.
8. **After / Before** you leave I will give you that book.

2. Abbina le frasi adeguatamente.

1. Mum will let you go out
2. We will have dinner
3. I will see John
4. I'll tell her the truth
5. She will phone me

- a) before he leaves for Paris.
- b) when I see her.
- c) as soon as she arrives in New York.
- d) if you finish your homework.
- e) as soon as Dad comes home.

1 ...
2 ...
3 ...
4 ...
5 ...

3. Completa le frasi con i verbi tra parentesi al *present simple* o al *future simple*.

1. I (*leave*) the office as soon as I (*finish*) this work.
2. If I (*pass*) the school leaving examination, I (*go*) to university.
3. When I (*go*) shopping, I (*buy*) some fruit.
4. She (*send*) you a fax as soon as she (*get*) to her office.
5. He (*say*) goodbye to everybody before he (*leave*) for Paris.
6. We (*go*) for a walk as soon as the weather (*improve*)
7. As soon as it (*stop*) raining we (*go*) shopping.
8. You (*have*) to stay inside until you (*be*) allowed to go out.
9. When you (*open*) the parcel you (*have*) a surprise.
10. We (*meet*) them tomorrow if they (*be*) free.

SENTENCE TRANSFORMATION (PET)

4. Completa la seconda frase in modo che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando non più di tre parole.
 1. You are late again. It's OK this time but I'll punish you in the future.
You are late again. The next time you I'll punish you.
 2. I want Bob to say he's sorry or I'll never forgive him.
I'll never forgive Bob unless he sorry.
 3. We won't pay before receiving the goods.
We won't pay until the goods.
 4. Jane refuses to talk to Lucy. She wants Lucy to apologize first.
Jane won't talk to Lucy again unless first.
 5. Don't come home too late. Mum will be angry.
If you late, mum will be angry.
 6. Tell John the truth. He will understand.
If you the truth, he will understand.
 7. Phone me tonight. I'll give you the information.
I'll give you the information if you tonight.
 8. Will the detective find the killer? Nobody knows.
We all wonder if the detective the killer.

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION (FCE)

5. Completa la seconda frase in modo che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando da due a cinque parole compresa la parola fornita.
 1. We will be late if we don't catch the 8.30 train.
unless We will be late the 8.30 train.
 2. You won't find a seat if you don't book within two days.
unless You won't find a seat within two days.
 3. They won't get there on time unless they take a taxi.
if They won't get there on time a taxi.

ERROR CORRECTION

6. Elimina la parola non necessaria in ciascuna frase.

➤ *We will have lunch when they will arrive.*

 1. If we will get there early, we can go and visit the museum.
 2. We will go to her office unless she not calls.
 3. Unless they will work overtime, they will not earn enough money to buy a house.
 4. They will call us when they will arrive.
 5. I wonder why if the police will arrest the robbers.

3. Completa le frasi con *so* o *because*.

1. The flight to London was cancelled the fog was too tick.
..... I didn't go to school. 3. I'm tired, I'm going to bed. 4. He decided to go home he didn't like the party.
-

4. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

1. We must leave early **so / for** we have a long way to go. 2. **Owing to / Because** his poor health he can't walk. 3. We arrived late **since / due to** the snow. 4. We stayed at home **as / so** the car was broken. 5. **Since / Due to** the weather was bad, we couldn't have the party in the garden. 6. She didn't have any tomatoes, **so / as** she didn't make a salad. 7. He took an umbrella with him **due to / since** it was raining. 8. I couldn't make a cake **so / as** I didn't have any flour.
-

5. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

1. I took a taxi **since / so that** I would arrive on time. 2. David is moving to Manchester **so that / for** he can be nearer his work. 3. He left early **in order to / so that** arrive before her. 4. I read the paper every day **so that / because** I know what's in the news. 5. She went to the supermarket **to / for** buy some meat. 6. I stood on a chair **since / in order to** reach the top shelf.
-

6. Unisci le coppie di frasi usando i connettivi tra parentesi seguendo l'esempio.

- *Tom circled the day on the calender. He didn't want to forget the appointment. (so that)*
Tom circled the day on the calender so that he wouldn't forget the appointment.
1. The doctor came into the room. He wanted to visit the patient. (*to*)
2. They are organising a great party. They want to celebrate their 25 th wedding anniversary. (*in order to*)
3. I bought a second-hand car. I didn't want to spend too much money. (*in order not to*)
4. Peter is taking French classes. He wants to improve his knowledge of the language. (*so that*)
5. I've enrolled on a guitar course. I want to learn how to play it. (*to*)
-

7. Trasforma le frasi come nell'esempio. Fai attenzione alla punteggiatura.

- *That country has plenty of natural resources. **However**, the population is very poor.*
***Although* that country has plenty of natural resources, the population is very poor.**
1. Robert's grandfather had a lot of money. However, he didn't leave any of it to him.
2. Susan had studied hard. However, she failed the exam.
3. It was quite cold. However, Jennifer didn't put her coat on.
4. I read the instructions carefully. However, I didn't understand them.
-

8. Collega le due frasi con i connettivi tra parentesi.

1. They live in a very small flat. They have a lot of money. (*although*)
2. I admit my faults. My boyfriend never does. (*while*)
3. She is famous and rich. She is often sad and lonely. (*but*)
-

9. Completa le frasi con *so* o *such a(n)*

1. It was deep river that we couldn't cross it.
2. The bridge was low that the lorry couldn't pass under.
3. It was fast rabbit that the dog couldn't catch it.
4. This sea is cold that tropical fish can't survive in.
5. Some reptiles have big mouth that they can swallow a whole sheep.

Grammar and practice

A. Future continuous
B. Future perfect simple

C. Future perfect continuous
D. Altri modi per esprimere il futuro
Revision: tempi verbali (il futuro)

★★ A FUTURE CONTINUOUS

Forma

Affermativa	sogg. + will ('ll) +	be + forma in -ing
Negativa	sogg. + will not (won't) +	be + forma in -ing
Interrogativa	will + sogg. +	be + forma in -ing?
Interrogativo-negativa	won't + sogg. +	be + forma in -ing?
Risposte brevi	Yes, sogg. will / No, sogg. won't	

*In five years' time Tom will ('ll) be living in another country.
In five years' time Tom will not (**won't**) be living in another country.
Will Tom be living in another country in five years' time?
Won't Tom be living in another country in five years' time?
Yes, he will. / No, he won't.*

Frase	Question tag (vero? / non è vero?)
Affermativa <i>This time tomorrow they will be working, A quest'ora domani loro staranno lavorando,</i>	won't + soggetto? won't they? vero?
Negativa <i>This time tomorrow they won't be working, A quest'ora domani loro non staranno lavorando,</i>	will + soggetto? will they? vero?

Uso

Il **future continuous** si usa per:

- un'azione che sarà **in corso di svolgimento** in un determinato momento **nel futuro**
*In a few minutes the children **will be sleeping**.
Tra pochi minuti i bambini staranno dormendo.*
- un'azione futura che si verificherà sicuramente come conseguenza di un'abitudine o di accordi precedentemente presi
*Don't phone Mary. I'll be **seeing** her this evening, so I'll tell her about the party.
Non telefonare a Mary. La vedrò questa sera così le dirò della festa.*
- un'azione che sarà **un'abitudine nel futuro**
*In fifty years' time we **will be driving** flying cars.
Tra cinquant'anni guideremo macchine volanti.*
- chiedere a qualcuno i progetti di un futuro vicino, per scoprire se può fare qualcosa per noi
*Will you be **going** to the supermarket today?
Can you buy some fruit?
Vai al supermercato oggi? Puoi comprare della frutta?*
- fare **supposizioni** sul presente (in questo caso non vi è riferimento al futuro)
*He **will be watching** the football match as usual.
Starà guardando/Suppongo che stia guardando la partita di calcio come al solito.*

Attenzione!!

Come tutte le forme progressive,
il **future continuous** si usa solo
con i **verbi di azione**.

Espressioni di tempo usate con il **future continuous**

tomorrow, soon, (at) this time tomorrow/on Sunday/next week...,
in an hour's time/a week's time/a month's time/five years' time,...
in a few minutes/hours/days..., fifty years from now, ...

PRACTICE

1. Domani Sarah Gordon andrà da Londra a Madrid per un viaggio d'affari. Leggi la tabella dei suoi impegni e scrivi ciò che starà facendo alle ore indicate, come nell'esempio.

8.00 - 9.00	fly to Madrid
10.00	meet Mr Jimenez
11.30 - 12.30	visit the company headquarters
13.00 - 14.00	have lunch
15.00 - 16.30	present her plans to the clients
17.00 - 17.15	go to the airport
18.15 - 19.15	fly back to London
21.00	relax at home

- At 8.15 tomorrow she'll be flying to Madrid.
- 1. At 10.00
 - 2. At 12.00
 - 3. At 13.20
 - 4. At 16.00
 - 5. At 17.05
 - 6. At 18.30
 - 7. At 21.00

2. Completa le frasi nella colonna A con la forma corretta del *future continuous* e abbinale correttamente alle frasi nella colonna B.

A

- 1. (you / use) your bike tonight?
- 2. (you / drive) to work today?
- 3. I (go) to the shops.
- 4. When (Sarah / play) tennis again?
- 5. (your father / wait) at the airport?

B

- a) Can you give him my regards?
- b) Shall I buy anything for you?
- c) No, would you like to borrow it?
- d) Can you give her back her racket?
- e) Can you give me a lift?

1 ...

2 ...

3 ...

4 ...

5 ...

3. Completa le frasi con il *future simple* (*will + forma base*) o il *future continuous* (*will + be + -ing*)

- 1. My opinion is that in the future life (*be*) much harder than now.
- 2. Just think. In two days' time we (*lie*) on a wonderful beach. Aren't you excited?
- 3. I promise I (*call*) you tomorrow.
- 4. This time next week we (*put up*) our tent.
- 5. Thank you for the umbrella. I (*give*) it back to you on Sunday.
- 6. You needn't phone Mary. I (*see*) her at work tomorrow and I (*tell*) her about your party.
- 7. I think that in the future we (*be*) more isolated.
- 8. "Have you seen Mary?" "No, I haven't. She (*work*) on her computer as usual."
- 9. In two days' time Tom (*be*) twenty-four.
- 10. You (*not / work*) this time tomorrow, will you?
- 11. This time on Friday we (*have*) a French lesson, won't we?
- 12. What (*they / do*) this time tomorrow?

★ E ALTRI CONNETTIVI DI BASE

Oltre ai principali connettivi di tempo e di condizione presentati nel paragrafo precedente, ricorda anche i **connettivi principali** per:

• aggiungere and e	<i>He can speak and write German perfectly.</i>
• esprimere alternativa or oppure either ... or o ... o ...	<i>Run or you'll miss the bus. . Either we take the bus or we drive.</i>
• escludere neither ... nor né ... né ...	<i>The old man could neither read nor write.</i>
• esprimere contrasto / concessione but ma however tuttavia although sebbene while mentre	<i>They tried to save the tiger, but it died. They tried to save the tiger. However, it died. Although they tried to save the tiger, it died. Tigers are mammals while snakes are reptiles.</i>
• esprimere causa because, since, as } perché, poiché, siccome for owing to/due to (+ sostantivo) a causa di	<i>The workers went on strike because / since / as / for the working conditions were really bad. The workers went on strike owing to / due to the bad working conditions.</i>
• esprimere conseguenza/effetto so così	<i>He was quite poor, so he couldn't afford to buy a car.</i>
• esprimere rappporto tra causa ed effetto so + aggettivo/avverbio that } così ... che such + (a/an) sostantivo that }	<i>The mouse was so fast that the cat couldn't catch it. It was such a fast mouse that the cat couldn't catch it.</i>
• esprimere scopo il semplice infinito } per in order to } so that (così che) } + <i>can / will</i> } (rif. al presente o al futuro) } + <i>could / would</i> } (rif. al passato)	<i>We left early to / in order to get there on time. We are going to leave early so that we <i>can / will</i> get there on time. We left early so that we <i>could / would</i> get there on time.</i>

Per uno studio più sistematico ed approfondito dei connettivi, vedi FILE 40 e FILE 41

PRACTICE

- Completa le frasi inserendo correttamente *or, but, and, either ... or, neither ... nor*.
 - I'm not an only child. I've got a sister two brothers.
 - You'd better take a taxi you'll get there late.
 - I study hard, I don't get good results.
 - If you want to improve your English you can attend a course go to England.
 - Have you got any friends relatives in London?
 - The little boy was deaf-mute. He could hear speak.
- Trasforma le frasi come nell'esempio.

➤ *John can't drive because he hasn't got a driving licence.*
John hasn't got a driving licence, so he can't drive.

 - Jennifer is going to study medicine because she wants to help people.
 - He joined a gym because he wanted to keep fit.
 - We are going to save money because we want to travel around the world.

★★ B FUTURE PERFECT SIMPLE

Forma

Affermativa	sogg. + will ('ll) + have + participio passato
Negativa	sogg. + will not (won't) + have + participio passato
Interrogativa	will + sogg. + have + participio passato?
Interrogativo-negativa	won't + sogg. + have + participio passato?
Risposte brevi	Yes, sogg. will . / No, sogg. won't .

They will ('ll) have finished this work by the end of the month.

They won't have finished this work by the end of the month.

Will they have finished this work by the end of the month?

Won't they have finished this work by the end of the month?

Yes, they will. / No, they won't.

Frase	Question tag (vero? / non è vero?)
Affermativa <i>They will have bought a house by the end of this year,</i> Avranno comperato una casa per la fine dell'anno,	won't + soggetto? <i>won't they?</i> vero?
Negativa <i>They won't have bought a house by the end of this year,</i> Non avranno comperato una casa per la fine dell'anno,	will + soggetto? <i>will they?</i> vero?

Uso

Il **future perfect simple** corrisponde al **futuro anteriore italiano** e si usa per:

- un'azione futura che sarà conclusa prima di un momento futuro o prima di un'altra azione, anch'essa futura.



La **subordinata temporale**, introdotta dalle espressioni di tempo **by the time, until/till, before** richiede il **present simple**.

-Normalmente **until/till** vengono usati con il **future perfect** in **frase negativa**.

- fare **supposizioni** sul passato (in questo caso non c'è riferimento al futuro).

By the time you arrive, I will have cooked dinner.
subordinata temporale frase principale

Per il momento in cui arriverai, io avrò preparato la cena.
oppure

I will have cooked dinner by the time you arrive.
frase principale subordinata temporale

I won't have repaired the car until tomorrow.
Non avrò riparato la macchina fino a domani.

She will have left.
Sarà partita. (Suppongo che sia partita).

Espressioni di tempo usate con il **future perfect simple**

*by next week/month/year, by then, by the end of the week/month/year,
in a week's/month's/year's time, a week/month/year from now,
within a week/month/year, this time next week/month/year...*

Il **future perfect simple** si usa anche per:

- esprimere la **durata** di un'azione/situazione iniziata nel passato e che perdurerà in un tempo futuro (con **for...**)
- soprattutto con i **verbi di stato** (*be, have, own, know, ...*)

Confronta:

present perfect simple <i>I have known him for ten years.</i>	future perfect simple <i>In a week's time I will have known him for ten years.</i>
Lo conosco da dieci anni.	Tra una settimana saranno dieci anni che lo conosco.

PRACTICE

1. È domenica sera e David sta guardando il diario dei suoi impegni per la settimana prossima, durante la quale dovrà fare molte cose. Scrivi i suoi pensieri usando il *future perfect simple*, come nell'esempio.



➤ *I will have bought a new car.*

Mon.	Tue.	Wed.	Thu.	Fri.	Sat.
<i>buy a new car</i>	run a marathon	write an essay	take the driving test	have lunch with aunt Nelly	play tennis with Bob

2. (a) Completa le frasi con la forma corretta del *future perfect simple*.

➤ (*you / finish*) **Will you have finished** cooking by the time the children come home?

1. We (*have*) this house for three years by the end of the year.
2. Don't call her. She (*not / decide*) anything by now.
3. Peter hopes he (*open*) his own restaurant by the time he's thirty years old.
4. By the end of the month we (*be*) married for two years.
5. You (*not / finish*) translating the book before the end of the week, will you?
6. In two months' time I (*have*) this car for five years.
7. (*the maid / clean*) the whole house by six this evening?

(b)

1. Una frase nell'esercizio esprime **supposizione** con riferimento al passato.

Identificala. Frase n° ...

2. Tre frasi nell'esercizio contengono la **forma di durata**.

Identificale. Frase n° Frase n° Frase n° ...

3. Completa le frasi con *by the time, until, by, in, by then*.

1. Mrs Gorman will have done the shopping her husband comes home from work.
2. I won't have mended my bike the end of the week.
3. Will you have fixed the roof Friday?
4. I'll have had made dinner
5. They will have completed their project two weeks' time.

4. Completa le frasi con il *future perfect simple* o il *present simple*.

1. (*you two / stop*) quarrelling by the time dad (*come*) home?
2. (*you / finish*) cooking by the time the guests (*arrive*)
3. Before the students (*arrive*) the teacher (*mark*) all the tests.
4. I hope I (*travel*) all over the world by the time I (*be*) forty years old.

★★ C FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS

Forma

Affermativa	sogg. + will ('ll) +	have + been +	forma in -ing
Negativa	sogg. + will (won't) +	have + been +	forma in -ing
Interrogativa	will + sogg. +	have + been +	forma in -ing?
Interrogativo-negativa	won't + sogg. +	have + been +	forma in -ing?
Risposte brevi	Yes, sogg. + will. / No, sogg. + won't.		

You will have been working for two hours.

You won't have been working for two hours.

Will you have been working for two hours?

Won't you have been working for two hours?

Yes, I will. / No, I won't.

Uso

Il future perfect continuous SI USA per:

- esprimere la **durata** di un'azione che iniziata nel passato sarà ancora **in corso di svolgimento in un momento del futuro** (con **for ...**) ed **enfatizzare l'azione**.
- solo con i **verbi di azione**

Confronta:
present perfect continuous
I have been working here for five years.

Lavoro qui da cinque anni.

future perfect continuous
Next March I will have been working here for five years.
Il prossimo marzo saranno cinque anni che lavoro qui.

Attenzione!!!

**IL FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS
NON SI USA**

- con i **verbi di stato** come: *be, have, own, belong, want, know, understand, like, ...*
(vedi a PAG. 96)
- con i **verbi che esprimono un'azione compiuta** come: *leave, arrive, start, finish, stop, break, meet, decide, ...*
- con: *how much, how many, how often ...? just, already, ever, never, yet, not ... yet, once, twice, three times, ...*

- di norma nelle **frasi negative**
Non si dice: *She won't have been writing any letters.*
Ma si dice: *She won't have written any letters.*
- con espressioni che evidenziano una **quantità** o un **numero** perché enfatizzano il risultato
Non si dice: *I will have been running five miles.*
Ma si dice: *I will have run five miles.*

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi con la forma corretta del *future perfect continuous*.
 1. Next month I (*teach*) in this school for five years.
 2. By the end of the year she (*work*) in this factory for ten years.
 3. At five the children (*sleep*) for two hours.
 4. How long (*they / fly*) by the time they get to destination?
 5. I'm sure they'll be very tired tonight. They (*paint*) the house all day long.

2. Decidi qual'è il tempo verbale più appropriato. Il *future perfect simple* o il *future perfect continuous*? Costruisci frasi seguendo l'esempio.

➤ *George always goes to bed at 9.30 p.m. Don't phone him at 10.00.*

(a) *He (go) **will have gone** to bed.*

(b) *He (sleep) **will have been sleeping** for half an hour.*

1. Stuart began to study Chinese last February. By the end of the year

(a) *he (study) it for eleven months.*

(b) *he (take) two exams.*

2. Paolo came to England nearly fifteen years ago. Next June it will be exactly 15 years since he arrived. Next June

(a) *he (be) here for exactly 15 years.*

(b) *he (live) in the same city for all those years.*

3. The Smiths bought that house nearly ten years ago. By the end of the year it will be exactly ten years since they bought it. In December

(a) *they (own) that house for ten years.*

(b) *they (live) in that house for all that time.*

4. Mr Gorman arrived in this company nearly three years ago. Next month it will be exactly three years since he arrived. Next month

(a) *he (work) in this company for three years.*

(b) *he (be) in this company for three years.*

5. Bob and Jane met nearly two years ago and they soon went to live together. By the end of the month

(a) *they (know) each other for two years.*

(b) *they (live) together for two years.*

3. Completa le frasi con il *present perfect continuous* o il *future perfect continuous*.

➤ *I bought this flat two years ago. I (live) **have been living** in this house since I bought it.*

➤ *By the end of the month it will be exactly two years since I bought this flat. By the end of the month I (live) **will have been living** in this house for two years.*

1. I started to clean the house three hours ago. I (*clean*) the house for three hours.

2. In five minutes it will be three hours since I started to clean the house. In five minutes I (*clean*) for three hours.

3. They started studying half an hour ago. They (*study*) for half an hour.

4. In five minutes it will be exactly half an hour since they started studying. In five minutes they (*study*) for half an hour.

5. The children started decorating the Christmas tree at 2 o'clock. It's 2.50. In ten minutes they (*decorate*) the Christmas tree for an hour.

6. The children started decorating the Christmas tree at 2 o'clock. It's 3 o'clock and they are still decorating it. They (*decorate*) the Christmas tree for an hour.

★★ D ALTRI MODI PER ESPRIMERE IL FUTURO

be to + forma base - per parlare di accordi formali	<i>All the students are to assemble at 10.00 a.m.</i> Tutti gli studenti si riuniranno (debbono riunirsi) alle 10.00.
be about to + forma base be on the point of + forma in -ing - con riferimento a ciò che sta per accadere il prossimo momento	<i>The film is about to start.</i> Il film sta per cominciare. <i>George is on the point of resigning.</i> George è sul punto di dare le dimissioni.
be due to + forma base - con riferimento ad orari fissi	<i>The ship is due to leave on August 2nd.</i> La nave parte il 2 agosto.

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi utilizzando adeguatamente le costruzioni sopra presentate.

1. All the teachers to meet in the staff room at 2.30 p.m.
2. The play to start at 7.30 p.m. It's 7.27, so the play is to start.
3. Mary is really tired of her job. I think she resigning.
4. Scientists making a vital breakthrough.
5. Scientists to find a new cure for cancer.
6. The athletes to assemble in the hall at 11.30 to discuss a few points.
7. We are pleased to inform you that the goods have been shipped on board "Tirrenia" which to reach Liverpool on September 11th.
8. She's really angry. She bursting with rage.

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION (FCE)

2. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando da due a cinque parole compresa la parola fornita.
1. Some people are optimistic. They think scientists are on the point of finding a cure for HIV.
about Some people are optimistic. They think a cure for HIV.
2. The bus is just leaving.
about The bus is just leave.
3. They are going to refuse his offer.
point They are on his offer.
4. She's just about to start a new job.
going She a new job.
5. Excuse me. What time does the train from Manchester arrive?
due Excuse me. What time is the train from Manchester arrive?

Future simple / Future continuous

- 1.** Completa il dialogo tra David e Sarah con la forma corretta del *future simple* (*will + forma base*) o del *future continuous* (*will + be + -ing*).

D: Do you want to go to the seaside next weekend?
 S: I'd love to. I **1) (call)** you tonight and we can arrange everything.
 D: Fine. Do you mind if Bill comes with us?
 S: Of course not. As a matter of fact, I **2) (see)** him this afternoon so I **3) (ask)** him then.
 D: OK. I **4) (be)** at home at about 9 o'clock so call me then.
 S: Great! Just think, in four days' time, we **5) (lie)** on a wonderful beach!
 D: Oh yes! And we **6) (swim)** and **7) (sunbathe)**
 S: I can't wait!

Future simple / Future perfect simple

- 2.** Completa le frasi con la forma corretta del *future simple* (*will + forma base*) o del *future perfect simple* (*will + have + participio passato*)

1. I hope that it (*not / be*) a rainy summer.
2. Dad hopes he (*finish*) painting the kitchen by the end of the week.
3. Jane (*hear*) the news on TV by now. You needn't call her.
4. By the time you arrive I (*already / make*) dinner.
5. She is planning to travel a lot. Within five years she (*visit*) most European countries.
6. At 3 o'clock Sarah (*not / be*) in Paris any more. She (*already / leave*)

Future continuous / Future perfect simple

- 3.** Completa le frasi con la forma corretta del *future continuous* (*will + be + -ing*) o del *future perfect simple* (*will + have + participio passato*)

1. George (*finish*) his Master's degree by next year.
2. This time next week I (*ski*) in the Dolomites.
3. Next Friday she (*work*) in her office as usual.
4. I (*attend*) a meeting in London on Tuesday, so I won't be at home.
5. I (*read*) the whole book by the end of the week.
6. By the end of the week we (*already / visit*) all the museums in town.
7. We're late. Hurry up! All the guests (*arrive*) by now.
8. I (*watch*) a new video this evening, so why don't you come round? We can watch it together.

Future perfect simple / Future perfect continuous

4. Completa le frasi con il *future perfect simple* o il *future perfect continuous*.

1. In a week's time I (*have*) this bike for two years.
2. In a month's time I (*work*) for this company for two years.
3. Next month we (*be*) married for ten years.
4. Next week they (*own*) their restaurant for three years.
5. Next month we (*live*) together for three years.

I vari tempi del futuro

5. Completa le frasi con il tempo futuro adeguato: *present continuous* (1volta), futuro con *to be going to* (1volta), *future simple* (3 volte), *future continuous* (1volta), *future perfect simple* (2 volte), *future perfect continuous* (1volta).

1. By the time you get back, Ted (*already / leave*)
2. It's only a short trip. I (*be*) back tomorrow.
3. What (*you / do*) next Saturday evening? Would you like to go out?
4. In ten hours' time I (*relax*) in my own bed.
5. "The phone's ringing." "I (*answer*) it."
6. Look at that boy! He (*fall*) off the ladder!
7. It's a nice day today but they think it (*rain*) tomorrow.
8. My computer is very old. I bought it nearly eight years ago. By the end of the month I (*have*) it for exactly eight years.
9. In a month's time I (*work*) in this factory for five years.

6. Completa il testo con la forma corretta di futuro (*present continuous*, *future simple*, *future continuous*, *future perfect simple*). A volte più di una soluzione è corretta.

At this time next Thursday, Simon 1) (*fly*) to New Zealand. He 2) (*visit*) his brother there, and he is sure he 3) (*have*) a wonderful time. He 4) (*stay*) there for two months and by the time he leaves he 5) (*see*) a lot of new and exciting places.

7. Completa il testo con la forma corretta di futuro (*future simple*, *future continuous*, *future perfect simple*, *future perfect continuous*). A volte più di una soluzione è corretta.

By the end of the year David 1) (*work*) for the same company for thirty years. He hopes that he 2) (*be*) able to retire after two more years. After he retires, he imagines that he 3) (*travel*) most of the time, and he believes he 4) (*visit*) at least forty countries by the time he is sixty years old.

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION (FCE)

8. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima, usando da due a cinque parole compreso la parola fornita e la forma di futuro corretta.
1. I've been in this company for almost five years.
will By the end of the month I in this company for five years.
 2. This book will take me three weeks to read.
have In three weeks' time I this book.
 3. Jennifer is pregnant.
have Jennifer is a baby.
 4. Don't worry. Susan won't be late.
be Don't worry. Susan here on time.
 5. I don't suppose you have heard from Tom.
won't You from Tom.
 6. Jane and Paul's wedding is next Saturday.
getting Jane and Paul married next Saturday.
 7. No one knows what the result of the match is going to be.
win No one knows who the match.
 8. The play is about to start now.
going The play start.
 9. Tom will be home late.
until Tom won't late.
 10. The President expects an easy victory in the next election.
will The President believes win the next election easily.

ERROR CORRECTION (FCE)

9. Nella maggior parte delle righe di questo testo è contenuta una parola non necessaria. Scrivi la parola non necessaria. Metti un tick (✓) se la riga è corretta.

In July Martin will have been being at his company for 20 years, and he is getting a bonus of three weeks' paid holiday. So Martin and I will have decided to hire a car and drive around Europe. We will be leaving towards the end of July and we are been going to visit as many countries as we can. We are flying to Paris on the 27th and then we will be been staying at some friends' house before we will start our tour. We are going to spend a week in France and when we will have finished there, we will probably are go to Spain. At the moment we haven't planned too much. We will know a bit more by the end of this week, when we are going getting a lot of brochures from the tourist board. We would like to get as far as until Greece, but realistically I doubt whether we will have enough time. I hope it won't be too expensive. Just think. In two months' time we will be going having the time of our lives. I can't wait!

- | | |
|-----|--------------|
| 1 | being |
| 2 | ✓ |
| 3. | |
| 4. | |
| 5. | |
| 6. | |
| 7. | |
| 8. | |
| 9. | |
| 10. | |
| 11. | |
| 12. | |
| 13. | |
| 14. | |
| 15. | |

Grammar and practice

- A. Pronomi relativi - Frasi subordinate relative restrittive
 B. Pronomi relativi - Frasi subordinate relative non restrittive
 C. Relativi indefiniti composti con "ever"
 D. Infinito e partecipi al posto di frasi relative
Revision: i relativi

★ A PRONOMI RELATIVI FRASI SUBORDINATE RELATIVE RESTRITTIVE

I **pronomi relativi** (in italiano: che, il quale, la quale, i quali, le quali, cui, di cui, ...) possono trovarsi in frasi **subordinate relative restrittive** (**defining relative clauses**), così chiamate perché servono a definire esattamente la persona, la cosa o l'animale cui ci si riferisce. Tali frasi subordinate non si possono omettere altrimenti la frase principale verrebbe a mancare di senso.

That's the girl who lives next door.

Quella è la ragazza **che** vive alla porta accanto.

riferiti a	soggetto	oggetto	con preposizione	possesso
persone	who / that	(who / whom / that)	prep. + whom (who / whom) + prep.	whose
cose, animali	which / that	(which / that)	prep. + which (which) + prep.	whose /...of which

(**whom** si usa nella lingua formale)

• I pronomi relativi in funzione di soggetto sono sempre espressi .	<i>The actor who/that received the Oscar was not well-known.</i> L'attore che ricevette l'Oscar non era molto noto. <i>The vet cured a dog which/that had a broken leg.</i> Il veterinario curò un cane che aveva una zampa rotta.
--	---

• I pronomi relativi in funzione di oggetto (indicati tra parentesi) vengono generalmente omessi .	<i>The woman (who(m)/that) you met is Tom's wife.</i> (you è il soggetto) La donna che hai incontrato è la moglie di Tom. <i>The computer (which / that) I bought is very fast.</i> (I è il soggetto) Il computer che ho comperato è molto veloce.
---	---

• Quando il pronomo relativo è preceduto da preposizione , generalmente nel parlato si preferisce collocare la preposizione dopo il verbo (il relativo, indicato tra parentesi, può essere omesso). La struttura prep. + whom / which viene usata nella lingua formale .	<i>This is the book in which she was interested.</i> (formale) <i>This is the book (which) she was interested in.</i> (informale) Questo è il libro al quale lei era interessata. <i>That's the woman to whom he spoke.</i> (formale). <i>That's the woman (who/ whom) he spoke to.</i> (informale) Quella è la donna alla quale lui ha parlato.
--	---

- Il pronomo relativo **whose**, usato per esprimere possesso, viene **sempre espresso**, ed è sempre seguito dalla cosa posseduta o dalla persona in relazione. È spesso usato anche per cose e animali al posto di **of which**.

That's the man whose horse is worth a lot of money.
Quello è l'uomo il cui cavallo vale molto danaro.

This is the horse whose foal is worth a lot of money.
Questo è il cavallo il cui puledro vale molto danaro.

Ricorda:

what	cio / quello che
all / everything that	tutto cio / tutto quello che
which	il che / la qual cosa

Ricorda che gli **avverbi relativi** **where, when, why, how** vengono generalmente usati al posto di **which**

luogo: where (= at/in/on/to which)	<i>There are places in which/where you feel at home.</i> Vi sono luoghi in cui ci si sente a casa.
tempo: when (= in/on/at/during which)	<i>There are days on which/when one doesn't feel like working.</i> Ci sono giorni in cui non ci sente di lavorare.
causa/motivo: why (= the reason for which)	<i>That is the reason for which/why he didn't come.</i> Quello è il motivo per cui lui non è venuto
modo: how (= the way in which)	<i>Tell me the way in which /how you broke the window.</i> Dimmi il modo in cui hai rotto la finestra.

PRACTICE

1. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

- This is the photo of the man that / **which** invented the telephone.
- That's the woman whose / **who** son is an extreme skier.
- That's the dog **who** / which rescued me from the fire.
- The computer **that** / who I wanted to buy was too expensive.
- That's the man who / **which** spoke at the conference.
- That's the dog **which** / whose puppy had a broken leg.

2. Completa le frasi con *pronomi relativi riferiti a persona*. Mettili tra parentesi dove possono essere omessi.

- Mrs Kraynack is the woman**who**..... lives on the second floor.
- Isn't that the girl**whose**..... mother is a famous theatre actress?
- The man**who**..... lives next door has got a degree in computer science.
- How do you call someone**who**..... kills people for money?
- Aren't those the people**whose**.. house fell down last week?
- That's Mark, the boy(w.who)..... I met at the disco last Saturday.

3. Completa le frasi con *pronomi relativi riferiti ad animali o cose*. Mettili tra parentesi dove possono essere omessi.

- How much did you pay for the glasses(**which**)..... you're wearing?
- Did you know that there are birds**which**..... can't fly?
- We've just received the catalogue**which**..... we ordered a week ago.
- The program(**which**)..... I downloaded yesterday is really great.
- The Titanic is the famous ship**which**..... sank in 1912.
- Yesterday I found a puppy**whose**..... left leg was broken.

4. Abbina i mestieri e gli oggetti alle rispettive descrizioni, poi costruisci frasi usando *someone who, something which, someone whose*, seguendo l'esempio.

1. <i>chef</i>	a) job is to clean rooms	1 c ➤ <i>A chef is someone who cooks food.</i>
h 2. bottle-opener	b) shows the time	2 ...
3. waiter	c) <i>cooks food</i>	3 ...
b 4. clock	d) serves meals	4 ...
f 5. toothbrush	e) job is to serve drinks	5 ...
6. porter	f) cleans teeth	6 ...
7. barman	g) carries luggage	7 ...
8. maid	h) opens bottles	8 ...

5. Unisci le frasi con *who, which o whose*, come nell'esempio. Effettua tutti i cambiamenti necessari.

➤ *John is an architect. He works for a big building firm.*

John is an architect who works for a big building firm.

1. Green Peace is an association. It fights for the protection of the environment. *which*
2. Whales are mammals. They live in the sea. *whose*
3. The Daily Telegraph is a newspaper. It sells lots of copies. *which*
4. That's the woman. Her daughter is a professional dancer. *who*
5. That's the man. He was prosecuted for terrorism. *who*

6. Riscrivi le frasi nella forma più comunemente usata nel parlato, come nell'esempio.

➤ *Which is the book in which you are interested?*

Which is the book you are interested in?

1. **Which of them is the girl** to whom **you are engaged?** which of them is the girl you are engaged to?
these are the papers i was looking for
2. **These are the papers for which I was looking!** mr jordan is the man they were talking about
this is the beautiful song we used to listen to
3. **That's the knife with which I was cutting the meat.**
4. **Mr Jordan is the man about whom they were talking.**
5. **This is the beautiful song to which we used to listen.**
6. **The princess married the prince to whom she had been promised.** the princess married the prince she had been promised to
7. **Is that the stamp in which you were interested?**
8. **That's the man with whom she fell in love.**

7. Riscrivi le frasi seguendo l'esempio.

➤ *The boy is good -looking. I study with that boy.*

The boy I study with is good-looking.

1. This is the bag. You were looking for the bag. This is the bag you were looking for
2. Those are the English people. I told you about those English people. Those are the english people whose I told you about
3. The girls are very nice. I went on holiday with the girls.
4. That's the girl. I told you about the girl. That's the girl I told you about
5. The factory makes spare parts. I work for the factory. The factory I work for makes spare parts

8. Completa le frasi con *when, where, why, how*.

1. Do you remember the day we met?
2. I can't understand the reason she didn't come with us.
3. The office I work is near the railway station.
4. An expert told me to repair my CD-player.
5. I remember the day my son got his university degree.
6. Is there any reason you refused to help him?

9. Frank e Barbara sono andati a Londra l'estate scorsa. Abbina i luoghi che hanno visitato e ciò che hanno fatto in ciascun luogo, poi costruisci frasi con *where*, come nell'esempio.

➤ *They went to Trafalgar Square where they saw Nelson's Column.*

1. *Trafalgar Square*
2. *the National Gallery*
3. *the Excelsior Hotel*
4. *Arsenal Stadium*
5. *the Royal Opera House*

- a) *admire / the paintings*
- b) *watch / a football match*
- c) *see / Nelson's Column*
- d) *see / "Swan Lake"*
- e) *have / afternoon tea*

1 c
2 ...
3 ...
4 ...
5 ...

10. Abbina i luoghi alle cose che vi si possono fare, poi costruisci frasi con *where*, come nell'esempio.

➤ *A bathroom is a place where you can have a shower or a bath.*

1. *bathroom*
2. *gym*
3. *guest house*
4. *sauna*
5. *restaurant*

- a) *sit in hot steam and relax*
- b) *enjoy delicious meals*
- c) *work out*
- d) *have a shower or a bath*
- e) *stay when on holiday*

1 d
2 ...
3 ...
4 ...
5 ...

11. Trasforma le frasi usando *which*. Segui l'esempio.

➤ *It was kind of him to help the old woman cross the road.*

He helped the old woman cross the road, which was kind of him.

1. It's surprising that this kind of magazines is very popular.
2. It's a shame Kate can't come to my party.
3. It was rather strange that very few people were at the conference.
4. It was very nice of him to lend Sarah his car.
5. It's really silly of her to trust him.

12. Completa le frasi con *which*, *what*, *that*.

1. I don't know the others are doing.
2. We're doing all we can.
3. They're always criticizing everything I do.
4. He always tells lies, irritates me.
5. We can't get to the end of the month with we earn.
6. James is much better, is good news.
7. We had to carry two heavy cases, was very tiring.

SENTENCE TRANSFORMATION (PET)

13. Completa la seconda frase in modo che abbia lo stesso significato della prima, usando non più di tre parole.

1. I didn't have anything else to show the Customs Officer.
I showed the Customs Officer had.
2. The office Tom works in is on the ground floor.
The office is on the ground floor.
3. He often behaves rudely only because he is very shy.
The only reason behaves rudely is because he is very shy.
4. There are lots of books in that library. Most of them interest me.
Most of the books the library interest me.



B PRONOMI RELATIVI

FRASI SUBORDINATE RELATIVE NON RESTRITTIVE

I pronomi relativi possono trovarsi anche in frasi **subordinate relative non restrittive** (**non defining relative clauses**). Le frasi subordinate non restrittive sono molto formali e raramente usate nel parlato. Sono frasi incidentali che forniscono **informazioni aggiuntive**, cioè non necessarie a definire o identificare la persona, l'animale o la cosa cui ci si riferisce. Nello scritto tali frasi sono espresse **tra due virgolette** e possono essere eliminate senza modificare il senso della frase.

Peter, who is a doctor, works in London.

Peter, che fa il medico, lavora a Londra.

riferiti a	soggetto	oggetto	con preposizione	possesso
persone	who	who/whom	prep. + whom who/whom + prep.	whose
cose, animali	which	which	prep. + which which + prep.	whose/...of which

(**whom** si usa nella lingua formale)



- **That** non viene mai usato nelle relative non restrittive

Mrs Jenkins, who (e non: that) lives not far from here, works in the same office as Peter.

La signora Jenkins, che vive non lontano da qui, lavora nello stesso ufficio di Peter.

- I pronomi relativi in frasi non restrittive non possono mai essere omessi (anche quelli in funzione di oggetto o quando si sposta la preposizione dopo il verbo)

The U2, who are an Irish group, have organized a lot of concerts for charity.

Gli U2, che è un gruppo irlandese, hanno organizzato molti concerti di beneficenza.

Paul, who I went to the cinema with last Sunday, is fond of horror films.

Paul, con cui sono andata al cinema domenica scorsa, è appassionato di film dell'orrore.

PRACTICE

- Completa le frasi *subordinate relative non restrittive* con i *pronomi relativi* adeguati.

- James, father is a doctor, wants to study medicine too.
- Antonio Meucci, invented the telephone, died in poverty.
- Our ferry-boat, which was to leave at 8.30, was an hour late.
- Rimini, is a very popular seaside resort, is not too far from Venice.
- Bob, has lived in Italy for ten years, speaks Italian fluently.
- Mount Everest, is 8,848 metres high, is the highest mountain in the world.
- My sister, I haven't seen for many years, is coming back from the USA next week.
- Marie Skłodowska, husband was the scientist Pierre Curie, died of leukaemia.

2. Abbina gli elementi delle 4 colonne in modo da formare cinque frasi di senso compiuto. Poi scrivi le frasi inserendo le virgolette correttamente.

1. The Hard Rock Café	who	A. was later found at the Bahamas	a) was opened in London in 1971.
2. A British expedition	which	B. is famous for its typical American atmosphere	b) set out to conquer Everest in 1953.
3. Mount Everest		C. sponsor was the Royal Geographical Society	c) disappeared soon after the bank robbery.
4. The bank clerk	whose	D. is one of the most famous pictures in the world	d) can be seen in the Louvre, in Paris.
5. "Mona Lisa"		E. is the highest mountain in the world	e) lies on the Nepal-Tibet border.

3. Unisci le frasi usando una *proposizione relativa non restrittiva* e i pronomi relativi *who* e *which*, seguendo l'esempio.

➤ *Michelangelo was one of Italy's greatest artists. He lived until he was ninety.*
Michelangelo, who lived until he was ninety, was one of Italy's greatest artists.

1. Jane is a reliable girl. She babysits for a lot of friends of mine.
2. That Chinese restaurant is very popular. It opened a few months ago.
3. Pablo Jimenez is making a documentary film about Sardinia. We met him on holiday last summer.
4. Paris is one of the most romantic places I've ever been to. I visited it last summer.
5. Lucy is a perfect nurse. She works in a very well equipped hospital.

4. Unisci le frasi usando una *proposizione relativa non restrittiva* e il pronomo relativo *whose*, come nell'esempio.

➤ *Bill speaks Italian fluently. His father is from Florence.*
Bill, whose father is from Florence, speaks Italian fluently.

1. Marilyn Monroe died on 14th August 1962. Her real name was Norma Jean.
2. Michael Jackson is one of the richest rock stars in the world. His brothers and sisters are singers too.
3. Mr Wilkins is the manager of a big company. His office is on the 18th floor of that building.
4. The Beatles became famous in the 60s. Their music is still popular.
5. Graham Greene died in 1991. His books are still read.
6. That horse was a famous race horse. Its foals are worth a lot of money.



C RELATIVI INDEFINITI composti con "ever"

whoever (= anyone who) chiunque, non importa chi	<i>Whoever comes, will be welcome.</i> Chiunque verrà, sarà il benvenuto.
whatever (= anything that) qualunque cosa, non importa cosa, qualunque + sostantivo	<i>Whatever you may decide, I'll be with you.</i> Qualsiasi cosa possiate decidere, io sarò con voi. <i>Whatever clothes she wears, she's always very attractive.</i> Qualsiasi abbigliamento indossa, lei è sempre attraente.
whichever (= anything that/anyone who) qualunque, chiunque (fra un numero limitato)	<i>We can leave on Saturday or Sunday. Whichever (day) is OK.</i> Possiamo partire sabato o domenica. Qualsiasi giorno (dei due) va bene.
wherever (=in any place where) dovunque, non importa dove	<i>I meet him wherever I go.</i> Lo incontro ovunque vado.
whenever (= every/any time that) ogniqualvolta che, tutte le volte che, non importa quando	<i>You can come whenever you want.</i> Puoi venire ogniqualvolta vuoi.
however (= any way that) in qualunque modo, non importa come * seguito da aggettivo o avverbio ha il significato concessivo: per quanto, sebbene	<i>However I tried, I couldn't get in touch with her.</i> In qualunque modo io abbia provato, non sono riuscito a mettermi in contatto con lei. <i>However hard he may study, I don't think he will pass the examination.</i> Per quanto duramente lui possa studiare, non penso che supererà l'esame.

PRACTICE

1. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

1. Here are two computers. You can use **whichever** / **whatever** you like.
2. In Italian schools students don't have to wear a uniform. They can wear **whichever** / **whatever** clothes they like.
3. Teachers are often criticised **however** / **whatever** methods they use.
4. I will follow you **whenever** / **wherever** you will go.
5. **However** / **Whoever** sincere she may sound, I wouldn't trust her.
6. You can't drive at **however** / **whatever** speed you like. There's a speed limit.

2. Completa le frasi con il corretto *composto di ever*.

1. I'm sure I'll pass the examination difficult it may be.
2. You can do you like. 3. you go, I'll come with you. 4. She can come and stay with us she likes. 5. The meeting will be on Monday or Tuesday. day is fine with me. 6. You can invite you like. 7. says that, is a liar. 8. The results are always the same he does it.

★★ D INFINITO E PARTICIPI AL POSTO DI FRASI RELATIVE

Una frase relativa può anche essere espressa come segue:

• con un infinito	<i>There's nothing interesting to see (= that we can see) in my town.</i> No c'è niente di interessante da vedere nella mia città.
• con un particípio presente (quando l'azione della frase principale e subordinata sono contemporanee)	<i>There was a woman sitting (= who was sitting) on a bench.</i> C'era una donna seduta su di una panchina.
• con un particípio passato (solo quando la frase relativa è passiva)	<i>The article about the Internet published (= which was published) in yesterday's newspaper was very interesting.</i> L'articolo su Internet, pubblicato nel giornale di ieri, era molto interessante.

PRACTICE

1. Sostituisci la frase relativa sottolineata con un *infinito*.

- *I wasn't the only one who thought so.* *I wasn't the only one **to think** so.*
- That was the best thing that you could do.
 - Haven't you got anything you can do?
 - There isn't much that we can do in this situation.
 - There wasn't anything that we could do in that awful place.
 - There wasn't a good film that we could see.
 - There wasn't anything nice that we could buy.

2. Sostituisci le frasi relative sottolineate con un *particípio presente* o un *particípio passato*.

- Who's that woman who is sitting at that table?
- The lane which leads to that village is very narrow.
- They live in a flat that overlooks Central Park.
- The meeting that was arranged for today has been postponed.
- The boy who was kidnapped last month was released yesterday.
- Look! The boy who's walking on that wall is going to fall off.
- The people who live next door are Irish.
- The boys who are playing in the park are Mrs Gorman's children.
- There's a beautiful garden which surrounds the house.
- She left a message in which she says that she can't come to the party.

3. Riscrivi le frasi sostituendo i partecipi presenti e passati con una frase relativa.

- *Who's the girl wearing a red skirt?* *Who's the girl **who's wearing** a red skirt?*
- The people standing by the gate are my parents.
 - There was a dog running after a cat.
 - The strike announced last week has been called off.
 - The parcel sent two weeks ago only arrived this morning.
 - Whose daughter is the girl running over there?

1. Completa la seguente favola moderna con i *pronomi relativi* adeguati. Mettili tra parentesi quando possono essere omessi. (Il testo contiene *subordinate relative restrittive* e *non restrittive*).

THE PRINCESS AND THE TIN BOX

Once upon a time, in a far country there lived a king 1) daughter was the prettiest princess in the world. On her eighteenth birthday the king sent a royal ambassador to the courts of five neighbouring kingdoms to announce that he would give his daughter in marriage to the prince 2) brought her the gift 3) she liked the most.

The first prince, 4) arrived at the palace riding a swift white stallion, laid at the feet of the princess an enormous apple made of solid gold 5) he had taken from a dragon 6) had guarded it for a thousand years.

The second prince , 7) came on a grey charger, brought her a nightingale 8) was made of a thousand diamonds.

The third prince, 9) came on a black horse, carried a great jewel box made of platinum and sapphires, 10) was placed next to the other presents. The fourth prince, riding on a fiery yellow horse, gave the princess a gigantic ruby heart 11) was pierced with an emerald arrow.

The fifth prince, 12) was the strongest and the most handsome of all the five suitors, was quite poor. He was the son of a poor king 13) realm had been overrun by mice, locust and mining engineers so that there was nothing much of value left on it. He came to the palace on a plough horse and brought her a small tin box filled with small stones 14) he had picked up on the way.

The other princes laughed when they saw the gift 15) the fifth prince had brought to the princess.

"Now" , the king said to his daughter, " you must select the present 16) you like best and marry the prince 17) brought it."

The princess smiled, walked up to the table and picked up the present 18) she liked the most. It was the platinum-and-sapphire jewel box, the gift of the third prince.

"The way I figure it", she said, "is this. It is a very large and expensive box, and when I am married, I will meet many admirers 19) will give me precious gems with 20) to fill it up to the top. Therefore, it is the most valuable of all the gifts 21) my suitors have brought me and I like it the best."

The princess married the third prince that very day. More than a hundred thousand pearls were thrown at her, 22) made her very happy.

Moral: All those 23) thought the princess was going to select the tin box filled with stones will write one hundred times on the blackboard "I would rather (preferirei) have a hunk (pezzo) of aluminium silicate than a diamond necklace."

(Adapted from J. Thurber "The Princess and the Tin Box")

- 2.** Completa le frasi con *who*, *which*, *whose*, poi sottolinea le frasi subordinate relative ed indica quali sono *restrittive* (D) e quali sono *non restrittive* (ND). Infine aggiungi le *virgolette* dove sono necessarie.

➤ Mont Blanc, which is the highest mountain in the Alps, is between France and Italy. (**ND**)

1. She took the job paid the highest salary. (...)
2. Arnold Schwarzenegger is an actor has become Governor of California. (...)
3. Chaille Stoval film *Boys in Tights* won first prize at Miami Children's Festival is now Hollywood's youngest film director. (...)
4. Nobody liked the cake Lucy had made. (...)
5. Kirsten Dunst nickname is Kiki acted in *Spider-man*. (...)

SENTENCE TRANSFORMATION (PET)

- 3.** Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando non più di tre parole.

1. That's the basket in which the cat sleeps.
That's the basket in.
2. That's the man to whom she was talking yesterday afternoon.
That's the man she yesterday afternoon.
3. It was kind of Jane to help me.
Jane helped me, of her.
4. It was silly of me to trust him.
I trusted him, of me.

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION (FCE)

- 4.** Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato di quella data, usando da due a cinque parole compresa la parola fornita.

1. They are the people. Their daughter is a writer.
whose They are the people a writer.
2. My sister has a friend. He speaks French fluently.
who My sister French fluently.
3. The bakery is next to my house. It sells delicious bread.
which The bakery my house sells delicious bread.
4. The company he works for imports Italian wine.
which The company imports Italian wine.
5. The house they live in was built in the 19 th century.
where The house in the 19 th century.
6. Anyone who wants to come to my party, is welcome.
whoever to my party, is welcome.
7. Mary comes to visit us every time she comes into town.
whenever Mary comes to visit us into town.
8. It was unusual that all the tickets were sold on the first day.
which All the tickets were sold on the first day, unusual.
9. The bank Mary works at is just round the corner.
where The bank is just round the corner.
10. Any time he sees me in the distance, he changes direction.
whenever He changes direction in the distance.

Grammar and practice

- A. Indefiniti composti con
some, any, no, every
B. All / Every / Each / Whole
C. Both / Either / Neither

- D. Most
E. Gradi di quantità - Percentuale - Proporzioni
F. Other / Another / Else
Revision: indefiniti

★ A INDEFINITI COMPOSTI con *some, any, no, every*

Gli **indefiniti composti** si riferiscono a persone, cose e luoghi, e si chiamano indefiniti perché non esprimono esattamente a chi, a che cosa, o a quale luogo ci si riferisce.

riferiti a	SOME	ANY	NO	EVERY
persone	somebody* someone* qualcuno	anybody* anyone* qualcuno	nobody* no one* nessuno	everybody* everyone* tutti/ognuno
cose	something qualcosa	anything qualcosa	nothing niente	everything tutto/ogni cosa
luoghi	somewhere da qualche parte	anywhere da qualche parte	nowhere da nessuna parte	everywhere dappertutto

(* Non c'è differenza di significato tra i composti con **-body** e con **-one**.)

Uso

Le regole d'uso sono le stesse viste per *some, any, no*

(vedi a PAG. 40)

- I composti di "some" si usano in frasi affermative;
- **something** si usa anche nelle richieste e nelle offerte.
 - I composti di "any" si usano in frasi negative ed interrogative.
 - I composti di "no", possono essere usati al posto di **not anyone/anybody, not anything, not anywhere**.
- There is someone at the door.
C'è qualcuno alla porta.
Can I have something to drink?
Posso avere qualcosa da bere?
Would you like something to eat?
Vorresti qualcosa da mangiare?*
- There wasn't anybody in the room.
Non c'era nessuno nella stanza.
Is there anything to eat?
C'è qualcosa da mangiare?*
- There wasn't anybody in the room.
= There was nobody in the room.
Non c'era nessuno nella stanza.
There wasn't anything to eat.
= There was nothing to eat.
Non c'era niente da mangiare.*

Attenzione!!!

- I composti di "any" si possono trovare anche in frasi affermative con il significato di **chiunque, qualunque, qualsiasi**.
- This exercise is very easy. Anybody/Anyone could do it.
Questo esercizio è molto facile. Lo saprebbe fare chiunque.*

Attenzione!!!

• Gli indefiniti composti sono tutti singolari e pertanto hanno il verbo alla 3a persona singolare (anche <i>everybody / everyone</i>). • I composti riferiti a persone possono fungere da "possessore" nell'uso del genitivo sassone . • In presenza di aggettivo sono seguiti direttamente dall'aggettivo (senza "of") .	<i>Everybody was very happy to be there.</i> Tutti erano felici di essere là. <i>Is this anybody's seat?</i> È di qualcuno questo posto? <i>I'd like to eat something special.</i> Vorrei mangiare qualcosa di speciale.
• I composti riferiti a luogo - non sono mai preceduti da preposizione di stato in luogo o di moto a luogo ; - richiedono invece le preposizioni "from" e "out of" indicanti moto da luogo.	<i>I looked for my hat but it was nowhere.</i> Ho cercato il mio cappello ma non era da nessuna parte. <i>Are you going anywhere for the weekend?</i> Vai da qualche parte per il fine settimana? <i>He comes from somewhere in India, but I don't know from where exactly.</i> Viene da qualche parte dell'India, ma non so da dove esattamente.

Attenzione!!!

Non confondere

In caso di scelta fra un certo numero (*qualcuno/nessuno di noi/voi/loro/dei ragazzi/delle persone ...*) non si usano gli indefiniti composti ma si usano **some of, any of, none of, every one of**.

Some of the boys are playing football.

non: *Somebody of the boys...*

Are any of they boys playing football?

non: *anybody of the boys...*

None of the boys are playing football.

non: *Nobody of the boys...*

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi con *somebody/someone, something, somewhere*.

1. They've got a house in the south of Italy. I don't know exactly where, near Palermo, I think.
2. "There's so much to do." "You can ask to help you."
3. She's got in her hands but I can't see what.
4. We had lunch at a restaurant along the coast.
5. There's on the phone for you.
6. The house was burning and there was inside.
7. Come with me. I've got interesting to show you.
8. Jane was at home but she wasn't alone. There was with her.
9. Let's do special for her birthday.
10. Will you listen to me, please? I want to tell you important.

2. Completa le frasi con *anybody/anyone, anything, anywhere*.

1. Is home?
2. I'm bored. The weather's bad and there isn't to do or see here.
3. Where are my glasses? I can't find them
4. Are the Whites going for their anniversary?
5. We don't know called Alfred.
6. They can't take their son He's a real pest.
7. Have you got for me from London?

3. Completa le frasi con *nobody/no one, nothing, nowhere*.

1. "Is there anything good on TV tonight?" "No,"
2. can survive more than five days in the desert without water.
3. He's broken both his legs. He can go
4. I don't know her well. I can say
5. They had a car accident but was hurt.
6. All the lights are off. is at home.
7. I looked for my glasses all morning but they were

4. Completa le frasi con *everybody/everyone, everything, everywhere*.

1. Here's your ticket, your passport and some money. Have you got now?
2. They all lived in a very big house by the sea and was very happy there.
3. Don't go to that shop. It's very expensive. Buy at the supermarket. Things are much cheaper there.
4. Oh, no, look! There are flies
5. Good morning, How are you?
6. Children can go This park is quite safe.
7. Hurry up! is waiting for you.

5. Completa le frasi adeguatamente con i composti di *any o no*.

1. The phone rang but answered it.
2. I had for breakfast. I had a stomachache.
3. She heard a noise and asked: "Is there out there?"
4. I went to the theatre last night, but I couldn't see The woman in front of me was wearing a very big hat.
5. Let's go to the cinema. There is good on TV tonight.
6. There's in the fridge. It's empty.
7. "Where did you go last summer?" " We stayed at home".
8. It's such a boring place! There isn't to do in the evening.

6. Completa le frasi con gli *indefiniti composti* adeguati.

1. The American space shuttle is in the space, but knows where.
2. There was hidden under the bed. I could see his shoes.
3. Do you know about astrology?
4. I've looked for my keys in the house, but I can't find them I've probably lost them else.
5. My horoscope for this month is very good. can go wrong. Besides, I'll meet very special.
6. Have you read interesting lately? "No,
7. There were a lot of people at the conference but I didn't know
8. The only hotel in this town is closed at the moment and there's else to stay.
9. Sorry I didn't ring you up last night, but told me you had called.
10. We didn't go last weekend. It rained all the time.
11. There's in my left shoe. It hurts.
12. I'm hungry. Can I have to eat, please?

7. Completa le frasi adeguatamente con *anybody/anyone*, *anything*, *anywhere* usati in frasi affermative.

1. This riddle is very easy. could guess the answer.
2. I'm rich and I can give you you want.
3. My new car has got a powerful engine. I can take you
4. If you're thirsty or hungry, just tell me. You can have you like.
5. It's true. Something strange happens in that house every night. You can ask in this town.
6. I can only sleep in my bed, while my brother sleeps
7. "What would you like to eat? Meat or fish?" " will be okay."

8. Abbina adeguatamente gli elementi delle tre colonne per formare frasi di senso compiuto.

➤ *I'm thirsty. Let's stop somewhere for a drink.*

1. I'm thirsty. Let's stop	A. nothing	a) to worry about!
2. When the singer began his famous hit	B. everybody	b) at the door.
3. There's	C. someone	c) he does is successful.
4. George is a very lucky person;	D. somewhere	d) got an umbrella?
5. It's raining. Has	E. anyone	e) for breakfast
6. Come with me. I've got	F. nobody	f) to sit.
7. You must be very hungry. You didn't have	G. anything	g) sang with him.
8. The water must be freezing. There's	H. nowhere	h) interesting to show you.
9. All the seats are taken. There's	I. something	i) for a drink.
10. Everything's OK, Lucy. There's	J. everything	j) in the swimming pool.

1. D - i 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.

9. Completa la storia con gli *indefiniti* adeguati.

TRAPPED IN A LIFT

Mr Frank Parker, aged 70, got into the lift at a car park in St Louis, Missouri, last Friday afternoon and he didn't get out until Monday morning.

When he got into the lift, Mr Parker was carrying 1) but a newspaper. After a few seconds the lift stopped between floors. He shouted and shouted but 2) heard him.

He slept on the floor and continued shouting all day Saturday and Sunday, but 3) came. He had 4) to eat or drink. Besides, it was quite cold and Mr Parker didn't have 5) to keep warm with.

On Monday morning 6) phoned to say that the lift didn't work. Some workers immediately came and repaired it.

When the doors opened, poor Mr Parker came out, after 69 hours in the lift. He hadn't eaten or drunk 7) and was in miserable conditions. On top of that, when he left the car park, the attendant didn't believe his story and made him pay extra.

"I was very worried when he didn't come home on Friday evening," said Mrs Parker to a journalist. "I phoned the police, but we couldn't find him 8)"

A few days later the city council gave him \$ 2,000 and free parking in St.Louis for life.



★ **B ALL / EVERY / EACH / WHOLE**

<p>ALL (tutto, tutti) può essere aggettivo o pronomo ed è invariabile. Nota le costruzioni:</p> <p>all + sostantivo all + (of)* the + sostantivo all + (of)* my/his/her/your/their + sost. all + (of)* this/that/these/those + sost. all + of it/ us/you/them it/we/you/they all</p> <p>* La preposizione of viene di solito usata con i sostantivi (generalmente singolari) per dare maggior enfasi. Altrimenti viene omessa.</p>	<p><i>I think all sports are boring.</i> <i>All (of) the girls are wearing a hat.</i> <i>She spent all (of) her money.</i> <i>All (of) those people are from France.</i> <i>All of them live near here.</i> <i>They all live near here.</i></p> <p><i>Have you eaten all (of) the cake?</i></p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Quando <i>all</i> accompagna un soggetto, può trovarsi in diverse posizioni: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - dopo il verbo <i>to be</i> o un modale - prima del verbo principale - dopo il primo ausiliare nelle forme composte 	<p><i>They are all there.</i> <i>They all live in the north of England.</i> <i>They have all gone home.</i></p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Se non è accompagnato da un sostantivo o da un pronomo, si preferisce usare everybody/everyone, everything. 	<p><i>Everybody was crying.</i> = <i>All of us / of them were crying.</i></p>

Ricorda

le seguenti **espressioni di tempo**:
all day/night/week/year (tutto il giorno/la notte/la settimana/l'anno) dove *all* non è seguito dall'articolo *the*
They worked all day.
 Lavorarono tutto il giorno.

Ricorda

le seguenti **espressioni avverbiali**:

all right d'accordo, bene
that's all right non fa niente
not at all prego, di nulla
at all affatto, per niente
all over in tutto
above all soprattutto
after all dopotutto
all in all tutto sommato, in conclusione

EVERY (ogni) è solo **aggettivo**

- è seguito da **sostantivo singolare** e richiede il verbo al singolare

Every girl has got long hair.

=

All the girls have got long hair.
 Tutte le ragazze hanno i capelli lunghi.

- davanti a pronomi e ad aggettivi si usa **every one of**

I've read every one of his articles.
 Ho letto ogni suo articolo.

=

I've read all his articles.
 Ho letto tutti i suoi articoli.

Ricorda

le seguenti **espressioni di tempo**
every day/morning/night/year...
 (ogni giorno/mattina/sera/anno...)
 dove *every* non può essere sostituito da *all*
Confronta:
every day = ogni giorno
all day = tutto il giorno

Ricorda

le seguenti **espressioni** che indicano **ricorrenza di tempo o luogo**

every two days ogni due giorni
every second Sunday ogni due domeniche
every other week a settimane alterne
every now and then di tanto in tanto
every two miles ogni due miglia

EACH (ogni, ciascuno) è aggettivo o pronomo . Come aggettivo è sinonimo di <i>every</i> ma accentua l'individualità.	<i>Each room</i> has got a bathroom. Ogni stanza ha il bagno. (ogni stanza presa singolarmente) <i>They cost one euro each.</i> Costano un euro ciascuno.
• Si usa in riferimento a due entità o comunque ad un numero limitato e preciso.	<i>She has two earrings on each ear.</i> Ha due orecchini in ogni orecchio.
• Può essere seguito da <i>of</i> oppure segue il pronomo personale soggetto.	<i>Each of them</i> has got a bike. <i>They each</i> have got a bike. Ciascuno di loro ha una moto.

WHOLE (l'intero, un intero) è aggettivo • Si usa di solito con sostantivi singolari numerabili , preceduto da <i>the, a</i> , aggettivo possessivo.	<i>They ate the whole cake (=all the cake).</i> Mangiarono l'intera torta/tutta la torta. <i>He spent there his whole life (=all his life).</i> Trascorse là la sua intera vita/tutta la sua vita. <i>He ate a whole packet of biscuits.</i> Mangiò un intero pacchetto di biscotti.
• Può anche accompagnare sostantivi plurali ma senza articolo .	<i>Whole villages</i> were destroyed by the eruption. Interi villaggi furono distrutti dall'eruzione.

Attenzione!!!

Non confondere

all day (= tutto il giorno) <i>We spent all day at the beach.</i> Trascorremmo tutto il giorno in spiaggia.	the whole day (= l'intero giorno) <i>We spent the whole day (= all day) at the beach.</i> Trascorremmo tutto/l'intero giorno in spiaggia.
every day (= ogni giorno/tutti i giorni) <i>It rained every day.</i> Piovve ogni giorno/tutti i giorni.	each day (= ciascun giorno) <i>Each day was different.</i> Ciascun/Ogni giorno era diverso. (ciascun giorno preso singolarmente)

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi adeguatamente con *every, everybody/one, everything, each, all, whole*.

1. I'm very tired because I've been studying hard day.
2. I get up early day.
3. You never know what may happen. day is different.
4. They ate the cake.
5. He spent his life helping people in need.
6. Have you got the things you need?
7. These cups cost five euros
8. of them came to see me in hospital.
9. The manager met the employees to discuss about a new project.
10. He has a very big breakfast morning.
11. towns were destroyed by the earthquake.
12. He was so nervous that he smoked a packet of cigarettes.
13. We made effort to help him out of that difficult situation.
14. It was early in the morning but was already awake.
15. "Have you packed up?" "Yes, is ready."

★ C **BOTH / EITHER / NEITHER**

BOTH (of) (tutti e due / entrambi) Può essere **aggettivo o pronome**. Ha le stesse costruzioni di *all* (vedi a PAG. 258)

both + sostantivo plurale
both + (of) the + sostantivo plurale
both + (of) my/his/her/your/their + sostantivo pl.
both + (of) these/those + sostantivo plurale
both + of us/you/them
we/you/they both

- Quando *both* accompagna un soggetto (pronome o sostantivo), può trovarsi in diverse posizioni:
 - dopo il verbo *to be* o un modale
 - prima del verbo principale
 - dopo il primo ausiliare nelle forme composte

Ricorda: **both ... and** = sia ... sia ...

Both girls are thin.

Both (of) the girls are thin.

Both (of) my friends live near here.

Both (of) those women are from London.

Both of them are from London.

They both live in London.

They are both thin.

They both work here.

They have both gone to the pub.

Both Mary and John went to university.

EITHER (of) (o l'uno o l'altro, uno dei due) può essere **aggettivo o pronome** ed è **invariabile**. (con **either of** ... il **verbo** normalmente va alla **3a pers.sing.**)

Ricorda: **either ... or ...** = o ... o ...

Either car is excellent.

Either of these cars is excellent.

You can have either fish or meat.

NEITHER (of) (né l'uno né l'altro, nessuno dei due) può essere **aggettivo o pronome** ed è **invariabile** (con **neither of** ... il **verbo** può essere al **plurale** o al **singolare**)

Ricorda: **neither ... nor ...** = né ... né ...
in frase negativa "né...né..." = **either ... or ...**

Neither car is good enough.

Neither of these cars is/are good enough.

Neither Paul nor Tom came to my party.

I don't like either meat or fish.

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi con *both, either, neither*.

1. There were two girls, but of them could speak English.
2. My parents are managers. of them work for a big insurance company.
3. Mary Jordan is very good at languages. She can speak French and German perfectly.
4. Neil Swan is very bad at languages. He can speak French nor German.
5. If you are interested in art, Rome or Paris is the right place for you.
6. I'm very hungry. I'll have meat and vegetables.
7. You can have meat or fish. You can't have both.
8. I invited Mary and Susan. I hope of them will come.
9. You can see two roads over there. You can take the one on the left or the other on the right. of them lead to the beach.
10. Those two girls are English. They come from Manchester.

MOST (of) con il significato di "la maggior parte (di)"

- può riferirsi a **sostantivi singolari o plurali**
- non è mai preceduto dall'articolo

- e' seguito da "**of**" solo se precede un **articolo**, un **possessivo**, un **dimostrativo** o un **pronome personale**.

- può essere sostituito da ***the majority of*** ... davanti ad un sostantivo plurale.

Most wine is imported.

La maggior parte del vino viene importata.

Most tourists enjoy the visit to the tower.

Alla maggior parte dei turisti piace la visita alla torre.

Most of the boys are swimming.

Most of my friends live near here.

Most of those people are German.

The majority of my friends live near here.

Attenzione!!!

Non confondere

most la maggior parte

Most people like getting presents.

La maggior parte della gente ama ricevere regali.

the most forma superlativa di *much/many*

He spent the most money.

Lui ha speso più soldi di tutti.

He spent the most.

Lui ha speso più di tutti.

PRACTICE

1. Sostituisci le espressioni sottolineate con *most* o *most of*.

1. The majority of women like buying clothes.
2. The majority of my friends play tennis.
3. I spent almost all the month studying for my exam.
4. We had nice weather for the major part of the holiday.
5. The majority of the people in this country are poor.
6. The majority of children like sweets and chocolates.
7. Almost all people spend a lot of time watching TV.

2. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

1. He bought **most** / **the most** souvenirs of all the people in the group.
2. We all ate a lot, but Mark ate **the most** / **most** of all the people at the party.
3. **Most** / **The most** of this building belongs to a rich man.
4. **The most** / **Most** fruit is imported in this country.
5. We stayed awake **most** / **the most** of the night.
6. He bought a lot of presents, so he spent **the most** / **most**.

★ E GRADI DI QUANTITA' - PERCENTUALE - PROPORZIONI

Riferimento a molti		Riferimento a due	
100 %	all (of) tutti	100 %	both (of) entrambi, tutti e due
	most (of) la maggior parte		
	some (of) qualche		
	one (of) uno		one (of) uno
0 %	none (of) nessuno (tra più di due)	0 %	neither (of) nessuno (tra due)

Attenzione!!!

Non confondere

neither of ... nessuno (tra due)
none of ... nessuno (tra più di due)

*I've bought two new pullovers but **neither of them** fit/fits* me.*

*I've bought three new pullovers but **none of them** fit/fits* me.*

* Con **neither of** o **none of** + plurale, il verbo può trovarsi sia al plurale che al singolare.

PERCENTUALE

70 % = seventy *per cent*

PROPORZIONI

Four *out of ten* = quattro su dieci

PRACTICE

1. Fai riferimento alla tabella e completa le frasi con:

most of, some of, one of, all of, none of

(✓ = pass; X = fail)

Name	Exam 1 History	Exam 2 Geography	Exam 3 Maths	Exam 4 Biology	Exam 5 English	Exam 6 French
Mark	✓	✓	X	✓	✓	✓
Susan	X	X	X	X	X	X
James	X	✓	✓	✓	X	✓
Sarah	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	X
Peter	X	X	X	X	X	✓

➤ *Mark passed **most of** the exams. He only failed **one of** them.*

1. Susan failed the exams. She passed them.
2. James passed the exams. He failed them.
3. Sarah passed the exams. She only failed them.
4. Peter failed the exams. He only passed them.

2. Fai riferimento alle informazioni fornite e completa il dialogo con:

one, most, all, some (x2), none

My class

26 students:
 22 Italian,
 3 Chinese,
 1 Pakistani

A: Are **1** of your classmates Italian?
 B: Well, **2** of them are, but **3** are Chinese and there's **4** from Pakistan, too.
 A: Are there any South Americans in your class?
 B: There are **5** in my school, but **6** of them are in my class.

3. Osserva le immagini e completa le frasi con *all, both, none, neither*.



1. girls are tall and thin.
2. of them is fat.



5. of these men are watching TV.
6. of them are working on their computers.



3. of them are drinking.
4. of them are eating.



7. these people are using the telephone at the moment.
8. of them is using a computer.

4. Correggi l'errore. Effettua tutti i cambiamenti necessari.



1. None of the brothers have got fair hair.



2. Most of the girls are very tall.



3. One of them is thin.



3. Neither of the boys are playing football.

5. Scrivi la percentuale come nell'esempio.

➤ *In Great Britain seventy children out of one hundred love chocolate.*
In Great Britain 70% (seventy per cent) of the children love chocolate.

1. In Great Britain eighty people out of one hundred watch TV more than two hours a day.
2. In Great Britain only twenty-five people out of one hundred live in flats.
3. In Great Britain about sixty people out of one hundred own their own house or flat.
4. In Great Britain fifty families out of one hundred have a pet.

★ **F OTHER / ANOTHER / ELSE**

OTHER (altro) può essere aggettivo o pronome - come aggettivo è invariabile - come pronome può avere il plurale "others"	<i>There weren't any other people.</i> Non c'erano delle altre persone. <i>We remained, others went away.</i> Noi rimanemmo, altri andarono via.
ANOTHER (un altro) può essere aggettivo o pronome	<i>Can I have another cup of tea, please?</i> Posso avere un'altra tazza di tè, per favore? <i>These apples are delicious. Can I have another, please?</i> Queste mele sono deliziose. Posso averne un'altra, per favore?
ELSE (altro) è avverbio e segue: - un indefinito composto con <i>some, any, no, every</i> - le question words <i>who, what, where</i> - <i>much e little</i>	<i>Would you like something else?</i> Vorresti qualcos'altro? <i>Who else came with you?</i> Chi altro venne con te? <i>She didn't say much else.</i> Non disse molto altro.

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi con *other(s), another, else*.

1. Here's present for you. Do you like it?
2. Some people were painting, were drawing.
3. One of the two books was interesting, but the wasn't.
4. Excuse me. Can I have sandwich, please?
5. Some girls like dancing, don't.
6. Would you like some more tea? - Yes, I'll have cup, please.
7. What would you like? - Nothing
8. Have they left you here all alone? Where have all the gone?
9. There isn't much to do here, apart from playing table tennis.
10. I've got little to add. I think I've told you everything.
11. Where are the pullovers?
12. There isn't train until tomorrow morning.

2. Completa le frasi con una *question word + else* adeguatamente, seguendo l'esempio.

➤ **Who else shall we invite?** - Let's invite Mark and Colin too.

1. do we need? - We need some cheese too.
2. shall I buy? - Can you buy some fruit too?
3. do you want to go? You've already been everywhere!
4. did you meet at the conference? - I also met two Indian doctors.
5. did they visit in Paris? - They visited the Louvre too.

1. Sostituisci le espressioni sottolineate con un composto di *some, any, no, every*.

Effettua tutti i cambiamenti necessari.

- *Apart from Mary and you, I don't know any other people here.*
*Apart from Mary and you, I don't know **anybody/anyone else** here.*

- 1.** Would you like to go to some other place?
- 2.** He said an interesting thing.
- 3.** I was swimming. All the others were sunbathing.
- 4.** There was not a particularly interesting person at the conference.
- 5.** We couldn't find an exciting game to pass the time.
- 6.** Perhaps you left your bag on the bench. You can't have left it in any other place.

2. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

- 1.** **Every / All / Everyone** boy was wearing trainers.
- 2.** **Everybody / All / The whole** was invited.
- 3.** I invited **all / all the / every** my friends to my party.
- 4.** How much do they cost? - They're 70p **every / each / all**.
- 5.** Yesterday I was so tired that I slept **all / whole / each** afternoon.
- 6.** You can pay by credit card in **every / none / most of** the shops.
- 7.** **None / Every / Nobody** of the students can do these exercises.
- 8.** **None / Every / Neither** of the two men could speak English.
- 9.** They have **all / everybody / each** gone home.
- 10.** Where are **the other / the others / another** two pairs of shoes?
- 11.** There isn't **another / else / other** train until tomorrow.
- 12.** What **other / else / another** would you like?
- 13.** I've got little **other / another / else** to say.

SENTENCE TRANSFORMATION (PET)

- 3.** Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando non più di tre parole.
1. These answers are both wrong. // Both wrong.
 2. All the prisoners have been released. // The prisoners released.
 3. All the rooms have a shower. // Every a shower.
 4. The children were all given a present. // Each child a present.
 5. These rings cost 300 Euros each. // Each 300 Euros.
 6. Both of them got up late. // They late.
 7. They all liked the film. // All the film.

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION (FCE)

- 4.** Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando da due a cinque parole compreso la parola fornita.
1. I didn't see anything strange in the park.
saw I in the park.
 2. Shall I hang this picture somewhere else?
other Shall I hang this picture place?
 3. Did you see a funny thing?
anything Did funny?
 4. There isn't anybody in the office.
nobody There office.
 5. They never go to any interesting places for their holidays.
anywhere They for their holidays.

★ A CAN / COULD

Confronta:

CAN + infinito senza <i>to</i> solo presente (anche con riferimento al futuro) e si usa per:	COULD + infinito senza <i>to</i> passato e condizionale di <i>can</i> e si usa per:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • esprimere capacità/abilità del presente <i>He can ski very well.</i> Lui sa sciare molto bene. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • esprimere capacità/abilità abituale del passato <i>At the age of four he could already ski very well.</i> A quattro anni sapeva già sciare molto bene.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • fare richieste (informale) <i>Can you pass me the salt, please?</i> Puoi passarmi il sale, per favore? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • fare richieste (formale) <i>Could you pass me the salt, please?</i> Mi potrebbe/Potresti passarmi il sale, per favore?
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • chiedere, dare, rifiutare il permesso (informale) <i>Mum, can I go to the concert on Saturday?</i> - No, you can't. Mamma, posso andare al concerto sabato? - No, non puoi. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • chiedere il permesso (formale = may) <i>Could (= May) I speak to Mr Turner, please?</i> - Yes, of course. Potrei parlare con Mr Turner, per favore? - Sì, certamente.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • esprimere permesso al presente <i>The children can stay up till 10.00.</i> I bambini possono stare alzati fino alle 10.00. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • esprimere permesso abituale del passato <i>When I was a child I could only stay up late on special occasions.</i> Quando ero piccolo potevo/mi era permesso stare alzato fino a tardi solo in occasioni speciali.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • esprimere una possibilità teorica <i>Winters here can be very cold.</i> Gli inverni qui possono essere molto freddi. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • esprime possibilità ipotetica <i>We could eat outside if the weather were good.</i> Potremmo mangiare fuori se il tempo fosse bello.

PRACTICE

1. Abbina le frasi alla funzione comunicativa che esprimono.

1. She can speak German well.
2. I could read and write before I went to school.
3. Could you give these papers to Mr Clark, please?
4. Can you lend me your dictionary, John?
5. He can win the match but he must train hard.
6. I could move that piece of furniture, if you helped me.
7. Mum, can I go out this afternoon?
8. Could I leave a message for Mrs Gorman?
9. When I was a teenager I could stay out late only on Saturday nights.

- a) capacità del presente
- b) richiesta formale
- c) permesso abituale nel passato
- d) richiesta informale
- e) possibilità ipotetica
- f) richiesta di permesso formale
- g) capacità del passato
- h) richiesta di permesso informale
- i) possibilità teorica

1 ...	2 ...
3 ...	4 ...
5 ...	6 ...
7 ...	8 ...
9 ...	

2. Completa i *mini-dialoghi* con *can*, *can't*, *could*, *couldn't* adeguatamente per esprimere *capacità*.

1. A: **Can** you swim?

B: No, I you swim when you were six?

A: No, I

2. A: you ride a bicycle?

B: Yes, I, but I drive a car. you drive a car?

A: Yes, I

B: you drive a car five years ago?

A: No, I

3. A: When I was six, I ski, but I ride a horse. Now I ride a horse very well. you ride a horse?

B: No, I, but I ski quite well. I ski when I was five.

3. Trasforma le frasi seguendo l'esempio.

➤ *The mouse was too fast for the cat to catch.*

The mouse was so fast that the cat couldn't catch it.

1. The soup was too salty for me to eat.

4. Those earrings were too expensive for

2. The test was too difficult for Paul to do.

- her to buy.

3. That suitcase was too heavy for me to carry.

5. The sea was too rough for us to have a swim.

6. The tea was too hot for him to drink.

4. Riordina le parole per fare *richieste*.

➤ *you / please / can / me / buy / a magazine / ? Can you buy me a magazine, please?*

1. can / me / you / lend / your camera / ?

2. please / pass / you / me / could / the pepper / ?

3. please / you / tell me / could / the way to the city-centre / ?

4. tell me / please / the time / could / you / ?

5. Completa le frasi con *can* oppure *could* per *fare richieste* in modo *informale* o *formale*, rivolgendoti alle persone indicate tra parentesi.

➤ (*your brother*) ***Can you give me my walkman back, please?***

1. (*the nurse*) Excuse me. you call the doctor, please?

2. (*your sister*) you buy me a CD when you go to the shopping-centre?

3. (*the shop assistant*) Excuse me. you tell me how much it is, please?

4. (*your mother*) Mum, you turn down the TV a bit?

6. Utilizza le parole fornite nel riquadro per *chiedere il permesso* in modo formale o informale nei luoghi e alle persone indicate.

*listen to your new CD - have a week off - turn on the TV -
borrow your dictionary - go out this afternoon*

➤ (*At home - your mum*) (*can I ..., please?*)

Can I go out this afternoon, please?

1. (*At school - your classmate*) (*can I ..., please?*)

2. (*At home - your brother*) (*can I ..., please?*)

3. (*At work - the manager*) (*could I ..., please?*)

4. (*At a friend's house - your friend*) (*can I ..., please?*)

TO BE ABLE + infinito con TO SI USA

• per esprimere **capacità** in tutti i tempi verbali. Sostituisce *can* nei tempi e nei modi in cui *can* non è grammaticalmente possibile. Osserva gli esempi con alcuni tempi verbali:

past simple	was/were able to	<i>We weren't able to open the door.</i> Non riuscimmo ad aprire la porta.
present perfect	have/has been able to	<i>She has never been able to learn German.</i> Non è mai riuscita ad imparare il tedesco.
past perfect	had been able to	<i>He had never been able to solve that problem.</i> Non era mai riuscito a risolvere quel problema.
future simple	will be able to	<i>Next month I will be able to drive a car.</i> Il mese prossimo sarò in grado di guidare la macchina.

Si possono trovare anche il *present simple* (*am/is/are able to*) al posto di *can* e il condizionale (*would be able to*) al posto di *could* ma si tratta di forme piuttosto enfatiche.

◆ could / was/were able to : contrasto

Sia **could** che **was/were able to** si usano per esprimere **capacità al passato** ma **confronta** il diverso uso:

SI USA

• **could** per parlare di **capacità/abilità abituale o permanente del passato** (in questo caso corrisponde all'imperfetto indicativo dell'italiano = sapevo)

• **was/were able to** per parlare di **capacità/abilità con riferimento ad un preciso momento/situazione del passato** (corrisponde al passato remoto o passato prossimo dell'italiano = riuscii, sono riuscito, fui in grado di, sono stato in grado di)

I could speak Spanish so I was able to understand and answer all his questions.

Sapevo parlare Spagnolo così fui in grado di capire e rispondere a tutte le sue domande.

Attenzione!!!

Ricorda che:

- **could** è sempre possibile nella **forma negativa** (**mancanza di capacità**) anche con riferimento ad un preciso momento/situazione del passato

I was so tired that I couldn't (o wasn't able to) reach the top of the mountain.

Ero così stanco che non riuscii a raggiungere la cima della montagna.

- si usa **could / couldn't** davanti ai **verbi di percezione** (*to see, to hear, to feel, ...*) e con i verbi *imagine, remember, understand*

I couldn't hear anything because there was too much noise.

Non riuscii a sentire nulla perché c'era troppo rumore.

Forme alternative indicanti capacità

to be capable of + forma in -ing	<i>He is capable of programming a computer.</i>
to know how + infinito con to	<i>He knows how to programme a computer.</i>
- Forme enfatiche con il significato di farcela, riuscire	
to manage + infinito con to	<i>I managed to translate that German letter.</i>
to succeed in + forma in -ing	<i>I succeeded in translating that German letter.</i>

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi con il tempo e la forma corretti di *to be able to*.

1. "(you) contact the travel agency?" "No, I've been very busy this morning."
2. The surgeon was very upset. He had done his best, but he (*not*) save the patient.
3. I (*not*) read that book so far, but I'm going to read it soon.
4. I'm sorry, but I (*not*) come to your party on Saturday evening. I'm meeting some American friends at 8.30.
5. I tried many times but I (*not*) open the door. The key was rusty.
6. "(she) register for the exam?" "Not yet."

2. Completa le frasi con la forma corretta di *could* o *was/were able to*. A volte entrambe le soluzioni sono possibili. Scrivile entrambe.

1. We got lost in the woods and we (*not*) find our way back.
2. "Did you find the book you were looking for? "Yes, it took a long time but in the end I find it."
3. When she was six she already speak two languages.
4. They didn't want to believe me at first but then I convince them that I was telling the truth.
5. They wanted to go to the theatre last night but they (*not*) find any seats.
6. Tom felt ill, but we (*not*) find a doctor.
7. When I entered into the kitchen I smell something burning.
8. The actors were good and the play was excellent. Unluckily I (*not*) see much because there was a very tall man sitting in front of me.

SENTENCE TRANSFORMATION (PET)

3. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbiano lo stesso significato della prima, usando non più di tre parole.

- *He managed to answer all the questions. // He was **able to answer** all the questions.*
1. He succeeded in persuading the publisher to publish his novel.
He managed publisher to publish his novel.
 2. Susan was able to lose some weight after a strict diet.
After a strict diet, to lose some weight.
 3. The detective managed to discover who the murderer was.
The detective discovering who the murderer was.
 4. Did you manage to get all your clothes into one suitcase?
Did getting all your clothes into one suitcase?

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION (FCE)

4. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando da due a cinque parole compresa la parola fornita.

- *We weren't able to start the car.*
succeed *We didn't succeed in starting the car.*
1. I was able to learn to drive.
managed I to drive.
 2. I didn't succeed in persuading him to come with us.
able I persuade him to come with us.
 3. A cheetah is capable of reaching the speed of over 95 km per hour.
can A cheetah of over 95 km per hour.
 4. Will they be able to find a new vaccine?
succeed Will they a new vaccine?

Confronta:

MAY + infinito senza <i>to</i> solo presente e si usa per: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • esprimere probabilità / possibilità del presente o del futuro <i>He may be late.</i> Può essere in ritardo. (È probabile che...) 	MIGHT + infinito senza <i>to</i> condizionale di <i>may</i> e si usa per: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • esprimere probabilità remota del presente o del futuro <i>He might be late.</i> Potrebbe essere in ritardo. (È probabile che...) 	Sia may che might possono essere usati per esprimere probabilità , ma con <i>might</i> la probabilità che l'azione/situazione si avveri è più remota. È difficile tuttavia stabilire esattamente il livello di probabilità per cui <i>may</i> e <i>might</i> si possono usare abbastanza indifferentemente.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • chiedere e dare il permesso (formale) <i>May (= Could) I sit here? - Of course (you may).</i> Posso sedermi qui? - Certamente. (<i>may not</i> di solito non viene usato per rifiutare il permesso perché considerato troppo scortese) <p>• esprimere proibizione/assenza di permesso formale <i>Visitors may not use this entrance.</i> I visitatori non possono/non hanno il permesso di usare questa entrata.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • chiedere il permesso (molto formale - uso raro) <i>Might I give you some advice?</i> Potrei darle un consiglio? 	<p>Per chiedere il permesso in modo formale si possono usare indifferentemente</p> <p>May I/we ...? o Could I/we ...? May I / Could I leave a message? Potrei lasciare un messaggio?</p>

Forme alternative indicanti **probabilità/improbabilità**

Per esprimere probabilità could può assumere un significato simile a might alla forma affermativa, ma non alla forma negativa. <i>He could come. = He might come.</i> Potrebbe venire. Ma: <i>He couldn't come.</i> Non è potuto venire. (<i>past simple</i>) <i>He might not come.</i> È probabile che non venga. (<i>improbabilità</i>)	Per esprimere probabilità/improbabilità si può usare anche: to be likely/unlikely che può avere 2 costruzioni : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - personale: sogg. + be likely/unlikely + infinito con <i>to</i> <i>He is likely/unlikely to agree.</i> - impersonale: it + be likely/unlikely that + frase <i>It is likely/unlikely that he would agree.</i> È probabile/improbabile che sarebbe d'accordo.
--	---

PRACTICE

1. Abbina le frasi alla funzione comunicativa che esprimono.

1. I may go, but I don't know if there are any tickets left.
2. He might arrive in time but I don't think he will.
3. May we borrow your camera tomorrow?
4. You may not use this lift.
5. Might I sit at your table?

- a) Probabilità remota
- b) Richiesta di permesso formale
- c) Proibizione/assenza di permesso
- d) Richiesta di permesso molto formale
- e) Probabilità

1 ...
2 ...
3 ...
4 ...
5 ...

2. Riscrivi le frasi usando *may* (*o might*) per esprimere probabilità.

- *Perhaps I will see Helen tomorrow. // I may (o might) see Helen tomorrow.*
1. Perhaps I will go to his party.
 2. Perhaps Jane will be late.
 3. Perhaps it will rain this afternoon.
 4. Perhaps we will go to the cinema.

3. Riscrivi le frasi usando *may* (*o might*), *may not* (*o might not*).

- *It's possible that we won't find any seats at the theatre.
We may not (o might not) find any seats at the theatre.*

1. My brother will probably leave for the USA.
2. Perhaps he won't get that job.
3. Maybe I'll wear my new jeans.
4. Perhaps they won't come.
5. He's likely to accept your suggestion.

4. Utilizza *may* (*o might*) e i suggerimenti forniti per rispondere adeguatamente alle domande.

*buy some chicken / go away for the weekend /
go to the south of France / go to the pub*

- *Where are you going for your holidays next summer?
I'm not sure yet. I may (o might) go to the south of France.*
1. What are you doing tonight? - I don't know yet. I
 2. What shall we have for dinner? - I haven't decided yet. I
 3. What are you doing on Sunday? - I don't know yet. I

5. Riscrivi le frasi usando *may* al posto di *could*, per chiedere il permesso *in modo formale* (le frasi si equivalgono).

- *Excuse me. Could I leave a message for Mr Johnson?
Excuse me. May I leave a message for Mr Johnson?*

1. Excuse me, Mr Thorpe. Could Bill and I go to the gym, please?
2. Excuse me. Could I speak to the manager, please?
3. Excuse me. Could I borrow your pen, please?
4. Excuse me, Mrs Green. Could I have the day off tomorrow?

6. Guarda i cartelli e descrivi ciò che non si può fare come nell'esempio (*proibizione formale*). Usa i verbi forniti in ordine sparso.

smoke / fish / enter / park

	➤ <i>You may not fish in this pool.</i>		1. You in here.
	2. You in this area.		3. You this area.

**TO BE ALLOWED + infinito con TO
SI USA**

- per esprimere "avere il permesso" in tutti i tempi e modi, anche in sostituzione di *can* e *may*. Osserva gli esempi con alcuni tempi verbali:

Present simple	am/is/are allowed to	<i>You are not allowed to smoke in here.</i> Qui non è permesso fumare.
Past simple	was/were allowed to	<i>We weren't allowed to play football.</i> Non ci fu permesso di giocare a pallone.
Present perfect	have/has been allowed to	<i>I've never been allowed to stay out late.</i> Non mi è mai stato permesso di stare fuori fino a tardi.
Past perfect	had been allowed to	<i>He had never been allowed to go on holiday with his friends.</i> Non aveva mai avuto il permesso di andare in vacanza con i suoi amici.
Future simple	will be allowed to	<i>Next year I will be allowed to go on holiday with my friends.</i> L'anno prossimo avrà il permesso di andare in vacanza con i miei amici.

◆ **could / was/were allowed to: contrasto**

Sia **could** che **was/were allowed to** esprimono **avere il permesso** al **past simple**, ma confronta il diverso uso:

SI USA

• could per parlare di permesso abituale del passato (corrisponde all'imperfetto italiano = potevo, avevo il permesso)	When I was a teenager I could (ma anche: I was allowed to) stay out to stay out late on special occasions. Quando ero adolescente potevo (avevo il permesso di) stare fuori fino a tardi in occasioni particolari.	• was/were allowed to di norma nel riferirsi ad un particolare permesso concesso in una particolare situazione del passato (corrisponde al passato remoto o passato prossimo dell'italiano = mi fu permesso, mi è stato permesso, ebbi il permesso) <i>On that occasion I was allowed to stay out late.</i> Non si dice: <i>On that occasion I could stay out late.</i> In quell'occasione mi fu permesso di stare fuori fino a tardi.
--	--	---

Attenzione!!!

Ricorda che:

- **could** è sempre possibile nella **forma negativa** (assenza di permesso/divieto) anche con riferimento ad una particolare situazione del passato
We couldn't / weren't allowed to pick flowers. Non ci fu permesso di raccogliere fiori.

Forme alternative indicanti permesso

• concedere il permesso to allow + compl. oggetto + infinito con to to permit + compl. oggetto + infinito con to to let + compl. oggetto + infinito senza to • avere il permesso to have permission + infinito con to to be permitted + infinito con to	<i>I won't allow John to use my car.</i> <i>They won't permit John to use their car.</i> <i>Let her use your car.</i> <i>They had permission to leave the country.</i> <i>They were permitted to leave the country.</i>
---	---

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi con il tempo e la forma corretti di *to be allowed to*.

➤ *When will I be allowed to get up, doctor?*

1. Excuse me. we take photographs in here?
2. The sign says we not park in this area.
3. I hope I go on holiday with my friends next summer.
4. So far I never go out alone in the evening.
5. She never go out with her friends on Saturday nights before she was eighteen.
6. After Alan passed his driving test, he use his father's car.

2. Completa le frasi con *may* o *to be allowed* nel tempo e nella forma corretti.

1. After Tom to smoke by his parents, he gave up the habit.
2. Excuse me. I borrow your newspaper for a second?
3. You not play with matches!
4. Grandpa is still quite ill. He not go outdoors until the winter is over.
5. Students not to enter this room.
6. Excuse me. we sit here?

3. Completa il brano con la forma corretta di *could* o *was/were allowed to*. A volte sono possibili due soluzioni corrette. Scrivile entrambe.

Bob Tiller was sent to prison for robbing a bank and for killing a man during the robbery. He was arrested and condemned to spend many years at Chitapeta Prison. His first year in prison was very hard. He 1) (*not*) have newspapers; he 2) (*not*) phone his parents or friends. He 3) (*not*) join the other prisoners in the open air and he 4) (*not*) even talk to them. Then one day, after one year in prison, he 5) phone his parents. A few weeks later he 6) join the other prisoners in the open air, but he 7) (*not*) talk to them. A few months later, his mother 8) go and visit him. Then Bob started to write short stories and a few years later he 9) publish his first book. Bob is still in prison, but his life is much better now.

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION (FCE)

4. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando da due a cinque parole compresa la parola fornita.
1. You may not smoke in here.
allowed You in here.
 2. The political prisoner was allowed to leave the country.
permission The political prisoner the country.
 3. We couldn't interview the pop star.
permitted We the pop star.
 4. I'm not allowed to go out after dinner.
let My parents after dinner.
 5. I was not allowed to use his car.
could I his car.

Grammar and practice

A. Must / Should / Ought to
B. To have to

C. Verbi semi-modali: need e dare
D. Altri modi per esprimere "dovere":
be to, be expected to, be supposed to

★ A MUST / SHOULD / OUGHT TO

Confronta:

MUST + infinito senza <i>to</i> solo presente (anche con riferimento al futuro) e si usa per:	SHOULD + infinito senza <i>to</i> esprime il condizionale di "dovere" e si usa per:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • esprimere obbligo/dovere/regola imposto da un'autorità esterna <i>In Great Britain you must drive on the left.</i> In Gran Bretagna si deve guidare sulla sinistra. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • dare (o chiedere) un consiglio/suggerimento <i>You should eat less.</i> Dovresti mangiare meno.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • esprimere obbligo morale sentito dal parlante <i>I must do my homework today.</i> Debbo fare i compiti oggi. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • esprimere un obbligo morale sentito dal parlante (meno forte che con "must") <i>I should do my homework today.</i> Dovrei fare i compiti oggi.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • esprimere deduzione logica (<i>in frase affermativa</i>) <i>The lights are off. They must be out.</i> Le luci sono spente. Debbono essere fuori. - ricorda: deduzione negativa: can't (vedi a PAG. 127) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • esprimere supposizione basata su deduzione logica <i>She lived in Germany for five years so she should speak German quite well.</i> Lei è vissuta in Germania per cinque anni quindi dovrebbe parlare tedesco piuttosto bene.
MUSTN'T si usa per: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • esprimere proibizione <i>You mustn't walk on the grass.</i> Non si deve calpestare l'erba. 	SHOULDN'T si usa per: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • dare un consiglio, fare un rimprovero <i>You shouldn't speak like that to your mother!</i> Non dovresti parlare così con tua madre.

Attenzione!!!

Non confondere **should** con **would** **have to**

vedi a PAG.

289

OUGHT + infinito con TO Esprime il condizionale di "dovere" ed ha un significato molto simile a "should".
<i>I ought to do my homework.</i> <i>You oughtn't to speak like that to your mother.</i> <i>Ought I to visit the cathedral?</i>

Confronta le forme più frequenti per dare un consiglio	
should +	infinito senza to
ought +	infinito con to
why don't you +	infinito senza to
had ('d) better +	infinito senza to
<i>You should take an aspirin.</i>	
<i>You ought to take an aspirin.</i>	} Dovresti...
<i>Why don't you take an aspirin?</i>	Perché non ...?
<i>You had ('d) better take an aspirin.</i>	Faresti meglio a ...

PRACTICE

1. Abbina le frasi alla funzione comunicativa che esprimono.

1. You must not feed the animals.
2. He must be eighteen.
3. You should put on a pullover.
4. I must help my mother today.
5. He should be able to drive by now.
6. You must stop at the junction.
7. You shouldn't eat so much chocolate!

- a) supposizione
- b) obbligo morale
- c) obbligo/regola
- d) deduzione logica
- e) consiglio
- f) rimprovero
- g) proibizione

1 ...
2 ...
3 ...
4 ...
5 ...
6 ...
7 ...

2. Completa le frasi con *must* o *should* adeguatamente (consiglio o obbligo/regola?).

- If you want to visit the USA, you...
- a) **must** get a passport.
 - b) **should** learn English.
1. If you want to drive a car on holiday in Great Britain you ...
a) drive on the left. b) get a road map of the country.
 2. When you play chess, you ...
a) think carefully before each move. b) move the pieces around the board.
 3. If you want to go to the theatre, you ...
a) buy a ticket. b) book in advance.
 4. If you want to go to university, you ...
a) think about your future career. b) pass the school-leaving exam.

3. Completa le frasi con *mustn't* o *shouldn't* (proibizione o consiglio/rimprovero?)

1. You smoke in hospitals. It's forbidden. **2.** This is a secret. You tell anybody. **3.** In Great Britain you drive on the right. **4.** You speak like that to your father! **5.** You walk on the grass. It's forbidden. **6.** You be late for appointments.

4. Completa le frasi con *should* + uno dei verbi forniti: stay / wear / go / see / clean / try

- When you play baseball, you **should** try to hit the ball with a bat as far as you can.
1. You look tired. You to bed early. **2.** You your teeth after every meal. **3.** What do you think I at John's party? A long dress or a mini-skirt? **4.** Where do you think we? At a camping site or at a hotel? **5.** It's a very good film. You it.

5. Scrivi delle frasi con *shouldn't* ... so ...

➤ *He works too hard.* **He shouldn't work so hard.**

1. She eats too much.
2. You play video games too often.
3. He watches TV too often.
4. Paul drinks too much.
5. She studies too much.
6. You go to bed too late.

6. Riscrivi le frasi dell'esercizio precedente usando *I think*, *I don't think*, come nell'esempio.

➤ **I think he works too hard.** / **I don't think he should work so hard.**

7. Completa le frasi alternative per *dare un consiglio*. Fai attenzione: infinito con *to* o senza *to*?

1. I think you should read this book. (a) You'd better ... / (b) You ought ...
2. You oughtn't to act like that. (a) You shouldn't ... / (b) You'd better not ...
3. She ought to drink less alcohol. (a) She should ... / (b) She'd better ...
4. You should go to the dentist's. (a) Why don't you ... / (b) You ought ...

**TO HAVE + infinito con TO
SI USA**

- per esprimere **dovere (obbligo / necessità)** in tutti i tempi e modi verbali. Sostituisce *must* nei tempi e modi in cui *must* non è grammaticalmente possibile.
Osserva gli esempi con alcuni tempi verbali:

Present simple	<i>I have to do my homework / I don't have to ... Do I have to ...? / Don't I have to ...?</i>
Past simple	<i>She had to tidy her room up. / She didn't have to ... Did she have to ...? / Didn't she have to ...?</i>
Present perfect	<i>She has had to buy a new car. / She hasn't had to ... Has she had to ...? / Hasn't she had to ...?</i>
Past perfect	<i>They had had to leave immediately. / They hadn't had to ... Had they had to ...? / Hadn't they had to ...?</i>
Future simple	<i>They will have to improve their English. / They won't have to ... Will they have to ...? / Won't they have to ...?</i>

Forme alternative per esprimere obbligo e necessità

to be compelled + infinito con to	<i>She didn't work accurately so she was compelled/obliged to resign.</i>
to be obliged + infinito con to	

◆ **must / have to: contrasto**

Sia **must** che **have to** esprimono **dovere** ma ricorda che:

- **must** si coniuga solo al presente
- nella **forma affermativa del present simple**, **must** e **have to** (o **have got to**) esprimono un significato molto simile quindi possono essere usati abbastanza indifferentemente.
I must do my homework./ I have ('ve got) to do my homework.
Debbo fare i compiti.
- nella **forma negativa del present simple** invece la differenza è sostanziale:

SI USA



MUSTN'T	DON'T / DOESN'T HAVE TO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • per esprimere divieto/proibizione <i>You mustn't phone him.</i> Non devi telefonargli. (te lo proibisco) <p>Forme alternative a mustn't: <i>it is forbidden, it is prohibited it is not permitted am / is / are not allowed can't, may not</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • per esprimere mancanza di obbligo o di necessità <i>You don't have to phone him. I have already done it.</i> Non devi telefonargli (non è necessario che ...). L'ho già fatto io. <p>Forme alternative a don't/doesn't have to: <i>it is not necessary (for you / him / her) to, you needn't</i></p>
<p>Per esprimere divieto/proibizione al passato si usano: <i>it was forbidden/prohibited, wasn't / weren't permitted, wasn't/weren't allowed, couldn't</i></p>	<p>Per esprimere mancanza di obbligo o di necessità al passato si usa: <i>didn't have to, didn't need to o needn't have to</i></p>

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi con la forma corretta del *present simple*, *past simple*, *future simple* di *to have to* seguita dall'infinito dei verbi tra parentesi.

- *My furniture was so old that I (refurnish) **had to refurbish** the whole flat.*
1. (*English students / wear*) a uniform ?
 2. (*you / go*) to London last week?
 3. (*I / sign*) all these papers?
 4. I'm afraid the restaurant round the corner (*close*) down soon. It's always empty.
 5. I'm sorry I can't come with you next Sunday. My parents are going away for the weekend so I (*baby-sit*)
 6. "Why (*they / call off*) the meeting last week?" "Because the manager was ill."
 7. I wonder if James (*study*) till late tomorrow.
 8. Yesterday it was a bank holiday, so we (*not / go*) to school.

2. Completa le frasi con la forma corretta del *past simple*, *present perfect* o *past perfect* di *to have to* seguita dall'infinito dei verbi tra parentesi.

1. Susan is so well off. Up to now she (*never / work*) to earn her living.
2. Mary hates cooking. Nevertheless she (*cook*) every day since she went to live on her own.
3. I (*ask*) Dad for money because I really needed it.
4. The flight was direct. We (*not / stop*) in Milan.
5. So far neither of my children (*repeat*) a school year.
6. He was very worried and scared. It was the first time that he (*undergo*)
..... an operation.

3. Completa le domande utilizzando il verbo *to have to* al tempo corretto.

- A: *I had to work at the weekend too.*
B: **Why did you have to work at the weekend too?**
1. A: I'll have to complain to the manager.
B: Sorry, who
 2. A: My feet hurt so badly that I had to take my shoes off.
B: Sorry, why
 3. A: Martha has to join a gym if she wants to keep fit.
B: Sorry, what
 4. A: They will have to be here at 8 o'clock tomorrow.
B: Why
 5. A: We had to pay a lot of money for this new computer.
B: How much
 6. A: We had to stay in last night.
B: Why
 7. A: Patrick had to lose twenty kilos if he wanted to feel better.
B: Sorry, how many kilos
 8. A: Mary has had to study hard since she started high school.
B: Sorry, who

- 4.** Completa il dialogo fra Peter e David, con la forma ed il tempo corretto di *to have to* seguito dall'infinito dei verbi tra parentesi.

Situazione: Peter ha trovato un lavoro serale. (P = Peter; D = David)

P: I've found a job in a restaurant to earn some extra money. I work in the evening. I 0) (*not / work*) **don't have to work** during the day, so I can study and prepare for my exams.

D: What time 1) (*you / start*) working?

P: At 6 p.m. and I 2) (*stay*) there till 11 p.m.

D: What exactly 3) (*you / do*)

P: I'm a waiter, so I 4) (*serve*) at tables.
I also 5) (*clear*) the tables after the customers have gone away, but I 6) (*not / wash*) the dishes.

D: 7) (*you / know*) all the dishes on the menu?

P: Yes, I do. You know, sometimes customers ask questions about the dishes. But there aren't many dishes, fortunately. And there aren't many customers either. It's a small restaurant.

- 5.** Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

1. You **don't have to / mustn't** drive on the right in Great Britain.
2. She **mustn't / doesn't have to** get up early. The train leaves at 11.30.
3. You **don't have to / mustn't** tell Bob we've bought him a present. It's a surprise.
4. Remember that you **don't have to / mustn't** feed the animals in a zoo.
5. We **mustn't / don't have to** hurry. We aren't late.
6. We **don't have to / mustn't** book a table at that pizzeria. There's always plenty of room.
7. You **don't have to / mustn't** tell anyone. It's a secret.
8. We must hurry. We **mustn't / don't have to** keep her waiting.

- 6.** Sostituisci le parti sottolineate con *you must*, *you mustn't* o *you don't have to*.

1. It is not permitted to walk on the grass.

.....

2. It is forbidden to park your car here.

.....

3. It isn't necessary for you to come along if you don't want to.

.....

4. You aren't obliged to be here at 8 o'clock.

.....

5. You are obliged to be at work at seven o'clock in the morning.

.....

6. It is forbidden to take photos in a museum.

.....

7. It is your duty to keep your class clean.

.....

8. You aren't allowed to eat or drink in class.

.....

SENTENCE TRANSFORMATION (PET)

7. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando non più di tre parole.
- *We aren't obliged to work on Saturdays.*
We don't have to work on Saturdays.
1. Is it necessary for you to get up early?
Do you up early?
 2. Their car was broken so they were obliged to travel by train.
They by train because their car was broken.
 3. It won't be necessary for you to buy any special equipment for the excursion.
You won't any special equipment for the excursion.
 4. She lost some important documents so she was compelled to resign.
She resign because she lost some important documents.
 5. Are we really obliged to postpone the meeting?
Do we really the meeting?
 6. We got up early so it wasn't necessary to hurry.
We got up early so we to hurry.

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION (FCE)

8. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando da due a cinque parole compresa la parola fornita.
- *Is it necessary for us to stop in Manchester?*
have *Do we have to stop in Manchester?*
1. They were obliged to work long hours.
compelled They long hours.
 2. It isn't necessary for you to come along if you don't want to.
have You along if you don't want to.
 3. It is forbidden to cross the railway lines.
not You lines.
 4. It is your duty to protect the environment.
must You environment.
 5. It is not permitted to lean out of the window.
must You the window.
 6. It's a holiday today. We don't have to pay for parking.
necessary It's a holiday today. It for parking.
 7. Is it essential for her to do all the exercises today?
have Does she the exercises today?
 8. You aren't allowed to use a dictionary during the exam.
must You a dictionary during the exam.
 9. She had to work on Sundays.
obliged She on Sundays.
 10. If I go to New Zealand will it be necessary for me to be vaccinated?
have If I go to New Zealand, will vaccinated?

★ C VERBI SEMI-MODALI: NEED e DARE

NEED

(aver bisogno di, essere necessario)

- Esprime **necessità**. E' un verbo semi-modale. Può infatti comportarsi come **verbo modale** o come **verbo ordinario**, a seconda dei casi.

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Si comporta come verbo ordinario - quando è seguito da oggetto - nella forma affermativa e nella forma interrogativa, quando è seguito da verbo 	<p><i>We need some apples.</i> Abbiamo bisogno di alcune mele. <i>We don't need any apples.</i> Non abbiamo bisogno di mele. <i>Do we need any apples?</i> Abbiamo bisogno di mele?</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Può comportarsi come verbo modale - nella forma negativa del presente needn't + infinito senza to (è possibile anche la forma non modale soprattutto quando si parla di necessità abituali) 	<p><i>We needn't be there by 8 o'clock.</i> (ma anche: <i>We don't need to be there by 8 o'clock</i>) Non dobbiamo essere/Non è necessario che siamo là per le 8.00.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Al passato si comporta di norma come un verbo ordinario 	<p><i>We needed to go to the bank.</i> Abbiamo dovuto/Abbiamo avuto bisogno di andare in banca. <i>Did you need to go to the bank?</i> Hai dovuto / Hai avuto bisogno di andare in banca? <i>We didn't need to go to the bank.</i> Non abbiamo dovuto/Non è stato necessario andare in banca.</p>
<p>Attenzione!!!</p> <p>Esiste anche la costruzione come verbo modale con riferimento al passato needn't have + participio passato per indicare che un'azione compiuta non era affatto necessaria (vedi verbi modali con riferimento al passato a PAG. 296 - 297)</p>	<p><i>You needn't have gone to the bank. We've got enough money.</i> Non era necessario che tu andassi in banca. Abbiamo abbastanza danaro.</p>

Attenzione!!!

Non confondere	Mancanza di necessità	Proibizione
	needn't (o don't need to) = don't have to = it isn't necessary for ... to ...	mustn't = aren't allowed to = it's forbidden/prohibited to

DARE

(osare, avere il coraggio di)

È normalmente usato come verbo ordinario.

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Può comportarsi come verbo modale nella forma interrogativa e negativa del presente. <p>Ricorda le espressioni: <i>I daresay</i> (= oserei dire) <i>Don't you dare + forma base</i> (= non osare ...)</p>	<p><i>How dare you speak to me like that ?</i> Come osi parlarmi così? <i>I daren't speak</i> (ma anche: <i>I don't dare to speak</i>) <i>to him about that.</i> Non osso parlargli di quella cosa. <i>I daresay he's wrong.</i> Oserei dire che ha torto. <i>Don't you dare speak to me like that.</i> Non osare parlarmi così.</p>
--	---

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi con il verbo *to need* nella forma corretta. Usa *need* come verbo modale (*needn't*) quando è possibile.

1. "Do we have to finish this work today?" "No, we finish it today.
We can finish it tomorrow."
2. My little son David a new pair of jeans. I'm going to buy him a pair this afternoon.
3. "Shall I type these letters now? "No, you type them now.
You can type them tomorrow morning."
4. We to have some more information about flights to New York.
5. (*I*) a visa to visit Australia?
6. "(*she*) our help?" "No, she doesn't."

2. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta. (Rifletti: proibizione o mancanza di necessità?)

1. You **needn't / mustn't** touch electrical appliances when your hands are wet.
2. We **mustn't / needn't** buy that video game. We can borrow David's.
3. You **needn't / mustn't** go to the bank. I can lend you some money.
4. You **mustn't / needn't** shout in the library.
5. You **mustn't / needn't** smoke in this building.
6. You **needn't / mustn't** swim in this river as the water is polluted.

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION (FCE)

3. Trasforma le frasi in modo tale che abbiano lo stesso significato usando da due a cinque parole compresa la parola fornita.

1. You don't have to buy any special equipment for the excursion.
need You any special equipment for the excursion.
2. It is not necessary for Susan to renew her passport.
need Susan her passport.
3. You needn't come to the shops with us if you don't want to.
have You to the shops with us if you don't want to.
4. It was not necessary to wash the dishes. Jane has a dishwasher.
washed You the dishes. Jane has a dishwasher.
5. Do we have to see him?
need Do him?
6. It is prohibited to enter this area.
must You this area.
7. It was not necessary to water the plants.
need We the plants.

4. Completa le frasi con *dares*, *dare*, *daren't*.

1. Don't you tell my parents what I've told you. 2. I walk all alone at night. 3. Don't you do that again. 4. I go there all by myself. 5. I didn't to ask for more money. 6. How you treat me like that? 7. Betty is very brave. She to walk all alone in such a dangerous area of the city.

**D**

ALTRI MODI PER ESPRIMERE "DOVERE"

be to, be expected to, be supposed to

BE TO si usa

al **presente (is/are to)** per:

- esprimere **obbligo** o **divieto** spesso imposto da un'autorità impersonale (= *must / mustn't*)
- parlare di un **evento futuro prestabilito**

al **passato (was/were to)** per:

- esprimere **obbligo** o **divieto** (che non è stato rispettato)

- parlare di **azioni programmate** che sarebbero dovute accadere in un tempo successivo (futuro nel passato)

The goods are to be (= must be) delivered today.

Le merci debbono essere consegnate oggi.

The students are to assemble (= will assemble) in the hall at 9.00 am.

Gli studenti si debbono riunire nel salone alle 9.00.

The hostages were to be released on Friday, but they weren't.

Gli ostaggi dovevano (avrebbero dovuto) venir rilasciati venerdì, ma non è accaduto.

The excursion was to start (= would start) the following day.

L'escursione doveva (avrebbe dovuto) iniziare il giorno seguente.

BE EXPECTED TO si usa:

- per esprimere un **obbligo** che non dipende dalla volontà di chi parla (ha un significato simile a *have to*)
- al **negativo** per esprimere **mancanza di necessità** (ha un significato molto simile a *don't have to*)

- Può anche significare "**aspettarsi, prevedere**" che qualcosa avvenga/non avvenga

I'm expected to serve (= I have to serve) the customers.

Debbo servire i clienti.

I'm not expected to clear (= I don't have to clear) the tables.

Non debbo sparcchiare i tavoli.

I wasn't expected to clear (= I didn't have to clear) the tables, but sometimes I did.

Non dovevo sparcchiare i tavoli, ma qualche volta lo facevo.

He is expected to win the race.

Si prevede che lui vinca la gara.

BE SUPPOSED TO si usa:

- per esprimere ciò che si dovrebbe/non si dovrebbe fare (spesso secondo leggi o regolamenti che non sempre sono rispettati)

- al **negativo** per esprimere **divieto/proibizione** (ha un significato simile a *mustn't, cannot, are not allowed to*)

- Viene inoltre usato con il significato letterale di "**supporre**", "**ritenere che**"

What are you doing here? Aren't you supposed to be at work at this time?

Che cosa fai qui? Non dovresti essere al lavoro a quest'ora?

George was supposed to phone me, but he didn't.

George doveva (avrebbe dovuto) telefonarmi ma non lo ha fatto.

We are not supposed to chew gum in class.

Non dobbiamo masticare la gomma in classe.

Apples are supposed to be good for your health.

Si ritiene che le mele facciano bene alla salute.

PRACTICE

1. Sostituisci adeguatamente le parole sottolineate usando la forma corretta di *be to* (al presente o al passato). Effettua tutti i cambiamenti necessari.

➤ *The ship must sail on October 25th. // The ship is to sail on October 25th.*

1. Visitors must not park their car in front of the main entrance.
2. The newspapers must be delivered every day.
3. All the class teachers will meet the students at 10.00 in the staff room.
4. Who could imagine that he would win the championship?
5. The agreement will be signed on Monday.
6. We didn't think we would not see him again.

2. Riscrivi le frasi usando *are not expected to* o *are not supposed to*, come negli esempi (Rifletti: mancanza di necessità o divieto?).

The teacher	The students
➤ <i>You don't have to learn the poem by heart.</i>	<i>We are not expected to learn the poem by heart.</i>
➤ <i>You mustn't cheat in tests.</i>	<i>We are not supposed to cheat in tests.</i>
1. You mustn't talk during the lessons.
2. You don't have to write down everything.
3. You mustn't chew gum in class.
4. You don't have to study all the chapter.

3. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

1. Muslims **are not supposed / are not expected** to eat pork.
2. Those kids **were not expected / were not supposed** to play there.
3. When I was at the boarding school I **wasn't expected / wasn't supposed** to leave the school building without permission.
4. Jogging **is supposed / is expected** to be good for your health.
5. What are doing here? **Aren't you expected / Aren't you supposed** to be at school at this time?
6. Tom **was supposed / was expected** to phone me but he didn't.

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION (FCE)

4. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando da due a cinque parole compreso la parola fornita.

1. We are expected to attend the meeting.
have We the meeting.
2. I wasn't expected to work in the evening.
have I in the evening.
3. Patients cannot leave the ward without permission.
supposed Patients the ward without permission.
4. We didn't have to wash the dishes.
expected We the dishes.
5. The hostages are to be released tomorrow.
must The hostages tomorrow.

Grammar and practice

A. Present conditional | B. Periodo ipotetico di 2° tipo | C. Should / Would have to

★ A PRESENT CONDITIONAL

Forma

Affermativa	sogg. + would ('d) + forma base
Negativa	sogg. + would not (wouldn't) + forma base
Interrogativa	would + sogg. + forma base?
Interrogativo-negativa	wouldn't + sogg. + forma base?
Risposte brevi	Yes, sogg. + would / No, sogg. + wouldn't

*A black top would go well with this skirt.
 A black top wouldn't go well with this skirt.
 Would a black top go well with this skirt?
 Wouldn't a black top go well with this skirt?
 Yes, it would. / No, it wouldn't.*

Frase	Question tag (vero? / non è vero?)
Affermativa <i>You would buy it at that price, Lo compreresti a quel prezzo,</i>	wouldn't + sogg. ? <i>wouldn't you?</i> vero?
Negativa <i>You wouldn't buy it at that price, Non lo compreresti a quel prezzo,</i>	would + sogg. ? <i>would you?</i> vero?

Uso

Il **present conditional** (condizionale presente) si usa per:

• fare una richiesta in modo cortese (nota l'uso della forma in <i>-ing</i> dopo il verbo mind)	<i>Would you help me clean the kitchen?</i> Mi aiuteresti a pulire la cucina? <i>Would you mind helping me?</i> Ti dispiacerebbe aiutarmi?
• esprimere un desiderio, offrire qualcosa e fare un invito in modo cortese con il verbo like	<i>I would ('d) really like to buy a new car.</i> Vorrei veramente comperare una nuova macchina. <i>Would you like a cup of coffee?</i> Vorresti una tazza di caffè? <i>Would you like to go to the cinema tonight?</i> Vorresti andare al cinema questa sera?
• esprimere preferenza con il verbo prefer	<i>I'd prefer to go to bed early tonight, if you don't mind.</i> Preferirei andare a letto presto questa sera, se non ti dispiace.
• esprimere un' ipotesi (vedi anche periodo ipotetico di 2° tipo a PAG. 286)	<i>They would ('d) be very pleased to see you. (sottinteso: if you came).</i> Sarebbero molto contenti di vederti (sottinteso: se tu venissi).
• esprimere l'idea del futuro nel passato nel discorso indiretto In questo caso in italiano si usa il condizionale passato. (vedi a PAG. 333)	<i>He said he would come.</i> Disse che sarebbe venuto.

Esiste anche la **forma progressiva**
Sogg. + **would** + **be** + forma in *-ing*
- solo **con i verbi di azione** e per lo più nel periodo ipotetico.

I would be driving a car now, if I had passed the driving licence exam.
Guiderei la macchina ora, se avessi superato l'esame di guida.

PRACTICE

1. Trasforma le frasi nella forma indicata tra parentesi.

- *He would stop working. (interr.)* **Would he stop working?**
1. He would change his mind. (interr-neg.)
 2. They wouldn't ask us for help. (aff.)
 3. Would they let us know their decision? (inter.neg.)
 4. Mary would invite us to her party. (interr.)
 5. Paul would buy that car. (neg.)
 6. He would be free. (interr.)
 7. They would pass their exams. (neg.)
 8. He would pick me up. (interr.)

2. Rispondi con *risposte brevi*.

1. Would he win easily? - Yes,
2. Would she tell me the truth? - No,
3. Would they like to visit the Louvre? - Yes,
4. Would you tell a secret? - No,
5. Would you help a friend in need? - Yes,

3. Aggiungi in coda a ciascuna frase la *question tag* corretta.

1. She would never do a thing like that,?
2. He wouldn't buy that car at that price,?
3. She wouldn't lie to me,?
4. It would take less time,?
5. You would come if you could,?

4. Completa le frasi con la forma corretta del *present conditional* dei verbi tra parentesi.

1. (*she / like*) ...Would she like..... to meet our American friends?
2. James (*not / like*) ...Wouldn't like..... to wait too long.
3. He (*like*) ...Would like..... to buy this car, but it's too expensive.
4. I think he (*be*) ...Would be..... humiliated.
5. (*you / like*) ...Would you like..... something to drink?
6. “Do you think they (*like*) ...Would like..... to go to the cinema?” “No, I don't think they would. I think they (*prefer*) ...Would prefer..... to go to the concert.”
7. I (*not / drive*) ...Wouldn't drive..... to Scotland . I (*go*) ...Would..... by train.
8. (*you / pass*) ...Would you pass..... me the salt, please? - Of course. Here you are.
9. (*it / not / be*) ...Wouldn't it be..... better to visit the zoo first?
10. A dog (*be*) ...Would be..... the best pet for Jane.
11. (*you / mind*) ...Would you mind..... closing the door, please?
12. Don't tell her. I'm sure she (*be*) ...Would be..... furious.
13. Tom promised he (*call*) ...Would call..... in the afternoon.
14. Jane announced she (*have*) ...Would have..... a baby soon.
15. (*you / be able*) ...Would you be able..... to lift that big stone?
16. (*you / be allowed*) ...Would you be allowed..... to go on holiday with your friends?

★ B PERIODO IPOTETICO DI 2° TIPO

Forma

Frase subordinata	Frase principale	
If + past simple <i>If she took a taxi,</i> Se lei prendesse un taxi	present conditional (would + forma base) <i>she would arrive on time.</i> arriverebbe puntuale.	La subordinata può precedere o seguire la principale. <i>She would arrive on time if she took a taxi.</i>

Uso

Il periodo ipotetico di 2° tipo si usa: • per parlare di situazioni immaginarie o formulare ipotesi con scarsa possibilità di realizzazione <i>If you stopped smoking, you would feel better.</i> Se tu smetessi di fumare ti sentiresti meglio.	La struttura <i>If I were you, I would/wouldn't ...</i> si usa per dare consigli <i>If I were you, I would ('d) lie down.</i> Se fossi in te mi sdraierei. (*Nella frase introdotta da <i>if</i> il verbo <i>to be</i> è were anche per la 1a e la 3a persona singolare. Nell'inglese informale si può usare anche was per la 1a e la 3a persona singolare)
---	---

Forme verbali alternative	
Nella frase principale si possono trovare i modali could , might , should al posto di <i>would</i> a seconda di ciò che si vuole esprimere.	<i>If he had time, he could/might give you a lift to the station.</i> Se avesse tempo, potrebbe darti un passaggio. <i>If she had the courage, she should tell him the truth.</i> Se avesse il coraggio, dovrebbe dirgli la verità.
Nella frase subordinata si possono trovare could , should (come congiuntivi).	<i>If he couldn't come, he would let us know</i> Se non potesse venire, ce lo farebbe sapere. <i>If you should decide to come, I would be very pleased.</i> Se tu dovessi decidere di venire, ne sarei molto lieto.
Sia nella frase principale che nella subordinata si possono utilizzare le forme progressive .	<i>If they were sleeping, I wouldn't wake them up.</i> Se stessero dormendo, non li sveglierei. <i>If the weather were better, I would be lying on the beach now.</i> Se il tempo fosse migliore, ora sarei sdraiata sulla spiaggia.

PRACTICE

1. Completa i periodi ipotetici di 2° tipo con il *past simple* e il *present conditional*.
1. If I (be) you, I (eat) less.
 2. If Jane (not / be) too lazy, she (get) better marks at school.
 3. Peter (go) to that concert if he (have) the ticket.
 4. I (take) a taxi if there (be) a bus strike.
 5. Tom (help) help me if he (be) here.
 6. (you / tell) you tell her the thruth, if you (be) me?
 7. He (feel) feel much better if he (not / work) so hard.
 8. If I (go) on holiday at a seaside resort, I (not / choose) choose the Bahamas. They're too expensive.

- 2.** Rispondi alle domande usando le forme verbali del *periodo ipotetico di 2° tipo*, come nell'esempio.

➤ *What would you do if you won the lottery? (give part of the money to charity)*

If I won the lottery, I would give part of the money to charity.

What would you do if...

1. you saw a Martian? (*try to communicate with him*) if I saw a martian i would try to communicate with him
2. you went to the USA? (*visit New York*) if I went to the USA i would visit New York
3. you had a new job? (*work hard*) if I had a new job i would work hard
4. you found a wallet? (*take it to the police*) if I found a wallet I would take it to the police
5. you knew Japanese? (*do translations*) if I knew japanese i would do translation

- 3.** Rispondi al questionario. Metti un ✓ su una delle caselle (a, b, c). Poi scrivi frasi su di te seguendo l'esempio.

➤ *I think I'm honest / I don't think I'm honest because if I found a wallet full of money in the street I would ...*

What sort of person are you?

★ Are you honest? What would you do if you found a wallet full of money in the street?



a) Would you give it to the police?



b) Would you keep it and think that it's been a lucky day?



c) Would you put it into a mail box?



★ Are you generous? What would you do if you won a lottery?



a) Would you keep all the money for yourself?



b) Would you give part of it to charity?



c) Would you give it all to the poor?



★ Are you practical? What would you do if you saw an accident in the street?



a) Would you call an ambulance?



b) Would you ask if there is a doctor around?



c) Would you drive the injured people to hospital yourself?



★ Are you jealous? What would you do if you saw your girlfriend / boyfriend with another boy / girl?



a) Would you think "He / She is just a friend"?



b) Would you be desperate and think he / she is going to leave you for somebody else?



c) Would you be angry?



★ Are you a good friend? What would you do if one of your friends had problems?



a) Would you try to talk about them and help him find a solution?



b) Would you try to spend more time with him / her?



c) Would you try not to see him / her thinking that he / she is too boring?



- 4.** Dai consigli ad un amico, come nell'esempio.

➤ *Where should I go on holiday? (Greece) If I were you, I'd go to Greece.*

1. How should I travel? (*by plane*)
2. Where should I stay? (*in hotels*)
3. What should I see while I'm there? (*visit Athens*)
4. What else should I do? (*relax on the beach*)

5. Replica alle affermazioni seguendo l'esempio.

➤ *I'd like to go to Spain* *I wouldn't go to Spain if I were you.*

1. Maybe I'll go by plane.
2. We might stay at a hotel.
3. We'll come back by train.
4. We're taking a lot of money with us.

6. Leggi la lettera che Mary ha scritto ad una rivista per chiedere consiglio su come comportarsi. Poi leggi la risposta che la rivista ha scritto e completala con i verbi tra parentesi al *past simple* o *present conditional*.

HELP!

If you need advice about a problem, don't suffer in silence!

Write to Becky Green at Sneak,

Mapping House, 4 Winsley Street, London W1W BHF,
or e-mail us at sneakmail@emap.com

Dear Becky,

I'm sixteen years old and I've got a boyfriend who has had some problems with the police for shoplifting. I know he isn't bad. He has done that because he's unhappy.

His parents are divorced. He has changed since we met and has promised it won't happen again. I want to help him but my parents don't want me to go out with him. I'm not even allowed to see him now. We want to get married and are thinking of running away and getting married secretly. I feel so confused sometimes. Can you please tell me what to do?

Jennifer.

Dear Jennifer,

If 1) (*be*) you 1) (*try*) to discuss the problem with your parents again. If you 3) (*can*) show your parents how much you love him and if your boyfriend 4) (*can*) show that he has really changed, I'm sure your parents 5) (*agree*) to let you see him again. However, I think you are too young to get married and if your parents 6) (*know*) you're thinking of getting married secretly, they 7) (*be*) very worried. If 18) (*be*) you, 19) (*wait*) a few more years. You might find out he is not the man of your dreams.

Becky Green

7. Abbina correttamente le frasi.

1. *If I were Paul,*
2. *If he were more determined,*
3. *If I knew her address,*
4. *If I should change job,*
5. *If they could,*
6. *If my car broke down,*
7. *If they were still speaking,*

- a) I couldn't afford to buy a new one.
- b) I'd look for a job in the catering.
- c) they would help us.
- d) I wouldn't interrupt them.
- e) he could get whatever he wants.
- f) *I'd see a doctor.*
- g) I'd give it to you.

1 f
2 ...
3 ...
4 ...
5 ...
6 ...
7 ...

★ C SHOULD / WOULD HAVE TO

Sia **should** che **would have to** rendono il condizionale dell'italiano **dovere**, ma confronta il diverso uso.

SI USA

should + infinito senza *to*

- per esprimere **consiglio, rimprovero, supposizione, dovere morale**

You should eat less.

Dovresti mangiare meno.

They should still be on holiday, shouldn't they?

Dovrebbero essere ancora in vacanza, vero?

I should help my mother today.

Dovrei aiutare mia madre oggi.

would have + infinito con *to*

- per esprimere **obbligo/necessità**

If his father were promoted, he would have to move down to London.

Se suo padre ottenesse una promozione, dovrebbe trasferirsi a Londra.

PRACTICE

1. Abbina le frasi adeguatamente.

1. I think you should apologize
2. If they all came,
3. If we went on a camping-holiday,
4. They should build more day nurseries,
5. If they increased grants for university students,

- a) they would have to increase taxes too.
- b) as they promised during the electoral campaign.
- c) if you arrived late.
- d) I would have to cook for an army.
- e) we would have to sleep in an uncomfortable tent.

1 ...
2 ...
3 ...
4 ...
5 ...

2. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

1. I'm in trouble. What **should I / would I have to** do?
2. I think she **would have to / should** visit Sydney when she goes to Australia.
3. If I married George, I **would have to / should** move to New Zealand.
4. If you want more customers in your boutique, you **should / would have to** have more fashionable things.
5. Where do you think I **would have to / should** spend my summer holidays?
6. We **wouldn't have to / shouldn't** sleep in a hotel if Mary could put us up.

3. Completa le frasi con le espressioni fornite in ordine sparso.

shouldn't go out / would have to have / should warn / would have to change / should check / would have to rent

- *If there were more than five of us, we **would have to rent** a mini-bus.*
1. You Brian about Pamela. She's such a silly girl!
 2. If George damaged his knee, he physiotherapy.
 3. You the oil level and the battery before you leave for a long trip.
 4. You when you have a bad cold.
 5. If Tom didn't get better, we our plans.

Grammar and practice

A. Perfect conditional
(condizionale passato)B. Periodo ipotetico di 3° tipo
C. Periodi ipotetici a confronto
- Inversione

D Forme composte con i modali (riferimento al passato)

★★ A PERFECT CONDITIONAL

Forma

Affermativa	sogg. + would have + participio passato
Negativa	sogg. + would not (wouldn't) have + participio passato
Interrogativa	would + sogg. + have + participio passato?
Interrogativo-negativa	wouldn't + sogg. + have + participio passato?
Risposte brevi	Yes, sogg. + would / No, sogg. + wouldn't

*She would have told you all about it.
She wouldn't have told you all about it.
Would she have told you all about it?
Wouldn't she have told you all about it?
Yes, she would. / No, she wouldn't.*

Frase	Question tag (vero? / non è vero?)
Affermativa <i>They would have stayed the night, Sarebbero rimasti la notte,</i>	wouldn't + sogg.? <i>wouldn't they?</i> vero?
Negativa <i>They wouldn't have stayed the night, Non sarebbero rimasti la notte,</i>	would + sogg.? <i>would they?</i> vero?

Uso

Il perfect conditional (condizionale passato) si usa:

• per esprimere una possibilità che non si è realizzata nel passato	<i>Robert would have got a better job, but his English wasn't good enough.</i> Robert avrebbe ottenuto un lavoro migliore, ma il suo inglese non era abbastanza buono.
• per parlare di desideri che non si sono realizzati (con il verbo <i>like</i>)	<i>She would have liked to go out last night.</i> Le sarebbe piaciuto uscire ieri sera.
• nel periodo ipotetico di 3° tipo vedi a PAG. 292	<i>He would have accepted that job if it had been well paid.</i> Avrebbe accettato quel lavoro se fosse stato ben pagato.
• nel discorso indiretto per parlare di un'azione che avrebbe dovuto verificarsi in un tempo successivo rispetto al tempo passato di riferimento, ma che non si è verificata	<i>He promised he would have called me (but he didn't).</i> Promise che mi avrebbe telefonato (ma non lo ha fatto).

Esiste anche la **forma progressiva**
perfect conditional continuous

Sogg. + **would have + been + -forma in -ing**
- Si usa solo **con i verbi di azione** e per lo più nelle frasi ipotetiche di 3° tipo per parlare di un'azione che sarebbe stata in corso di svolgimento nel passato se si fosse verificata una certa condizione.

If the weather had been better, I would have been lying on the beach.
Se il tempo fosse stato migliore, sarei stata sdraiata sulla spiaggia.

PRACTICE

1. Trasforma le frasi nella forma indicata tra parentesi seguendo l'esempio.
- *She would have enjoyed the show. (interr.) Would she have enjoyed the show?*
1. They would have followed my advice. (*neg.*)
 2. She wouldn't have written. (*interr.-neg.*)
 3. Would he have stayed at a campsite? (*aff.*)
 4. They would have liked to travel by car. (*interr.*)
 5. Mary and Mark would have preferred to stay at a four-star hotel. (*interr.*)
 6. I would have chosen a canary for a pet. (*neg.*)

2. Rispondi con *risposte brevi*.

1. Would he have driven me to the airport? - Yes,
2. Would they have preferred to eat a pizza? - No,
3. Would it have taken a long time to get there? - No,
4. Would he have had to leave the country? - Yes,
5. Would you have done a thing like that? - No,

3. Aggiungi in coda a ciascuna frase la *question tag* corretta.

1. Sheila wouldn't have complained all the time, ?
2. Tom would have appreciated French cuisine, ?
3. They wouldn't have eaten all the food, ?
4. You would have liked to sleep in a tent, ?
5. The dog wouldn't have liked to sleep outside, ?

4. Completa le frasi con il *perfect conditional* del verbo tra parentesi nella forma corretta.

1. I think Susan (*be*) happy to see you.
2. I'm sure he (*lend*) you his car.
3. I'm sure Bob and Mary (*enjoy*) themselves at the party last Sunday.
4. I was very tired otherwise I (*accept*) his invitation.
5. He wasn't well otherwise he (*not / refuse*) to have dinner with us.
6. We (*like*) to see him but he didn't turn up.
7. Don't blame me. (*you / not / do*) the same thing yourself?
8. They (*come*) with pleasure.
9. It's a shame Roger didn't play. We (*win*) with him in the team.
10. I helped her. What (*you / do*) in my shoes?
11. He said he (*come*) on time but he didn't.
12. She (*buy*) that dress but she didn't have enough money.

5. Replica alle affermazioni seguendo l'esempio.

- *They travelled to London by car. (train)*
Did they? I wouldn't have travelled to London by car. I'd have travelled by train.

1. George sent Jane yellow tulips. (*red roses*)
2. He ate a hamburger. (*an apple*)
3. He visited the UK. (*Canada*)
4. They rented a video. (*go / to the cinema*)
5. Richard bought Lucy a bottle of perfume. (*a bunch of flowers*)
6. She chose a gold fish for a pet. (*canary*)

Forma

Frase subordinata	Frase principale	
If + past perfect (had + participio passato) <i>If the road hadn't been icy.</i> Se la strada non fosse stata ghiacciata,	perfect conditional (would have + participio passato) <i>I wouldn't have had an accident.</i> non avrei avuto un incidente.	La frase subordinata può precedere o seguire la frase principale. <i>I wouldn't have had an accident if the road hadn't been icy.</i>

Uso

Il periodo ipotetico di 3° tipo si usa per:

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> parlare di situazioni passate che non si sono realizzate perché le condizioni necessarie non si sono verificate 	<i>If I had known he had no money, I would have lent him some.</i> Se avessi saputo che non aveva denaro, gliene avrei prestato.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> esprimere rimpianto, rincrescimento, criticare 	<i>If you had studied harder, you would have passed the exam.</i> Se tu avessi studiato di più, avresti superato l'esame.

Forme verbali alternative

Nella frase principale si possono usare could have, might have, e should have al posto di would have a seconda di ciò che si vuole esprimere (vedi i modali con riferimento al passato a PAG. 296 e 297)	<i>If you had told her about your problems, she could have/might have helped you.</i> Se tu le avessi detto dei tuoi problemi, lei avrebbe potuto aiutarti. <i>If it had been important, you should have told him.</i> Se fosse stato importante, avresti dovuto dirglielo.
Nella frase principale si usa il present conditional al posto del perfect conditional quando l'ipotesi può essere rapportata al presente.	<i>If I had married him, I would be very happy now.</i> Se lo avessi sposato, sarei molto felice ora. <i>If she had accepted that job, she would earn a lot.</i> Se lei avesse accettato quel lavoro, guadagnerebbe molto.
Sia nella frase principale che nella subordinata è possibile utilizzare forme progressive .	<i>We wouldn't have interrupted them, if they had been talking.</i> Non li avremmo interrotti se stavano parlando. <i>If it hadn't been so cold, we would have been lying on the beach.</i> Se non fosse stato così freddo, saremmo stati sdraiati sulla spiaggia.

PRACTICE

1. Completa i periodi ipotetici di 3° tipo con i verbi tra parentesi al *past perfect* e al *perfect conditional*.

1. If Peter (*have*) a well paid job, he (*not / give*) it up.
2. I (*buy*) some food if I (*know*) the fridge was empty.
3. If she (*tell*) me her secret, I (*not / tell*) anyone.
4. If the car (*not / break*) down, we (*arrive*) on time.
5. What (*your boss / tell*) you if you (*be*) late for work again?
6. If John (*study*) harder for his French test, he (*not / fail*) it.

2. Abbina le frasi adeguatamente.

1. If I had gone to the supermarket,
2. If you had woken up earlier,
3. If they had heard the alarm,
4. If I had got a degree,
5. If she had been in trouble,
6. If he had passed the final exam,
7. If you had studied harder,
8. If he had been sleeping,

- a) I would have a better job now.
- b) he could have helped her.
- c) I would have bought some beer and wine.
- d) you wouldn't have missed the plane.
- e) you could have passed the exam.
- f) I wouldn't have woken him up.
- g) he would go to university now.
- h) they might have left the building in time.

1 ...
2 ...
3 ...
4 ...
5 ...
6 ...
7 ...
8 ...

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION (FCE)

3. Completa la seconda frase in modo che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando da due a cinque parole compresa la parola fornita.

➤ *The weather was bad so we didn't go out.*
would *We **would have gone out** if the weather hadn't been bad.*
1. The road was icy. That's why we had an accident.
not We wouldn't have had an accident if icy.
2. I didn't know her phone number. That's why I didn't invite her to my birthday party.
invited If I had known her phone number, I to my birthday party.
3. We didn't take any photos because we had left our camera at home.
taken We if we hadn't left our camera at home.
4. I had chicken and salad all week because the doctor told me to diet.
had I wouldn't have eaten chicken and salad all week if
 me to diet.
5. It was so late that we didn't stay till the end of the play.
been If it, we would have stayed till the end of the play.
6. He didn't invite Jane to the party because he was very shy.
invited He to the party if he hadn't been so shy.



C PERIODI IPOTETICI A CONFRONTO - INVERSIONE

Confronta i **tre tipi fondamentali** di periodo ipotetico

	Frase subordinata (if clause)	Frase principale (main clause)
1° tipo ipotesi reale o probabile (vedi a PAG. 228)	if + present simple <i>If he comes,</i> Se viene/verrà,	future simple <i>he will enjoy himself.</i> si divertirà.
2° tipo ipotesi immaginaria o poco probabile (vedi a PAG. 286)	if + past simple <i>If he came,</i> Se venisse	present conditional <i>he would enjoy himself.</i> si divertirebbe.
3° tipo ipotesi riferita al passato (impossibile) (vedi a PAG. 292)	if + past perfect <i>If he had come,</i> Se fosse venuto	perfect conditional <i>he would have enjoyed himself.</i> si sarebbe divertito.

Oltre che da **if**, le subordinate ipotetiche possono essere introdotte anche da altre congiunzioni ed espressioni come:
unless, on condition that, provided, providing, suppose, supposing, as long as.

(vedi "Connettivi di condizione"

a PAG. 347)

INVERSIONE

Nel linguaggio formale le subordinate con **should, were, had** possono venire espresse invertendo l'ordine soggetto/verbo ed eliminando **if**.

Should you (=If you should) have any problems, please let us know.
Se dovreste avere problemi, per favore fatecelo sapere.
Were I (=If I were) in your position I would talk to the manager.
Se fossi nella sua situazione, parlerei con il direttore.
Had Susan (=If Susan had) known the film was so boring, she wouldn't have gone to the cinema.
Se Susan avesse saputo che il film era così noioso, non sarebbe andata al cinema.

PRACTICE

1. Trasforma i periodi ipotetici di *1° tipo* in periodi ipotetici di *2° e 3° tipo*.

- *If the weather is bad, we won't go out.*
If the weather were bad, we wouldn't go out.
If the weather had been bad, we wouldn't have gone out.
1. If I am free, I will come to dinner with you.
 2. If we have enough money, we will go to the Maldives.
 3. If it stops raining, we will go out.
 4. If he speaks slowly, I will understand him.
 5. If you take an aspirin, you will feel better.
 6. If you eat less, you will get slimmer.

2. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

1. If I **knew** / **know** the answer, I'd tell you.
2. Mary wouldn't be happy if she **lived** / **lives** in a big city.
3. If I **won** / **win** a lot of money, I'll give some to charity.
4. If I get bored, I **will leave** / **would leave** the lecture.
5. I would have told you her phone number if I **knew** / **had known** it.
6. I **would call** / **would have called** you if I had known you were at home.
7. If the salary had been higher, I **will take** / **would have taken** the job.
8. I **wouldn't drink** / **won't drink** so much if I were you.

3. Completa i periodi ipotetici di 1° e 2° tipo, coniugando correttamente i verbi tra parentesi.

1. If I (*be*) you, I'd complain to the manager.
2. What (*you / do*) if it starts raining?
3. I (*tell*) you about that if I knew that you can keep a secret.
4. If you (*accept*) the job with that company, you won't regret.
5. What would you do if you (*see*) a ghost?
6. I'll take the medicine if I (*not / feel*) well.

4. Completa i periodi ipotetici di 2° e 3° tipo, coniugando correttamente i verbi tra parentesi.

1. If Ted (*know*) her name, he would tell me.
2. I (*play*) with her if I had finished my homework.
3. If everyone (*stop*) dropping litter, our neighbourhood would be much nicer.
4. If I lived in Berlin, I (*learn*) to speak German fluently.
5. He wouldn't have had to rush if he (*not / wake up*) late.
6. What (*you / do*) if you were rich?

5. Completa i seguenti periodi ipotetici di 1°, 2° e 3° tipo, coniugando correttamente i verbi tra parentesi.

1. If he didn't come, I (*be*) very unhappy.
2. I (*be*) very glad, if he had phoned me.
3. If he had promised not to be late again, I (*forgive*) him.
4. She will accept to marry him, if he (*ask*) her.
5. If I were Peter, I (*accept*) their offer.
6. Who (*water*) the plants if we stay away for a month?
7. What (*you / do*) if you won the lottery?
8. If we (*arrive*) late, we wouldn't have found a room.
9. If she weren't allergic to cats, she (*keep*) one.
10. Will you feed the dog if I (*go*) away for the weekend?

6. Riscrivi le frasi usando l'inversione.

➤ *If he had had a compass he wouldn't have lost the way.*
Had he had a compass, he wouldn't have lost the way.

1. If I were in your position, I wouldn't behave like that.
2. If you should need any further information, do not hesitate to contact us.
3. If Mark had imagined that the book was so boring, he wouldn't have bought it.
4. If you should have any problems, let us know immediately.



D FORME COMPOSTE CON I MODALI (riferimento al passato)

La struttura:

sogg. + **modale** + **have** + **participio passato**

- A - Può corrispondere al **condizionale passato** italiano
- B. Può corrispondere al **congiuntivo trapassato** italiano
- C - Vi sono casi, inoltre, in cui tramite le forme composte dei modali si realizzano diverse funzioni comunicative con riferimento al passato

A - could / might / should / ought to / would + have + participio passato si usa:

- come **condizionale passato** (avrebbe potuto, avrebbe dovuto, avrebbe voluto)

He could have repaired the car.

Avrebbe potuto riparare l'auto. (sarebbe stato capace di farlo)

He might have repaired the car.

Avrebbe potuto riparare l'auto. (forse lo avrebbe fatto)

He should (ought to) have repaired the car.

Avrebbe dovuto riparare l'auto. (era suo dovere farlo)

He would have repaired the car.

Avrebbe riparato l'auto. (era suo desiderio farlo).

(vedi **periodo ipotetico di 3° tipo**

a pag. **292**)

If you had studied harder, you would/could/might have passed the exam.

Se tu avessi studiato di più avresti superato /avresti potuto superare l'esame.

If you had seen her, you should have told her the good news.

Se tu l'avessi vista, avresti dovuto dirle la buona notizia.

(vedi **futuro nel passato nel discorso indiretto** per un'azione che non si è verificata

a pag. **333**)

She said she would have bought a cake, but she didn't.

Disse che avrebbe comperato un dolce, ma non lo ha fatto.

Attenzione!!!

Non confondere:

He should have repaired the car (but he didn't). (disapprovazione).

Avrebbe dovuto riparare l'auto (ma non lo ha fatto).

He would have had to repair the car if he had decided to leave. (obbligo / necessità)

Avrebbe dovuto riparare l'auto se avesse deciso di partire.

B - could + have + participio passato si usa anche:

- con significato di **congiuntivo trapassato italiano**

If he could have seen you, he would have been happy.

Se avesse potuto vederti, sarebbe stato felice.

If only I could have spoken to her!

Se soltanto avessi potuto parlarle!

C - Osserva gli esempi in cui i verbi modali realizzano varie funzioni comunicative con riferimento al passato.

<i>John must have received my fax.</i> John deve aver ricevuto il mio fax.	deduzione logica affermativa
<i>He can't / couldn't have received my fax.</i> Non può/non poteva aver ricevuto il mio fax.	deduzione logica negativa
<i>He should (ought to) have received my fax.</i> Dovrebbe aver ricevuto il mio fax.	supposizione basata su deduzione logica
<i>He will have received my fax by now.</i> Avrà ricevuto il mio fax a quest'ora.	supposizione (piuttosto certa)
<i>He may/might/could have received my fax.</i> Può/Potrebbe aver ricevuto il mio fax.	possibilità/probabilità
<i>He came second but he could have won.</i> Arrivò secondo ma avrebbe potuto vincere.	possibilità non realizzata
<i>You could have phoned me!</i> Avresti potuto telefonarmi!	rimprovero
<i>You shouldn't (oughtn't to) have phoned him!</i> Non avresti dovuto telefonargli!	rimprovero, disapprovazione
<i>You needn't have phoned.</i> Non era necessario che tu telefonassi.	mancanza di necessità
Attenzione!!!  La costruzione needn't + have + participio passato è utilizzata solo per indicare che un'azione compiuta non era necessaria. È spesso usata come forma di cortesia.	
Esiste anche la forma progressiva modale + have + forma in -ing - Si usa solo con i verbi di azione con riferimento ad un'azione in corso di svolgimento in un momento del passato	<i>He must/may/might/could have been waiting for the bus.</i> Doveva/Poteva stare aspettando l'autobus.

PRACTICE

1. Completa la traduzione delle frasi inserendo adeguatamente i modali forniti.

can't have / could have / needn't have / might have / must have / should have / shouldn't have

1. Avresti potuto scrivere! You written!
2. Alex non avrebbe dovuto mentirmi. Alex lied to me.
3. Non era necessario che tu telefonassi. You phoned.
4. Deve aver perso l'autobus. He missed the bus.
5. Non può aver perso l'autobus. He missed the bus.
6. Potrebbe averti detto la verità. She told you the truth.
7. Loro dovrebbero essere già partiti. They already left.

2. Abbina le frasi ottenute nell'esercizio precedente alla *funzione comunicativa* che esprimono con riferimento al passato.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| a) mancanza di necessità | b) supposizione | c) rimprovero | d) disapprovazione |
| e) probabilità | f) deduzione logica affermativa | g) deduzione logica negativa | |

1 c | 2 ... | 3 ... | 4 ... | 5 ... | 6 ... | 7 ...

3. Completa le frasi con i *modali* e i *verbi* tra parentesi correttamente coniugati con *riferimento al passato*.

- *They haven't arrived yet. They (may / lose) **may have lost** their way.*
1. I think Mary and John (*should / finish*) painting the kitchen by now.
 2. Few people went to his lecture. He (*must / be*) very disappointed.
 3. They (*may not / know*) there was a railway strike.
 4. I wonder why he didn't call. He (*should / know*) I would worry.
 5. I (*could / try*) to convince him to accept that job, but he was determined to refuse it.
 6. Someone rang last night. I couldn't answer, but I think it (*can't / be*) Peter.
 7. I don't think he wanted to be rude. He (*might / feel*) shy.
 8. You (*needn't / wash*) the dishes. We've got a dishwasher.

4. Leggi le situazioni e scrivi frasi con la struttura *modale + have + participio passato* e le parole fornite, seguendo l'esempio.

- *I rang his house but he didn't answer. (He / must / be / out)*
He must have been out.

1. That coat looks very old. (*She / must / buy / it / a long time ago*)
2. Jennifer knows everything about English literature. (*She / must / read / a lot*)
3. I waited for him but he didn't turn up. (*He / may / forget / our appointment*)
4. It's a quarter past six and she hasn't arrived yet. (*She / might / miss / the bus*).
5. Your car looks new. (*You / can't / have / it / for long*)

5. Completa i *mini-dialoghi*, inserendo *could have* o *couldn't have + participio passato* dei verbi forniti in ordine sparso.

refuse / be / find / wait / give

- *A: Did your sister really accept the job at Johnson & Johnson Limited?*
*B: Well, she **couldn't have found** anything better.*

1. A: Do you know that Peter has thrown away his old computer?
B: Really? He it to me.
2. A: Did you really accept his invitation?
B: I it, could I?
3. A: Did you really tell Susan you didn't like her coat?
B: No, I didn't. I so rude, could I?
4. A: Did you really wait for him for an hour?
B: No, I didn't. I for him, but it started to rain and I didn't have an umbrella.

6. Riscrivi le frasi utilizzando *may have + participio passato*.

- *Perhaps David had dinner with Mary yesterday evening.*
David *may have had dinner with Mary yesterday evening.*

1. Maybe Alan missed the train.
2. I'm hungry. Perhaps Richard has cooked spaghetti for us.
3. David's car isn't here. Maybe he has gone to work.
4. They aren't at home. Perhaps they've gone on holiday.
5. Perhaps Mark went to the bank.

7. Completa i mini-dialoghi con *should have* o *shouldn't have* + *participio passato* per esprimere disapprovazione, seguendo l'esempio.

➤ A: *George drove his car when he was drunk and he had an accident.*
B: *Really? He shouldn't have driven his car when he was drunk.*

 1. A: Sarah had a bad cold but she still went out. Later she had to stay in bed.
B: *Really? out with such a bad cold.*
 2. A: Billy ate a lot of sweets. Later he had stomachache.
B: *Really? so many sweets.*
 3. A: Jane didn't lock the door when she went out. While she was away a burglar got into the house and stole her jewels.
B: *Really? the door when she went out.*
 4. A: Richard borrowed Peter's laptop without asking him.
B: *Really? Peter's laptop without asking him.*
 5. A: Bob and Alan went hiking in the mountains but they didn't tell anyone where they were going.
B: *Really? someone where they were going.*

8. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

- *If they all had come, I would have had to cook / should have cooked for an army.*

 1. If John had offered to give me a lift to the station, I **shouldn't have taken** / **wouldn't have had to take** a taxi.
 2. You **shouldn't have gone** / **wouldn't have had to go** to the concert without asking your father!
 3. Luckily he gave us a lift to the airport. Otherwise we **would have had to hire** / **should have hired** a taxi.
 4. He missed the train. He **shouldn't have got up** / **wouldn't have had to get up** so late!

9. Completa i *mini-dialoghi* con le frasi adeguate. Usa la costruzione *modale + have + been + -ing*, seguendo l'esempio.

- A: I saw Bob at the bus stop. B: (must / wait / for the bus)
He must have been waiting for the bus.

1. A: Bill had an accident. B: (may / drive / too fast)
2. A: Peter was watching TV. B: (must / watch / the football match)
3. A: Paul was studying yesterday afternoon. B: (might / study / history)
4. A: Sarah said she was decorating her house. B: (must / paint / the kitchen)

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION (FCE)

- 10.** Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando da due a cinque parole compresa la parola fornita.

➤ *I'm sure she didn't catch the 6 am train.*
can't She **can't have caught** the 6 am train.

 1. I'm sure he didn't rob the bank.
robbed He the bank.
 2. I'm certain she has arrived by now.
must She by now.
 3. Perhaps Mark was having a shower when you phoned him.
been Mark a shower when you phoned him.
 4. I'm sure they were at the pub.
must They at the pub.
 5. Perhaps they have forgotten to book the tickets for the concert.
may They the tickets for the concert.

Grammar and practice

- A. Wish
B. Would rather
C. Had better

- D. It's time. It's high/about time

Revision: Wish - Would rather - Had better - It's (high/about) time

★ A WISH

WISH può essere usato per esprimere il condizionale italiano "vorrei".
Può avere varie costruzioni a seconda dell'uso.

Sogg. + wish + 2° sogg. + { past simple
past continuous
could + forma base}

- per esprimere **il desiderio difficilmente realizzabile di cambiare una situazione del presente, insoddisfazione** per una situazione del presente.

I wish he were/was here with me (but he isn't).*
Vorrei che lui fosse qui con me.
I wish I had more free time (but I haven't).
Vorrei avere più tempo libero.
I wish it didn't rain so often.(but it does).
Vorrei che non piovesse così spesso.
I wish it weren't raining (but it is).
Vorrei che non stesse piovendo.
I wish I could speak to her (but I can't).
Vorrei poterle parlare.

N. B. * Nell'inglese formale si usa **were** (congiuntivo imperfetto) per tutte le persone; nell'inglese informale si può usare **was** per la 1a e la 3a persona singolare.

Sogg. + wish + 2° sogg. + { past perfect simple
could have + part. passato}

- per esprimere **il desiderio irrealizzabile di cambiare una situazione del passato, un rimpianto** per qualcosa che non è accaduto.

I wish he had been here (but he wasn't).
Vorrei che lui fosse stato qui.
I wish I had had more free time (but I didn't).
Vorrei avere avuto più tempo libero.
I wish it hadn't rained so often (but it did).
Vorrei che non fosse piovuto così spesso.

I wish I could have spoken to her (but I couldn't).
Vorrei averle potuto parlare.

Sogg. + wish + 2° sogg. + would + forma base

- per esprimere **il desiderio di un cambiamento nel futuro del comportamento di altri** (spesso senza speranza o con irritazione).

I wish my husband wouldn't go out tonight (but I'm afraid he will).
Vorrei che mio marito non uscisse questa sera.
(ma temo che lo farà).

- Il 2° soggetto può anche essere inanimato.
I wish it would get warmer (but I'm afraid it won't).

Vorrei che diventasse più caldo (ma temo non succederà).



Attenzione!!!

La costruzione **wish ... would ...**
- non può essere usata con riferimento a sé stessi e quindi il **soggetto** di *wish* deve essere **diverso** dal soggetto di *would*

I wish they would stop talking.
Vorrei che loro smettessero di parlare.

- si usa solo per parlare di azioni/comportamenti e non di stati/fatti

Non si dice: *I wish he would have a car.*

Ma si dice: *I wish he had a car.*

Non si dice: *I wish she wouldn't live in another town.*

Ma si dice: *I wish she didn't live in another town.*

Forme alternative:

• si può usare "if only ..." (se soltanto ...) al posto di wish ma con un significato più enfatico	If only (= I wish) <i>I knew her phone number!</i> If only (= I wish) <i>I hadn't eaten so much!</i> If only (= I wish) <i>it would get warmer!</i>
• i desideri che riguardano il futuro vengono spesso espressi con il verbo hope (sperare)	I hope it gets/will get warmer. Spero che diventi più caldo. = I wish it would get warmer. Vorrei che diventasse più caldo.

Wish presenta anche le seguenti costruzioni (in cui non ha valore di condizionale)

Sogg. + wish + infinito con to • per esprimere desiderio/volontà di fare qualcosa (con un significato simile a <i>want/would like somebody to do</i> , ma più formale)	I wish to thank you. Desidero ringraziarti. We wished to see them immediately. Desideravamo vederli immediatamente.
Sogg. + wish + compl. oggetto + infinito con to (costruzione oggettiva) • per esprimere desiderio/volontà che qualcuno faccia qualcosa (con un significato simile a <i>want/would like somebody to do</i> , ma più formale)	I don't wish them to leave this room. Non gradisco che escano da questa stanza.
Sogg. + wish + compl. oggetto • solo per esprimere un augurio (con il significato di "augurare")	We wish you a Merry Christmas. Vi auguriamo un buon Natale. We wished them all the best. Facemmo loro i migliori auguri.

Attenzione!!!

Non si dice: *I wish a cup of coffee.*
Ma si dice: *I would like a cup of coffee.*

PRACTICE

1. Abbina le frasi al corretto significato.

- | | | |
|----------------------------------|--|-------|
| 1. I wish they had rescued her. | (a) wish or regret about a <i>present situation</i> | 1 ... |
| 2. I wish it would stop snowing. | (b) regret about a <i>past situation</i> | 2 ... |
| 3. I wish I had more money. | (c) wish for a <i>future change</i> unlikely to happen expressing disappointment | 3 ... |

2. Completa le frasi per esprimere desideri (con riferimento al presente) seguendo l'esempio.

- | | |
|--|---|
| ➤ <i>I haven't got any brothers or sisters</i> | <i>I wish I had a brother or a sister.</i> |
| 1. I'm not rich. | I wish I rich. |
| 2. I can't drive a car. | I wish I drive a car. |
| 3. I haven't got a driving licence. | I wish I a driving licence. |
| 4. I can't speak English well. | I wish I speak English well. |
| 5. I'm not eighteen. | I wish I eighteen. |

3. Completa le frasi per esprimere desideri (con riferimento al presente) seguendo l'esempio.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| ➤ <i>It often rains in my town.</i> | <i>I wish it didn't rain so often in my town.</i> |
| 1. I live in a small village. | I wish I in a small village. |
| 2. It's quite hot in summer. | I wish it so hot in summer. |
| 3. I have to work at the weekend. | I wish I to work at the weekend. |
| 4. It's raining. | I wish it raining. |
| 5. I work on Saturdays too. | I wish I on Saturdays too. |

4. Rispondi alle domande esprimendo desideri, come nell'esempio.

- *Does your boyfriend give you a present on St. Valentine's day?*
I wish he gave me a present on St Valentine's day, but he doesn't.

1. Does your husband spend a lot of time with you? 2. Does Mark love you? 3. Are you happy?
4. Have you got a pet? 5. Can you speak English well? 6. Does your brother help you with your homework?

5. Scrivi frasi seguendo l'esempio. Usa *I wish ...* e costruisci periodi ipotetici di 2° tipo adeguatamente.

- *My car has got a flat tyre, so I can't drive to work.*
I wish my car didn't have a flat tyre. If my car didn't have a flat tyre, I could drive to work.
1. The radio is broken, so I can't listen to the news.
2. I don't know her phone number, so I can't call her.
3. I haven't got a camera, so I can't take any photos.

6. Completa le risposte. Usa *I wish + past perfect* per esprimere desideri (con riferimento al passato) seguendo l'esempio.

- *Why did you invite Bob to the party? // What a disaster! I wish I hadn't invited him.*
1. It's a pity you didn't come to the concert! Yes, I wish
2. You didn't tell him the truth. Yes, I wish
3. Why did you marry him? What a disaster! I wish
4. Why didn't you take that job? I don't know. I wish

7. Scrivi frasi seguendo l'esempio. Usa *I wish ...* e costruisci periodi ipotetici di 3° tipo adeguatamente.

- *I got lost in the mountains because I didn't have a compass with me.*
I wish I had had a compass. If I had had a compass, I wouldn't have got lost in the mountains.
1. I didn't go to the seaside because the car engine broke down.
2. I had an accident because the road was slippery.
3. I didn't go swimming because the weather was bad.

8. Scrivi una frase per ciascuna situazione usando *I wish ... would* e i suggerimenti tra parentesi per esprimere che cosa vuoi che accada. Segui l'esempio.

- *Why aren't you listening to me? (I / you / concentrate) I wish you would concentrate.*
1. Why did you put on that horrible hat? (*I / you / take it off*)
2. Why hasn't the party finished? (*I / they / stop making so much noise*)
3. Why are the children shouting? (*I / they / stop shouting*)

9. Riscrivi le frasi usando *I wish + would/wouldn't*, seguendo l'esempio.

- *I hope he won't come.* ***I wish he wouldn't come.***
1. I hope the weather will improve.
2. I hope he will phone me.
3. I hope Tom won't go to Susan's party.
4. I hope he will go to university.

- 10.** Tom è insoddisfatto di alcune cose. Completa i suoi desideri seguendo l'esempio.
Utilizza le costruzioni adeguate con *wish*.

WHAT ANNOYS YOU MOST?

Myself

- My nose is too long.
- I'm shy when I meet new people.
- I haven't got a car.
- I can't play the guitar.

My parents

- They complain about my room.
- They criticise my clothes.
- They haven't got a fast car.

My girlfriend

- She takes me for granted.
- She lives in another town.

My town

- There isn't enough entertainment.
- There's no disco.
- It's too polluted.

➤ *I wish my nose weren't so long.*

1. I wish I so shy when I meet new people.
2. I wish I a car.
3. I wish I play the guitar.
4. I wish my parents stop complaining about my room, but I'm afraid they won't.
5. I wish my parents stop criticising my clothes, but I'm afraid they won't.
6. I wish my parents a fast car.
7. I wish my girlfriend me for granted.
8. I wish my girlfriend in another town.
9. I wish there more entertainment in my town.
10. I wish there a disco in my town.
11. I wish my town so polluted.

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION (FCE)

- 11.** Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando da due a cinque parole compresa la parola fornita.

1. I'm sorry I didn't lock the door.

wish I the door.

2. I feel awful because I quarrelled with James.

wish I with James.

3. It's a pity the firemen didn't rescue him.

wish I him.

4. He wishes his son would look for a job.

hopes He a job.

5. I wish I had been more careful.

only If more careful.

6. I wish I hadn't sold that old painting.

pity It's that old painting.

7. I'd love to be lying on the beach right now.

wish I on the beach right now.

8. I would like you to stop making so much noise late at night!

wish I making so much noise late at night.

9. I don't wish the children to enter this room.

want I don't this room.

10. Have a nice Christmas.

wish We a nice Christmas.

★★ B **WOULD RATHER**

WOULD ('D) RATHER rende il condizionale italiano "preferirei" (= *would prefer*) e si usa per esprimere **preferenza specifica**. Osserva le costruzioni:

<i>Stesso soggetto</i>	<i>Diverso soggetto</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Quando il soggetto di would rather è anche il soggetto del verbo che segue si usa: Sogg. + would ('d) rather + infinito senza to (+ than + infinito senza to) - con riferimento al presente o al futuro <i>I'd rather do the shopping today (than do it tomorrow).</i> Preferirei fare la spesa oggi (che farla domani). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Quando il soggetto di would rather è diverso dal soggetto del verbo che segue si usa: Sogg. + would ('d) rather + 2° sogg. + past simple - con riferimento al presente o al futuro <i>I'd rather you did the shopping today.</i> Preferirei che tu facessei la spesa oggi.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sogg. + would ('d) rather + have + participio passato - con riferimento al passato <i>I'd rather have gone to Spain than to France.</i> Preferirei essere andato in Spagna che in Francia. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sogg. + would ('d) rather + 2° sogg. + past perfect - con riferimento al passato <i>I'd rather we had gone to Spain than to France.</i> Preferirei che fossimo andati in Spagna piuttosto che in Francia.

Attenzione!!!

Confronta **would rather** e **would prefer**

Entrambi esprimono **preferenza specifica** ("preferirei") ma reggono costruzioni diverse.

- **would rather + infinito senza to (+ than + infinito senza to)**

I'd rather live in a large city than (live) in a small village.

- **would prefer + infinito con to (+ rather than + infinito senza to)**

I'd prefer to live in a large city rather than (live) in a small village.

Ricorda

Per esprimere **preferenza generale** ("preferisco") si usa:

- **prefer + forma in -ing/sostantivo + to + forma in -ing/sostantivo**

I prefer swimming to playing tennis. / I prefer apples to oranges.

Preferisco il nuoto al giocare a tennis. / Preferisco le mele alle arance.

- **prefer + infinito con to + rather than + infinito senza to**

He prefers to go to the theatre rather than go to the cinema.

Preferisce andare a teatro piuttosto che andare al cinema.

PRACTICE

1. Completa i *mini-dialoghi* usando **would rather** e le parole fornite tra parentesi, per esprimere **preferenza specifica con riferimento al presente o al futuro**.

➤ A: *Would you like to walk to the station or would you prefer to take a taxi?*

B: (*walk*) ***I'd rather walk.***

1. A: We could have a party for our wedding anniversary, but perhaps you would prefer to go out for dinner.

B: (*go out for dinner*)

2. A: Shall we go there by taxi or by tube?

B: (*go by taxi*)

3. A: We can watch the football match on TV. Or would you prefer to see it live?

B: (*watch it on TV*)

2. Completa le frasi con la forma corretta dei verbi tra parentesi per esprimere *preferenza specifica con riferimento al passato*.

- *I stayed at home last night but I'd rather (go out) **have gone out**.*
1. We slept in a tent but we'd rather (*sleep*) in a hotel
 2. They travelled by train but they'd rather (*travel*) by plane.
 3. We watched the football match on TV but we'd rather (*see*) it live.
 4. We had to go to their wedding party but we'd rather (*spend*) the day at the beach.

3. Completa le frasi con la forma corretta dei verbi tra parentesi per esprimere *preferenza specifica con riferimento al presente o futuro*.

- *John wants to look for a job, but I'd rather he (go) **went** to university.*
1. I'd rather you (*not/smoke*) at the breakfast table.
 2. She'd rather he (*stay*) at home tonight.
 3. I'd rather she (*not/cook*) spaghetti tonight.
 4. We'd rather they (*arrange*) the meeting for next week.

4. Completa le frasi con la forma corretta dei verbi tra parentesi per esprimere *preferenza specifica con riferimento al passato*. (Attenzione: stesso soggetto o diverso soggetto?)

- *He had to leave immediately, but I'd rather he (stay) **had stayed** a bit longer.*
1. I had to cook for all of them, but I'd rather they (*go*) to a restaurant.
 2. He fixed an appointment for tomorrow, but he'd rather (*fix*) it for today.
 3. Mary cleaned the kitchen, but I'd rather she (*clean*) the bathroom.
 4. He refused that job, but he'd rather (*accept*) it.

5. Scrivi una seconda frase che abbia lo stesso significato della prima, usando *would rather* o *would prefer*, come suggerito.

- *I would rather have a big car. (would prefer)* ***I would prefer to have a big car.***
1. We would prefer to leave before it gets dark. *(would rather).....*
2. I would rather be slimmer. *(would prefer).....*
3. They would prefer to go by car. *(would rather).....*
4. We would rather have the party at our house. *(would prefer).....*

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION (FCE)

6. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando da due a cinque parole compresa la parola fornita.

1. I would prefer to go to the cinema rather than watch TV.
rather I cinema than watch TV.
2. I would rather write an essay than learn vocabulary.
prefer I an essay rather than learn vocabulary.
3. We would rather go for a swim than play tennis.
prefer We for a swim rather than play tennis.
4. I would rather read a book than watch TV
rather I would prefer to watch TV.
5. I like rock music more than classical music.
to I classical music.
6. He likes playing football but he loves playing basketball.
to He football.

HAD ('D) BETTER rende le espressioni italiane *sarebbe meglio che..., farei//faresti meglio a ...* e si usa per **dare un consiglio, fare una raccomandazione** (anche a se stessi).

Forma

Affermativa	Sogg. + had ('d) better + infinito senza to <i>You'd better put a coat on.</i>	Faresti meglio a metterti il cappotto.
Negativa	Sogg. + had ('d) better + not + infinito senza to <i>She'd better not trust him.</i>	Lei farebbe meglio a non fidarsi di lui.

Forme alternative per dare un consiglio

imperativo		<i>Take an umbrella.</i>
(I think) you should +	infinito senza to	<i>(I think) you should take an umbrella.</i>
(I think) you ought +	infinito con to	<i>(I think) you ought to take an umbrella.</i>
Why don't you +	infinito senza to	<i>Why don't you take an umbrella?</i>
If I were you, I would +	infinito senza to	<i>If I were you, I would take an umbrella.</i>
It is advisable + infinito con to		<i>It's advisable to reserve a table.</i>
It is advisable + frase con should + infinito senza to		<i>It's advisable that you should reserve a table.</i>
It is advisable + for + complemento + infinito con to		<i>It's advisable for you to reserve a table.</i>



Attenzione!!!

Non confondere:

I had ('d) better leave immediately. Farei meglio a partire immediatamente.
I would ('d) rather leave immediately. Preferirei partire immediatamente.

per l'uso di *would rather*
vedi PAG. 304

PRACTICE

- Riscrivi le seguenti frasi fornendo consigli con *had better* o *had better not* seguendo l'esempio.
 ➤ *Don't leave your luggage unattended. The station is full of thieves.*
You'd better not leave your luggage unattended. The station is full of thieves.
- Take your shoes off. They're all wet.
- If I were you, I'd put warm clothes on. It's very cold today.
- You shouldn't drink so much beer. You might feel sick.
- Don't go by car. The roads are icy.
- If I were you, I'd close all the windows and doors. There are burglars in the area.
- You should reserve a seat on that train. A lot of people take it.

2. Che cosa diresti nelle seguenti situazioni? Scrivi frasi usando *had better* o *had better not*, seguendo l'esempio.

➤ *Alan is going out for a walk. You think he should take an umbrella because it might rain.
You'd better take an umbrella.*

- 1.** Pamela suddenly begins to feel ill. You think she should lie down.
- 2.** You and Mark are going to the cinema. You've just missed the bus. You think you should take a taxi.
- 3.** You and your girlfriend are going to a restaurant for a meal. You think you should reserve a table because the restaurant might be crowded.
- 4.** Tom has got a toothache. You think he should go to the dentist's.
- 5.** You and your friend are at the beach. Your friend suggests going for a swim. You don't think you should do this because the water is very cold.
- 6.** Bob wants to play the saxophone late at night. You don't think it's a good idea because he will wake up the people next door.

3. Completa le frasi con *I'd rather* o *you'd better*.

- 1.** take a taxi. You won't get there on time if you go by bus.
- 2.** he hadn't asked me for a lift home.
- 3.** not complain to the boss. Listen to me.
- 4.** we stayed at home tonight.

4. Sostituisci la forma contratta '*'d*' con *had* o *would*.

- 1.** I'd rather eat at home than go to a restaurant.
- 2.** I'd better travel by train.
- 3.** We'd rather wait for a few minutes than leave soon.
- 4.** You'd better put a plaster on the cut.

ERROR CORRECTION

5. Elimina la parola non necessaria contenuta in ciascuna frase.

- *You'd better to stop smoking.*
- 1.** You shouldn't to be late for school.
 - 2.** If I'd were you, I'd take the 5.30 train.
 - 3.** It's advisable for them that to exercise at the gym.
 - 4.** Why don't you to lie down?
 - 5.** She'd better to write to Tom.

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION (FCE)

6. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando da due a cinque parole compresa la parola fornita.

- 1.** If I were you, I would see a doctor.
better You a doctor.
- 2.** You should stay in bed for a few days.
had You in bed for a few days.
- 3.** You'd better not go to work today.
should You today.
- 4.** We'd better stop at the petrol station to fill up. We've almost run out of petrol.
should I think at the petrol station to fill up.
We've almost run out of petrol.
- 5.** It's advisable for you not to walk all alone at night.
better You all alone at night.
- 6.** You'd better reserve a table.
were If I a table.

★★ D **IT'S TIME , IT'S HIGH / ABOUT TIME**

La struttura

It's time + soggetto + **past simple**

- si usa quando ci si lamenta, si critica o si pensa che qualcuno avrebbe già dovuto compiere una determinata azione
sottolineando il ritardo.

- Il ritardo può essere enfatizzato con l'uso degli avverbi **about** o **high**.

Attenzione!!!

Si usa il **past simple**

ma il significato è presente o futuro, non passato.

Le strutture

It's time + infinito **con to**

It's time for + complemento + infinito **con to**

- si usano quando non si vuole sottolineare il ritardo.

It's time *the government did something about pollution.*

È ora che il governo faccia qualcosa per l'inquinamento.

It's late. It's time we went home.

È tardi. È ora che andiamo a casa.

It's high / about time *you did some work for your examinations.*

È ora che tu faccia qualcosa per i tuoi esami.

It's time to go home.

È ora di andare a casa.

It's time for us to go home.

È ora che andiamo a casa.

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi in modo appropriato usando i verbi forniti nella forma corretta.

*have a haircut - leave - clean them - do some cooking -
do some work - go home - get up - go to bed*

- Your shoes are filthy. It's about time you
- Your hair is very long. It's about time you
- Our train is already ten minutes late. It's about time it
- It's about time we if you've invited your friends to dinner.
- Your examinations are in two weeks. It's about time you
- It's already past ten. It's about time the children
- It's nearly midnight. (a) It's time to
(b) It's time we
(c) It's time for
- Why are you still in bed? It's time you

2. Che cosa diresti in queste situazioni? Completa le frasi in modo appropriato.

- You think the dining room should be redecorated because it looks awful.
It's time we
- You feel very strongly that the company you work for should raise salaries.
It's high time they
- You feel very strongly that the government should stop spending money on arms.
It's about time the government
- You've been wearing the same clothes for ages. You think you should buy some new clothes.
It's time I

REVISION — wish - would rather - had better - it's (high/about) time

- 1.** Riscrivi le frasi correggendo l'errore contenuto in ciascuna frase.

➤ <i>I wish I bought that car last month.</i>	<i>I wish I had bought that car last month.</i>
1. I'd rather you don't go out tonight.
2. It's very late. It's time we go to bed.
3. I wish I have long hair.
4. I wish I can drive a car.
5. James had rather read than watch TV.
6. I hope it would stop snowing.
7. I wish you will stop biting your nails.
8. You would better sit down for a while.
9. I'd rather listening to the radio.
10. I'd better to leave now.

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION (FCE)

- 2.** Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando da due a cinque parole compresa la parola fornita.

➤ *I would rather not go by train.*

prefer *I would prefer not to go by train*

- 1.** I'd love to be able to go to the theatre with you.
wish I to the theatre with you.
- 2.** It's late. We really should go home now.
about It's late. It's home now.
- 3.** I think you should sell that old car.
better You that old car.
- 4.** It's a pity I didn't accept that job last year.
wish I that job last year.
- 5.** I hope he will stop shouting.
wish I shouting.
- 6.** We wish we hadn't sold our cottage by the sea.
pity It's our old cottage by the sea.
- 7.** They didn't call an ambulance and now it's too late.
only If an ambulace.
- 8.** If only she had told me she was going away!
wish I she was going away.
- 9.** I ate the fruit without washing it and now my stomach hurts.
washed I wish I before eating it.
 Now my stomach hurts.
- 10.** It's a shame that it rained when we were on the beach.
not I wish it when we were on the beach.
- 11.** I wish I knew her phone number.
only If her phone number!
- 12.** I'm sorry I didn't call her sooner.
wish I her sooner.
- 13.** I would prefer to go sailing rather than go parachuting.
rather I than go parachuting.
- 14.** You should really buy a new car.
time It's high a new car.

Grammar and practice

A. Forma passiva: *present simple e past simple*

B. Forma passiva: altri tempi e modi

C. Forma passiva con i modali

★ A FORMA PASSIVA : PRESENT SIMPLE E PAST SIMPLE

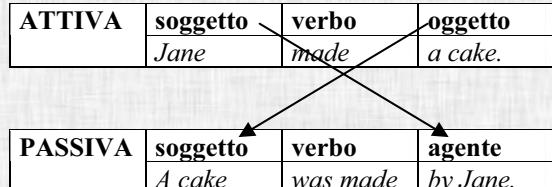
Forma passiva: to be + participio passato del verbo principale (+ by + agente)

Osserva le **trasformazioni** dalla forma attiva alla forma passiva del **present simple** e del **past simple**, con il verbo **make**.

(Per gli altri tempi verbali vedi a **PAG. 314**)

TEMPO	FORMA ATTIVA	FORMA PASSIVA
present simple	make/makes	am/is/are made
past simple	made	was/were made

- Nella **trasformazione dalla forma attiva alla forma passiva** il complemento oggetto della frase attiva diventa il soggetto della frase passiva, mentre il soggetto diventa complemento d'agente preceduto dalla preposizione **by**.
- Normalmente il **complemento d'agente** non viene espresso quando il soggetto nella frase attiva è indeterminato (*they, we, people, someone*).
They make these cars in Japan.
 ↓
These cars are made in Japan.



Attenzione!!!

I verbi che reggono una preposizione come:

listen to, look after, send for, care for, put off, pay for, speak of, laugh at, ecc.
 la mantengono anche nella forma passiva.

We sent for a doctor immediately. → A doctor was sent for immediately.

Forma negativa

- La **negazione** si forma facendo seguire il verbo **to be** da **not**.
These cars are not (aren't) made in Japan..

Forma interrogativa

- La **domanda** si forma mettendo il verbo **to be** davanti al soggetto.
Are these cars made in Japan?
- Quando la domanda inizia con le **question words who/what** non si può omettere **by**, che viene collocato alla fine della frase.
Who invented the telephone?
 ↓
Who was the telephone invented by?

Uso

La forma passiva si usa:	
• quando la persona che compie l'azione (agente) è sconosciuto, non importante o ovvio dal contesto	<i>My car was stolen yesterday.</i> (agente sconosciuto) La mia auto è stata rubata ieri. <i>His car is washed every Saturday.</i> (agente non importante) La sua auto viene lavata ogni sabato. <i>The house was burgled. (by a burgler - agente ovvio)</i> La casa fu svaligiata.
• quando l'azione è più importante di chi la compie	<i>The spy was shot at dawn.</i> La spia fu fucilata all'alba.
• in descrizioni di procedimenti o di esperimenti scientifici	... <i>Then the biscuits are packed into containers.</i> ... Poi i biscotti vengono imballati in contenitori.
• per impartire ordini, istruzioni, regolamenti	<i>Parking is not allowed in this road.</i> Non è ammesso parcheggiare in questa strada.
• per rendere la forma italiana impersonale "si"	<i>English is spoken here.</i> Qui si parla inglese.
Nell'inglese colloquiale, si può costruire la forma passiva con una forma del verbo get + participio passato in genere per parlare di qualcosa che capita inaspettatamente o per caso.	<i>She got hurt in the accident.</i> Lei fu ferita nell'incidente. <i>Tom's camera got stolen at the station.</i> La macchina fotografica di Tom fu rubata alla stazione.

PRACTICE

1. Riscrivi le frasi alla forma passiva, come nell'esempio. (*present simple*)

➤ *Somebody locks the door every night. The door is locked every night.*

1. We feed the animals at 12 o'clock. 2. Someone does the shopping every day. 3. They elect a new President every five years. 4. They don't turn off this machine at the weekend. 5. Do they serve all the dishes with chips? 6. They sell cold drinks here.

2. Completa le frasi con la forma passiva al *present simple* dei verbi tra parentesi.

➤ *English (speak) is spoken in many countries.*

1. These computers (*make*) in Korea. 2. The rubbish (*take*) away every two days. 3. Travel expenses (*pay*) by the company. 4. Breakfast (*serve*) from 7.00 to 10.00 a.m. 5. Dogs (*not / admit*) 6. Fishing (*forbid*) in this river. 7. Credit cards (*not / accept*) in this restaurant. 8. Stamps (*not / sell*) here.

3. Riscrivi le frasi alla *forma passiva*, come nell'esempio. (*past simple*)

➤ *A German scientist conducted that experiment.*

That experiment was conducted by a German scientist.

1. Susan typed a lot of letters. 2. Shakespeare wrote "Hamlet" and other great tragedies. 3. A young girl answered the phone. 4. Hitchcock didn't direct this film. 5. A famous architect designed this cathedral. 6. Fiat launched a new family car.

4. Completa le frasi con la forma passiva al *past simple* dei verbi tra parentesi.

➤ *This book (publish) was published* in 1985.

1. These poems (*write*) by Coleridge. 2. This film (*make*) four years ago. 3. America (*discover*) by C. Columbus in 1492. 4. The roof (*fix*) last month. 5. They (*run*) over by a car. 6. The window (*break*) by some children.

5. Completa le frasi con la forma passiva al *present simple* o *past simple* dei verbi tra parentesi.

1. The post (*not / deliver*) on Sundays. 2. The office (*paint*) last week. 3. The thieves (*arrest*) last month. 4. The kitchen (*not / clean*) often enough. 5. Last year more than 40,000 baby seals (*kill*) 6. This is how biscuits (*make*)

6. Riscrivi le frasi in *forma passiva*. Fai attenzione alle preposizioni.

➤ *Listen when people speak to you.* ***Listen when you are spoken to.***

1. They didn't pay for the dinner. 2. They knocked down the tree. 3. Her grandparents brought her up. 4. My sister cared for my canary while I was away. 5. My mother looks after the children when I'm at work. 6. The manager put off the meeting.

7. Completa la storia adeguatamente con i verbi forniti. Poi rispondi alle domande sul testo.

was seen / was robbed / was attacked / were arrested / was beaten

George Sway, the well-known English actor, 1) last night in Benson Street, Chicago (USA) by two men while he was walking home after the performance at the Carlton Theatre. He 2) of money and watch, and 3) by the attackers. The attack 4) by a few people and the two men 5) a few hours later.

1. Where was George Sway attacked?
2. When was he attacked?
3. What was he robbed of?
4. Was he beaten?
5. Who was he attacked by?
6. Was the attack seen by anyone?
7. When were the attackers arrested?

8. Riscrivi le domande in *forma passiva*.

➤ *Where do they make these pots?*

1. When did they build this city?
2. When did they publish this book?
3. When did they sign this agreement?

Where are these pots made?

4. Where do they sell these posters?
5. How do they make pasta?
6. How much bread do they sell every day?

9. Riscrivi le domande in *forma passiva*.

➤ *Who invented the alphabet?* ***Who was the alphabet invented by?***

1. Who robbed the bank?
2. What caused the fire?
3. Who built the pyramids?
4. Who discovered America?
5. What damaged the building?
6. Who wrote this novel?

10. Completa le domande alle risposte fornite utilizzando la *forma passiva*.

➤ *Where was that car made?* - *That car? It was made in Germany.*

1. Who? - The telephone? It was invented by Meucci.
2. When.....? - The bikini? It was launched in 1946.
3. Who? - Penicillin? It was discovered by Fleming.
4. Who? - "The Blue Danube"? It was composed by Strauss.
5. What of ? - This sofa? It's made of leather.

11. Scrivi 5 frasi al *past simple* con *got + participio passato* dei verbi forniti, come nell'esempio.

➤ *He / sting / by a bee*



He got stung by a bee.

2. The sheriff / shoot / by the cow-boy.



4. The roof / blow off / in a storm.



1. They / hurt / in an accident.



3. Mary's suitcase / steal / at the airport.



5. Harry / stab / in a fight.



SENTENCE TRANSFORMATION (PET)

12. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando non più di tre parole.

➤ *Did they start the fire on purpose?*
Was the fire started on purpose?

1. Some divers found the remains of a ship last week.

The remains of a ship some divers last week.

2. Where do they make these computers?

Where made?

3. A lot of people caught flu last winter.

Flu a lot of people last winter.

4. They perform Shakespeare's plays all over the world.

Shakespeare's plays all over the world.

5. Who watered the plants?

Who watered by?

★★ **B FORMA PASSIVA: ALTRI TEMPI E MODI**

	FORMA ATTIVA	FORMA PASSIVA
present continuous	am/is/are making	am/is/are being
past continuous	was/were making	was/were being
present perfect	have/has made	have/has been
past perfect	had made	had been
future simple	will make	will be
future-going to	am/is/are going to make	am/is/are going to be
present conditional	would make	would be
perfect conditional	would have made	would have been
present infinitive	to make	to be
perfect infinitive	to have made	to have been
"-ing form" present (present gerund)	making	being
"-ing form" perfect (perfect gerund)	having made	having been

She is making a cake now.

Lei sta facendo un dolce.



A cake is being made now.

Si sta facendo un dolce.

She was making a cake when I arrived.

Lei stava facendo un dolce quando arrivai.



A cake was being made when I arrived.

Si stava preparando un dolce quando arrivai.

PRACTICE

1. Riscrivi le frasi alla forma passiva. (*present continuous* e *past continuous*)

➤ *They are painting the Smiths' house at the moment.*
The Smiths' house is being painted at the moment.

1. They were fixing the roof when I was there last week.
2. The postman is emptying the post box.
3. They are restoring the cathedral.
4. They are improving sports facilities.
5. We are organizing a party for next week.
6. They were making the sandwiches when I arrived.

2. Completa le frasi con la *forma passiva* al *present continuous* o al *past continuous* dei verbi tra parentesi.

1. Can I help you? - No, thanks. I (*serve*)
2. The engine (*repair*) when I called at the mechanic to collect my car.
3. The brochures (*dispatch*) at the moment.
4. When I looked out of the window, milk (*deliver*)
5. We lived in our parents' house while our house (*build*)
6. The new product (*test*) in the lab right now.

3. Riscrivi le frasi alla *forma passiva*, come nell'esempio. (*present perfect simple*)

➤ *The police have arrested Mrs Green.* ***Mrs Green has been arrested.***

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Somebody has scratched my car! | 4. They have refused our offer. |
| 2. Somebody has taken my wallet! | 5. They have called off the meeting. |
| 3. They have broadcast freezing fog. | 6. Somebody has killed the President. |

4. Completa le frasi con la *forma passiva* dei verbi tra parentesi nei tempi e modi indicati.

- 1.** The flowers (*already / order*) (pres. perfect)
- 2.** The new hospital (*open*) next month. (future simple)
- 3.** Our car (*just / steal*) by the time we got to the car-park. (past perfect)
- 4.** The Pyramids (*build*) by the Egyptians. (past simple)
- 5.** The house (*decorate*) (pres. continuous)
- 6.** Their house (*sell*) if it weren't so far from the shops. (pres. conditional)
- 7.** The spot on the carpet (*not / wipe off*) (past perfect)
- 8.** Peter's car (*repair*) (future: going to)
- 9.** Dinner (*prepare*) when I arrived. (past continuous)
- 10.** The invitations (*already / send*) (pres. perfect)
- 11.** The car (*repair*) if it hadn't been too old. (perfect conditional)
- 12.** Who knows how many hamburgers (*eat*) in a year? (pres. simple)
- 13.** The town centre (*make*) into a pedestrian zone last year. (past simple)
- 14.** My cat likes (*pat*) on the head. ("-ing form" present)
- 15.** They want (*inform*) as soon as possible. (present infinitive)

5. Completa le frasi con i verbi al *tempo corretto* della *forma passiva*.

- 1.** My car (*wash*) at the moment.
- 2.** The village (*destroy*) by a hurricane in a few hours.
- 3.** By the time we got to the travel agency all the flights (*already / book*)
- 4.** We had a wonderful excursion. We (*take*) to a beautiful beach by boat.
- 5.** If I continue to do well, I (*select*) for the Olympic Games.
- 6.** If Dad hadn't felt better, he (*take*) to hospital.
- 7.** If Mr Harrison sold his factory, it (*buy*) by a multinational company.

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION (FCE)

6. Completa le seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando da due a cinque parole compresa la parola fornita.

➤ *They are opening a new sports centre just now.*
being *A new sports centre is being opened just now.*

- 1.** W. Shakespeare wrote *Macbeth*.
by *Macbeth* W. Shakespeare.
- 2.** Who delivered the parcel?
was Who by?
- 3.** Did they inform the police about the accident?
informed Were about the accident?
- 4.** Have you checked the oil level yet?
been Has yet?
- 5.** They will dedicate the new university building to Dr Murphy.
dedicated The new university building Dr Murphy.

★ C FORMA PASSIVA CON I MODALI

Presente	Passato
modale + be + participio passato  <i>Look at that suitcase! It may be stolen.</i> Guarda quella valigia. Può venir rubata.	modale + have been + participio passato  <i>Look at those plants! They should have been watered.</i> Guarda quelle piante. Avrebbero dovuto essere annaffiate.

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi con i verbi tra parentesi alla *forma passiva presente*.

➤ This work (*must / finish*) **must be finished** by three o'clock.

1. These plants (*should / water*) more often.
2. I think he (*should / consult*) about this matter.
3. A solution to this problem (*may / work out*) within a few days.
4. All the questions (*must / answer*) in an hour.
5. Books (*must / return*) within fifteen days.
6. I don't think our plan (*can / carry out*) easily.
7. Happiness (*can't / buy*)
8. This letter (*must / type*) carefully.
9. New houses (*might / build*) in this area.
10. The rally (*could / win*) by Charles Dowson.

2. Completa i *mini-dialoghi* con i verbi tra parentesi alla *forma passiva passata*.

➤ A: Who painted this picture?

B: It (*may / paint*) **may have been painted** by Degas.

1. A: Do you know where my dictionary is?
B: It (*must / borrow*) by James.
2. A: Where's the meat I had left on the table?
B: It (*must / eat*) by the cat.
3. A: Why haven't Bob and Jane arrived yet?
B: They (*may / delay*) by the fog.
4. A: I can't find the ticket for the concert. Have you seen it?
B: I'm sorry, but it (*may / throw*) away together with the old newspapers.
5. A: Has the new computer been delivered?
B: No, not yet. It (*should / deliver*) at 8.00.
6. A: Here's my test, Mr Thorpe.
B: Why did you use a pencil? It (*should / write*) in pen.

3. Completa le frasi con i verbi tra parentesi alla *forma passiva* presente o passata.

1. The Great Wall of China (*can / see*) from space.
2. We still don't know, but considerable damage (*may / cause*) by the storm in Southern China this morning.
3. More emergency medical supplies (*should / send*) to that area soon after the earthquake occurred.
4. The building (*could / complete*) last week if the weather had been better.
5. The chapel (*must / repair*) immediately. It won't cost too much.
6. This photo is not very good. It (*should / take*) outdoors.

SENTENCE TRANSFORMATION (PET)

4. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima, utilizzando non più di tre parole.

- *We can serve coffee in the sitting room.*
Coffee can be served in the sitting room.
1. Someone must do the shopping today.
The shopping today.
 2. You can't buy stamps at the tobacconist's.
Stamps at the tobacconist's.
 3. A car might have run over the cyclist.
The cyclist run over by a car.
 4. Someone should take the dog for a walk.
The dog for a walk.
 5. They must have abandoned that dog.
That dog abandoned.
 6. We could hear the music from far away.
The music from far away.

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION (FCE)

5. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando da due a cinque parole compresa la parola fornita.

- *You can buy almost everything on the Internet.*
be *Almost everything can be bought on the Internet.*
1. Someone should have delivered the parcels before 10.00 a.m.
been The parcels before 10.00 a.m.
 2. You can enjoy a good view from the balcony.
enjoyed A from the balcony.
 3. You can buy the catalogue from the museum bookshop.
bought The catalogue from the museum bookshop.
 4. You shouldn't leave valuables in the hotel room.
be Valuables in the hotel room.
 5. The wind may have damaged the roof.
been The roof the wind.
 6. Pamela should have cleaned the window.
by The window Pamela.

Grammar and practice

A. Forma passiva:
costruzione personale
(*I was given*)

B. Forma passiva: costruzione
impersonale e personale (*It
is said that / He is said to*)

C. Particolari significati
passivi
Revision: forma passiva

★ A FORMA PASSIVA: costruzione personale (*I was given*)

- Alcuni verbi che normalmente hanno due complementi, come **give, offer, sell, pay, teach, show, send, bring, lend, offer, promise**, ecc.,

possono avere **due costruzioni passive**: una che comincia con la persona e una che comincia con la cosa. La **costruzione maggiormente usata** è la **costruzione personale**, cioè quella che inizia con la persona, in cui si rende soggetto il complemento indiretto. Osserva gli esempi:

Forma attiva	Costruzione passiva personale	Costruzione passiva normale (poco usata)
<i>They sent me flowers.</i> Mi mandarono dei fiori.	<i>I was sent flowers.</i>	<i>Flowers were sent to me.</i>
<i>They have offered me a job.</i> Mi hanno offerto un lavoro.	<i>I have been offered a job.</i>	<i>A job has been offered to me.</i>
<i>They will give her a prize.</i> Le daranno un premio.	<i>She will be given a prize.</i>	<i>A prize will be given to her.</i>

- La **costruzione personale** è usata anche con i verbi che significano dire, ordinare, chiedere, o aiutare come:

**ask, tell, order, warn, help,
remind, advise, allow**, ecc.

- Quando tali verbi nella frase attiva sono seguiti da **complemento + to + infinito**, nella frase passiva il **to + infinito** non cambia.

He told the kids to be quiet. → *The kids were told to be quiet.*
Disse ai bambini di fare silenzio. Ai bambini fu detto di fare silenzio.

PRACTICE

1. Trasforma le frasi nella *forma passiva* usando la *costruzione personale*.

➤ *They will give me a lift to the airport.* ***I will be given a lift to the airport.***

1. They sent me an invitation.
2. Someone asked me the way to the station.
3. They will offer her a better position in the company.
4. Someone asked him about his problems.
5. The company has promised him a higher salary.
6. They were showing her round the new house when she fainted.
7. They paid him a lot of money for his work.
8. Someone should tell her the truth.
9. They have just shown me an interesting article about new technologies.
10. Someone told me about that poor lady.

2. Bob e Mary sono in un villaggio-vacanze. Fai riferimento alle informazioni fornite e completa le frasi con il tempo corretto alla *forma passiva* dei verbi tra parentesi, come negli esempi.

YESTERDAY	TOMORROW
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the basic rules of tennis • raquets and balls • how to serve correctly 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the basic rules of windsurfing • life jackets • how to raise the sail
<p>➤ <i>They (tell) were told the basic rules of tennis.</i></p> <p>1. They (give) raquets and balls.</p> <p>2. They (teach) how to serve correctly.</p>	<p>➤ <i>They (tell) will be told the basic rules of windsurfing.</i></p> <p>3. They (give) life jackets</p> <p>4. They (show) how to raise the sail.</p>

3. Spiega ciò che è stato detto coniugando i verbi tra parentesi alla *forma passiva*.

➤ "Don't go too near the river bank," the lady said to the children.
(The children / warn / not) **The children were warned not to go too near the river bank.**

1. "You must take the second turning on the right," said the man. (*We / tell*)
2. "You can borrow my bike," my brother said to me. (*I / allow*)
3. "Could you write down your telephone number, please?" the receptionist said to Jane. (*Jane / ask*)
4. "You shouldn't go out," the doctor said to me. (*I / advise*)
5. "Remember to reserve a table," the lady said to us. (*We / remind*)

SENTENCE TRANSFORMATION (PET)

4. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima, usando non più di tre parole.

➤ *They gave him an interesting book about dreams.*
He was given an interesting book about dreams.

1. When I saw him, somebody was showing him a photo.
 When I saw him, he a photo.
2. They told him the truth.
 He the truth.
3. Nobody had ever thought of that solution before.
 That solution had never before.

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION (FCE)

5. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando da due a cinque parole compreso la parola fornita.

➤ *They are offering Miss Clark a part-time job in London.*
being *Miss Clark is being offered a part-time job in London.*

1. Did they send you a postcard from New York?
sent Were from New York?
2. Have you told all the workers that there will be a strike next week?
been Have that there will be a strike next week?
3. "Don't touch the iron!" said Mum.
warned We to touch the iron.

★ B FORMA PASSIVA:

costruzione impersonale e personale (It is said that / He is said to)

- Alcuni verbi, come
say, think, report, believe, suppose, expect, know, consider

possono avere **due costruzioni passive** che traducono la forma impersonale italiana *si dice, si pensa, si riporta, si crede, si suppone, si sa, ecc.* Osserva la tabella:

Forma attiva	Costruzione passiva impersonale	Costruzione passiva personale
Riferimento al presente o al futuro <i>Newspapers report that the show is a flop.</i> I giornali riportano che lo spettacolo è un fiasco.	<i>It is reported that the show is a flop.</i>	<i>The show is reported to be* a flop.</i>
Riferimento al passato <i>Everybody knows that he was in prison for five years.</i> Tutti sanno che lui è stato in prigione per cinque anni.	<i>It is known that he was in prison for five years.</i>	<i>He is known to have been* in prison for five years.</i>

Attenzione!!!

* Nella costruzione personale

il verbo è seguito

- dall'**infinito presente** (present infinitive): **to + forma base**
per riferirsi ad una **situazione/azione del presente o del futuro**
- dall'**infinito passato** (perfect infinitive): **to have + partecipio passato**
per riferirsi ad una **situazione/azione passata**

L'**infinito** può anche essere nella **forma progressiva** (ma solo con i verbi di azione)

They suppose he is working for FBI. → *He is supposed to be working for FBI.*

They suppose he was working for FBI. → *He is supposed to have been working for FBI.*

(Per i tempi dell'**infinito** vedi a **PAG. 376**)

PRACTICE

1. Trasforma le frasi nelle 2 *costruzioni passive possibili* (*costruzione impersonale e personale*) con *riferimento al presente o al futuro*.

➤ *People think that football players are paid too much.*

It is thought that football players are paid too much.

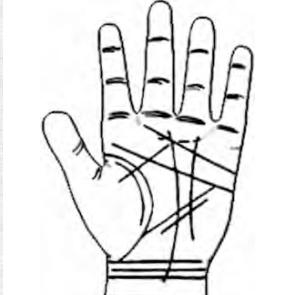
Football players are thought to be paid too much.

1. They expect that the cost of living will continue to rise.
2. Everybody thinks she is a wonderful actress.
3. Everybody expects that Michael Swan will break the world record at the Olympic Games.
4. Everybody knows that too much sugar is bad for our health.
5. They say that dreaming is a mysterious activity.

2. Fai riferimento alle informazioni fornite per completare le frasi, seguendo gli esempi.

- *People with a long head line are supposed to be intelligent.*
- *People with a long life line are supposed to have a long life.*

DO YOU BELIEVE IN FORTUNE TELLING?



Head line
 Long line: intelligent
 Straight line: practical,
 realistic
 Sloping line: imaginative,
 creative

Life line
 Long line: long life
 Breaks in the line: health
 problems

Heart line
 Short straight line:
 problems with love
 Long curved line: happiness
 in love
 Small lines emerging from
 heart line: flirtation and
 affairs

1. People with a straight head line
2. People with a sloping head line
3. People with breaks in the life line
4. People with a short straight heart line
5. People with a long curved heart line
6. People with small lines emerging from the heart line

3. Trasforma le frasi nelle 2 costruzioni passive possibili (*costruzione impersonale e personale*) con riferimento al passato.

- *They suppose that the robbers have flown to some tropical island.*
It is supposed that the robbers have flown to some tropical island.
The robbers are supposed to have flown to some tropical island.

1. Newspapers report that the accident occurred in the late afternoon.
2. They say that Tom's grandmother was a very famous ballet dancer when she was young.
3. They say that Mr Swanson was a brilliant actor.
4. Newspapers report that a famous actress was arrested for shoplifting yesterday.
5. Journalists report that the detective found the missing child.
6. Everybody knows that Patrick gave a lot of money to charity.

4. Trasforma le frasi nelle 2 costruzioni possibili (*costruzione impersonale e personale*). Nella costruzione personale, usa correttamente la forma progressiva dell'infinito presente o passato.

- *They know that the famous actress is arriving on Sunday morning.*
It is known that the famous actress is arriving on Sunday morning.
The famous actress is known to be arriving on Sunday morning.

1. Everybody knows that Tom is constantly sending Pamela messages.
2. They say that the committee is discussing the project on Monday.
3. Newspapers report that poverty is increasing in some European countries.
4. They say the climate is changing.
5. They say that the robbers were wearing masks.
6. Some people believe that extraterrestrials are watching us.



C PARTICOLARI SIGNIFICATI PASSIVI

- I verbi **need***, **want**, **require** possono essere seguiti dalla **forma in -ing** con significato passivo.
 - Questa costruzione si usa per esprimere che è necessario effettuare qualche miglioramento o riparare qualche cosa.
 - ***need** può essere seguito anche da **to be + participio passato** (infinito presente passivo).

This door needs/wants/requires painting.

Questa porta necessita di essere verniciata.

This door needs to be painted.

- Alcuni verbi**, tra cui **close**, **open**, **read**, **sell**, **wash**, **print**, **iron**, possono avere significato passivo anche se usati alla forma attiva.
 - Questa costruzione corrisponde al "si" impersonale italiano.

This door won't open.

Questa porta non si apre.

This new model sells well.

Questo nuovo modello si vende bene.

PRACTICE

1. Scrivi frasi con il verbo *need* e le 2 costruzioni possibili. Utilizza il verbo tra parentesi come nell'esempio.

- *This knife is blunt. (sharpen)* *This knife **needs sharpening / needs to be sharpened**.*
1. My trousers are wrinkled. (*iron*) My trousers /
2. I haven't fed the baby yet. (*feed*) The baby /
3. There is no petrol in the tank. (*fill*) The petrol tank /
4. The fence is broken. (*repair*) The fence /

2. Completa le frasi usando i verbi tra parentesi, come nell'esempio.

- *My nails are too long. (need / cut)* *My nails **need cutting**.*
1. Your hair is dirty. (*want / wash*) Your hair
2. There is a hole in my trousers. (*need / repair*) My trousers
3. These plants are dry. (*want / water*) These plants
4. Your shoes are muddy. (*need / clean*) Your shoes
5. There is a hole in the roof. (*require / fix*) The roof

3. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima.

- *I can't iron this shirt easily.* *This shirt **doesn't iron** easily.*
1. We are selling thousands of copies of this book.
This book well.
2. This book is easy to read.
This book easily.
3. We will sell our goods easily on the Italian market.
Our goods easily on the Italian market.
4. You can wash this pullover easily.
This pullover easily.

1. Indica quali frasi sono *attive* (A) e quali sono *passive* (P).

1. Mary was tired. (...) 2. Tom was watching TV. (...) 3. He was told the bad news. (...) 4. He was asked to send his Curriculum Vitae. (...) 5. Who will interview the applicants? (...) 6. Alex is exhausted. (...) 7. They were sleeping by the river. (...) 8. We will have finished testing these cars by the end of the week. (...) 9. Dinner is being served. (...) 10. This dress was designed by Armani. (...) 11. That dog must have been abandoned. (...) 12. She is said to have killed her husband. (...) 13. She got stung by a bee. (...)

2. Riscrivi le frasi nella *forma passiva*. Ometti l'agente quando non è necessario.

1. Someone has robbed the bank. 2. They will give a concert next week. 3. Who served the food? 4. They are serving dinner. 5. Agatha Christie wrote "Murder on the Orient Express". 6. Who will interview the applicant? 7. Someone should have watered those plants. 8. Clowns have just performed tricks. 9. They have built a new road connecting the village to the town. 10. You can fry Chinese noodles.

3. Completa il testo con il tempo corretto dei verbi tra parentesi alla *forma attiva* o *passiva*.

FESTIVITIES

HOGMANAY
A great time for the Scots

Hogmanay 1) (*celebrate*) in Scotland on the night of December 31st. It 2) (*be*) a time for people to welcome the coming of the new year. Preparations for Hogmanay 3) (*begin*) at the end of November when Christmas trees 4) (*decorate*) and shortbread biscuits 5) (*bake*) On Old Year's Night, the Scots 6) (*wear*) their smartest tartan clothes and 7) (*gather*) in town squares or 8) (*attend*) parties, where they 9) (*wait*) till midnight. At midnight, the clock 10) (*strike*) twelve and the sound of bells 11) (*can / hear*) everywhere. Everyone 12) (*cheer*) and 13) (*shout*) "Happy New Year!" They 14) (*kiss*) each other and 15) (*drink*) whisky. Then the "merry-makers" 16) (*go*) to visit their friends to wish them a happy new year. It 17) (*believe*) that it 18) (*be*) good luck when the first person to enter someone's house in the new year is a tall, dark, handsome man.

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION (FCE)**4.** Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando da 2 a 5 parole compresa la parola fornita.

➤ *Who invented the telephone?*

was *Who was the telephone invented by?*

1. Did you give the parcel to Clare?

given Was to Clare?

2. My favourite director directed that film.

by That film my favourite director.

3. Why haven't you dusted the chairs yet?

been Why dusted yet?

4. Everyone thought that the man was very rich.

was The man very rich.

Grammar and practice

A. Fare + infinito:
have something done

B. Fare + infinito:
make/have/let somebody do - get somebody to do

C. Verbi di percezione
Revision: fare + infinito - verbi di percezione

★ A FARE + INFINITO: **have something done**

L'italiano "*far/farsi fare qualcosa*" si rende in inglese con la struttura "**have something done**" (**causative form**) quando l'**infinito italiano ha funzione passiva**, cioè quando l'oggetto riceve l'azione espressa dall'infinito.

have + oggetto + participio passato	<i>They have their flat painted once a year.</i> Fanno imbiancare il loro appartamento una volta all'anno. (= Qualcuno imbianca il loro appartamento una volta all'anno. = Il loro appartamento viene imbiancato da qualcuno una volta all'anno.)
- have deve essere debitamente coniugato . Osserva gli esempi:	<i>Someone is painting their flat.</i> → <i>They are having their flat painted.</i> <i>Someone painted their flat.</i> → <i>They had their flat painted.</i> <i>Someone has painted their flat</i> → <i>They have had their flat painted.</i> <i>Someone will paint their flat.</i> → <i>They will have their flat painted.</i>
- Le forme interrogative, negative e interrogativo-negative del <i>present simple</i> e del <i>past simple</i> si costruiscono con gli ausiliari do / does e did	<i>Do they have their flat painted?</i> - Yes, they do . / No, they don't . Si fanno imbiancare l'appartamento? - Sì. / No. <i>Did they have their flat painted?</i> - Yes, they did . / No, they didn't . Si sono fatti imbiancare l'appartamento? - Sì. / No.

Forma alternativa

Il verbo **to get** può essere usato in alternativa a **to have**.

They had their flat painted = *They got their flat painted*.

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi con la forma corretta di *have*.

➤ *We have our rubbish collected every day.*

1. Mary some plants planted in a week's time. 2. Jane her hair cut at the moment. 3. We the telephone fixed yesterday. 4. They the furniture delivered when I called.

2. Riscrivi le frasi con il tempo corretto di *have something done*, seguendo l'esempio.

➤ *The hairdresser cuts Jane's hair four times a year.*

Jane has her hair cut four times a year.

1. The milkman delivers Lucy's milk to her house every morning. // Lucy
2. The optician tested John's eyes yesterday. // John
3. The doctor is checking Donald's blood pressure at the moment. // Donald
4. The builder is going to fix the roof of Peter's house. // Peter
5. The dentist has just taken out Mary's tooth. // Mary
6. The shop will develop our photos in an hour. // We

3. Rispondi alle domande seguendo l'esempio. Fai attenzione ai tempi verbali.

➤ *Is Mark repairing the car himself? - No, he's having it repaired.*

1. Did Alan paint the kitchen himself? - No,

2. Has Mary washed her clothes herself? - No,

3. Is George going to mend his watch himself? - No,

4. Did Susan remove that coffee stain herself? - No,

5. Would you decorate the house yourself? - No,

6. Does he wash his car himself? - No,

4. Sarah Jefferson è una casalinga, non è molto ricca e fa tutte le cose da sola. Amanda Davis è una donna d'affari molto impegnata, piuttosto ricca e si fa fare molte cose da altri. Completa le frasi come nell'esempio.

SARAH



AMANDA



➤ *I make the beds.*

1. I clean the house.

2. I prepare all the meals.

3. I wash the dishes.

4. I do the shopping.

5. I do the gardening.

6. I wash my hair myself.

7. I wash and iron all the clothes.

8. I look after my children.

➤ *I have the beds made by my maid.*

1.by a cleaner.

2.by a Chinese cook.

3.by my maid.

4.by my housekeeper.

5.by a gardener.

6.by my personal hairdresser.

7.by my maid.

8.by an au-pair girl.

5. Fai riferimento all'esercizio precedente e formula domande e risposte su Sarah e Amanda, seguendo l'esempio.

➤ *Sarah / the beds / make / ?*

Does Sarah have the beds made? - No, she doesn't.

1. Amanda / the beds / make / ?

4. Sarah / the shopping / do / ?

2. Sarah / the house / clean / ?

5. Amanda / the gardening / do / ?

3. Amanda / the dishes / wash / ?

6. Sarah / the children / look after / ?

6. Completa i *mini-dialoghi* con le domande adeguate. Fai attenzione ai tempi verbali.

➤ A: *Where did you have your photos developed?*

B: *We had our photos developed at Photo Studio.*

1. A: Why? B: I'm going to have my hair permed because I like curly hair.

2. A: When? B: I had my coat dry-cleaned two days ago.

3. A: Where? B: My sister had this dress made at "T-Fashion".

4. A: How often? B: I have my hair dyed once a month.

★ **B** FARE + INFINITO: make/have/let somebody do - get somebody to do

L'italiano "fare + infinito", con **infinito in funzione attiva**, viene reso in inglese in diversi modi a seconda del significato che "fare" ha nella frase.
Osserva le seguenti strutture e come si rende in inglese l'infinito italiano.

TO MAKE + oggetto + infinito senza to	<i>They made him wash the car.</i> (= <i>They insisted that he should wash the car.</i>) Gli fecero lavare la macchina.
- quando si vuole esprimere obbligo	
- per un'azione volontaria	<i>He made me laugh.</i> Mi fece ridere.
TO HAVE + oggetto + infinito senza to	<i>They had him wash the car.</i> (= <i>They asked him to wash the car.</i>) Gli fecero lavare la macchina
- quando "fare" esprime una richiesta	
TO LET + oggetto + infinito senza to	<i>They let him wash the car.</i> (= <i>They allowed him to wash the car.</i>) Gli fecero/permisero di lavare la macchina.
- quando si vuole esprimere permesso	
TO GET + oggetto + infinito con to	<i>They got him to wash the car.</i> (= <i>They persuaded him to wash the car.</i>) Lo persuasero a lavare la macchina.
- quando si vuole esprimere persuasione	

Forme passive

to be made + infinito con to	<i>I was made to wash the car.</i> Fui costretto a lavare la macchina.
to let non ha la forma passiva - viene sostituito con to be allowed + infinito con to	<i>I was allowed to leave the room.</i> Mi fu permesso di lasciare la stanza.

to make presenta anche la seguente costruzione:
to make + pron. riflessivo + participio passato

to make oneself loved	farsi amare
to make oneself hated	farsi odiare
to make oneself understood	farsi capire
to make oneself respected	farsi rispettare
to make oneself known	farsi conoscere

He made himself understood.
Si fece capire.

Ricorda

...le seguenti espressioni con **let**

to let (someone) have	far avere (a qualcuno)
to let (someone) know	far sapere (a qualcuno)
to let (someone) in	far entrare (qualcuno)
to let (someone) out	far uscire (qualcuno)

Please, let me in.

Per favore, fammi entrare.

Ricorda

... i seguenti verbi ed espressioni:

to boil	far bollire	to point out	far notare
to borrow	farsi prestare	to send for	far chiamare
to charge	far pagare	to show	far vedere, mostrare
to drop	far cadere	to turn up	farsi vivo
to grow	far crescere	to keep (someone) waiting	far aspettare (qualcuno)
to hurt	far male	to drive (someone) crazy/mad	far impazzire (qualcuno)

PRACTICE

1. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

1. I hope I can **let / get** Dad **to sell / sell** his old car.
2. I couldn't **get / let** her **to change / change** her mind.
3. I think John's parents should **make / let** him **go / to go** on holiday with his friends.
4. It was such a funny story that it **got / made** me **laugh / to laugh**.
5. A sudden black out **made / got** all the lifts **to stop / stop**.
6. Heavy rain usually **makes / gets** the river **flood / to flood** at this time of year.
7. Her boss **let / made** Jane **finish / to finish** the work before she left the office.

2. Completa le seguenti frasi con il verbo tra parentesi nella forma corretta (*infinito con to o infinito senza to?*)

1. My sister has bought a new car but she doesn't let me (*use*) it.
2. They didn't let the witness (*speak*) 3. When I was a child my parents made me (*go*) to bed very early.
4. He was made (*interrupt*) his speech.
5. Paul got his parents (*buy*) him a motorbike.
6. He didn't let me (*buy*) a bottle of champagne.
7. I was made (*wash*) the dishes.
8. She made me (*cry*) 9. We had Peter (*order*) the cake.

3. Completa le frasi utilizzando le espressioni fornite in ordine sparso. Fai attenzione ai tempi verbali e ai pronomi riflessivi.

*make oneself heard - make oneself understood - make oneself known
make oneself loved - make oneself respected - make oneself hated*

- *He couldn't speak English but he managed to **make himself understood** through gestures.*
1. We kept shouting for help. Eventually we managed to
 2. She's such a sweet girl. She can easily.
 3. He's such a horrible person. He in many occasions so far.
 4. Tom's a good actor but he hasn't had the chance to
 5. Mrs Thorpe is an excellent teacher. Besides he knows how to

4. Completa le frasi utilizzando i verbi forniti in ordine sparso nel tempo e nella forma corretti.

*send for - let/have - turn up - let/know - keep/waiting - drop
boil - hurt - show - drive/crazy - charge*

- *If you are coming over for the weekend, please **let me know**.*
1. Please, us a fax as soon as possible.
 2. We were having tea when Alex unexpectedly.
 3. You must the spaghetti in salted water for eight minutes.
 4. The man us the way to the village on the map.
 5. How much do you for board and lodging?
 6. The queen a huntsman and told him to kill Snow White.
 7. Charles is always late. Yesterday he me for an hour.
 8. While he was having breakfast he his cup of tea on his trousers.
 9. I my left leg when I stumbled on a stump.
 10. That dog will me if it doesn't stop barking.



C VERBI DI PERCEZIONE

I più comuni verbi di percezione sono:

**to feel, to hear, to listen to, to see, to watch, to look at,
to observe, to notice, to smell, to perceive, ecc.**

Con questi verbi si hanno le seguenti costruzioni (osserva come si rende in inglese ***l'infinito italiano*** che segue un verbo di percezione).

A.

Quando l'**infinito italiano** ha **funzione attiva** e
il verbo di percezione è in **forma attiva**

**S. + v. di percepz. in forma attiva + oggetto +
infinito senza *to***

- azione percepita dall'inizio alla fine

We saw him cross the road.

Lo vedemmo attraversare la strada.

We heard him shout.

Lo udimmo gridare. (una sola volta - azione breve, non ripetuta e non continuata percepita dall'inizio alla fine)

**S. + v. di percepz. in forma attiva + oggetto +
forma in *-ing***

- azione percepita solo in parte/in corso di svolgimento

We saw him crossing the road.

Lo vedemmo attraversare (mentre attraversava) la strada.

We heard him shouting.

Lo udimmo gridare. (più di una volta o in modo continuo - azione breve ripetuta e continuata percepita nel suo ripetersi o nella sua continuità)

B.

Quando l'**infinito italiano** ha **funzione attiva** e
il verbo di percezione è in **forma passiva**

**S. + v. di percepz. in forma passiva +
infinito con *to***

- azione percepita dall'inizio alla fine

He was seen to cross the road.

Fu visto attraversare la strada.

He was heard to shout.

Fu udito gridare. (una sola volta)

**S. + v. di percepz. in forma passiva +
forma in *-ing***

- azione percepita solo in parte/in corso di svolgimento

He was seen crossing the road.

Fu visto attraversare (mentre attraversava) la strada.

He was heard shouting.

Fu udito gridare. (più di una volta o in modo continuo)

Attenzione!!!

Non sempre il contesto può spiegare se usare **l'infinito** o la **forma in *-ing***.
In caso di dubbio è preferibile usare la **forma in *-ing***.

C.

Quando l'**infinito italiano** ha **funzione passiva** (l'oggetto subisce l'azione)

**S. + v. di percepz. + oggetto +
participio passato**

- azione percepita dall'inizio alla fine

I heard this opera sung by Pavarotti.

Ho sentito cantare questa opera da Pavarotti.
(cantare ha il significato di "essere cantata" dall'inizio alla fine)

**S. + v. di percepz. + oggetto +
being + participio passato**

- azione percepita solo in parte/in corso di svolgimento

I saw the pizza being prepared by my sister

Vidi preparare la pizza da mia sorella.
(preparare ha il significato di "essere preparata", in fase di svolgimento)

PRACTICE

1. Completa le seguenti frasi con l'*infinito senza to* o la *forma in -ing* dei verbi tra parentesi (azione percepita dall'inizio alla fine o solo in parte?).

1. I was observing the two men. Then I saw them (*jump*) into a car.
2. I watched Mum (*cook*) dinner because I wanted to learn.
3. When I entered the room I saw Tom (*talk*) to a strange man.
4. I listened to him (*play*) the whole song.
5. When she got home she heard her husband (*sing*)
6. Dad opened the bathroom door and saw me (*smoke*)
7. They noticed the woman (*take*) a CD and (*hide*) it under her coat.
8. The students heard the bell (*ring*) and they immediately closed their books.
9. On walking past her room, we heard her (*cry*)
10. I saw the boy (*jump*) over the fence.

2. Riscrivi le frasi in *forma passiva*.

- *They noticed the woman steal a pair of gloves.*
The woman was noticed to steal a pair of gloves.
1. They observed us wash the car from top to bottom.
 2. The witness saw the robbers run away.
 3. We noticed the two men jump into a black car.
 4. They heard the little girl scream.
 5. They watched the man repair the gate.

We
The robbers
The two men
The little girl
The man

3. Riscrivi le frasi in *forma passiva*.

- *We heard the old woman shouting.*
The old woman was heard shouting.
1. We saw the woman making dinner.
 2. They saw the two women discussing.
 3. They heard the old man calling for help.
 4. We noticed her talking to someone.
 5. Someone saw him waiting for the bus.

The woman
The two women
The old man
She
He

4. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

1. We saw the girls **talking / to talk** to two boys.
2. He was seen **crying / cry**.
3. The woman was heard **shout / to shout**.
4. We heard him **to shout / shouting**.
5. They heard me **call / to call** their names.
6. He was seen **repairing / repair** his car.
7. She was heard **to talk / talk** about Peter.
8. I saw him **painting / to paint** the kitchen.
9. We saw the woman **steal / stolen** the scarf.
10. I observed the woman **water / being watered** the plants.
11. I saw the house **build / being built**.
12. They were heard **quarrelling / quarrel**.
13. I saw the girl **slapped / slap** by her mother.
14. The young woman was seen **to sit / sit** on a bench.

REVISION

fare + infinito - verbi di percezione

SENTENCE TRANSFORMATION (PET)

1. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima, usando non più di tre parole.

- *My parents don't let me go out after dinner.*
I'm not allowed to go out after dinner.
1. My parents oblige me to go to bed early.
My parents make to bed early.
2. Someone made her clothes.
She made.
3. It was difficult to persuade Tom to take any medicine.
It was difficult to get any medicine.
4. See if you can convince him to change his mind.
See if you can get his mind.
5. The teacher didn't let Peter join the lesson because he was late again.
Peter wasn't allowed the lesson because he was late again.
6. They ordered the taxi driver to stop immediately.
They made the immediately.
7. We won't permit them to interfere in our affairs.
We won't let in our affairs.
8. One of our friends will mend the roof for us.
We will have by one of our friends.

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION (FCE)

2. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima, usando da due a cinque parole compreso la parola fornita.

- *The coach made Alex sit out of the second game.*
was *Alex was made to sit out of the second game.*
1. We saw that company perform "Hamlet".
by We saw "Hamlet" that company.
2. We saw Tom throw a stone at George.
seen Tom a stone at George.
3. Why do you forbid them from playing computer games?
play Why don't you let computer games?
4. Can you please send us your latest catalogue and price list?
have Can you please let and price list?
5. Even though she didn't speak English well, they understood her.
made She even though she didn't speak English well.,
6. The boss won't give her permission to leave the office early.
let The boss the office early.
7. Someone will plant some apple trees in my garden.
planted I will in my garden.
8. He insisted that John should sign the contract.
made He the contract.
9. He persuaded Mary to make a cake for the party.
got He a cake for the party.
10. We asked Paul to give us a lift to the station.
had We a lift to the station.

MULTIPLE CHOICE

3. Scegli l'alternativa corretta.

➤ *Tourists can often make themselves ...*

A understand

B to understand

C understood

1. Could you let us ... your catalogue?

A have

B having

C had

2. My mother made me ... my room.

A to clean

B cleaning

C clean

3. He is having the sitting room ...

A painted

B painting

C paint

4. Bob had his ears ...

A to be pierced

B pierced

C piercing

5. Don't make me ...

A laugh

B laughing

C to laugh

6. He was seen ... the girl.

A being kissed

B to kiss

C kiss

7. I heard Bill ... the door.

A slam

B slammed

C to slam

8. He can make himself ...

A respected

B respect

C to respect

9. They got Mr Gorman ... the contract.

A sign

B to sign

C signing

10. She is having the silver ...

A polish

B to polish

C polished

ERROR CORRECTION

4. Alcune frasi sono corrette altre sono sbagliate in quanto contengono una parola non necessaria.

Se la frase è corretta metti un tick (✓). Se la frase contiene una parola non necessaria, scrivi la parola a lato. Ti sono forniti 2 esempi.

➤ *They won't let us to watch television until midnight.*

➤ *Why did they make us come so early?*

1. We had all the windows being cleaned.
2. She will have her nose had pierced.
3. She had her car been cleaned by the chauffeur.
4. She was noticed to steal the watch.
5. He made them accept the gift.
6. They can make themselves to understood.
7. We have our beds made by the maid.
8. He got his friend to lend him his bike.
9. Why don't you let us to watch television?
10. Experience has made me myself understand the value of friendship.

<i>to</i>
✓
1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.
8.
9.
10.

Grammar and practice

- A. Discorso diretto e indiretto: *to say / to tell*
 B. Discorso indiretto: riportare affermazioni
 C. Discorso indiretto: riportare domande e risposte
 D. Discorso indiretto: riportare richieste, ordini, consigli, ecc.

- E. I modali nel discorso indiretto
 F. Discorso indiretto: periodi ipotetici, *had better, would rather, wish ...*

Revision: discorso indiretto

★ A DISCORSO DIRETTO E INDIRETTO: *TO SAY / TO TELL*

Sia **to say** che **to tell** significano **dire** ma
SI USA

TO SAY per:

- introdurre il **discorso diretto**

- quando non è espressa la persona cui si parla
- quando è espressa la persona cui si parla

Peter said: "Clare is still sleeping."

Peter said to me: "Clare is still sleeping."

- introdurre il **discorso indiretto**

- quando non è espressa la persona cui si parla

Peter said (that) Jennifer was still sleeping.

TO TELL per:

- introdurre il **discorso indiretto**

- quando è espressa la persona cui si parla

Peter told me (that) Clare was still sleeping.

Attenzione!!!

- La congiunzione **that** che introduce il discorso indiretto può essere omessa.
 - Il verbo **to tell** non è mai seguito dalla preposizione *to*.
- He told me (that) he was tired.*
non: *He told to me (that) he was tired.*

Ricorda

le seguenti espressioni con **to say** e **to tell**

To say	<i>good morning</i> <i>good afternoon</i> <i>good evening</i> <i>goodbye</i> <i>something/nothing</i> <i>so</i> <i>a few words</i>	To tell	<i>the truth</i> <i>a lie</i> <i>a secret</i> <i>a story</i> <i>the time</i> <i>the difference</i> <i>one's name</i> <i>the way</i>
---------------	--	----------------	--

★ B DISCORSO INDIRETTO: riportare affermazioni

RIPORTARE AFFERMAZIONI

Verbi introduttivi più comunemente usati:

to say, to tell

Altri verbi introduttivi per riportare affermazioni sono:

to add	aggiungere	to confess	confessare	to inform	informare
to announce	annunciare	to confirm	confermare	to promise	promettere
to assure	assicurare	to exclaim	esclamare	to report	riportare
to complain	lamentarsi	to explain	spiegare	to think	pensare

Quando il **verbo introduttivo** del discorso indiretto è al **past simple**, la trasformazione dal discorso diretto al discorso indiretto (*reported speech*) avviene effettuando delle **variazioni** che riguardano i tempi verbali (come in italiano).
"It's snowing." → He said (that) it was snowing.

Attenzione!!!

Quando il verbo introduttivo non è al *past simple*, i **tempi verbali** restano **invariati**.
"It's snowing." → He's saying (that) it is snowing.

♦ VARIAZIONI DEI TEMPI VERBALI

(discorso indiretto con verbo introduttivo al past simple)

Discorso diretto		Discorso indiretto
Present simple	→	Past simple
<i>I'm hungry.</i>		<i>He said he was hungry.</i>
Present continuous	→	Past continuous
<i>Bill is sleeping</i>		<i>He said Bill was sleeping.</i>
Past simple *	→	Past perfect
<i>I met him yesterday.</i>		<i>He said he had met him the day before.</i>
Past continuous	→	Past continuous
<i>I was reading.</i>		<i>He said he was reading.</i>
Present perfect	→	Past perfect
<i>I have received his letter.</i>		<i>She said she had received his letter.</i>
Present perfect continuous	→	Past perfect continuous
<i>I have been working all day.</i>		<i>He said he had been working all day.</i>
Future with am/is/are going to	→	Future in the past with was/were going to
<i>It is going to rain again.</i>		<i>He said it was going to rain again.</i>
Future simple **	→	Present conditional
<i>I will see him tomorrow.</i>		<i>He said he would see him the following day.</i>
Future continuous	→	Present conditional continuous
<i>I will be driving to Liverpool tomorrow morning.</i>		<i>He said he would be driving to Liverpool the following morning.</i>

* Il **past simple** può rimanere invariato.

Attenzione!!!

FUTURE IN THE PAST

** In italiano per riportare il **futuro** si usa il condizionale passato. In inglese invece viene generalmente reso con il **present conditional** con funzione di **futuro nel passato**.

Si rende con il **perfect conditional** (condizionale passato) quando si sa che l'azione non si è verificata.

Confronta gli esempi:

He said he would come.

Disse che sarebbe venuto.

He said he would have come (but he didn't).

Disse che sarebbe venuto (ma non lo ha fatto).

♦ ALTRE VARIAZIONI

Variazioni dei pronomi personali,
degli aggettivi e pronomi possessivi,
dei riflessivi, e dei dimostrativi

Discorso diretto	Discorso indiretto
<i>I / you / we</i> →	<i>he / she / they</i>
<i>me</i> →	<i>him / her</i>
<i>my / your</i> →	<i>his / her</i>
<i>our</i> →	<i>their</i>
<i>mine / yours</i> →	<i>his / hers</i>
<i>myself</i> →	<i>himself / herself</i>
<i>this / these</i> →	<i>that / those</i>

Variazioni delle espressioni di luogo e di tempo

Discorso diretto	Discorso indiretto
<i>here</i>	→ <i>there</i>
<i>now</i>	→ <i>then</i>
<i>tomorrow</i>	→ <i>the following day</i>
<i>today / tonight</i>	→ <i>that day / that night</i>
<i>yesterday</i>	→ <i>the day before</i>
<i>ago</i>	→ <i>before</i>
<i>next week/month/year</i>	→ <i>the following week/month/year</i>
<i>last week/month/year</i>	→ <i>the previous week/month/year</i>
	<i>the week/month/year before</i>

PRACTICE

1. Completa le seguenti frasi con *said* o *told*.

1. I**told**..... him where I had been the night before. 2. He**said**..... to me: "I'll send you a fax." 3. The doctor**told**.... me that I must stay in bed for a week. 4. "I've never been here before,"**said**.... the girl. 5. Mark ...**told**..... Mary he had just come back from South Africa. 6. Alex**said**..... he had never been fishing before. 7. The teacher**told**... me I had failed the test. 8. She**said**.... she was going to help me. 9. The operator**told**..... me he would put me through to the manager. 10. "You can leave a message, if you like,"**said**..... the secretary.

2. Indica se le seguenti frasi sono corrette (R) o sbagliate (W). Riscrivi le frasi sbagliate correttamente.

- *I'm sure he said me the truth.* **(W)** *I'm sure he told me the truth.*
1. Granny, can you say me a story?
2. She thanked me for the tea and told goodbye.
3. Can you tell me the time, please?
4. He said I was wrong.
5. He said to her that he would be late.

3. Riporta le seguenti affermazioni al *discorso indiretto*. Introducilo con *He said*. Effettua tutti i cambiamenti necessari

- *"I'll be in California next month."*
He said that he would be in California the following month. 
1. "I was watching TV." 2. "I met Tom yesterday." 3. "Alex has never been here." 4. "We won a bicycle in the city lottery." 5. "You have to stay in bed." 6. "I didn't recognize him." 7. "I don't want to go skiing." 8. I'll be lying on the beach tomorrow." 9. "I won't talk to her again." 10. "They won't play tomorrow."

4. Riporta ciascuna affermazione al *discorso indiretto*. Introducilo con *Tom told me that ...*. Effettua tutti i cambiamenti necessari.

- *"I have just got married."* **Tom told me that he had just got married.** 
1. "I work in a bank." 2. "I live in the country." 3. "I don't like living in big cities." 4. "I haven't seen Bill for a long time." 5. "My family are all very well." 6. "My brother has moved to Coventry." 7. "My sister has just had a baby." 8. "I'm attending a guitar course." 9. "I'm going to the USA for work next week." 10. "I'll send you a postcard."

5. Trasforma le seguenti frasi in discorso indiretto. Usa *told* e le persone indicate tra parentesi. Effettua tutti i cambiamenti necessari.

- *We have been waiting for you for half an hour.* (*they / Mary*)
They told Mary they had been waiting for her for half an hour.
1. I prefer oranges to apples. (*David / me*)
2. You'll have to have an operation. (*the doctor / Paul*)
3. I forgot to buy a newspaper for you this morning. (*she / Mark*)
4. The company is losing money. (*the manager / the workers*)
5. I haven't finished reading the novel you lent me last month. (*he / Susan*)

- 6.** Riscrivi le affermazioni utilizzando *to say* o *to tell* come verbi introduttivi al *past simple*. Effettua tutti i cambiamenti necessari.

➤ *Paul: "I arrived five minutes ago."*

Paul said that he had arrived five minutes before.

1. Robert to his father: "I'll wash the car this afternoon."
2. Betty to Peter: "I've lost the car keys."
3. The student to the teacher: "I'm late because I missed the bus."
4. Bob: "I've never been to London before."
5. Mary: "We've exchanged e-mails since last summer."

- 7.** Riporta le affermazioni al discorso indiretto usando i verbi introduttivi tra parentesi al *past simple*. Effettua tutti i cambiamenti necessari.

➤ *"I've been waiting for you for half an hour!" (he / complain)*

He complained that he had been waiting for me for half an hour.

1. "I saw a ghost last night!" (she / exclaim)
2. "We're leaving for New York tomorrow." (they / inform / us)
3. "You've broken your left leg." (the doctor / confirm)
4. "The milkman hasn't come yet." (she / observe)
5. "I ate all the chocolates." (the child / confess)
6. "Maria has been studying English for four years but she isn't very fluent." (the teacher / point out)
7. "I won't tell anyone." (he / promise)
8. "You'll feel better if you take these tablets." (the doctor / assure / Mrs Jones)

- 8.** Trasforma le frasi dal discorso indiretto al discorso diretto seguendo l'esempio.

➤ *Jane complained that that beach was overcrowded.*

Jane said: "This beach is overcrowded!"

1. The man informed us that there was a train at 8.50.
The man said: "....."
2. Brenda announced that she was going to have a baby.
Brenda said: "....."
3. She promised that she would do all her homework.
She said: "....."
4. The thief confessed that he had stolen the money from the safe.
The thief said: "....."
5. He complained that nothing exciting ever happened to him.
He said: "....."

- 9.** Completa le frasi con gli ausiliari appropriati: *would, had, was/were*.

1. Tom said he seen the doctor the day before.
2. The fortune teller said that Mary become rich and famous.
3. She said that Mark leaving the following day.
4. Susan said she been studying French for two years.
5. They said they send us a photo from Miami.
6. Martha said that she just met Paul in the park.
7. Bob said that their teacher teaching them karate.
8. The thief said that he not taken the money.
9. Bill said that he be late for dinner.
10. Barbara said she have arrived on Monday, but she didn't.

★ C DISCORSO INDIRETTO: riportare domande e risposte

RIPORTARE DOMANDE

Verbi introduttivi più comunemente usati:

to ask (chiedere), **to want to know** (voler sapere), **to wonder** (chiedersi)

- Valgono le stesse regole riguardanti le variazioni dei tempi verbali, dei pronomi personali, degli aggettivi e pronomi possessivi, ecc. presentate nel paragrafo precedente.
- Nelle domande indirette **non si usa più la costruzione interrogativa del verbo**, ma la forma interrogativa del verbo deve essere riportata in forma affermativa.

Riportare yes/no questions	Riportare wh-questions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Nel riportare Yes/No questions la domanda indiretta viene introdotta da if (se) o whether (se ... oppure no). <i>Are you tired? → He asked (me) if I was tired.</i> <p>(Per if e whether, vedi anche a PAG. 349)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Nel riportare Wh-questions, che iniziano con una question word (<i>who, where, when, why, what, how, ecc.</i>), la domanda indiretta comincia con la stessa question word. <i>Where do you live? → He asked (me) where I lived.</i>

RIPORTARE RISPOSTE

Verbi introduttivi più comunemente usati:

to answer e **to reply** (rispondere)

Riportare risposte brevi	Riportare risposte a wh-questions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Le risposte brevi si riportano utilizzando gli ausiliari come segue: <i>"Is she sleeping?" "Yes, she is."</i> ↓ <i>He asked (me) if she was sleeping and I answered she was.</i> <i>"Have you ever been to Africa?" "No, I haven't."</i> ↓ <i>He asked (me) if I had ever been to Africa and I answered I hadn't.</i> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Nel riportare risposte a wh-questions si usa lo stesso tempo verbale della domanda indiretta. <i>"Where do you live?" "I live in York."</i> ↓ <i>He asked (me) where I lived and I answered I lived in York.</i> <i>"What time did they leave?" "They left at 2 o'clock."</i> ↓ <i>He asked me what time they had left and I replied they had left at two o'clock.</i>

PRACTICE

1. Trasforma le domande al *discorso indiretto* introducendolo con *He asked ...* Effettua tutti i cambiamenti necessari.

➤ "Are you bored?" **He asked (me) if I was bored.**

1. "Is she still working?" 2. "Have you got any brothers or sisters?" 3. "Do you like New York?"
4. "Did you tell her the truth?" 5. "Have you ever been abroad?" 6. "Were you having lunch?"
7. "Will we visit the museum tomorrow?" 8. "Had they seen that film before?"

- 2.** Trasforma le domande al *discorso indiretto* introducendolo come indicato tra parentesi.
Effettua tutti i cambiamenti necessari.

- "What time is it?" (*Mary asked*) ***Mary asked what time it was.***
1. "Where were you yesterday morning?" (*The policeman asked the man*)
 2. "Where did you spend your holidays last summer?" (*Bob asked me*)
 3. "Where's Allan?" (*I asked*)
 4. "How did you travel?" (*My brother asked me*)
 5. "When are you going to leave?" (*The travel agent asked us*)
 6. "Why did George sell his house?" (*Susan wondered*)
 7. "How often do you go to the cinema?" (*The journalist wanted to know*)
 8. "How long have you been waiting?" (*Bill asked Mary*)
 9. "How many times have you been abroad?" (*The interviewer wanted to know*)
 10. "Why did you buy that car?" (*My friend asked me*)

- 3.** John ha sostenuto un colloquio di lavoro. Riporta le domande che gli sono state poste effettuando tutti i cambiamenti necessari, e sottolinea le risposte corrette.

- "Did you read our advertisement in the newspaper?" "Yes, I did."
The interviewer asked John if he had read their advertisement in the newspaper.
John answered he had / did.
1. "Are you working in this period?" "No, I'm not."
The interviewer asked him
John answered he **isn't / wasn't**.
 2. "Have you had any working experience before?" "Yes, I have."
The interviewer asked him
John answered he **did / had**
 3. "Are you good at dealing with people?" "Yes, I am."
The interviewer asked him
John answered he **is / was**.
 4. "Have you got any knowledge of computers?" "Yes, I have."
The interviewer asked him
John answered he **had / didn't**.

- 4.** Trasforma le domande e le risposte in discorso indiretto effettuando tutti i cambiamenti necessari, come nell'esempio.

- "Where are you going to spend your holidays?" "In Jamaica."
He asked me where I was going to spend my holidays and I answered that I was going to spend them in Jamaica.
1. "Where do you live?" "In London."
 2. "What are you doing?" "I'm studying."
 3. "Where have you been?" "To the bank."
 4. "Where did you meet her?" "In Los Angeles."
 5. "What will the weather be like?" "It will rain."
 6. "How are you going to travel?" "By car."

★ D DISCORSO INDIRETTO: riportare richieste, ordini, consigli, ecc.

RIPORTARE RICHIESTE

Verbi introduttivi più frequenti:
to ask - **to beg**
to request - **to implore**} + infinito

"Can you lend me your dictionary?"
He asked me to lend him my dictionary.

**RIPORTARE ORDINI, ISTRUZIONI,
RACCOMANDAZIONI**

Verbi introduttivi più frequenti:
to tell - **to command** - **to order**
to forbid - **to instruct** - **to warn**} + infinito

"Fill in the blanks."
The teacher told us to fill in the blanks.
"Don't go near the oven."
Mrs White warned her son not to go near the oven.

RIPORTARE CONSIGLI E SUGGERIMENTI

Verbi introduttivi più frequenti:
to suggest, **to advise**, **to recommend**

Il verbo **to suggest** può avere le seguenti costruzioni:

1. **to suggest** + forma in -ing
He suggested going to the pub.

2. **to suggest** + (that) + sogg. + **should** + forma base (quando si vuole specificare con precisione chi dovrebbe compiere l'azione)
He suggested (that) I should see a doctor.

3. **to suggest** + (that) + sogg. + **past simple** (forma rara)
He suggested (that) we went for a walk.

I verbi **to advise** e **to recommend** possono avere le seguenti costruzioni:

1. **to advise/recommend** + forma in -ing (quando non è espressa la persona cui si dà il consiglio)
The travel agent advised going somewhere else.

2. **to advise/recommend** + oggetto + infinito (quando è espressa la persona cui si da il consiglio)
The travel agent advised us to go somewhere else.

3. **to recommend** + (that) + sogg. + **should** + forma base
He recommended that we should see that film.

♦ altri verbi introduttivi

VERBO + INFINITO	
<i>to accept</i> accettare	<i>to offer</i> offrirsi
<i>to agree</i> essere d'accordo	<i>to promise</i> promettere
<i>to decide</i> decidere	<i>to refuse</i> rifiutare
<i>to invite</i> invitare	<i>to remind</i> ricordare a
	<i>to threaten</i> minacciare
<i>"Would you like a lift to the station?"</i>	
<i>He offered to give me a lift to the station.</i>	

VERBO + FORMA IN -ING	
<i>to accuse of</i>	accusare
<i>to admit</i>	ammettere
<i>to apologize for</i>	scusarsi
<i>to complain about</i>	lamentarsi
<i>"I'm sorry I kept you waiting."</i>	
<i>He apologized for keeping me waiting.</i>	

VERBO + NOME O PRONOME			
<i>to introduce</i>	presentare	<i>to offer</i>	offrire
<i>to greet</i>	salutare	<i>to accept</i>	accettare
<i>to interrupt</i>	interrompere	<i>to refuse</i>	rifiutare
<i>to thank for</i>	ringraziare		
<i>"Would you like a biscuit, Mary?"</i>		<i>"Yes, please."</i>	
<i>Bob offered Mary a biscuit and she accepted it.</i>			

PRACTICE

1. Riporta le seguenti *richieste* in discorso indiretto.

- "Will you buy some fruit, please?" (*My wife asked me ...*)
My wife asked me to buy some fruit.
1. Could you pass me the salt, please? (*Sarah asked Mr Jordan...*)
 2. Would you mind signing this document? (*The clerk asked me ...*)
 3. Can you spell your name, please? (*The receptionist asked Mrs Gorman ...*)
 4. Buy some eggs and some meat, will you? (*Mum asked me ...*)
 5. Will you pick me up at 7.00? (*Jane asked Bob...*)

2. Riporta i seguenti *ordini, istruzioni o raccomandazioni* in discorso indiretto.

- "Don't feed the animals." (*The tourist guide told us ...*)
The tourist guide told us not to feed the animals.
1. "Don't go too near the river bank." (*Mrs Grey warned her children...*)
 2. "Move two steps forward." (*The army officer ordered the soldiers...*)
 3. "Don't smoke." (*The doctor warned the patient...*)
 4. "Leave me alone." (*Barbara told George ...*)
 5. "Give way." (*The road sign instructed motorists ...*)

3. Riporta i seguenti *consigli / suggerimenti* in discorso indiretto utilizzando i suggerimenti tra parentesi

1. "Let's check the answers to this exercise" (*She suggested ...*)
2. "You should read this book." (*He recommended me ...*)
3. "You'd better book for the play in advance." (*He advised us ...*)
4. "Shall we go to the cinema tonight?" (*He suggested ...*)
5. "If I were you, I'd take an aspirin." (*He suggested that I ...*)

4. Riscrivi le frasi al discorso indiretto utilizzando i verbi introduttivi forniti.

1. "Ok. I'll give you a lift." (*Bill agreed ...*)
2. "It's a pity we missed the beginning of the film." (*We regretted ...*)
3. "Oh, come on. Let's go to the cinema tonight!" (*He insisted on ...*)
4. "No, I won't pick them up at the airport." (*He refused ...*)
5. "No, I don't want to travel to London by train." (*She objected to...*)

5. Abbina adeguatamente le frasi ai verbi forniti e poi utilizza i *verbi introduttivi al past simple* per riportare le frasi in discorso indiretto.

Fai attenzione alle costruzioni che seguono ciascun verbo.

➤ **He invited me to go for a walk.**

1. *Would you like to go for a walk ?*
2. *Can you lay the table, please?*
3. *Shall I give you a lift to the station?*
4. *Go to bed immediately.*
5. *Remember to turn off the printer.*
6. *I'm sorry I broke the vase.*
7. *Yes, I robbed the bank.*
8. *No, I didn't tell a lie.*

- a) remind
- b) offer
- c) order
- d) admit
- e) deny
- f) apologize for
- g) ask
- h) invite

- 1 h
- 2 ...
- 3 ...
- 4 ...
- 5 ...
- 6 ...
- 7 ...
- 8 ...

★ E I MODALI NEL DISCORSO INDIRETTO

Discorso diretto	Discorso indiretto
can <i>I can play the piano.</i> may <i>I may be wrong.</i> shall <i>What shall we do?</i>	→ could <i>He said he could play the piano.</i> → might <i>He said he might be wrong.</i> → should <i>He asked what they should do.</i>
must • (comando, deduzione) <i>You must keep off the grass.</i> <i>They must be at home.</i> • (obbligo/necessità) <i>I must repair my car.</i> • (obbligo/necessità del futuro) <i>I must visit my parents tomorrow.</i>	→ must (invariato) <i>He told them they must keep off the grass.</i> <i>He said they must be at home.</i> → had to <i>He said he had to repair his car.</i> → would have to <i>He said he would have to visit his parents the following day.</i>
• I modali could , might , should , would , ought to , needn't , quando riportati nel discorso indiretto introdotto da verbo introduttivo al past simple , rimangono invariati	" I could run very fast when I was young." <i>He said he could run very fast when he was young.</i> " I ought to write some letters." <i>He said he ought to write some letters.</i>

PRACTICE

1. Trasforma le frasi in *discorso indiretto*. Effettua tutti i cambiamenti necessari seguendo l'esempio.

➤ *How can I get to Burton Road? (The man asked me...)*
The man asked me how he could get to Burton Road.

1. "What time shall we meet?" (*Tom asked me...*)
2. "Can you swim?" (*Mary asked Peter...*)
3. "You may be right." (*John said...*)
4. "I can't answer these questions." (*The student said...*)
5. "We may come home late." (*Bill and John told their mother...*)
6. "Shall I tell her the truth?" (*Bob asked me ...*)

2. Trasforma le frasi in *discorso indiretto*. Fai attenzione alle diverse funzioni comunicative espresse da **must** ed effettua tutti i cambiamenti necessari.

1. "I must leave tomorrow." (*Bill said ...*)
2. "I must pick him up at the station tomorrow evening." (*Daisy said ...*)
3. "My cat must be ill." (*Robert told the vet ...*)
4. "You must respect the Highway Code." (*The policemen told us ...*)
5. "I must help my mother." (*Susan said ...*)

3. Riporta le frasi in *discorso indiretto* introducendolo come indicato tra parentesi.

➤ *"You should go to bed early." (The doctor told me ...)*
The doctor told me that I should go to bed early.

1. "You shouldn't have invited him to your party!" (*Brian told me ...*)
2. "We might see her." (*They said ...*)
3. "You shouldn't have bought such a horrible sofa." (*My husband told me ...*)
4. "Could you swim when you were five?" (*Mark asked me ...*)



DISCORSO INDIRETTO: periodi ipotetici, **had better**, **would rather**, **wish** ...

L'ipotetica di 1° tipo si trasforma in ipotetica di 2° tipo

mentre i tempi verbali dei periodi ipotetici di 2° e 3° tipo rimangono invariati.

PERIODO IPOTETICO	DISCORSO DIRETTO	DISCORSO INDIRETTO
I° tipo	<i>If she phones, I will be happy.</i> (azione possibile)	<i>He said that if she phoned he would be happy.</i>
II° tipo	<i>If she phoned, I would be happy.</i> (azione possibile)	<i>He said that if she phoned he would be happy.</i>
III° tipo	<i>If she had phoned, I would have been happy.</i> (azione non più possibile)	<i>He said that if she had phoned he would have been happy.</i>

Rimangono invariati:	
• had better	" <i>You'd better stay at home.</i> " → <i>He said I'd better stay at home.</i>
• would rather	" <i>I'd rather wake up early.</i> " → <i>He said he'd rather wake up early.</i>
• il past simple e il past perfect che seguono wish	" <i>I wish I were rich.</i> " → <i>He said he wished he were rich.</i> " <i>I wish I had seen her.</i> " → <i>He said he wished he had seen her.</i>

PRACTICE

1. Riporta i seguenti periodi ipotetici in discorso indiretto introducendolo con *He said ...*
Effettua tutti i cambiamenti necessari.

➤ *I would get married if I had a job.*
He said that he would get married if he had a job.

1. If she tries, she will do better.
2. We would have answered his questions if they hadn't been so difficult.
3. I would send her a message if I had her e-mail address.
4. We wouldn't have gone to see that film if we had known how boring it was.
5. If they come to see me, I will be pleased.
6. I would have told you if I had known how important it was.
7. If they hadn't missed the bus, they wouldn't have arrived late.
8. If you don't go to the dentist's, you will lose the tooth.

2. Riporta le seguenti frasi in discorso indiretto.

1. "*I'd rather stay at home.*" (*She replied ...*)
2. "*You'd better not be late again.*" (*The teacher told the student ...*)
3. "*I wish I had more comfortable shoes.*" (*She said ...*)
4. "*I wish I had never met you.*" (*She shouted ...*)

REVISION

discorso indiretto

1. Riscrivi il dialogo in forma indiretta. Utilizza i verbi introduttivi tra parentesi al *past simple*. Collega inoltre le frasi utilizzando connettivi adeguati come *and, but, then, after that, finally* ed effettua tutti i cambiamenti necessari.

Situazione Bob è a casa di Jane. (Bob = B ; Jane = J)

B: What's the time, Jane? (ask)
J: It's five o' clock. Would you like a cup of tea? (reply - offer)
B: Mmm! Yes, please. (accept)
J: Do you like tea with milk? (ask)
B: Yes, I do. (answer)
J: Do you want sugar in your tea? (ask)
B: No, thanks. No, sugar. (reply / not want any)
J: Let's listen to music. (suggest)
B: Good idea! (say)
J: Do you like rock music? (ask)
B: Yes, I do. What records have you got? (answer - ask)
J: I have just bought a new CD by The Black Eagles. Do you like The Black Eagles? (say - ask)
B: They're all right. (say)
J: I think they're great! (say)

Comincia così:

➤ *Bob asked Jane what time it was and Jane replied ... Then Jane ...*

2. Riscrivi il dialogo in forma indiretta. Utilizza i verbi introduttivi tra parentesi al *past simple*. Collega le frasi con i connettivi adeguati.

Situazione: Lunedì mattina in ufficio, Martha e Susan parlano di come hanno trascorso il fine settimana. (Martha = M; Susan= S)

M: Did you have a nice weekend, Susan? (ask)
S: Oh, yes. We went to Scotland for the weekend (answer - add)
M: Oh, did you? Did you go to Edinburgh? (express surprise - ask)
S: Yes, we did. We left on Friday evening and we got there on Saturday morning. I didn't sleep well because there was a baby in the same compartment who cried most of the time. (answer - say - explain)
M: What did you do in Edinburgh? (ask)
S: Well--- First of all we went to see Paul's parents. He hadn't seen them for three months. Then we went for a walk in the city-centre in the afternoon. (say - explain - say)
M: I've heard there was a concert by Placido Domingo, the famous opera singer, in Edinburgh. Did you go and see it? (say - ask)
S: No, we didn't. There were no tickets left, so we went to the theatre to see the new version of the musical "Jesus Christ Superstar". What did you do? (answer - explain - ask)
M: I went to Oxford with Mark. (say)
S: Oh, here is the boss --- Could you pass me that floppy disk, please? (ask)

Comincia così:

➤ *It was Monday morning. Martha and Susan were at work. Martha asked Susan if she had had a nice weekend. Susan answered she had and added that ...*

Concludi così :

➤ *While Martha and Susan were talking, their boss arrived and ...*

3. Un poliziotto ha interrogato un testimone ad una rapina ad una banca verificatasi questa mattina in Hamilton Street. Leggi il testo e scrivi il dialogo tra il poliziotto e Mr Sullivan.

A WITNESS' REPORT

The policeman **asked** Mr Sullivan where he was and what he was doing when the bank was robbed. He **said** he was waiting for the bus in Hamilton Street, just opposite the bank. Then the policeman **asked** him what time it was. He **replied** it was about 10 o'clock. After that the policeman **asked** him what he had seen. Mr Sullivan **said** that he had noticed two tall men go into the bank. The policeman **asked** Mr Sullivan what the two men were wearing and Mr Sullivan **said** they were wearing hats and sun glasses and **added** that he had thought that it was rather strange that the two men were wearing sun glasses because it was a cloudy day and it was going to rain. The policeman **asked** Mr Sullivan if he had noticed anything else. He **replied** that he had noticed that both men had beards and moustaches. Then the policeman **asked** Mr Sullivan if he had noticed a car parked in front of the bank. He **said** there was a black car with a man in it, and **added** that he had also seen a man standing next to the bank door. The policeman **asked** Mr Sullivan what else he had seen. Mr Sullivan **said** that after a while he had seen the two men run out of the bank and jump into the black car. He also **said** that he had seen the man who had been standing by the bank door disappear into the crowd. Finally the policeman **asked** Mr Sullivan what direction the car had gone. He **replied** that the car had gone east, towards the M4 Motorway.

Comincia così:

- P: *Where were you and what were you doing when the bank was robbed?*
- S: *I was waiting for the bus in Hamilton Street, just opposite the bank.*
- P: ...

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION (FCE)

4. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima utilizzando da due a cinque parole compresa la parola fornita.

- "I'm not giving you any ice cream until you have eaten your dinner," said Tom's mother.
refused Tom's mother **refused to give him** any ice cream until he had eaten his dinner.
- 1. "Could you go to the shops, please?" she said to me.
asked She the shops.
- 2. "I really will remember to call the plumber."
promised Alex the plumber.
- 3. "Shall I help you carry your suitcase?" said John.
offered John my suitcase.
- 4. "You should book the tickets," Barbara said to me.
advised Barbara the tickets.
- 5. "OK. I'll come with you," he said to me.
agreed He with me.
- 6. "OK. It was me who stole the car," he said.
admitted He the car.
- 7. "Let's make a pizza," she said.
suggested She a pizza.
- 8. "Don't feed the animals," the tourist guide said to us.
told The tourist guide the animals.

Grammar and practice

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| A. Connettivi di "tempo" | D. Connettivi di "scopo" e "precauzione" |
| B. Connettivi di "condizione" | E. Connettivi di "modo" |
| C. Connettivi di "dubbio" | |

I **connettivi** sono parole o gruppi di parole (congiunzioni e avverbi) che vengono utilizzati per collegare tra loro frasi o idee.

★★ A CONNETTIVI DI "TEMPO"

♦ I più comuni **connettivi di tempo** sono:

after	dopo	<i>After reading / I had read a book, I went to bed.</i>
before	prima	<i>Before going / I went to bed, I read a book.</i>
when	quando	<i>I was walking home when I met Peter.</i>
while	mentre	<i>While I was walking home I met Peter.</i>
(just) as	(proprio) quando	<i>As / The moment that / As soon as I opened the door, I saw a man lying on the floor.</i>
the moment that	nel momento in cui	
as soon as	non appena	
- per esprimere "nel momento in cui" si può usare on + forma in -ing		<i>On opening (= As / The moment that / As soon as I opened) the door, I saw a man lying on the floor.</i>
until/till	finché non	<i>I waited until / till it stopped raining.</i>
as long as	finché / per tutto il tempo che	<i>You can stay as long as you like.</i>
by the time (that...)	entro il tempo in cui	<i>By the time I reached the station the train had already left.</i>
since	da quando	<i>I've been living here since I came to London.</i>
once	una volta che	<i>You'll like Great Britain, once you get used to the weather.</i>

Attenzione!!!

Stesso soggetto
Se il soggetto delle frasi collegate è lo stesso, **after**, **before**, **when** e **while** possono essere seguiti dalla **forma finita** del verbo, oppure direttamente dalla **forma in -ing** del verbo.

*He went to bed after reading / he had read a book.
Don't use your mobile phone when (you are) driving.
I cut myself while (I was) cutting onions.*

Attenzione!!!

Temporali future
A differenza dell'italiano non si può usare il futuro nelle subordinate temporali.
(Vedi anche a PAG. 230)

*When he gets there, he will send me a message.
Quando arriverà là, mi invierà un messaggio.*

♦ Connettivi di tempo per esprimere **successione**

at first	in un primo tempo, da principio	<i>At first I saw a woman standing by the door.</i>
then		<i>Then/Afterwards/After that, I noticed she had a gun in her hand.</i>
afterwards/after that	} poi, in seguito	
after a while	} dopo un po'	<i>After a while/Some time later she smiled.</i>
some time later		
finally*/eventually	} infine, alla fine	<i>Finally/Eventually/ In the end I decided to speak to her.</i>
in the end **		

***Finally** (ma non *eventually*) può esprimere un certo senso di sollievo e in questo caso è sinonimo di **at last** (= finalmente)

Può significare inoltre "per concludere", "in conclusione"

They had been walking for hours when finally/at last they reached an oasis.
Camminavano da ore quando finalmente raggiunsero un'oasi.

... and finally, I'd like to talk about ...
... e infine desidererei parlare di ...

Attenzione!!!

** Non confondere "in the end" con "at the end"

At the end è preposizione: *at the end of the road, at the end of the month, ...*

◆ Connettivi di tempo per esprimere contemporaneità

meanwhile
in the meantime

} nel frattempo

He was talking to her. Meanwhile/In the meantime he kept on moving nervously.

PRACTICE

1. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

1. First tidy your room, **then / after** you can go out.
2. Jane had a shower. **After / Afterwards** she got dressed and had breakfast.
3. Let's wait **until / after** it stops raining.
4. He opened the door **before / then** he turned on the light.
5. He was in bed **when / while** he heard a strange noise.
6. **When / While** she was walking to work she saw a car accident.
7. George was running through the park **as soon as / when** it started to rain.
8. Timothy was having lunch **when / in the meantime** he heard a strange noise.
9. Jane went into the sitting room. **Some time later / When** the phone rang.
10. Tom was talking on the phone. **While / In the meantime** he kept looking at his watch.
11. He smiled politely **as soon as / before** continuing to read his newspaper.
12. They had been walking for hours when **at first / at last** they reached the top of the mountain.
13. You can keep my computer **as long as / while** you need it.
14. I stood under a balcony **as long as / until** it stopped raining.
15. **As / While** I opened the door, the phone rang.
16. I've lived in this house **when / since** I was born.
17. **By the time / Finally** the rescue workers noticed the little girl lying unconscious and took her to hospital.

2. Sostituisci le espressioni sottolineate con le espressioni o avverbi forniti

in the meantime/meanwhile - as - finally - after a while

1. The moment that she opened the door, she saw a mouse.
2. I'm going to the shops. While I'm away, can you start making dinner?
3. Suddenly it started to rain. But a few minutes later it stopped.
4. They had been walking for hours. Eventually they reached the village.

3. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

1. After everybody **going / had gone** home, she relaxed on the sofa.
2. Have something to eat before you **take / taking** an aspirin.
3. When he **calls / will call**, he will tell us what happened to him.
4. We will wait for him until he **will arrive / arrives**.
5. They had an accident while **driving / drove** back home.
6. As **opening / he opened** the door, he saw a woman dressed in white.
7. On **closing / she closed** the door she remembered that she had left the key on the table.

4. Riscrivi le frasi utilizzando i connettivi indicati tra parentesi seguendo l'esempio.

➤ *I bought this computer after I read a few computer magazines. (after)*
After reading a few computer magazines, I bought this computer.

1. First he renewed his passport then he applied for a visa. (*before*)
2. Jane thanked all her friends when she received a present. (*after*)
3. First she reassured everybody that she was safe then she started crying. (*after*)
4. Bob said goodbye to everybody and left the party. (*before*)

5. Unisci le frasi adeguatamente usando le parole tra parentesi e il *past perfect*.

➤ *He called a taxi. He packed his suitcase. (after)*
After he had packed his suitcase he called a taxi.

1. They went to the funfair. They finished their homework. (*as soon as*)
2. We arrived at the airport. The plane took off. (*by the time - already*)
3. I didn't start watching TV. I did all the washing up. (*until*)

6. Completa il testo con: *before, after, when, a few minutes later*.

- 1) Tom and I had found a nice spot on the beach, we put on our swimsuits and dived into the water. 2), we were swimming near the shore 3) suddenly Tom started screaming for help. I tried to swim to him, but 4) I could reach him, he had disappeared below the surface.



★★ **B CONNETTIVI DI "CONDIZIONE"**

♦ I principali connettivi per esprimere **condizione** sono:

if*	se	<i>You won't pass the exam if you don't study hard.</i>
even if	anche se	<i>Even if I studied hard, I'm sure I wouldn't pass that exam.</i>
unless (+ forma affermativa del verbo) se non, a meno che non		<i>You won't pass the examination unless you study hard. (= You'll pass the exam only if you study hard.)</i>

♦ Altri connettivi per esprimere **condizione** sono:

provided/providing (that) a patto che, purchè as long as	<i>We can have the party in the garden, provided/providing/as long as it doesn't rain.</i>
suppose/supposing (that) supponi imagine (that) immagina di/che	<i>Suppose/Imagine you could spend a month on a tropical island. Where would you like to go?</i>
on condition that a condizione che	<i>I'll come to your party on condition that John is invited, too.</i>
in case of (+ sostantivo) in caso di	<i>In case of emergency (= If there is an emergency) call this number.</i>

Attenzione!!!

Quando si parla del futuro, non si usa **mai will** con i connettivi che esprimono condizione.
*We'll be late **unless we hurry**.*

*He will pass the exam **providing he studies** hard.*

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi con *if* o *unless*.

- you decide to study Law at university, you'll have to study very hard.
- I won't go to the concert James comes with me.
- they work overtime, they won't earn enough money to buy a bigger house.
- she drives more carefully, she'll have an accident.
- I'll take you to the funfair only you promise to clean your room.

2. Scrivi una seconda frase che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando *unless*.

- *You must listen carefully or you won't understand this difficult grammar rule.*
*You won't understand this difficult grammar rule **unless** you listen carefully.*

- You must hurry or you'll miss the bus.
- We must speak slowly or they won't be able to understand us.
- I must apologise to her or she won't forgive me.
- We must shout or he won't hear us.
- You must study more or you won't pass the examination.

3. Scrivi una seconda frase che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando *only if* (= solo se)

- *I'm not going to Jane's party unless you come too.*
I'm going to Jane's party only if you come too.

1. You are not allowed into that restaurant unless you wear a tie.
2. That dog won't attack you unless you move.
3. I won't speak to you again unless you apologise.
4. I won't lend you my car again unless you drive more carefully.
5. He won't hear you unless you shout.

4. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

1. You can borrow my car **unless / as long as** you drive carefully.
2. He won't lend you any money **as long as / unless** you promise to give it back within a week.
3. You can smoke in here **unless / as long as** you leave the window open.
4. You can stay here **provided / unless** you don't make too much noise.
5. You can't get into that club **unless / provided** you are a member.

5. Riscrivi le frasi usando i connettivi forniti tra parentesi. Effettua tutte le modifiche necessarie.

1. I will never talk to you again if you don't tell me the truth. (*unless*)
2. We will hold the conference in the main room, if you all agree. (*provided*)
3. We will get there by 7 o'clock if we leave on time. (*on condition that*)
4. Imagine you went to live on a desert island. What would you take with you? (*supposing*)
5. Suppose you could be a different person. Who would you like to be? (*imagine*)
6. We will be happy to put you up if you come in summer. (*as long as*)
7. If there is an accident, call the police. (*in case of*)
8. And if it snows? What shall we do? (*suppose*)
9. We will be there before dinner, but we must leave on time. (*on condition that*)
10. These plants will die unless someone waters them every day. (*if*)

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION (FCE)

6. Scrivi una seconda frase che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando da due a cinque parole compreso la parola fornita.

1. Don't invest in shares unless you can afford to lose.
if Don't invest in shares to lose.
2. If you don't take a taxi, you will be late for your appointment.
unless You will be late for your appointment a taxi.
3. She must apologise to me or I won't forgive her.
unless I won't apologises.
4. I can hear you only if you shout.
unless I can't shout.
5. We will be having a garden party on Sunday, unless it rains.
provided We will be having a garden party on Sunday, rain.

★★ C CONNETTIVI DI "DUBBIO"

if / whether se <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - sono usati indifferentemente per introdurre una frase interrogativa indiretta <p>(Vedi anche a PAG. 336)</p>	<i>Tom asked if/whether I was still living in London. I wonder if/whether she still loves him.</i>
In alcuni casi solo whether è possibile <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • dopo una preposizione • prima di un infinito • dopo verbi come <i>discuss, argue, ...</i> • per introdurre una frase soggettiva • nella correlazione whether...or (che ... o) 	<i>I'm doubtful about whether she'll accept their offer. I can't decide whether to go to her party or not. They are discussing whether they should go or stay. Whether she murdered her husband is still to be proved. You must finish your food, whether you like it or not.</i>

Attenzione!!!

Non confondere

Ricorda che **if** è usato anche per esprimere **condizione** nelle **subordinate ipotetiche**. Nella subordinata ipotetica di 1° tipo non può essere seguito dal futuro, mentre può essere seguito da futuro quando esprime dubbio.

Confronta gli esempi:

I'll be happy if he comes. (**condizione**)

Sarò felice se verrà.

I wonder if he will come. (**dubbio**)

Mi domando se verrà.

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi con *if* o *whether*. In alcuni casi entrambe le soluzioni sono corrette. Scrivile entrambe.

 1. John wanted to know Ann was coming to the party.
 2. I wonder he told her the truth.
 3. The ministers were discussing they should make cuts.
 4. I don't know hers is a good idea or not.
 5. James intends to marry her or leave her is none of our business.
 6. he robbed the bank is still to be proved.
 7. They must pay in advance, they like it or not.
 8. I'm doubtful about she will be interested in the news.
 9. He asked me I was still living in Rosendale.
 10. I can't decide to stay or go.

2. Alcune frasi sono corrette altre sono sbagliate. Se la frase contiene un errore scrivi la parola corretta a lato; se la frase è corretta metti un tick (✓).

- *We can't decide if to move to London or not.*
- *I wonder if they know.*

whether



1. The students asked the teacher if she could explain the rule again.
2. You'll have to stay in, if you like it or not.
3. Whether I meet Susan, I'll ask her Peter's address.
4. I'm doubtful about if he'll be pleased with the news.
5. We discussed whether we should buy a new car.
6. I would buy a new house whether I had more money.

★★ D CONNETTIVI DI "SCOPO" E "PRECAUZIONE"

◆ Per esprimere **scopo** (per, allo scopo di, così da/così che ...) si usa:

Il semplice infinito (to ... / not to ...)	<i>I went to England to improve my English.</i>
in order to/in order not to so as to/so as not to } + forma base	<i>I went to England } in order to improve my English. } so as to improve my English.</i>
so that + soggi. + will/can (riferimento al presente o al futuro)	<i>I've just given him some money so that he will / can buy something to eat.</i>
so that + soggi. + would/could (riferimento al passato)	<i>I gave him some money so that he would / could buy something to eat.</i>

◆ Per esprimere **precauzione** (nel caso in cui, per paura che/di) si usa:

in case (= nel caso in cui) + presente + passato + modale (<i>might / should</i>) (non è mai seguito da <i>will</i>)	<i>I don't want to go out in case he phones. We bought some more food in case Peter came. Tom took an umbrella in case it might rain.</i>
for fear that (= per paura che) + modale (<i>might / should</i>)	<i>Tom took an umbrella for fear that it might rain.</i>
for fear of (= per paura di) + forma in <i>-ing</i>	<i>He hid behind a fence for fear of being seen.</i>

Attenzione!!!

Non confondere
in case con **if**

In italiano "in caso/nel caso" può a volte essere usato con il significato di "se/se per caso". In inglese **in case** e **if** hanno significati diversi.

in case

In case si usa per parlare di ciò che conviene fare **in anticipo** per evitare che possano sorgere/verificarsi dei problemi o per essere pronti nel caso si verifichi un determinato evento.

*Take a compass with you **in case you get lost.** (= Perhaps you'll get lost so take a compass with you.)*

Prendi la bussola nel caso tu ti perda.
(potresti perderti, perciò prendi la bussola con te come precauzione)

if

If esprime una **contemporaneità** di azioni o situazioni.

*Use the compass **if you get lost.***

Usa la bussola se ti perdi.
(nell'ipotesi che tu ti perda, usa la bussola)

Attenzione!!!

Non confondere
in case con **in case of**

In case of significa "se c'e", esprime **condizione** ed è seguito da sostantivo

(Vedi a PAG. 347)

Confronta gli esempi:

*Write down this phone number **in case** you get into trouble.*

Scriviti questo numero di telefono nel caso tu ti debba trovare nei guai.

In case of (= If there is an) emergency, call this number.

In caso di emergenza, chiama questo numero.

PRACTICE

1. Rispondi alle domande usando i suggerimenti forniti tra parentesi per esprimere *scopo*. Segui l'esempio.

➤ *Why are you wearing a scarf and gloves? (keep warm)*
I'm wearing a scarf and gloves to keep warm.

1. Why did you go out? (*post a letter*)
2. Why did you go to the bank? (*change some money*)
3. Why do you have to go to the post office? (*buy some stamps*)

2. Trasforma le frasi usando i connettivi tra parentesi per esprimere *scopo*.

➤ *David wants to find a better paid job because he wants to buy a bigger house. (so that)*
David wants to find a better paid job so that he can buy a bigger house.

1. He is going to England next summer because he wants to improve his English. (*to*)
2. Tom wants to buy a car because he wants to get to work faster. (*so that*)
3. Peter has started to eat less because he wants to lose weight. (*in order to*)
4. I locked the door because I didn't want him to come in. (*so that*)
5. I drank some more coffee in order not to fall asleep. (*so as not to*)

3. David si sta preparando per andare a fare un'escursione in montagna.

(a) Abbina gli oggetti che ha deciso di portare con sé al motivo per cui ha deciso di portarli con sé.

objects	reason	
1. <i>a bottle of water</i>	a) perhaps he will want to take some photographs	1 d
2. his camera	b) perhaps he will lose his way	2 ...
3. a map and a compass	c) perhaps it will rain	3 ...
4. waterproof clothes	d) perhaps he will need a drink	4 ...

(b) Ora scrivi frasi come nell'esempio usando *in case + present simple*, per esprimere *precauzione*.

➤ 1. *David is going to take a bottle of water in case he needs a drink.*

4. Riscrivi le frasi usando *in case + past simple*, per esprimere *precauzione*.

➤ *It was possible that Susan would phone so I didn't go out.*

I didn't go out in case Susan phoned.

1. It was possible that Tom would come so we bought some food.
2. It was possible that he would lose his way so he took a map and a compass.
3. It was possible that I would forget her address so I wrote it down.

5. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

1. I lowered my voice **in case / for fear of** somebody might hear.
2. The man hid behind a wall **for fear of / for fear that** being seen.
3. You'd better take a coat **for fear of / in case** it gets cold.
4. Could you give this book to Jane **in case / if** you see her?
5. Here's my address **in case / if** you should pass through New York.
6. **In case / If** I should pass through New York, I'll come and see you.
7. You'd better take your umbrella **if / in case** it should rain.
8. **In case of / In case** fire, leave the building as quickly as possible.

★★ E CONNETTIVI DI "MODO"

as*	come	<i>She got up early, as she always did.</i>
as if** / as though	come se	<i>Sarah sounds as if/as though she's got a cold.</i>
(in) the way	nel modo / il modo in cui	<i>I did it the way they told me to.</i>
(in) the same way as	nello stesso modo in cui	<i>He behaved in the same way as he had behaved the day before.</i>

* AS (= come) come congiunzione è seguito da:

• una frase completa subordinata (sogg.+ verbo) - Ricorda le espressioni: <i>as you know, as we expected, as I said, as I promised, ...</i>	<i>You should have done it as I showed you.</i> <i>As you know, we're leaving tomorrow.</i>
• un participio passato - Ricorda le espressioni: <i>as agreed, as requested, as stated, ...</i>	<i>As requested, we are sending you our price-list.</i>
• un complemento indiretto	<i>Write sentences as in the example.</i>
• un aggettivo - Ricorda le espressioni: <i>as usual, as predictable</i>	<i>She got up early, as usual.</i>

Attenzione!!!

Non confondere "as" con "like" Like (= come, simile a) è preposizione ed è seguito da sostantivo, pronomo o da forma in -ing. - Anche as può essere preposizione (= in qualità di) e quindi essere seguito da sostantivo ma con un significato diverso da like . (Vedi anche a PAG. 397)	<i>What a beautiful house! It's like a palace.</i> <i>She's a doctor, like me.</i> <i>The floor is slippery. It's like walking on ice.</i> Confronta gli esempi: <i>He spoke as a lawyer.</i> Parlò in qualità di avvocato. (ed era avvocato) <i>He spoke like a lawyer.</i> Parlò come un avvocato. (ma non lo era)
--	---

** AS IF (= come se) si usa:	
• con verbi come: look, sound, feel, smell, taste , per dire come qualcuno o qualcosa sembra o si sente (si può usare as though al posto di as if) - si può avere anche la costruzione impersonale: it looks/sounds/smells as if (o as though)	<i>She looked as if/as though she hadn't slept.</i> <i>He sounded as if/as though he was worried.</i> <i>I feel as if/as though I'm going to be sick.</i> <i>I put on a raincoat because it looked as if/as though it was going to rain.</i>
• con altri verbi per dire il modo in cui qualcuno compie un'azione	<i>They looked at me as if I was mad.</i> <i>He carried on talking as if nothing had happened.</i>

Attenzione!!!

Spesso dopo as if si usa il past simple (con valore di congiuntivo) per parlare del presente . In questi casi l' idea espressa non è reale . (Quando il verbo è <i>to be</i> si può usare were al posto di was . Were è più formale di was .)	<i>He talks as if he knew everything.</i> Parla come se sapesse tutto (ma non sa tutto). <i>She behaves as if she were (o was) a princess.</i> Si comporta come se fosse una principessa (ma non è una principessa).
---	--

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi con *as*, *as if/though*, *(in) the way*, *(in) the same way as*.

1. Granny sat in her armchair, she always did after dinner. 2. I shivered I had a temperature. 3. I did it they told me to. 4. She walks she were a dancer. 5. She makes pizza they make it in Naples. 6. He must be working usual. 7. requested, we are sending you our catalogue. 8. It was marvellous. It was we were in heaven. 9. you know, we are staying at home tonight. 10. Tom failed his exam, we expected.

2. Completa le frasi con *as* oppure *like*.

1. She talks too much. I can't stand people her. 2. He helped me he had promised. 3. Talking to Paul is talking to a wall. 4. I said yesterday, I'm thinking of taking up tennis. 5. We thought it was a good idea, so we did they suggested. 6. James looks his father. 7. This wine is terrible. It tastes water. 8. a friend, you should tell him the truth. 9. She looks beautiful, a princess. 10. A few years ago she worked a shop assistant.

3. Usa le frasi fornite per costruire altre frasi con *as if*, seguendo l'esempio.

*he had hurt his leg - he has seen a ghost - she is going to fall asleep
he hasn't washed for a long time - they are going to be sick.*

➤ Susan is watching a boring film and she is yawning. (*She looks ...*)

She looks as if she is going to fall asleep.

1. Peter is terrified and his face is white. (*He looks ...*)

2. You can smell Alan from a long way away. (*He smells ...*)

3. The children have eaten too much and now they are feeling ill. (*They feel ...*)

4. When you saw Tom, he was walking in a strange way. (*He looked ...*)

4. Che cosa diresti in queste situazioni? Usa le frasi fornite per costruire altre frasi con *as if*, seguendo l'esempio.

*she isn't going to come - there has been an accident - it is going to rain
you had a lot of fun - they are quarrelling*

➤ You've been waiting for half an hour and Susan hasn't arrived yet. (*It looks ...*)
It looks as if she isn't going to come.

1. The sky is full of dark clouds. (*It looks ...*)

2. Your friend is telling you about the exciting holiday he had at the Maldives. (*It sounds ...*)

3. You hear two people shouting next door. (*It sounds ...*)

4. You see an ambulance and two damaged cars at the side of the road. (*It looks ...*)

5. Completa le frasi seguendo l'esempio.

➤ I'm not their daughter, but they treat me ***as if I were*** their daughter.

- That boy doesn't know me, so why is he waving at me me?
- Pamela is not old, but sometimes she talks an old woman.
- Paul doesn't know everything, so why does he talk everything?
- Mr Johnson is not a lawyer but he speaks a lawyer.

Grammar and practice

- | | |
|--|---|
| A. Connettivi di "causa" ed "effetto" | C. Altri connettivi per strutturare un discorso |
| B. Connettivi per: includere e aggiungere, escludere, esprimere alternativa, esprimere contrasto o concessione | Revision: connettivi |

★★ A CONNETTIVI DI "CAUSA" ED "EFFETTO"

- ♦ esprimere la **causa** di un fatto/azione

because perché, poiché	<i>There were a lot of accidents because the roads were icy.</i>
as/since poiché, siccome	<i>As/Since the roads were icy, there were a lot of accidents.</i>
for perché, visto che	<i>We've got to do the shopping today, for the shops are closed tomorrow.</i>

- Altri modi per esprimere la **causa** di un fatto/azione

because of owing to due to	→ a causa di	<i>There were a lot of accidents because of / owing to / due to the icy roads.</i>	Attenzione!!! because of, owing to e due to sono preposizioni e come tali non sono seguiti da frase ma da sostantivo o pronome.
be due to	essere causato da	<i>The accidents were due to the icy roads.</i>	

- ♦ esprimere la **conseguenza/effetto** di un fatto/azione

so	così	<i>We are destroying lots of species of plants so we will not be able to produce medicines.</i>
as a result as a consequence consequently	→ di conseguenza	<i>Gases from cars and factories create a "greenhouse effect". As a result/As a consequence /Consequently, the earth is getting warmer.</i>
therefore	perciò	<i>They have been studying this problem for many years. Therefore, they should be able to find a solution.</i>

- ♦ esprimere **rappporto fra causa ed effetto** (così ... che ...)

such a/an + (aggettivo) + sostantivo sing. numerabile + that ...	<i>It is such a lovely day that ...</i>
such + (aggettivo) + sostantivo plurale o sing. non numerabile + that ..	<i>There will be such fast cars that ... It was such lovely weather that ...</i>
such a lot of + sostantivo sing. o plu. + that ...	<i>She ate such a lot of chocolates that ...</i>
so + aggettivo o avverbio + that ...	<i>Travelling will be so comfortable that ...</i>
so + much/many/little/few + sostantivo sing. o plu. + that ...	<i>There was so much traffic that ... There were so many people that ...</i>

PRACTICE

1. Trasforma le frasi come nell'esempio.

➤ *He wanted to help people so he studied medicine at university.*
He studied medicine at university because he wanted to help people.

1. She wanted to keep fit so she joined a gym.
2. They wanted to pass their exams so they studied hard.
3. He wanted to travel around while he was in the USA so he hired a car.

2. Completa le frasi con *so* oppure *because*.

1. We didn't go out it was too cold.
2. He didn't feel well he didn't go to work.
3. She didn't like the play she left the theatre.
4. They missed the train they had to wait for the next one.
5. My brother lent me £ 10.00 I didn't have enough money for the concert.

3. Abbina le cause e gli effetti/conseguenze adeguatamente poi costruisci frasi come nell'esempio.

causa

1. *The Earth's climate is continuing to change.*
2. *They are cutting down tropical forests.*
3. *Robots will do the work in the house.*
4. *People will work on their computers at home.*
5. *We will write the mail through the computer.*

effetto/conseguenza

- a) *We won't write letters by hand any more.*
- b) *They won't have to go to their offices.*
- c) *Our lives will be in danger.*
- d) *Lots of wild animal will die.*
- e) *Housewives will have a lot of free time.*

1 c

2 ...

3 ...

4 ...

5 ...

➤ *Since/As the Earth's climate is continuing to change, our lives will be in danger.*

Our lives will be in danger because the Earth's climate is continuing to change.

The Earth's climate is continuing to change. As a result/As a consequence, our lives will be in danger.

The Earth's climate is continuing to change. Therefore, our lives will be in danger.

4. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

1. The explosion was **due to / because of** a gas leak.
2. We can't come to your party **because / owing to** previous engagements.
3. The flight was cancelled **because of / because** the bad weather conditions.
4. He lived in Japan for many years. **Therefore / Because**, he should speak Japanese.
5. Tigers may become extinct **since / consequently** hunters are killing them for their skins.
6. **As a result / Since** the climate is changing, the Sahara desert is spreading.

5. Completa le frasi con *so*, *such (a/an)*.

1. The film was boring that I fell asleep.
2. It was bad weather that we couldn't go out.
3. There will be many people that we won't be able to see anything.
4. There was a lot of traffic that we arrived late.
5. She had heavy suitcase that she couldn't carry it.
6. The play was funny that I couldn't stop laughing.
7. It was sad story that I couldn't help crying.



B CONNETTIVI per: includere e aggiungere, escludere, esprimere alternativa esprimere contrasto o concessione

♦ includere e aggiungere

and	e	<i>Monkeys are intelligent and curious.</i>
both ... and	sia ... sia	<i>Monkeys are both intelligent and curious.</i>
also	anche	<i>Monkeys are intelligent. They are also curious.</i>
as well	anche	<i>Monkeys are intelligent, and curious as well.</i>
too	anche	<i>Monkeys are intelligent and curious, too.</i>
not only ... but also	non solo ... ma anche	<i>Monkeys are not only intelligent but also curious.</i>
as well as	oltre a	<i>Monkeys are intelligent as well as curious.</i>
besides	inoltre	<i>Monkeys are intelligent. Besides, they are curious.</i>
as well as* (+ -ing)	oltre a	<i>As well as being intelligent, monkeys are (also) curious.</i>
besides* (+ -ing)		<i>Besides being intelligent, monkeys are (also) curious.</i>
in addition to* (+ -ing)		<i>Monkeys are intelligent in addition to being curious.</i>

Attenzione!!!

* Se **as well as**, **in addition to** e **besides** sono seguiti da verbo questo è alla forma in **-ing**.

- Per aggiungere un'informazione, rafforzare un'idea, collegare idee simili, si possono usare:

what's more	(informale)	per di più	<i>Exercising helps us to keep fit. What 's more / On top of that / In addition / Besides / Also / Moreover / Furthermore, it can be great fun.</i>
on top of that	(informale)		
in addition	(informale)		
besides			
also			
moreover	(formale)	inoltre	<i>Going on holiday is a great way to relax. Similarly, taking short trips at the weekend can also be enjoyable.</i>
furthermore	(formale)		
similarly		similmente	

♦ escludere

neither ... nor ...	né ... né ...	<i>Neither cows nor sheep eat meat.</i>
neither / nor	né / e neanche	<i>Cows don't eat meat and neither/nor do sheep.</i>

(in frase negativa **either**)

*Cows don't eat meat and sheep don't eat it, **either**.*

♦ esprimere alternativa

or = o / oppure		<i>You'd better wear a coat or you'll be cold.</i>
or else / otherwise = oppure/altrimenti		<i>You'd better wear a coat or else/otherwise you'll be cold.</i>
either ... or ... = o ... o ...		<i>You can either wear a dress or a skirt.</i>

Per **both ... and**, **either ... or**, **neither ... nor**

vedi anche a **PAGE. 260**

◆ esprimere **contrasto** o **concessione**

but	ma, però	<i>We tried to save him, but / yet he died.</i>
yet (formale)	tuttavia	
however/nevertheless	tuttavia, comunque	<i>We tried to save him; however/nevertheless, he died.</i>
... though	però	<i>We tried to save him; he died, though.</i>
although/though even though*	} sebbene, anche se	Although/Though/Even though we tried to save him, he died.
in spite of the fact that despite the fact that	} nonostante che	In spite of the fact that / Despite the fact that we tried to save him, he died.
in spite of (+ -ing) despite (+ -ing)	} nonostante che	In spite of / Despite trying to save him, he died
in spite of that despite that	} nonostante ciò	<i>We tried to save him. In spite of that / Despite that, he died.</i>
in spite of (+ sostantivo) despite (+ sostantivo)	} nonostante	In spite of / Despite our efforts to save him, he died.

Attenzione!!!

* Non confondere "even though" con "even if"
Entrambi significano "anche se" ma:
even though si riferisce a **situazioni concrete**
even if si riferisce a **situazioni ipotetiche**

Confronta gli esempi:

***Even though I study hard**, I'm not as good as my sister.*

Anche se studio molto, non sono bravo come mia sorella.

***Even if I studied hard**, I would never be as good as my sister.*

Anche se studiassi molto, non sarei mai bravo come mia sorella.

- Per mettere in relazione **elementi o frasi in contrasto** si possono usare anche:

while / whereas	mentre	<i>We tried to save him while / whereas his friend didn't bother.</i>
in contrast	diversamente	<i>Living in a big city can be tiring. In contrast, living in the country can be very relaxing.</i>
on the contrary	al contrario	<i>That dog looks peaceful. On the contrary, it is very aggressive.</i>
on the other hand	d'altra parte (è usato quando si considera la stessa cosa da un altro punto di vista)	<i>Computers save time. On the other hand, they are expensive.</i>

PRACTICE

1. Collega le frasi in tutti i modi possibili, usando:

*and, both ... and, also, as well, too, not only ...
but also, as well as, besides, as well as + -ing,
besides + -ing, in addition to + -ing*

vedi "includere e aggiungere"
a PAG. **356**

1. Dogs are friendly. Dogs are intelligent.
2. Your composition is fluent. Your composition is accurate.

2. Completa le frasi adeguatamente con *both ... and* o *neither ... nor*, seguendo l'esempio.

- I like (*meat / fish*) ***both meat and fish.***
1. Our flat is (*large / beautiful*) but we like it.
 2. (*Sue / her friend Sarah*) are nurses. They work at the local hospital.
 3. George lived in Germany for many years. He can (*speak / write*) German very well.
 4. Tom is (*watching TV / listening to music*) He's studying.
 5. Have you ever met the Browns? - Yes, I met (*Mr Brown / his wife*) at a conference last month.
-

3. Completa le frasi usando *either ... or* e le alternative fornite tra parentesi.

➤ *I'm busy today, but we can go for a meal (on Friday / on Saturday) either on Friday or on Saturday.*

1. If you don't want to get there late you can take (*the underground / a taxi*) ...
2. If you want to learn English you can (*attend a course / go to England*) ...
3. You're disturbing. (*you stop talking / you leave the room*) ...
4. You can pay (*by cheque / by credit card*) ...

4. Collega le frasi in tutti i modi possibili, usando:

but/yet, however/nevertheless, although/even though/though, in spite of the fact that/despite the fact that, in spite of that/despite that

vedi "esprimere contrasto"

a pag. **357**

1. Some wild animals need to be protected. They are still being killed.
2. Elephants are wild animals. They can be trained.
3. Streets should be kept clean. Many people still drop litter carelessly.

5. Riformula le frasi usando *although* (= sebbene)

➤ *In spite of the fact that she had studied very hard, Susan didn't pass the exam.*
Although Susan had studied very hard, she didn't pass the exam.

1. She was very hungry but she didn't eat anything.
2. It was very cold, but Martha went out without a coat.
3. I like the town where I live in spite of the fact that there is not much entertainment.
4. Despite being a very good doctor, Mr Johnson hasn't got many patients.
5. The room was not very comfortable but the view from the balcony was fantastic.
6. My brother has been training for years. He doesn't play tennis well, though.

6. Collega le frasi usando le espressioni tra parentesi.

1. Cats are domesticated. Tigers are wild. (*whereas*)
2. These machines are made in Germany. They are made in Japan too. (*not only ... but also*)
3. There has been a campaign against poisonous fumes. Factories still release poisonous fumes into the air. (*despite the fact that*)
4. Cats are social. They are intelligent too. (*besides*)
5. They have been cleaning up the streets. They are still quite dirty. (*however*)

7. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

1. It is an interesting job. **In addition / However**, it is poorly paid.
2. I forgot to give him my address. **Nevertheless / Besides**, he managed to contact me.
3. Everybody says I've got an exciting job. **Furthermore / On the contrary**, I find it boring.
4. I like reading **whereas / despite that** my sister doesn't like it at all.
5. He is rich and good looking. **Besides / Despite that**, he often feels depressed.
6. **In spite of / Despite the fact that** trying hard to save the dog, it died.
7. **While / Although** this dress fits you, it doesn't suit you.
8. He swore he had not stolen the watch. **Moreover / Nevertheless**, nobody believed him.
9. Everybody thinks Tom is quite clever. **On the contrary / On the other hand**, I think he is a bit stupid.
10. One of the main advantages of being a news reporter is that you can travel round the world. **While / Furthermore**, you can meet a lot of people. **However / Whereas** there are also disadvantages to becoming a news reporter.
11. Driving to work can be convenient. **On the other hand / Similarly**, finding a place to park can be a problem.
12. Going on a safari is a great way to spend a holiday. **Similarly / In contrast**, going on a cruise can also be enjoyable.
13. **Even if / Even though** I've known her for ages, I can't say I know her well.
14. **Even if / Even though** he trained a lot, he would never run as fast as I do.

8. Sottolinea il connettivo appropriato per collegare le frasi, seguendo l'esempio.

➤ *Computers can be fun. They can help us in many ways. (moreover / however)*
Computers can be fun. Moreover, they can help us in many ways.

1. A cruise holiday is a relaxing way to spend one's holiday. It can be very expensive. (**furthermore / however**)
2. A camping holiday can be fun. The weather may spoil it. (**although / in addition**)
3. Learning a foreign language helps you to understand another culture. It may offer you better job prospects. (**however / in addition**)
4. Animals which are kept in zoos are well cared for. They are forced to live in unnatural surroundings. (**on the other hand / what's more**)

9. Fai riferimento alla tabella e scrivi *mini-dialoghi* seguendo l'esempio.

ANIMALS IN ZOOS	
PROS	CONS
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>have / plenty of food</i>• <i>be / protected from hunters</i>• <i>get / medical care</i>• <i>be / protected from extinction</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>be / not / free</i>• <i>not / live / in their natural habitat</i>• <i>feel / lonely</i>• <i>be / not / happy</i>

➤ *A: Animals have plenty of food in zoos.
B: I agree. However, they are not free.*



C ALTRI CONNETTIVI PER STRUTTURARE UN DISCORSO

♦ introdurre un argomento (per quanto riguarda, con riferimento a)

as for / as to / as regards	<i>As for/As to /As regards the causes of pollution, we know that...</i>
as far as ... is/are concerned (formale)	<i>As far as the causes of pollution are concerned, we know that ...</i>
with reference to	<i>With reference to your question, I'd like to ...</i>

♦ ordinare argomenti / elencare e concludere un discorso

first, first of all, firstly, to begin with, to start with, in the first place, the first thing is, ...	<i>I believe that Physical Education should remain a part of the school curriculum for a variety of reasons. First/Firstly/In the first place/..., offering Physical Education in schools is vital for children who have no opportunity to do sport elsewhere.</i>
second, secondly, in the second place, next, after that, in addition, ...	<i>Second/Secondly/In the second place/..., team sports develop children's social skills.</i>
last, lastly, finally, to conclude, in conclusion, all things considered, ...	<i>In conclusion / To conclude / All things considered, I believe that ...</i>

♦ generalizzare

as a (general) rule	di norma, in genere	<i>As a rule, summer is a rainy season in my country.</i>
in general	in generale	<i>In general, we can say that spring is a warm season.</i>
altogether	nell'insieme	<i>Altogether, there are many advantages to doing this kind of job.</i>
on the whole	} complessivamente	<i>On the whole / By and large, I would say that I like my country.</i>
by and large		

♦ esprimere un'opinione/punto di vista

in my opinion / in my view	secondo me	<i>In my opinion/In my view /To my mind, a terrible war is going to break out.</i>
to my mind	a mio avviso, a parer mio	
from my point of view	dal mio punto di vista	<i>The situation is not very easy, from my point of view.</i>
as far as I know	per quanto ne so	<i>As far as I know/As far as I can see, there are few chances of success.</i>
as far as I can see	per quanto posso vedere	
as far as I'm concerned	per quanto mi riguarda	<i>As far as I'm concerned, I think that ...</i>
personally I believe/think/feel that ...	personalmente credo/penso/sento che ...	<i>Personally I believe that our lives will be very different fifty years from now.</i>
according to	secondo (per riportare l'opinione di altri)	<i>According to experts the rebels will be defeated.</i>

♦ spiegare / chiarire / correggere / riformulare

actually / in fact	in realtà, di fatto	<i>The weather wasn't very good. In fact/To tell the truth/Actually/As a matter of fact, it was awful.</i>
as a matter of fact		
to tell the truth	a dire la verità	
or rather	o piuttosto	<i>They're happy, or rather, they appear to be happy.</i>
or better	o meglio	<i>She lives in Liverpool, or better, she lives in a suburb of Liverpool.</i>
in other words	in altre parole	<i>He admitted taking the mobile-phone. In other words / To put it in another way, he stole it.</i>
to put it in another way		

♦ esemplificare

for example / for instance per esempio (e.g. = <i>exempli gratia</i>) *	<i>You could do a lot of things to help your mother. For example/For instance you could wash the dishes, make the beds, and so on.</i>
such as / like	<i>You could do a lot of things to help your mother, such as/like washing the dishes, making the beds, and so on.</i>
that is / that is to say (i.e. = <i>id est</i>) *	<i>E-commerce, that is/i.e. the buying and selling things through the Net, is becoming increasingly popular.</i>
namely (viz. = <i>videlicet</i>) *	<i>We met two days ago, that is to say Thursday. At least one person, namely Mr Johnson, agreed with me.</i>

(*Le abbreviazioni latine **e.g.** , **i.e.** , **viz.** si trovano generalmente in testi scritti formali e si leggono rispettivamente *for example*, *that is*, *namely*.)

♦ sintetizzare

in a word	in breve, in poche parole	<i>There have been a lot of murders and thefts in this area recently. In a word/In short/To put it briefly I'm worried.</i>
in short		
to put it briefly		
to sum up	per riassumere/in sintesi	<i>To sum up, this is an enjoyable film, suitable for old and young alike.</i>

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi adeguatamente con i *connettivi* forniti in ordine sparso.

or rather / in other words / as far as I know / in my opinion / with reference to / as far as ... is concerned / such as

1. Jack London wrote adventure novels "The Call of The Wild", and "White Fang".
2. She is enjoying herself, she appears to be enjoying herself.
3. I don't agree with you., you're wrong.
4. your article of 11th June, I would like to make a few points clear.
5., he has never been abroad.
6. payment, we are informing you that it must be effected within 30 days from receipt of the goods.
7. She was not allowed to take the book but she did. she stole it.

2. Sostituisci l'espressione sottolineata in ciascuna frase con l'espressione di significato simile scegliendo tra quelle fornite in ordine sparso.

all things considered / namely / as far as I can see / like / that is / by and large / to my mind / as a matter of fact / as for / for instance

1. I never watch TV programmes such as talk shows, quiz show and sit-coms.
2. I find anthropology, i.e the study of people, society and culture, very interesting.
3. On the whole I would say that the government of that country is not democratic.
4. In my opinion the chances of success are scarce.
5. We didn't have a good time. To tell the truth, we got very bored.
6. As to the actual cause of the explosion, not much is known yet.
7. As far as I know he has the best chance of winning the race.
8. There are a lot of things you can do to help people in need. For example, you can try to save some money and give it to charity.
9. In conclusion, I believe that Physical Education is an important part of every school curriculum.
10. The tallest animal in the world, viz. the giraffe, lives in Africa.

3. Traduci le espressioni tra parentesi. A volte sono possibili più soluzioni corrette.

1. (*Prima di tutto*) it is important to make a few points clear about the use of the Web.
2. (*In secondo luogo*) I would like to report some statistics.
3. (*In terzo luogo*) it is necessary to point out the advantages and disadvantages of shopping online.
4. Shopping on-line has at least two advantages. (*Primo*) , you can order things very quickly. (*Secondo*) , you can buy things at lower prices.
5. (*Secondo*) statistical data, e-commerce, (*cioè*) commerce on-line, is increasingly growing.
6. (*Per quanto riguarda*) the use of the Net in business, most businesses find it very advantageous and lucrative.
7. (*Secondo me*) , on-line buying has its limits.
8. (*Per esempio*) , buying a book from a regular bookstore is a much more rewarding experience.
9. (*Personalmente*) I believe that buying on line has more advantages than disadvantages.
10. (*Infine*) , I'd like to express my view about commerce on-line.
11. (*Per concludere*) , my opinion is that both traditional methods and e-commerce will continue to do well.

- 1.** Completa questo breve testo narrativo con:

and, but, so, because, when, while

It was half past ten at night. Jane was in her bedroom 1) the doorbell rang. It was dark 2) she switched on the lights 3) went downstairs. She opened the front door 4) there was nobody there. Nervously, she closed the door 5) went into the kitchen. She was scared 6) she was alone. She closed all the windows 7) doors tightly. A few minutes later, she heard a strange noise in the garden. She looked out of the window 8) screamed 9) she saw what was outside. Some very old women were jumping around. They were wearing big black hats 10) long black dresses. Just then, Jane remembered that it was Halloween.

- 2.** Completa adeguatamente il seguente testo argomentativo con i connettivi forniti in ordine sparso.

*on the other hand, because, and, besides, also,
all things considered, although, but, if, to begin with*

A dog as a pet?



You are going to have a pet 1) you don't know what pet is right for you? You have a wide choice: a cat, a dog, a goldfish, a monkey, a parrot, or even a snake. It much depends on your needs, but, 2) I were you, I wouldn't choose a dog.

3) dogs are a lot of trouble. They can be noisy 4) disturb your neighbours, or they can be aggressive and attack people.

5) having a dog can be tiring. They need to be fed, showered, brushed, walked, and taken to the vet regularly. Dogs are 6) expensive to keep 7) dog food, dog medicines and the visits to the vet cost a lot of money.

8) some people argue that dogs are wonderful companions. They say that dogs are faithful, affectionate and willing to listen to our most banal statements. They play with children and show their affection with a lick on the hand or a wagging tale. They also say that dogs can be helpful in many ways. They can be trained as watchdogs to guard the house and the family. They scare burglars off making you feel safe and secure. They can also be trained as guide dogs to help the blind. They can be taught all sorts of things, even to fetch our slippers.

9) 10) having a dog has some positive aspects, I still think that dogs are a great deal of trouble. Why not a goldfish instead?

3. Completa il testo sui vantaggi e svantaggi del mestiere di *guida di viaggio* (*travel guide*) con:
all things considered, however, furthermore, firstly, secondly, although, because (x3)

CHOOSING A JOB

Did you ever dream of becoming a travel guide when you were young?

- 1) there are many advantages, being a travel guide also has its drawbacks.
- One of the main advantages of being a travel guide is that it is exciting
- 2) you can travel round the world, see lots of beautiful places and meet lots of different people. 3) it is interesting because you have the opportunity to make contact with different cultures and visit lots of museums all over the world.
- 4) there are also disadvantages to doing this kind of job.
- 5) it is very tiring 6) you have to work long hours and you may have to spend long periods away from your family and friends. 7) it is stressful 8) you must always be ready to listen to the people you are guiding and help them solve their problems.
- 9) becoming a travel guide is not a bad idea, as long as you are aware of the drawbacks this kind of job involves.

4. Completa il testo adeguatamente con i *connettivi* forniti in ordine sparso. Alcuni connettivi debbono essere usati più volte e a volte più di una soluzione è corretta.

however, because of, since, because, as, all things considered, besides, furthermore, for example, moreover, as regards

OUR LIVES FIFTY YEARS FROM NOW

Sometimes I wonder what our lives will be like fifty years from now. 1) technology and science are developing very fast, it seems to me that they will have deeply changed.

2) everyday life, I think that our lives will be easier 3) computers will do most of the work. Housewives, 4) , won't have to do the housework 5) "thinking" robots will do it. They won't have to go shopping 6) they will be able to buy things on line. 7) , most of the people won't have to go to their offices 8) they will be able to work at home on their computers.

I also believe that people will live longer 9) scientists will have found cures for most diseases. 10) , we won't have to go to the doctor 11) doctors will be able to examine us through the Internet.

12) , I think that fifty years from now pollution levels will still be quite high 13) factories, power stations and cars will continue to send gases up into the earth's atmosphere. 14) pollution, fresh air and oxygen will be rare and we will probably have to pay for them as we are doing now for clear water.

15) , whatever the future brings, our lives will certainly be very different fifty years from now.

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION (FCE)

5. Le congiunzioni *since*, *while*, *as*, *for* hanno vari significati . Riformula le frasi usando da due a cinque parole compresa la parola fornita, per spiegare il significato che esse hanno nelle frasi date.

➤ *It's two months since I stopped smoking.*

not *I have **not smoked** for two months.*

1. *Since the fog was too thick, all the flights were cancelled.*

because *All the flights were cancelled too thick.*

2. *I slipped while I was going to school.*

when *I was going slipped.*

3. *My sister likes rock music while I like classical music.*

whereas *My sister likes rock music classical music.*

4. *As she opened the door, she noticed something strange.*

soon *She noticed something strange as the door.*

5. *He stayed at home as he had flu.*

because *He stayed at home flu.*

6. *I have been working since 8 o'clock. I started two hours ago.*

for *I two hours.*

7. *We must leave for we have a long way to go.*

because *We must leave to go.*

8. *As the fog was too thick, a lot of flights were cancelled.*

due *A lot of flights the thick fog.*

6. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando da due a cinque parole compreso la parola fornita.

1. *He was very tired, yet he still went out with his friends.*

being *Despite he still went out with his friends.*

2. *He is an interesting professor. Students crowd his classroom.*

such *He is students crowd his classroom.*

3. *The workers went on strike because of the bad working conditions.*

owing *The workers the bad working conditions.*

4. *Tigers are not domesticated and neither are lions.*

nor *Neither domesticated.*

5. *Besides being honest, he is also very polite.*

addition *He is honest very polite.*

6. *He had run out of money, so he had to look for a job.*

because *He had to look for run out of money.*

7. *I never go to a football match unless I am forced to.*

if *I never go to a football match forced to.*

8. *He took an umbrella in case it might rain.*

fear *He took an umbrella rain.*

9. *You can use my car as long as you drive carefully.*

unless *You can't drive carefully.*

10. *We must hurry or we will miss the train.*

if *We will miss the train hurry.*

Grammar and practice

- | | |
|--|---|
| A. Uso dell'infinito con <i>to</i>
B. Uso dell'infinito senza <i>to</i>
C. Uso della forma in <i>-ing</i> | D. Verbi seguiti o da forma in <i>-ing</i> o da infinito
E. Tempi dell'infinito e della forma in <i>-ing</i> (gerundio)
Revision: infinito con <i>to</i> /senza <i>to</i> o forma in <i>-ing</i> ? |
|--|---|

★★ A USO DELL' INFINITO CON TO

L'INFINITO CON TO SI USA:

• come soggetto di una frase (ma è più comune usare il soggetto impersonale "it". Nel linguaggio informale è più comune la forma in <i>-ing</i> .)	<i>To forgive</i> is often difficult. (= <i>It is often difficult to forgive.</i>) = Forgiving is often difficult.) Perdonare è spesso difficile.
• per esprimere lo scopo di un'azione nelle frasi finali	<i>He is learning English to get a job in a tourist office.</i> Sta imparando l'inglese per ottenere un lavoro in un ufficio turistico.
• in sostituzione di una frase relativa	<i>I was the only one to speak (= who spoke) German.</i> Ero l'unico a parlare (= che parlava) il tedesco.
• dopo i composti di some, any, no, every	<i>Would you like something to drink?</i> Vorresti qualcosa da bere?
• dopo how, who, what, when, where, whether in frasi dipendenti	<i>Can you show me how to use this camera?</i> Puoi mostrarmi come usare questa macchina fotografica?
• dopo molti aggettivi e participi passati come: <i>easy, difficult, essential, vital, un/necessary, im/possible, desirable, ready, sorry, forbidden, prohibited, obliged, pleased, surprised, ...</i>	<i>It was difficult to understand him.</i> Fu difficile capirlo. <i>We were obliged to postpone the meeting.</i> Fummo obbligati a posticipare l'incontro.
• dopo be + the first/the second/.../ the next/the last/ the best	<i>He is the best actor to play that part.</i> Lui è il miglior attore a recitare quella parte.
• dopo "only" per esprimere un risultato insoddisfacente	<i>She went to buy that dress only to find that it had already been sold.</i> Lei andò a comperare quel vestito per scoprire che era già stato venduto.
• in espressioni come: <i>to tell the truth, to be honest, to begin with, to start with, to sum up</i>	<i>To start with, I'll have tomato soup.</i> Per cominciare, prendo zuppa di pomodoro.
• dopo molti verbi come: <i>afford, appear, choose, expect, fail, hurry, intend, learn, manage, offer, plan, pretend, refuse, seem, swear, teach, threaten, want, ...</i> - i verbi <i>agree, arrange, ask, decide, demand</i> possono essere seguiti sia dall'infinito che da <i>that + should</i> , - i verbi <i>hope, promise</i> possono essere seguiti sia dall'infinito che da <i>that + frase</i> .	<i>I can't afford to buy it.</i> Non posso permettermi di comperarlo. <i>They agreed to postpone (that they should postpone) the meeting.</i> Furono d'accordo di posticipare l'incontro. <i>He promised not to do (that he wouldn't do) that again.</i> Promise di non rifarlo.

Ricorda che l'**infinito con to** si usa anche dopo:

- <i>would like, would love, would prefer</i> (vedi a PAG. 374)	<i>Would you like to go for a walk?</i> Vorresti andare a fare una passeggiata?
- <i>be able, be allowed, have</i> (sostitutivi dei modali <i>can, may, must</i>) (vedi a PAG. 268) - (272) - (276)	<i>I wasn't able to open the door.</i> Non fui capace di aprire la porta.
- <i>be heard, be seen, be observed, be noticed, ...</i> (vedi "verbi di percezione" alla forma passiva a PAG. 328)	<i>He was seen to steal the watch.</i> Fu visto rubare l'orologio.
- <i>be made</i> (vedi "far fare" alla forma passiva a PAG. 326)	<i>I was made to wash the dishes.</i> Fui costretto a lavare i piatti.
- <i>get</i> (con il significato di "persuadere" ; vedi "far fare" a PAG. 326)	<i>I got my father to lend me his car.</i> Convinsi mio padre a prestarmi la sua auto.
- il modale <i>ought</i> (vedi a PAG. 274)	<i>I ought to finish this work today.</i> Dovrei finire questo lavoro oggi.

L'**INFINITO CON TO** SI USA anche nelle seguenti costruzioni:

A	COSTRUZIONE OGGETTIVA verbo + complemento oggetto + infinito
• con verbi come: <i>want, (would) like, (would) hate, (would) love, (would) prefer, allow, permit, forbid, force, cause, need, ...</i> Tali verbi non sono mai seguiti da <i>that + frase</i> .	<i>Do you want me to help you?</i> Vuoi che ti aiuti? <i>The flood caused the bridge to collapse.</i> L'inondazione fece crollare il ponte.
B	for + complemento + infinito
• dopo alcuni aggettivi come: <i>easy, difficult, safe, dangerous, impatient, eager, ...</i>	<i>She was impatient for her friend to arrive.</i> Era impaziente che il suo amico arrivasse.
• dopo altri aggettivi (nella forma impersonale) come: <i>it's essential, it's common/rare, it's usual/unusual, it's important, it's normal, it's possible/impossible, it's advisable, it's necessary/unnecessary, it's vital, ...</i> (con questo gruppo di aggettivi è possibile anche la costruzione con <i>that + should</i>)	<i>It was impossible for us to understand him.</i> Ci fu impossibile capirlo. <i>It's advisable for him to leave today.</i> E' consigliabile che lui parta oggi. (= <i>It's advisable that he should leave today.</i>)
• dopo too + aggettivo	<i>This grammar rule is too difficult for me to understand.</i> Questa regola di grammatica è troppo difficile da capire per me.
• dopo aggettivo + enough	<i>That door isn't large enough for her to go through.</i> Quella porta non è abbastanza larga perché lei ci passi.
• dopo i verbi arrange e take	<i>We arranged for the conference to start at 9.00.</i> Abbiamo fatto in modo che la conferenza iniziasse alle 9.00.
• dopo i verbi che reggono la preposizione for : <i>wait for, can't wait/long for</i>	<i>I'm waiting for Bob to arrive.</i> Sto aspettando che Bob arrivi.
C	of + complemento + infinito
• dopo gli aggettivi : <i>kind, nice, sensible, clever, rude, cruel, silly, stupid, wrong, careless, ...</i>	<i>It was very kind of them to put us up.</i> E' stato molto gentile da parte loro ospitarci.

PRACTICE

1. Trasforma le frasi come nell'esempio.

➤ *Training for sports competitions can be very tiring.*
To train for sports competitions can be very tiring.

1. Eating chips is fattening.
2. Preparing for exams can be stressful.
3. Watching horror films is scary.
4. Playing video games too much is not recommended.

2. Abbina le parti in A alle parti in B adeguatamente.

A	B	
1. They went to the supermarket	(a) to keep warm.	1 ...
2. She bought a coat	(b) to take a stroll.	2 ...
3. I went to the theatre with Paul	(c) to buy stamps.	3 ...
4. Miss Sway went to the park	(d) to buy food.	4 ...
5. She went to the post office	(e) to see a play.	5 ...

3. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima iniziando con le parole fornite.

- *You mustn't stay out too long. // I don't want **you to stay out too long**.*
1. They haven't delivered the parcel yet. // We're still waiting
 2. Can anybody repair the gate? // I need
 3. My parents don't want me to go on holiday with my friends. // My parents don't allow
 4. A taxi will collect you. // We have arranged
 5. I hope he will phone me soon. // I can't wait
 6. We didn't reserve a table, which was very stupid of us. // It was very stupid
 7. Your passport will be ready in two weeks. // It will take two weeks
 8. Shall I clean the kitchen? // Do you want
 9. Shall I repeat? // Would you prefer
 10. He phoned me immediately, which was very kind of him. // It was very kind
 11. That case was too heavy. He couldn't carry it. // That case was too
 12. The room wasn't large enough. Not all the people could get in. // The room wasn't large enough
 13. We can't come. // It's impossible
 14. They forbid the children to play in the yard. // They don't permit
 15. The tower collapsed because of the earthquake. // The earthquake caused
 16. I hope you will come and see us soon. // I can't wait
 17. That text was so difficult that I couldn't translate it. // That text was too difficult
 18. We couldn't understand him. // It was impossible for
 19. You shouldn't worry too much. // You oughtn't
 20. He couldn't leave the country. // They didn't permit

★★ **B** USO DELL'INFINITO SENZA *TO*

L'INFINITO SENZA *TO* SI USA:

• dopo i modali : <i>can, could, may, might, will, would, must, shall, should</i> (ma: <i>ought to</i>)	<i>I couldn't remember her name.</i> Non riuscii a ricordare il suo nome.
• dopo would rather e had better (Vedi a PAG. 304 e 306)	<i>I'd rather stay at home tonight.</i> Preferirei rimanere a casa questa sera. <i>You'd better leave tomorrow.</i> Faresti meglio a partire domani.
• dopo make, have e let con il significato di "far fare", nella forma attiva (Vedi a PAG. 326)	<i>My mother made me clean my bedroom.</i> Mia madre mi ha fatto pulire la mia camera. <i>My parents don't let me wear the clothes I like.</i> I miei genitori non mi permettono di indossare gli abiti che mi piacciono.
• dopo i verbi di percezione : <i>feel, hear, see, notice, observe, watch, listen to, ...</i> nella forma attiva e quando l'azione è percepita dall'inizio alla fine (Vedi a PAG. 328)	<i>I saw him get into a taxi.</i> Lo vidi salire in un taxi. <i>I heard her shout.</i> La udii gridare.
• dopo il verbo help in inglese informale o inglese americano	<i>Can you help me carry this suitcase?</i> Mi puoi aiutare a portare questa valigia?
• dopo why, why not usati per dare un suggerimento (Vedi a PAG. 135)	<i>Why not go to the cinema?</i> Perché non andare al cinema?
• dopo except e but (= tranne, eccetto)	<i>We can do nothing but/except wait.</i> Non possiamo fare altro che aspettare.
• se è il secondo infinito di una proposizione infinitiva coordinata	<i>They decided to go and see a film.</i> Decisero di andare a vedere un film.

PRACTICE

1. *Infinito con o senza to?* Completa le frasi con *to* quando richiesto.

Metti una X quando non è richiesto. (Per fare questo esercizio ripassa anche a PAG. 366 e 367)

1. It is advisable not ... swim in this river. 2. He went to Germany ... attend a German course.
3. I'd rather ... do it by myself, if you don't mind. 4. Could you ... speak more slowly? 5. ... fish is prohibited in this lake. 6. You'd better ... take a couple of aspirins. 7. That was the easiest thing ... do. 8. Was it difficult for you ... understand his handwriting? 9. Would you like something ... eat? 10. They might ... be late. 11. I'm sorry ... hear that you won't be coming.
12. We will be pleased ... put you up. 13. They expect the game ... finish late. 14. We saw him ... cross the road. 15. He was the last ... arrive. 16. They should ... be at work. 17. We couldn't do anything but ... accept his advice. 18. I'm running ... catch the bus. 19. He was the only one ... think so. 20. Could you help me ... carry this suitcase to my room, please? 21. Why not ... let them do what they like? 22. It will be impossible for them ... arrive before Sunday. 23. Mum wants us ... go home immediately. 24. Why don't you let me ... go out tonight, mum? 25. I heard him ... say that. 26. He offered ... help us. 27. They agreed ... postpone the meeting.
28. I was glad ... see him. 29. I managed ... repair the television. 30. We have decided ... join a gym. 31. I hope ... see you again. 32. He promised not ... be late again. 33. Her sad story made me ... cry. 34. ... tell you the truth, I'm rather disappointed. 35. Can you ... dance? 36. Let me ... help you. 37. We weren't allowed ... leave the room. 38. We had ... wait for a long time.
39. The robbers were seen ... run away. 40. I noticed the two men ... jump over the fence. 41. She can ... do everything but ... iron. 42. They decided ... sell their house and ... move to Italy.

LA FORMA IN -ING SI USA:

• nelle forme progressive dei tempi verbali	<i>The baby was sleeping.</i> Il neonato stava dormendo.
• con funzione di aggettivo (Vedi a PAG. 180)	<i>It's an interesting film.</i> È un film interessante.
• con funzione di sostantivo - soggetto o oggetto della frase (Vedi a PAG. 185)	<i>Fishing is forbidden in this river.</i> È proibito pescare in questo fiume.
• nelle proibizioni brevi (Vedi a PAG. 185)	<i>No fishing.</i> Vietato pescare
• in sostituzione di diversi tipi di frasi subordinate (quando il soggetto della subordinata e della principale è lo stesso): - di una frase subordinata relativa - di una frase subordinata di modo - di una frase subordinata di tempo (con le preposizioni di tempo: <i>after, before, when, while, since, on</i>) - di una frase subordinata di mezzo (con la preposizione <i>by</i>) - di una frase subordinata di causa	<i>There was a child crying (= who was crying).</i> C'era un bambino che piangeva. <i>I spend a lot of time listening to music.</i> Trascorro molto tempo ad ascoltare musica. <i>I watch TV before going to bed.</i> Guardo la televisione prima di andare a letto. <i>Since leaving (= Since he left) school, he has had many different jobs.</i> Da quando ha lasciato la scuola, ha fatto molti lavori diversi. <i>On opening the door I saw a man lying on the floor.</i> Aprendo la porta/ Nel momento in cui aprii la porta, vidi un uomo steso sul pavimento. <i>He makes a living by working as a mechanic.</i> Si guadagna da vivere facendo il meccanico. <i>Being very shy, Susan often blushes.</i> Essendo molto timida, Susan spesso arrossisce.
• dopo le espressioni : <i>it's no use/no good, what's the use of, be busy, be (not) worth, there is no point in, have difficulty in, have trouble, have a hard/difficult time, can't help/resist, can't stand/bear, what/how about?</i>	<i>It's no use explaining this to him; he won't understand.</i> È inutile spiegarglielo; non capirà. <i>I couldn't help crying.</i> Non potei fare a meno di piangere.
• dopo le preposizioni e quindi anche dopo - aggettivi / sostantivi / verbi + preposizione (Vedi a PAG. 182)	<i>She left without saying goodbye.</i> Lei partì senza salutare. <i>Besides being honest, he is also generous.</i> Oltre ad essere onesto è anche generoso. <i>She's good at dancing.</i> È brava a ballare. <i>She apologised for breaking my glasses.</i> Chiese scusa per aver rotto i miei occhiali. <i>Tom is not used to getting up early.</i> Tom non è abituato ad alzarsi presto.
Ricorda: <i>be used to e get used to, look forward to, be/get accustomed to, object to</i> , dove il "to" è preposizione e non la particella infinitiva	

LA FORMA IN -ING SI USA anche:

- dopo **alcuni verbi** come:

- *admit, adore, appreciate, avoid, consider, delay, deny, escape, fancy, feel like, finish, forgive, imagine, involve, keep, mention, mind, miss, postpone, practice, resent, resist, risk, stop, suggest* (suggest ha varie costruzioni,

vedi a **PAG. 338**)

- *like, love, hate, enjoy, prefer, detest, dislike*
(per esprimere preferenza in generale)

- *go o come* (seguiti da verbi che esprimono attività fisica o dal verbo *to shop*)

- *spend o waste (money, time, energy,...)*

- i verbi di percezione: *feel, hear, listen to, observe, notice, see, watch,...*
(quando l'azione espressa dal verbo che segue è percepita solo in parte. Vedi a **PAG. 328**)

He admitted stealing the jewels.

Ammise di aver rubato i gioielli.

We risked drowning.

Rischiammo di annegare.

He loves reading books.

Ama leggere libri.

Let's go swimming/dancing/shopping/...
Andiamo a nuotare/ballare/far spese, ...

You'll waste your time trying to reason with him.

Sprecherai il tuo tempo a tentare di ragionare con lui.

I saw him crossing the street.

Lo vidi mentre stava attraversando la strada.

LA FORMA IN -ING SI USA anche in costruzioni particolari:

A	verbo + complemento oggetto + forma in -ing
• con i verbi :	
<i>catch, discover, find</i>	<i>I caught/discovered/found my sister reading my letters.</i> Ho scoperto/trovato mia sorella che leggeva le mie lettere.
<i>get, have</i>	<i>The technician got/had this machine going in no time.</i> Il tecnico riuscì a far funzionare questa macchina in un attimo.
<i>keep, leave</i>	<i>Don't keep/leave them standing outside.</i> Non farli stare fuori in piedi.
<i>set</i>	<i>His words set me thinking.</i> Le sue parole mi fecero pensare.

B	verbo + aggettivo possessivo/ forma possessiva del nome/complemento oggetto + forma in -ing
• con i verbi e le espressioni :	
- <i>avoid, detest, dislike, enjoy, excuse, forgive, hate, imagine, involve, like, love, mention, mind, miss, pardon, prevent, resent, risk, can't stand, be worried about, be fed up with</i>	<i>I enjoy his/him asking me questions.</i> Mi piace quando lui mi fa delle domande. <i>I can't stand Tom's/Tom smoking in the house.</i> Non sopporto che Tom fumi in casa. <i>I'm worried about his / him / John's /John working so hard.</i> Sono preoccupata del fatto che lui/John lavori così tanto.
- con i verbi <i>delay, deny, postpone, suggest</i> è possibile solo il possessivo o la forma possessiva del nome	<i>I can't deny my having misunderstood what he said.</i> Non posso negare di aver capito male ciò che ha detto.

PRACTICE

1. Coniuga i verbi tra parentesi al *tempo verbale progressivo* corretto (*present continuous, past continuous, present perfect continuous, past perfect continuous, future continuous, future perfect continuous*).

1. While she (*go*) home, she bumped into an old friend.
2. When he finally took the foreign service exam, he (*learn*) Japanese for seven years.
3. At this time tomorrow we (*lie*) on a wonderful sandy beach.
4. Where's Mary? - She (*study*) in her bedroom.
5. I (*work*) hard all day and I'm tired.
6. In ten minutes I (*study*) French for two hours.

2. Completa le frasi adeguatamente con le *forme in -ing* fornite in ordine sparso.

fishing / trying / doing / having / smoking / learning / singing / saying / pressing / being / inviting / telling / listening to / going / walking / visiting / cutting / tiring

1. What are you tonight? - I'm going to the cinema.
2. She suggested pizza for lunch.
3. is very dangerous for your health.
4. How about music?
5. I have difficulty in foreign languages.
6. She is not used to to bed late.
7. They left without goodbye.
8. Thank you for us to your party.
9. You can't fish here. The sign says "No".
10. We spent the day the city.
11. Select your drink by the button.
12. Besides boring, Tom is also rude.
13. Grandma is very good at fairy tales.
14. through the park I saw a deer.
15. You'll waste your time to convince him.
16. We heard the woman a beautiful song.
17. A lawn mower is a machine for the grass.
18. My job is really When I get home I'm exhausted.

3. Trasforma le frasi adeguatamente usando la *forma in -ing*.

1. To learn Chinese is not easy.
2. It's a wonderful pastime to listen to his jokes.
3. It's natural to look forward to the holidays.
4. Do not trespass!
5. Do not dump!

4. Abbina adeguatamente le parti in A alle parti in B.

A

1. There was a woman
2. Since leaving London
3. I often read
4. Being almost bald,
5. He had an accident
6. I earn my living

B

- (a) by working as a mechanic
- (b) before going to bed.
- (c) he has lived in many different cities.
- (d) sitting on a bench.
- (e) he rarely goes to the barber's.
- (f) while driving to work.

1 ...
2 ...
3 ...
4 ...
5 ...
6 ...

5. Completa le frasi con la *preposizione* corretta e la *forma in -ing* del verbo tra parentesi.

(Ripassa a **PAG. 182**)

➤ *I'm not very good at (play) **playing** the piano.*

1. Alan is fond (*do*) puzzles.
2. I'm tired (*study*) Maths.
3. I wanted to go to a concert but Peter was not interested (*go*)
4. He's fed up (*do*) the same things every day.
5. She was very angry so she left (*say*) goodbye.
6. I'm thinking (*buy*) a new house.
7. She is getting used (*live*) on her own.
8. Jenny is very keen (*swim*)

6. Scrivi il verbo tra parentesi nella forma corretta (*infinito* o *forma in -ing*?). Fai attenzione: il "to" è preposizione o parte costitutiva dell'infinito?

1. After a lot of effort, I managed **to (convince)** her.
2. Kevin wanted **to (see)** me.
3. I'm not used **to (study)** until late.
4. I'm accustomed **to (work)** at night.
5. I used **to (take)** a nap after lunch.
6. The children are looking forward **to (go)** to the funfair.

7. Completa le frasi adeguatamente usando le coppie di verbi o espressioni fornite e la corretta *forma in -ing*, come nell'esempio.

<i>practised / play</i>	<i>is not worth / pay</i>	<i>denied / be</i>	<i>appreciate / receive</i>
<i>delayed / make</i>	<i>is no use / try</i>	<i>admitted / shoot</i>	<i>were busy / work</i>
<i>caught / read</i>	<i>couldn't stand / wait</i>	<i>risks / irritate</i>	<i>imagine / dance</i>

➤ *The suspect **admitted shooting** the victim.*

1. I would some news from you.
2. It all that money for an imitation.
3. The Smiths the reservation until they were sure of the date of their departure.
4. It to talk to him. He's quite death.
5. Tom the piano every day.
6. We when he dropped by.
7. She involved in the scandal.
8. Acting that way, Susan her boss.
9. I my mother my diary.
10. They went away. They so long.
11. I can't with him again.



D VERBI SEGUiti o DA FORMA IN -ING O DA INFINITO

◆ Alcuni verbi possono essere seguiti indifferentemente dalla forma in **-ing** o dall'**infinito** (con **to**), mantenendo lo stesso significato. Tra questi ricorda:

	Forma in -ing	oppure	Infinito con to
begin, start, continue, cease, intend - Per questione di stile si tende a evitare due forme in <i>-ing</i> consecutive per cui le forme progressive sono seguite dall'infinito	<i>It began/started snowing</i> Ma si dice:	<i>It began/started to snow.</i> Cominciò a nevicare. <i>It's beginning/starting to snow.</i> Sta cominciando a nevicare.	

◆ Alcuni verbi possono essere seguiti dalla forma in **-ing** o dall'**infinito** (con **to**), con cambiamento di significato. Tra questi ricorda:

	Forma in -ing	Infinito con to
love detest hate enjoy prefer like	Quando ci si riferisce ad una attività in generale <i>I hate telling jokes.</i> Odio raccontare barzellette. <i>I like dancing.</i> Mi piace ballare.	Quando ci si riferisce ad una situazione specifica. (Le forme condizionali sono sempre seguite da infinito) <i>I hate to tell you this.</i> Odio dirti questo. <i>I would like to leave soon.</i> Vorrei partire presto.
stop go on	Quando significano l'interruzione o la continuazione di un'azione <i>He stopped drinking.</i> Smise di bere.	Quando si esprime lo scopo <i>He stopped to drink a cup of coffee.</i> Si fermò per bere un caffè.
forget remember regret	Quando ci si riferisce a un'azione avvenuta in un tempo precedente <i>I'll never forget being attacked by a dog.</i> Non dimenticherò mai di essere stata aggredita da un cane.	Generalmente seguiti da infinito <i>She forgot to turn off the oven.</i> Dimenticò di spegnere il forno.
mean	Con significato di "significare, comportare" <i>You can take the 6.30 train, but it will mean getting up at dawn.</i> Puoi prendere il treno delle 6.30, ma significherà alzarsi all'alba.	Con significato di "avere intenzione di" <i>I meant to get up early, but then I didn't.</i> Avevo intenzione di alzarmi presto, ma poi non l'ho fatto.
try	Con significato di "fare qualcosa come un esperimento per vedere se l'azione produce effetti" <i>Try eating less. You'd feel better.</i> Cerca di mangiare meno. Ti sentiresti meglio.	Con significato di "tentare, fare del proprio meglio" <i>I have tried to eat less many times.</i> Ho tentato di mangiare meno molte volte.
propose	Con significato di "proporre di fare qualcosa" <i>He proposed renting a car.</i> Propose di noleggiare una macchina.	Con significato di "avere intenzione di" <i>He proposed to rent a car.</i> Intendeva/Aveva intenzione di noleggiare una macchina.
need want require	Quando la forma in <i>-ing</i> che segue ha significato passivo <i>My hair needs washing.</i> I miei capelli hanno bisogno di essere lavati.	Generalmente seguiti da infinito <i>I need to wash my hair.</i> Ho bisogno di lavarmi i capelli.

◆ Alcuni verbi possono essere seguiti dalla forma in **-ing** quando non sono seguiti dal complemento oggetto, o dall'**infinito** quando c'è il complemento oggetto. Tra questi ricorda:

	Forma in -ing	Infinito con to
allow, permit, forbid, encourage advise, recommend (recommend può essere seguito anche da <i>that + should</i>)	<i>He advised going somewhere else.</i> Consigliò di andare da un'altra parte. <i>She recommended seeing that film.</i> Ha raccomandato di vedere quel film.	<i>He advised us to go somewhere else.</i> Ci consigliò di andare da un'altra parte. <i>She recommended us to see that film.</i> (= that we should see that film.) Ci ha raccomandato di vedere quel film.

◆ I verbi di percezione possono essere seguiti dalla forma in **ing** o dall'**infinito senza to**

	Forma in -ing	Infinito senza to
feel, hear, listen to, see, watch, notice (Vedi a PAG. 328)	Quando l'azione viene percepita solo in parte (verbo + compl. oggetto + -ing) <i>I saw him crossing the street.</i> Lo vidi che stava attraversando la strada.	Quando l'azione viene percepita dall'inizio alla fine (verbo + compl. oggetto + infinito senza to) <i>I saw him cross the street.</i> Lo vidi attraversare la strada. (dall'inizio alla fine)

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi con l'*infinito con to* o la *forma in -ing* dei verbi tra parentesi.

1. I'll never forget (*meet*) Brad Pitt.
2. I forgot (*add*) sugar, so my cake tasted horrible.
3. We regret (*inform*) you that you failed your test.
4. I really regret (*shout*) at him that way.
5. Do you remember (*see*) that film before?
6. Did you remember (*feed*) the dog?
7. Tom tried (*stay*) awake, but he couldn't.
8. Why don't you try (*lose*) weight? You might feel better.
9. I hate (*tell*) you this, but they're not playing the football game tomorrow as planned.
10. I hate (*watch*) TV. I prefer (*read*) books.
11. You should stop (*smoke*) if you want to enter the marathon next year.
12. We had to stop (*mend*) a flat tyre on our way back.
13. I like (*collect*) stamps. It's my favourite hobby.
14. I would like (*see*) her again.

2. Completa le frasi con l'*infinito con to*, *senza to* o la *forma in -ing* dei verbi tra parentesi.

1. My nails need (*cut*) 2. We need (*repair*) the gate. 3. She advised us (*buy*) the tickets in advance. 4. She advised (*take*) warm clothes. 5. They forbid (*fish*) in this river. 6. They forbid the children (*play*) in the garden. 7. In the evening it started (*rain*) 8. It's starting (*snow*) 9. I watched Tom (*wash*) the car from top to bottom. 10. When I entered the room, I saw my sister (*smoke*)

★★ E TEMPI DELL'INFINITO e DELLA FORMA IN -ING

◆ INFINITO

L'infinito ha quattro tempi alla forma attiva e due alla forma passiva

	Forma attiva	Forma passiva
Present infinitive (riferimento al presente o al futuro)	(to) + forma base (to) write	(to) be + part. passato (to) be written
Present continuous infinitive (riferimento ad un'azione in corso nel presente)	(to) be + forma in -ing (to) be writing	/
Perfect infinitive (riferimento al passato per esprimere che l'azione dell'infinito è accaduta prima dell'azione del verbo principale)	(to) have + part. passato (to) have written	(to) have been + part. passato (to) have been written
Perfect continuous infinitive (riferimento al passato. Enfatizza la durata dell'azione dell'infinito)	(to) have been + forma in -ing (to) have been writing	/

Attenzione!!!

Le forme perfette dell'infinito sono frequenti dopo:

• verbi come seem, believe, suppose, know, appear, claim, say , ...	<i>They seem to have enjoyed themselves. He is said to have spent a few years in prison.</i>
• i modali (seguiti da infinito senza to) (vedi forme composte dei modali, PAG. 296)	<i>He must have been on holiday. They must have been waiting for the bus.</i>
• i verbi hope, expect, promise (ma in questi casi il perfect infinitive ha significato di futuro anteriore)	<i>I hope to have finished this work by the end of the week.</i>

◆ FORMA IN -ING (gerund)

	Forma attiva	Forma passiva
Present gerund (riferimento al presente o al futuro)	forma base + -ing writing	being + part. passato being written
Perfect gerund (riferimento a un'azione precedente all'azione espressa dal verbo principale)	having + part. passato having written	having been + part. passato having been written

Attenzione!!!

Quando ci si riferisce ad un'azione precedente all'azione espressa dal verbo principale si può usare il **present gerund** o il **perfect gerund** senza differenza di significato.

Si possono usare indifferentemente il **present gerund** o il **perfect gerund** anche dopo **after** e **before** (quando il soggetto della principale e della subordinata temporale è lo stesso).

She denied stealing / having stolen the jewels. Negò di aver rubato i gioielli.

He'll do that after speaking / having spoken to her. Lo farà dopo aver parlato con lei.

PRACTICE

1. Trasforma le frasi seguendo l'esempio. Fai attenzione ai tempi dell'infinito.

- *It is reported that the musical is a success.* ***The musical is reported to be a success.***
1. It is known that Robert Smith is an honest man.
 2. It is known that she lived in Africa for many years.
 3. It is known that the situation is almost hopeless.
 4. It is reported that the famous actress is living in Paris at the moment.
 5. It is thought that he has been working for FBI for many years.
 6. It is known that Tom Benson worked as a reporter in South Africa.

2. Completa le frasi con il *present infinitive* o *perfect infinitive*. (Ricorda: senza *to* dopo i modali).

- *Susan's hair looks fantastic. She must (dye) have dyed it.*
1. They must (*leave*) together as I saw them get into the same car.
 2. It may (*rain*) again this afternoon as it's very cloudy.
 3. Look! The door is unlocked. Tom must (*forget*) to lock it.
 4. Sarah is not in. She must (*go*) to the office.
 5. She can't (*take*) an aspirin. She still has a headache.
 6. You must (*call*) your mother immediately.

3. Trasforma le frasi usando la *forma passiva* del *present infinitive* o del *perfect infinitive*.

- *Someone must have abandoned that dog.* ***That dog must have been abandoned.***
1. Someone should type those letters.
 2. Someone may have cut the grass.
 3. Someone must repair the gate.
 4. Someone must have stolen my umbrella.

4. Completa le frasi con il *present gerund* o *perfect gerund*. A volte entrambe le forme sono possibili.

1. Do you mind me (*sit*) here?
2. I'm worried about Tom (*work*) at night.
3. (*miss*) the bus, Martha got to work quite late.
4. (*live*) in France for many years, he speaks French almost like a native speaker.
5. The children denied (*break*) the window.
6. She admitted (*miss*) the bus.

5. Completa le frasi con la *forma passiva* del *present gerund* (*being + participio passato*) o del *perfect gerund* (*having been + participio passato*).

- *I hate (interrupt) being interrupted when I speak.*
1. Dogs love (*pat*) on the head.
 2. She often complains about (*mistreat*) when she was a child.
 3. Everybody detests (*call*) in the middle of the night.
 4. I hate (*wake up*) early in the morning.
 5. Animals hate (*keep*) in cages.
 6. The woman admitted (*abandon*) by her parents when she was two years old.

REVISION — infinito con *to*/senza *to* o forma in - *ing*?

1. Indica se i verbi/espressioni nell'elenco sono seguiti da *infinito con to* (A), *infinito senza to* (B), *forma in -ing* (C).

1. can't stand	(C)	6. how about	(...)	11. promise	(...)
2. there's no point in	(...)	7. must	(...)	12. want	(...)
3. might	(...)	8. would prefer	(...)	13. look forward to	(...)
4. avoid	(...)	9. decide	(...)	14. be used to	(...)
5. imagine	(...)	10. make someone	(...)	15. it's no use	(...)

2. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

1. I hate **doing** / **to do** the housework.
2. I hate **to tell** / **telling** you this, but you didn't pass your exam.
3. You keep **making** / **to make** a lot of mistakes. You should **to study** / **study** harder if you want **to get** / **getting** better results.
4. I haven't finished **repairing** / **to repair** the car engine.
5. I couldn't help **to tell** / **telling** him the truth.
6. I prefer **to swim** / **swimming** to **playing** / **play** football.
7. Clothes are quite cheap in that shop. It's worth **going** / **to go** there, even if it's a few kilometres from here.
8. Susan's mother watched her **cross** / **crossing** the street from one side to the other.

3. Completa le frasi con l'*infinito con to*, *senza to* o la *forma in -ing*.

1. Peter was unable (*play*) in the tennis tournament because his ankle sore.
2. I would prefer (*go*) to the football match instead of (*watch*) it on TV.
3. I've never seen such a fast horse in my life. It's worth (*bet*) on it.
4. I can't help (*think*) how beautifully Jane dances. She ought (*take*) it up professionally.
5. Her recent car accident has made it impossible for Jane (*qualify*) for the tournament.
6. It's no use (*try*) to convince her. She won't change her mind.
7. She was looking forward to (*show*) her skills in a tennis match against the leading champion.
8. I'll never forget (*meet*) Tom Cruise.
9. Will you remember (*lock*) all the doors?
10. I always forget (*close*) all the windows before (*go*) out.
11. Tom stopped (*drink*) a glass of water and then went back to work.
12. He advised me (*talk*) to a lawyer.
13. I like (*live*) on my own, but I can't get used to (*do*) the washing up.
14. We've decorated the house but we forgot (*buy*) some balloons.
15. James has given up (*play*) chess. He wasn't very good at it and he couldn't stand (*lose*) all the time.

4. Completa i *mini-dialoghi* con la forma corretta dell'*infinito* o la *forma in -ing*.

1. A: David, can you (*help*) me with my homework? I've tried (*do*) these exercises by myself but they are too difficult for me (*understand*)
B: All right. I'll (*help*) you in a minute.
2. A: What about (*go*) to see a film?
B: I hate (*go*) to the cinema. How about (*have*) a Chinese meal at home?
A: Yes, that sounds nice.
3. A: Is Betty in her room?
B: Yes, I can hear her (*talk*) on the phone.
A: Could you (*tell*) her that I'm waiting for her?
4. A: What time is it?
B: It's half past eight. You'd better (*hurry*) or you'll (*miss*) the bus.

5. Completa il testo con la forma corretta dell'*infinito* o con la *forma in -ing*.

When Tom was young he used to love 1) (*visit*) his grandparents who lived in a cottage by a river. He couldn't 2) (*wait*) for the school year 3) (*end*) His father would 4) (*drive*) him to the cottage where he used 5) (*spend*) the whole summer. He looked forward to 6) (*go*) fishing with his grandfather. Most days they managed 7) (*catch*) a lot of fish, but they would 8) (*throw*) them all back into the water. His grandmother was very good at 9) (*cook*) and Tom still remembers 10) (*eat*) fabulous chocolate biscuits. Grandma always let him 11) (*eat*) a biscuit as soon as they came out of the oven. Tom will never forget 1) 2) (*spend*) those wonderful summers with his grandparents.

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION (FCE)

6. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando da due a cinque parole compreso la parola fornita.
1. Their decision was difficult to accept
difficulty We their decision.
2. John's mother made him clean his bedroom.
was John his bedroom.
3. My father didn't let me go to the football match.
allowed I to the football match.
4. "OK. I cheated during the test," the student said.
admitted The student during the test.
5. Could you put the piano in that corner?
mind Would you in that corner?
6. "Why don't we go to the football match?" he said.
suggested He football match.
7. It's ridiculous to get so angry over a simple game.
use It's over a simple game.
8. Perhaps they were sleeping when you called them.
been They may when you called them.

TURN INTO ENGLISH

Esercizi di traduzione

FILE 1. Traduci in inglese.

1. Il signor Dalton non è inglese. È americano. 2. Loro sono qui per vedere la partita di pallacanestro. 3. I miei genitori sono italiani. 4. Lei è la mia insegnante. 5. Io sono un musicista. Tu sei un musicista o un cantante? 6. Lui non è inglese, vero? 7. Jennifer è una bella ragazza. 8. "I ragazzi sono a scuola?" "Sì." 9. Chi è quella signora? 10. "Di che colore sono i tuoi occhi?" "Sono neri." 11. "Come sta Jane?" "Sta bene, grazie." 12. "Perché Bob non è al lavoro?" "È ammalato." 13. Quando è il tuo compleanno? 14. "Come ti chiami?" "Mi chiamo George." 15. "Le ragazze hanno sete?" "No, hanno fame." 16. "È tardi?" "No, è presto." 17. "Siamo in ritardo?" "No, siete in anticipo." 18. "Ho caldo, e tu?" "Io ho freddo." 19. "Hai paura dei cani?" "No, ma ho paura degli insetti." 20. "Dov'è il mio maglione?" "Eccolo là." 21. "Dove sono i miei libri?" "Eccoli qui." 22. "Guarda. Ecco là il taxi." 23. Ecco qui una tazza di caffè. È caldo.

FILE 2. Traduci in inglese.

1. Lui fa l'astronauta. 2. La signora Jones è casalinga. 3. Atene è in Grecia. È la capitale della Grecia. È una bella città. 4. "Di dove sei?" "Sono irlandese. Sono di Dublino." 5. "Di che nazionalità sono Paul e Jane?" "Sono australiani." 6. "Juan è il mio corrispondente." "È spagnolo?" "No, è brasiliano." 7. La mia amica Sarah è molto carina. È alta e slanciata, con i capelli neri e ricci e gli occhi scuri. 8. Mio padre è autoritario ma mia madre è una persona dolce e gentile. 9. Tom è piccolo, grasso e avaro. 10. Robert e io siamo gemelli ma siamo diversi. Io sono pigro ma Robert è un ragazzo attivo. 11. Il tuo motorino è veloce? 12. "Di che colore è il tuo zainetto (rucksack)?" "È blu scuro." 13. "La tua sciarpa è nera?" "No, è arancione." 14. "Di che forma è il tuo viso?" "È ovale." 15. "Com'è il tuo caffè?" "È freddo e amaro." 16. "Com'è la sua valigia, signor Gorman?" "È una grande valigia nera di pelle." 17. "Com'è il tempo oggi?" "È variabile." 18. "Com'è il tempo a Roma oggi?" "È asciutto e c'è il sole." 19. "Com'è la temperatura a Londra oggi?" "Ci sono 18°C."

FILE 3. Traduci in inglese.

1. Gli studenti sono a scuola. 2. Le informazioni sono sulla tua scrivania. 3. Gli scaffali sono vicino alla porta. 4. Questi pomodori sono buoni, e gli spaghetti sono deliziosi. 5. La polizia è nel parco ora. 6. Quei coltelli non sono affilati. 7. "Chi sono quegli uomini?" "Sono vigili del fuoco." 8. Quella ragazza è messicana. 9. "Di che colore sono quelle matite?" "Sono rosse e nere." 10. "Che cos'è quest'insetto qui sulla mia scrivania?" "È uno scarafaggio." 11. "È interessante questo libro?" "No, ma quel libro là è molto interessante. Tratta di canguri." 12. Gli anni 60 sono fantastici. 13. Gli Ashley sono una famiglia inglese. 14. "Pronto. Sono Paul. Sei tu, James?" "Sì, sono io." 15. "Pronto, parlo con il 487964?" "Mi dispiace. Questo è il 497964." 16. "Quella lettera è per me?" "No, non è per te. È per lei." 17. Questo caffè è con lo zucchero o senza? 18. "Da dove proviene quella cartolina?" "Dal Giappone." 19. "Questo pacchetto è per Peter?" "Sì, è un regalo per lui." 20. "Questi CD sono per noi?" "Sì, sono per voi." 21. I bambini sono in giardino e la baby-sitter è con loro.

FILE 4. Traduci in inglese.

1. Nella mia camera da letto c'è un tappeto rosso. 2. Ci sono dei cuscini sul divano. 3. C'è una scrivania nell'angolo tra la porta e il pianoforte. 4. C'è un poster sulla parete, vicino ad una pianta. 5. "Mi scusi. Dov'è il supermercato?" "È in Elm Street, dirimpetto al cinema." 6. "Mi scusi. Il negozio di giocattoli è al piano superiore?" "No, è al piano terra, tra il negozio di scarpe e la libreria." 7. La fermata dell'autobus è in fondo alla strada, davanti al teatro. 8. "Mi scusi. C'è una banca qui vicino?" "Sì, ce n'è una in Gordon Street, sulla destra." 9. "C'è un film in televisione?" "No." 10. "Dov'è l'ottico, per favore?" "Alla fine della strada, sulla destra." 11. All'inizio della strada, sulla sinistra, c'è un negozio di articoli sportivi. 12. La piscina è dietro il parco. 13. Questa è la mia foto preferita. Io sono qui, tra i miei genitori, e mia sorella è qui, tra i suoi amici. 14. Questo è il mio quadro preferito. In primo piano sulla destra ci sono due camerieri, nel mezzo della stanza ci sono due musicisti e sullo sfondo ci sono gli ospiti. 15. Mr Smith è in Spagna per affari. 16. I miei genitori sono in vacanza. 17. Mio fratello non è al lavoro oggi. È a letto con l'influenza. 18. "Dov'è la sposa?" "Eccola là, nella parte posteriore della macchina." 19. "È fuori il gatto?" "Sì. Eccolo là sotto la pioggia." 20. Tom e Susan sono in vacanza al mare. Ora sono sulla spiaggia, sotto il sole.

FILE 5. Traduci in inglese.

1. Ho un cane ma non ho un giardino. 2. Il mio appartamento ha un soggiorno spazioso, una cucina e tre stanze, ma non ha un balcone. 3. "Il centro vacanze ha una piscina?" "Sì, c'è una grande piscina di fianco al parcheggio." 4. "Le camere hanno un bagno privato?" "No." 5. "Non hai una mappa, vero?" "No, mi dispiace." 6. "Come stai?" "Non molto bene. Ho il raffreddore. E tu?" "Io ho la tosse." 7. "Quanti anni ha la tua ragazza?" "Ne ha 17." 8. "Scusa, ci sono delle mele nel frigorifero?" "Sì, ce ne sono alcune." 9. Non ci sono dei sandwich ma c'è della pizza. 10. "Non abbiamo della carne per cena, vero?" "No, non ne abbiamo, ma abbiamo del pesce." 11. "Abbiamo della coca-cola?" "Sì, ne abbiamo tre lattine." 12. "Vorresti delle fragole?" "Sì, grazie." 13. "Vuoi un pezzo di formaggio?" "No, grazie. Non ho fame." 14. "Posso avere delle ciliegie?" "Mi dispiace, non ne ho." 15. Povero cane! Non c'è acqua nella sua ciotola. 16. "C'è del caffè?" "No, non ne è rimasto." 17. Questi mobili sono antichi. 18. C'è una notizia interessante sul giornale. 19. "Abbiamo dei compiti per casa?" "Sì, abbiamo tre esercizi." 20. "Quanto zucchero abbiamo?" "Ne abbiamo un chilo." 21. "Quante pagnotte di pane abbiamo?" "Ne abbiamo due." 22. Hai delle informazioni? 23. I tuoi bagagli sono vicini alla reception.

FILE 6. Traduci in inglese.

1. Quello è il signor Brown. È il nostro insegnante di matematica. 2. "Quello è il tuo cane?" "Sì, è il mio cane. Si chiama Jerry." 3. "Quella è la loro auto?" "No, la loro auto è la Punto rossa là in fondo." 4. "Che lavoro fa tuo padre?" "Fa il medico." 5. Quello è John e la ragazza con lui è sua cugina. 6. "Di chi è questo zaino? È di Mary?" "No, è di Peter." 7. "Di chi è figlio David?" "È il figlio del signor e della signora Clark." 8. Di chi è la moglie Martha? È la moglie di Richard? 9. "Questo è il giornale di oggi?" "No, è di ieri." 10. La camera dei bambini è al piano superiore, di fianco alla camera dei loro genitori. 11. "Di chi sono queste racchette da tennis? Sono le vostre?" "No, non sono le nostre. Sono di David e Richard." 12. "Dov'è tua sorella?" "È dal fornaio." 13. C'è una macchina della polizia alla fine della strada. 14. C'è un bel vestito nella vetrina del negozio. 15. Questi sono due nostri amici. 16. Quella è una mia cugina. È la figlia di mia zia. 17. "Questo pullover è tuo?" "No. Il mio è rosso."

TURN INTO ENGLISH

Esercizi di traduzione

FILE 7. Traduci in inglese.

1. Ci sono ventiquattro ore in un giorno e sessanta minuti in un'ora. 2. "Quanti anni ha Bill?" "Ha 17 anni." 3. "Qual è il tuo numero di telefono?" "È 492590." 4. "Qual'è l'indirizzo di Sarah?" "È 18 Lake Road." 5. Ci sono ventimila abitanti in questa cittadina. 6. Ci sono migliaia di luoghi da visitare in Italia. 7. Il supermercato è cento metri dalla stazione. 8. Ci sono centinaia di chilometri da Palermo a Milano. 9. "Mi scusi. Quanto costa questa rivista?" "Costa 3 euro e 10." 10. "Ecco una banconota da 10 euro." "Ecco il suo resto." 11. "Un panino al formaggio e una tazza di caffè, per favore." "Ecco qua. Fa 4 euro e 50." 12. "Posso pagare in contanti?" "Sì, certamente." 13. "Mi scusi. Qual'è il prezzo di questi pantaloni?" "Costano 90 Euro." 14. "Qual'è il peso di questa valigia?" "12 chili." 15. "Quanto è profondo Loch Ness?" "È profondo 223 metri." 16. "Qual'è la distanza tra Roma e Londra?" "Non lo so." 17. "Mi scusi. Quanto dista la stazione?" "È a circa quattrocento metri da qui." 18. "Qual'è la larghezza di questo tavolo?" "È largo ottanta centimetri e lungo centoventi centimetri."

FILE 8. Traduci in inglese.

1. "Che ore sono?" "Sono le 9.30." 2. "Mi scusi. Che ore sono al suo orologio?" "Sono le 10.25" "Allora il mio orologio è avanti di dieci minuti." 3. Il treno delle 8.50 è in ritardo. 4. Siamo dieci minuti in anticipo. 5. "È puntuale il volo delle 9.40 per Londra?" "No, è in ritardo di quindici minuti." 6. "A che ora è il volo per Madrid?" "È alle 7.45." 7. "A che ora è il programma *Chi vuole essere milionario?*" "È alle 8.00 di sera." 8. "Che giorno è oggi?" "È mercoledì." 9. "Quando è Halloween?" "È il 31 ottobre." 10. Marzo è il terzo mese dell'anno e ha trentun giorni. 11. È caldo in estate nella tua città? 12. L'esame è tra due giorni. 13. "A che ora è il film *Il Gladiatore?*" "È alle 9.30. p.m., prima del notiziario." 14. Le vacanze di Natale sono di solito tra il 23 dicembre e il 6 gennaio. 15. Il documentario sulla vita nelle foreste tropicali è dopo il film. 16. C'è il mio programma preferito su ITV questa sera. È alle 18.30. 17. Il primo giorno di primavera è il 21 marzo. 18. La lezione di scienze è venerdì, tra la lezione di inglese e la lezione di francese. 19. "C'è una riunione (*meeting*) durante l'intervallo, vero?" "Sì, dalle 11.15 alle 11.30." 20. Noi siamo a scuola fino alle 13.30.

FILE 9. Traduci in inglese.

1. La primavera mi fa sentire felice. 2. "Il concerto finisce prima di mezzanotte?" "Sì, finisce alle 11.30." 3. Lui non vive a Londra. Vive a Leeds. 4. Io suono il pianoforte ma mio fratello no. 5. "Lui non va letto presto, vero?" "No, di solito va a letto verso mezzanotte." 6. "Ho fretta." "Perché non prendi un taxi?" 7. La mia amica Sally e io spesso ascoltiamo musica. 8. Tom non beve quasi mai caffè. 9. Io non mangio mai carne. Sono vegetariano. 10. "Vai mai a teatro?" "Sì, ci vado una volta al mese." 11. "Quanto spesso giochi a tennis?" "Ogni sabato pomeriggio con il mio amico Bill. Lui non gioca molto bene e non vince mai." 12. "Vai mai al pub?" "Sì, qualche volta dopo cena. Di solito incontro i miei amici là." 13. Perché lui fuma così tanto? 14. "Quanto tempo vivono i canguri?" "Circa venti anni." 15. "Mary vende fiori." "Scusa? Chi vende fiori?" "Mary." 16. Con che cosa tagli la carne? 17. Che cosa taglia la carne? 18. "Mark non compra mai fiori per sua moglie." "Scusa? Per chi lui non compra mai fiori?" 19. Chi non compra mai fiori per sua moglie?

FILE 10. Traduci in inglese.

1. Hai fame? Perché non prendi un sandwich? 2. Loro di solito fanno una lunga vacanza in estate. 3. Facciamo una pausa dalle 10.30 alle 10.45. 4. La nonna di solito fa un pisolino dopo pranzo. 5. Quando sono nervoso faccio una passeggiata nel parco. 6. "Tu non pranzi a casa, vero?" "No, pranzo al lavoro." 7. Lei ama ascoltare la musica ma non le piace la musica rock. 8. "A Mary piace il tè?" "Sì, ma non le piace il tè con il limone. Preferisce il tè con il latte." 9. Preferisco trascorrere il mio tempo libero con i miei amici che giocare con il computer. 10. "Vorresti andare ad un concerto questa sera?" "Mi dispiace. Non mi piace andare ai concerti." 11. Ho bisogno di un paio di guanti per proteggere le mie mani. 12. "Quanto tempo ci vuole per andare al lavoro?" "Occorrono 15 minuti con la macchina, ma ci vuole mezz'ora a piedi." 13. Lui di solito va al lavoro con il treno delle 7.30. 14. I cinesi mangiano con bastoncini. 15. Io di solito vado a scuola con la mia nuova bicicletta. 16. Lei si considera molto intelligente. 17. Lui spesso si ubriaca quando va al pub. 18. Lui spesso si taglia il mento quando si rade. 19. Noi ci divertiamo molto quando andiamo in montagna. 20. Bill e Mary si amano molto. 21. Fai come se fossi a casa tua. 22. Abbi cura di te.

FILE 11. Traduci in inglese.

1. "Dov'è la mamma?" "È in salotto. Sta leggendo una rivista." 2. "Cosa sta facendo Tom?" "Sta riparando il televisore." 3. "Ciao, Bill. A chi stai scrivendo?" "Non sto scrivendo. Sto studiando per il mia verifica di francese." 4. "Mark non sta facendo una telefonata, vero?" "No, sta ascoltando un nuovo CD nel salotto." 5. Siamo sulla spiaggia al momento e ci stiamo divertendo molto." 6. Dove stai trascorrendo le tue vacanze di Natale? 7. Con chi sta parlando tua sorella? 8. "Gli studenti stanno cenando ora?" "No, stanno facendo dei giochi nel soggiorno dell'albergo." 9. Barbara di solito indossa jeans e un pullover. Oggi indossa una mini-gonna e una camicetta. 10. Non ricordo il numero di telefono di Pamela. Te lo ricordi? 11. Il cuoco sta assaggiando la carne. 12. Barbara è in giardino e sta annusando il profumo dei fiori. 13. Questi fiori hanno un buon profumo. 14. Mary sta facendo un pisolino. 15. Oggi è il compleanno di Mary. Perché non le regaliamo un mazzo di fiori? 16. Perché non le offri un bicchiere di coca-cola? 17. Perché non presenti la tua ragazza ai tuoi genitori?

FILE 12. Traduci in inglese.

1. Quel libro è molto interessante. 2. Lei balla molto bene. 3. "Perché non facciamo un dolce?" "Sì, buona idea. Abbiamo della farina?" "Sì, ma non molta." 4. Lui è molto stanco perché lavora molto. 5. Lei non dorme molto. 6. "Ci sono delle fragole in frigorifero?" "Sì, ce ne sono molte." 7. "Quanta maionese abbiamo?" "Non molta." 8. "Quante scuole ci sono nella tua città?" "Ce ne sono alcune, ma ci sono pochi studenti." 9. "Ci sono dei buoni ristoranti in questa città?" "Sì, ci sono alcuni buoni ristoranti nel centro della città." 10. C'è poco zucchero per fare un dolce. 11. "C'è del formaggio?" "Sì, ce n'è un po'." 12. "Che cosa ne pensi di questa T-shirt?" "Mi piace, ma è troppo stretta per te." 13. C'è troppo traffico in questa città. 14. Ci sono troppi turisti in questo piccolo albergo. 15. Tu bevi troppo. 16. "Abbiamo abbastanza cibo per cena?" "No, penso che abbiamo bisogno (*need*) di comperare un po' di carne, alcune uova e molta verdura." 17. Quel ragazzo parla inglese piuttosto bene ma non è abbastanza grande per andare in Inghilterra da solo. 18. Questa gonna non è molto costosa. È piuttosto economica.

TURN INTO ENGLISH

Esercizi di traduzione

FILE 13. Traduci in inglese.

1. Guarda! Un aereo sta volando sulla nostra casa.
2. Ecco Bill. Sta correndo verso di noi.
3. Mary va a Londra in auto tutti i giorni.
4. Tom ha fame e sta andando in cucina.
5. Alcuni boy scout stanno correndo attorno ad un albero.
6. La signora Evans sta salendo sull'autobus.
7. Un ragazzo sta nuotando attraverso il fiume.
8. Un gatto sta arrampicandosi su di un albero.
9. Una signora sta scendendo da un taxi.
10. Un sentiero va attraverso il parco e conduce ad un castello.
11. Una piccola barca sta andando lungo il fiume.
12. Alcuni ragazzi stanno correndo giù per la collina.
13. Il signor e la signora Parker stanno partendo per Parigi?
14. Mark di solito esce di casa alle 7.30.
15. Oh, ciao Mary. Entra.
16. Gli studenti stanno andando a casa dopo la scuola.
17. "Mi scusi. Mi può dire come raggiungere la stazione?" "Vada dritto fino al semaforo, poi giri a sinistra. La stazione è alla fine della strada."
18. È facile raggiungere l'ufficio postale e non è lontano da qui. Cammina giù per questa strada e attraversa il ponte. L'ufficio postale è dopo il ponte, sulla destra.
19. Non dimenticare di telefonarmi, e ricordati di scrivere una cartolina a tua sorella.

FILE 14. Traduci in inglese.

1. Il tè è una pianta.
2. Il tè è nella teiera.
3. Mi puoi passare lo zucchero, per favore?
4. Lo zucchero fa male ai denti.
5. L'insegnante sta dicendo agli studenti di stare zitti.
6. A Tessa non piace il caffè, ma le piace il tè.
7. Il signor e la signora White sono in giardino con i loro bambini.
8. Lo zio John è molto triste oggi.
9. Dov'è il Presidente?
10. La Regina non è a Londra in questi giorni. È in Scozia.
11. Peter è all'ospedale.
12. Perché non ci incontriamo di fronte all'ospedale?
13. Ti piace andare in montagna nel fine settimana?
14. Tom sta guardando la televisione e Peter sta ascoltando la radio.
15. I miei amici stanno giocando a carte e Alex sta navigando in rete.
16. Siamo a Londra e alloggiamo all'Hilton Hotel.
17. Sarah and Mark vivono negli Stati Uniti.
18. Il fiume Po sfocia nel Mare Adriatico.
19. La National Gallery è a Londra.
20. Trascorro spesso le mie vacanze nelle isole Lipari, ma quest'anno voglio andare in Sardegna.
21. Quando viaggio, spesso parto dall'aeroporto di Heathrow.
22. Loro vivono nel nord d'Italia.
23. Mr Murphy fa il medico e sua moglie lavora come segretaria in una banca.
24. Nel quadro c'è un gatto su una sedia. Il gatto sta dormendo.
25. Le arance costano due euro al chilo.
26. Tom ha il raffreddore.
27. Che libro interessante!
28. La bambina dice al lupo (*says to the wolf*): "Che bocca grande hai!"
29. Questa zuppa è così salata.
30. Loro sono persone così gentili.
31. Com'è freddo oggi!

FILE 15. Traduci in inglese.

1. Sarah sa ballare molto bene.
2. "Sai nuotare?" "Sì."
3. Lei non sa andare a cavallo, vero?
4. Lui può capire, non è vero?
5. Ho un terribile raffreddore. Non riesco a respirare (*breath*).
6. Mi scusi. Mi può dire la strada per la stazione, per favore?
7. Posso prendere (in prestito) il tuo dizionario, Bill?
8. "Puoi comperare della frutta, Tom?" "Sì, certo, mamma."
9. "Mi scusi, dove posso trovare un costume da bagno?" "Al primo piano."
10. Non posso credere che questo pullover costi così tanto. Non può essere così costoso!
11. Può essere che Peter arrivi in ritardo. C'è uno sciopero degli autobus.
12. Che brutta giornata! È possibile che nevichi nel pomeriggio.
13. Forse Alan è a casa.
14. Probabilmente i telefoni cellulari non funzionano in questa zona.
15. Dai a Mary il mio numero di telefono. Può essere che non lo abbia.
16. Solo persone autorizzate possono usare questa entrata.
17. Gli studenti non possono parcheggiare i loro motorini in questa zona.
18. "Mi scusi. Posso sedermi qui?" "Sì, certamente."
19. "Posso uscire, mamma?" "No, non puoi."

FILE 16. Traduci in inglese.

1. Mi dispiace, non posso aiutarti ora. Debbo studiare geografia. 2. Quel film è molto interessante. Devi vederlo. 3. È tardi. Dobbiamo andare a casa. 4. Non si deve camminare sull'erba. 5. In Gran Bretagna si deve guidare sulla sinistra. 6. Gli studenti non debbono dormire in classe e non debbono scrivere sui muri. 7. Il gatto rifiuta di mangiare. Deve essere ammalato. 8. I Sullivan non sono a casa. Debbono essere in vacanza. 9. Questi jeans non sono molto buoni. Non debbono essere molto costosi. 10. Quella gonna è molto bella ma deve essere molto costosa. 11. "Che cosa facciamo questa sera?" "Andiamo al cinema." "No, non andiamo al cinema. Andiamo a teatro." 12. "Che cosa comperiamo a Mark per il suo compleanno?" "Comperiamogli un orologio." "No, non un orologio. Perché non gli comperiamo un CD?" 13. "Debbo pulire la cucina?" "Grazie, è molto gentile da parte tua." 14. "Perché non organizziamo una festa?" "Buona idea. Chi invitiamo?" 15. Ho fame. Perché non andiamo in uno snack-bar?

FILE 17. Traduci in inglese.

1. Volete sedervi/Vi sedete, per favore? 2. Mi passerebbe il sale, per favore? 3. Le dispiacerebbe badare al mio gatto mentre sono via? 4. Vuoi dell'altro tè? 5. "Vorresti una tazza di caffè?" "No, grazie. Non mi piace il caffè. Posso avere una tazza di tè, per favore?" 6. "Ho fame." "Vorresti un sandwich?" "Sì, grazie." 7. Vorrei trascorrere alcuni giorni a Praga. 8. "Dove vorresti andare in vacanza?" "Vorrei andare alle Maldive." 9. "Vorresti andare fuori questa sera?" "Oh, sì. Mi piacerebbe molto." 10. "Vuoi venire al mare con noi domenica, Tom?" "Mi piacerebbe, ma debbo aiutare mio padre a lavare l'auto." 11. Ho un nuovo film. Vuoi vederlo, Alex? 12. Noi non vogliamo trasferirci a Londra. 13. I miei genitori vogliono che io sia a casa prima di mezzanotte. 14. La mamma non vuole che noi andiamo fuori alla sera. 15. Vuoi che Tom ti aiuti? 16. L'insegnante vuole che gli studenti smettano di parlare. 17. Quali libri ti piacciono? 18. "Vorrei delle mele." "Quali desidera? Queste qui o quelle là?" "Quelle là." 19. "Quale di questi due film preferisci? Il film di avventura o il film di fantascienza?" "Quello di fantascienza."

FILE 18. Traduci in inglese.

1. "Dove eri ieri mattina?" "Ero a scuola." 2. "Eravate al lavoro ieri pomeriggio?" "Sì." 3. Loro non erano a casa ieri sera. Erano al pub. 4. Quel pullover era troppo costoso, vero? 5. Tu non sei nato in agosto, vero? 6. Perché John non era alla festa? 7. Lei meritava un premio perché ha ballato molto bene. 8. "Hanno invitato Mary e James alla festa?" "No." 9. Paul non è venuto alla festa ieri sera. 10. Non hai fatto i compiti, vero? 11. Ho dimenticato di mandargli una cartolina da New York. 12. Ho perso il portafoglio due giorni fa. 13. "Sei andato al cinema ieri sera?" "Sì. Ho visto un bel film." 14. Marie Curie è morta di leucemia. 15. Che cosa avete fatto ieri pomeriggio? 16. Quando è morto J.F. Kennedy? 17. "Susan è andata alle Bahamas l'estate scorsa." "Scusa? Chi è andato alle Bahamas l'estate scorsa?" 18. Che cosa hai ricevuto (get) per il tuo compleanno? 19. "Clare è andata al cinema con Bob ieri sera." "Non posso crederlo. Con chi è andata?" 20. Che cosa avete mangiato per cena ieri sera? 21. Mi dispiace che non ti ho telefonato ieri, ma non ho avuto tempo.

TURN INTO ENGLISH

Esercizi di traduzione

FILE 19. Traduci in inglese.

1. Ieri mattina alle 9.00 stavo lavorando nel mio ufficio. 2. Susan indossava un vestito verde alla festa? 3. Stavo facendo la doccia quando il telefono squillò. 4. Dove stavi andando quando ti ho incontrato? 5. "Non stavi dormendo quando ti ho telefonato, vero?" "No. Stavo facendo colazione." 6. Lei stava lasciando la festa quando Alan arrivò. 7. Erano le sette in punto. Io stavo ascoltando musica, il babbo stava leggendo e la mamma stava guardando la televisione. All'improvviso udimmo uno strano rumore. 8. Mentre stavo andando a casa incontrai il mio vecchio amico John. 9. Loro stavano guidando lungo Birch Street quando ebbero un incidente. 10. Quando il babbo arrivò, cenammo. 11. Lui stava lavorando in giardino quando un forte vento cominciò a soffiare. 12. Che cosa accadde mentre stavi attraversando la strada? 13. Abbiamo fatto molte fotografie quando eravamo in Florida. 14. Quando avevo cinque anni avevo i capelli lunghi. Ora ho i capelli corti. 15. Cinque anni fa Mary andava all'università. Ora lavora per una compagnia di assicurazioni. 16. "Mary aveva molto denaro cinque anni fa?" "No. Era solita avere poco denaro."

FILE 20. Traduci in inglese.

1. Arrivammo in ritardo perché Mark guidava molto piano. 2. John lesse le istruzioni attentamente. 3. Abbiamo avuto un incidente perché Peter guidava molto forte. 4. David è un bravo tennista. Gioca molto bene. 5. Era buio e pioveva forte. All'improvviso il motore della macchina si spense. 6. Michael è più alto di Bob. 7. Londra è più inquinata di Cambridge. 8. Il film era più noioso di quanto mi aspettassi. 9. Il villaggio era più lontano di quanto pensassi. 10. Vivere in campagna è più rilassante che vivere in una grande città. 11. Qual' è il luogo più arido del mondo? 12. Qual' è la montagna più alta del mondo? 13. Questa valigia è pesante. Penso che sia la più pesante delle tre. 14. Questo è il film più interessante che io abbia mai visto. 15. Oggi il tempo è peggiore di ieri. 16. Questo è il peggior libro che io abbia mai letto. 17. Robert è un bravo pianista, ma David è migliore di lui. 18. Abbiamo bisogno di una casa più grande. 19. Alan si alza più presto di me. A dire il vero (*actually*), si alza più presto di tutti noi. 20. Paola parla inglese più scorrevolmente di me. A dire il vero, lei parla inglese più scorrevolmente di tutti noi. 21. David ha più interessi di Mark, ma John ha più interessi dei tre.

FILE 21. Traduci in inglese.

1. Tom è ostinato come un mulo. 2. Lui mangia troppo ed è grasso come un maiale. 3. Questo anello non è così costoso quanto quello. 4. Lei non balla bene come te. 5. Non abbiamo tanti soldi come voi. 6. Susan non ha così tanti amici come Lucy. 7. Lui lavora quanto me, ma guadagna di più. 8. Richard lavora tante ore quante John, ma John guadagna di meno. 9. Questo pullover è meno costoso di quello. 10. Per le nostre vacanze abbiamo speso meno di voi. 11. Barbara ha meno amici di Sarah. 12. Sono il migliore in inglese. Faccio meno errori di tutti. 13. Mio fratello usa il cellulare meno di me. Io lo uso meno del babbo. La mamma lo usa meno di tutti. 14. "Questa macchina è la meno costosa di tutte." "Sì, è vero. È la più economica di tutte." 15. "George diventa sempre più grasso." "Sì, è vero. Mangia troppo, e più mangia, più diventa grasso." 16. La Terra diventa sempre più inquinata. 17. Meno spendi, meglio è. 18. Questo libro è molto più interessante di quanto pensassi. 19. Lui sembra un po' più vecchio di quanto non sia. 20. Lei è alquanto più giovane di suo marito. 21. Questo è di gran lunga il miglior libro che io abbia mai letto.

FILE 22. Traduci in inglese.

1. Sono stanco. Non ho dormito la notte scorsa. 2. Il mio lavoro è stancante. Lavoro più di otto ore al giorno. 3. Sono spesso esausto quando ritorno a casa dal lavoro. 4. Ti interessi di / sei interessato alla pallacanestro? 5. Jane è la ragazza con i capelli ricci. Indossa un vestito con le maniche corte. 6. Gli spaghetti erano un vero disastro perché ho messo zucchero nell'acqua invece di mettere sale. 7. Ho tradotto la lettera senza usare il dizionario. 8. Prenotammo un tavolo prima di andare al ristorante. 9. Oltre ad essere bravo in matematica, lui è anche bravo in storia. 10. Chi è interessato a comperare la mia vecchia macchina? 11. Ho paura a camminare tutta sola di notte. 12. Perché non smetti di fumare? Fumare è dannoso per la salute. 13. Io volevo stare a casa, ma lui insistette per andare al cinema. 14. Barbara non vede l'ora di andare in vacanza. 15. Sono abituato ad andare a letto presto. 16. Susan vive da sola e si sta abituando a fare i lavori di casa. 17. Ero solito andare a letto tardi quando avevo vent'anni. 18. Vietato pescare. 19. Imparare il giapponese non è facile.

FILE 23. Traduci in inglese.

1. Sono felice perché ho vinto un premio. 2. "La posta è già arrivata?" "Sì." 3. I bambini sono andati al luna park, vero? 4. David non ha ancora venduto la sua vecchia macchina, vero? 5. Sei stato al cinema recentemente? 6. Noi siamo stati a Londra molte volte. 7. "La mia ragazza ed io vogliamo andare fuori a cena questa sera." "Avete prenotato un tavolo?" 8. "Hai già visto St. Paul's Cathedral?" "Sì. L'ho già vista." 9. "Sei già stato a Hampton Court?" "No, non ci sono ancora andato." 10. "Dove sei stato?" "Sono appena andato in banca." 11. Questo è il museo più interessante che io abbia mai visitato. 12. È la seconda volta che vediamo questo film. 13. Non ho mai cambiato un pneumatico prima d'ora. È la prima volta che lo faccio. 14. "Sei mai stato all'estero?" "Sì. Sono andato a Parigi due anni fa." "Con chi sei andato?" "Con i miei amici." 15. "Hai letto il giornale oggi?" "Sì. C'è un articolo molto interessante." 16. Hai visto Paul alla festa? 17. John si è rotto una gamba e non può camminare. 18. Peter si è rotto una gamba l'estate scorsa, ma adesso sta bene.

FILE 24. Traduci in inglese.

1. "Conosci Brian?" "Sì, lo conosco bene." "Davvero? Da quanto tempo lo conosci?" "Da 6 anni." 2. "Da quanto tempo sei a Londra, Tom?" "Sono qui da giugno." 3. "Vai spesso al cinema, John?" "No, non vado al cinema da anni." 4. "Da quanto tempo hai quella macchina?" "Da molto tempo. L'ho comperata nel 1999." 5. Non siamo qui da molto tempo. Siamo qui da solo 10 minuti. Siamo arrivati alle 10.40. 6. "Da quanto tempo sono partiti?" "Sono partiti da venti minuti." 7. Non vedo Paul da molto tempo. L'ultima volta che l'ho visto è stato quattro mesi fa. 8. Sono passati due anni da quando è morto. 9. Sono passate tre settimane da quando Mark si è rotto un braccio. 10. "Quanto tempo è passato dall'ultima volta che Tom ha telefonato?" "Non telefona da un mese." 11. "Quanto tempo fa gli hai scritto?" "Non gli scrivo da settembre." 12. "Da quanto tempo lavorano?" "Lavorano dalle 8.00 e sono molto stanchi." 13. Brian è infangato. Ha giocato a calcio. 14. "Vivete a Roma ora, vero?" "Sì, viviamo a Roma da luglio." 15. "Dov'è Mary?" "È nella sua camera. Sta studiando. Studia da due ore. Dalle 3.00." 16. Che tempo orribile! È tutto il giorno che piove. 17. È tutta la mattina che scrivo lettere. Ho scritto dieci lettere e non ho ancora finito. 18. Da quanto tempo aspetti? Aspetti da molto?

TURN INTO ENGLISH

Esercizi di traduzione

FILE 25. Traduci in inglese.

1. Quando arrivai a casa, i miei genitori avevano già cenato. 2. Avevamo già visto quel film. A dire il vero, era la terza volta che lo vedevamo. 3. Per il momento in cui sua madre tornò a casa, Susan aveva dato da mangiare al cane e aveva stirato, ma non aveva ancora annaffiato le piante. 4. Chiudemmo la porta a chiave non appena tutti se ne erano andati via. 5. Janet decise di comperare la gonna rossa dopo che ne aveva provate molte. 6. Quella fu la vacanza più bella che avessi mai trascorso. 7. Mi chiese dove ero stato. Io dissi che ero stato in banca. 8. "Si sono sposati nel 1999." "Da quanto tempo si conoscevano?" "Penso che si conoscessero da tre anni, dal 1996." 9. "Ho ricevuto una lettera da Paul ieri." "Da quanto tempo non scriveva?" "Non scriveva da sei mesi." 10. Quando io arrivai, loro erano già partiti. Erano partiti da dieci minuti. 11. Erano passati tre anni dall'ultima volta che ci eravamo incontrati. 12. L'ultima volta che li ho visti, stavano cercando di vendere la loro casa. Mi dissero che cercavano di venderla da sei mesi. 13. "Quando le telefonai, Susan stava studiando." Davvero? Da quanto tempo studiava?" "Ha detto che studiava da tre ore." 14. Il cancello era riparato. Ted lo aveva riparato. 15. Susan stava sudando perché aveva pulito il pavimento.

FILE 26. Traduci in inglese.

1. "Dove vai stasera?" "Vado al cinema." "Con chi vai?" "Con il mio ragazzo." 2. "Che cosa stai facendo?" Sto facendo una torta. Facciamo una festa questa sera. Ti andrebbe di venire?" 3. Alcuni miei compagni di scuola vanno in Spagna la settimana prossima. 4. "Hanno intenzione di trascorrere le loro vacanze in Grecia, vero?" "Sì. Hanno intenzione di rimanervi tre settimane." 5. Guarda quella ragazza! Sta per cadere dalla bicicletta. 6. "Che tempo fa?" "Sta piovendo." 7. È nuvoloso. Sta per piovere. 8. Oggi è una bella giornata ma penso che domani pioverà. 9. "Sta facendo la doccia Mary?" "No, sta per farla." 10. Tom avrà 17 anni il mese prossimo. 11. Sono sicuro che Richard passerà l'esame. 12. Forse nevicherà. 13. "Ti ricorderai di chiudere la porta a chiave, vero?" "Sì, lo farò. Non ti preoccupare." 14. "Non ti dimenticherai di portare la macchina dal meccanico, vero?" "No, non mi dimenticherò. Non ti preoccupare. 15. "Il conto è sbagliato." "Mi scuso. Lo correggo immediatamente." 16. "I tuoi pantaloni sono sporchi." "Lo so. Li lavo domani."

FILE 27. Traduci in inglese.

1. "Perché non visitiamo il centro della città?" "Buon'idea. A che ora inizia la visita guidata?" 2. Mi sento imbarazzato se faccio un errore in classe. 3. Il ghiaccio si scioglie se lo si riscalda. 4. "Che cosa succede se premo il pulsante 2?" "Se premi il pulsante 2 ottieni uova strapazzate." 5. C'era sempre il pericolo di essere attaccati se andavamo troppo vicino agli animali. 6. Non supererai l'esame se non studi molto/duramente. 7. Se non fai i compiti non puoi uscire. 8. "Che cosa fai se ottieni una promozione?" "Se ottengo una promozione compro una casa più grande." 9. Non prenderemo il treno se non ti dai una mossa! 10. Non ceneremo in giardino a meno che il tempo non migliori. 11. Se Barbara sta ancora studiando non la disturberò. 12. Non ho ancora ricevuto il pacco, ma ti telefonerò non appena lo riceverò. 13. Mi sentirò sola mentre John sarà via (*away*). 14. Non cominceremo la cena finché il babbo non arriva.

FILE 28. Traduci in inglese.

1. Tra pochi minuti i bambini staranno dormendo. 2. Vai al supermercato oggi? Puoi comperare della frutta? 3. Non telefonare a David. Lo vedrò questa sera, così gli dirò della festa. 4. Brian è in salotto. Starà guardando la televisione come al solito. 5. Alle 8.00 domani sarò in volo per Madrid. 6. Non starai lavorando a quest'ora domani, vero? 7. Per il momento in cui arriverai, avrò già preparato la cena. 8. Sono le 9.00. Jane avrà già preso il treno. 9. Non avrai finito di tradurre quel libro per la fine della settimana, vero? 10. Tra una settimana saranno tre anni che lo conosco. 11. Tra due giorni saranno tre mesi che abbiamo questa macchina. 12. Alle cinque saranno due ore che i ragazzi studiano. 13. Sono sicuro che saranno molto stanchi questa sera. Avranno lavorato duramente tutto il giorno. 14. Jenny va sempre a letto alle 9.30. Non telefonarle alle 10.00 perché sarà già andata a letto e starà dormendo da mezz'ora. 15. Sbrigati. Il film sta per cominciare. 16. George non è soddisfatto del (*satisfied with*) suo lavoro ed è sul punto di dare le dimissioni. 17. La nave parte il 3 agosto.

FILE 29. Traduci in inglese.

1. Barbara è la ragazza che vive al secondo piano. 2. Come chiami qualcuno che uccide le persone per danaro? 3. Il Titanic è la famosa nave che affondò nel 1912. 4. Non è quella la ragazza il cui padre è un famoso attore? 5. Quale di loro è la ragazza con cui sei fidanzato? 6. Abbiamo appena ricevuto il catalogo che abbiamo ordinato una settimana fa. 7. Non è questa la borsa che stavi cercando? 8. Ti ricordi il giorno in cui ci siamo conosciuti? 9. L'ufficio dove lavoro è nel centro della città. 10. Lei aiutò la vecchietta ad attraversare la strada, il che fu molto gentile da parte sua. 11. Stiamo facendo tutto quello che possiamo 12. Lei dice spesso bugie, la qual cosa mi irrita. 13. Non so che cosa Tom stia facendo. 14. La sola ragione per cui David spesso si comporta in modo maleducato è perché è molto timido. 15. James, il cui padre fa il medico, vuole studiare medicina all'università. 16. Il Monte Everest, che è alto 8,848 metri, è la montagna più alta del mondo. 17. Chiunque venga, sarà benvenuto. 18. Puoi fare qualsiasi cosa ti piaccia. 19. Lo incontro ovunque vado. 20. Puoi venire ogni qualvolta vuoi. 21. Chi è l'uomo seduto a quel tavolo?

FILE 30. Traduci in inglese.

1. Non so dove sia la loro casa. Da qualche parte vicino a Manchester, penso. 2. Lei ha qualcosa in mano, ma non riesco a vedere cosa. 3. C'è qualcuno al telefono per te. 4. C'è qualcuno a casa? 5. Non conosciamo nessuno chiamato Robert Jones. 6. Non possono portare il loro figlio da nessuna parte. È una vera peste. 7. Vorresti qualcosa da bere? 8. Il telefono squillò ma nessuno rispose. 9. Cercai i miei occhiali tutta la mattina ma non erano da nessuna parte. 10. I bambini possono andare da qualsiasi parte. Questo parco è piuttosto sicuro. 11. Sbrigati. Tutti stanno aspettando te. 12. Questo indovinello è molto facile. Chiunque potrebbe indovinare la risposta. 13. Lui è ricco e può darle qualsiasi cosa lei voglia. 14. Va tutto bene, Mary. Non c'è niente di cui preoccuparsi. 15. Lei pensa che tutti gli sport sono noiosi. 16. Tutti loro vivono nel nord. 17. Lavorarono tutto il giorno. 18. Trascorremmo l'intera giornata in spiaggia. 19. Non si sa mai che cosa può succedere. Ogni giorno è diverso. 20. Entrambe le ragazze sono di Londra. 21. Sia Mary che John vanno all'università, ma nessuno dei due studia medicina. 22. La maggior parte dei miei amici ha il motorino, ma nessuno di loro ha la macchina. 23. Posso avere un'altra tazza di tè, per favore? 24. Chi altro è venuto in montagna con te?

TURN INTO ENGLISH

Esercizi di traduzione

FILE 31. Traduci in inglese.

1. "Sai nuotare?" "Sì, ma non sapevo nuotare l'anno scorso." 2. La zuppa era così salata che non ho potuto mangiarla. 3. "Mi scusi. Potrebbe passarmi il sale, per favore?" "Sì, certamente." 4. Tom, mi puoi prestare la tua bicicletta oggi? 5. Il tempo è bello. Potremmo mangiare fuori. 6. Le estati qui possono essere piuttosto calde. 7. Potrei parlare con Mr Evans, per favore? 8. Ci volle molto tempo, ma alla fine riuscimmo a trovare la strada del ritorno. 9. Non sono riuscito a leggere quel libro fino ad ora, ma ho intenzione di leggerlo presto. 10. La chiave era così arrugginita (*rusty*) che non fummo capaci di aprire la porta. 11. Mi dispiace, ma non riuscirò a venire alla riunione perché ho un appuntamento con il dentista. 12. Non aspettarmi. Potrei essere in ritardo per cena. 13. Mi scusi. Posso sedermi qui? È libero questo posto? 14. I visitatori non possono usare questa entrata. 15. "Che cosa fate questa sera?" "Non abbiamo ancora deciso. Potremmo andare al cinema." 16. Non ho potuto andare alla partita di pallone perché non avevo abbastanza soldi per il biglietto. 17. Potrei non andare (è possibile che io non vada) alla partita di calcio perché non ho abbastanza soldi per il biglietto. 18. Non ci fu permesso di giocare a pallone. 19. Non mi è mai stato permesso di uscire di sera. 20. La prossima estate avrò il permesso di andare in vacanza con i miei amici. 21. I suoi genitori non le permetteranno di venire con noi.

FILE 32. Traduci in inglese.

1. Se vuoi guidare la macchina in vacanza in Gran Bretagna, devi guidare alla sinistra. Inoltre, dovresti procurarti (*get*) una cartina del paese. 2. Non si deve fumare negli ospedali. È proibito. 3. "Che cosa pensi che dovrei indossare alla festa di Clare?" "Penso che dovresti indossare il tuo bel vestito rosso." 4. Lei mangia troppo. Non dovrebbe mangiare così tanto. 5. "Debbo telefonare a Henry?" "No, non devi telefonargli. L'ho già fatto io." 6. Fino ad ora nessuno dei miei due figli ha dovuto ripetere un anno scolastico. 7. I miei genitori vanno via il prossimo fine settimana, così dovrò badare ai miei fratelli. 8. Hai dovuto andare a Londra la settimana scorsa? 9. Lui era molto preoccupato. Era la prima volta che doveva sottoporsi ad (*undergo*) un'operazione. 10. Non c'è bisogno che comperiamo quel video gioco. Possiamo prendere in prestito quello di David. 11. Non oso camminare tutta sola di notte. 12. Come osi parlarmi così? 13. Gli ostaggi dovevano essere rilasciati venerdì, ma non è accaduto. 14. Quando lavoravo come cameriere dovevo servire ai tavoli, ma non dovevo sparecchiare i tavoli. 15. Che cosa fai qui? Non dovresti essere a scuola? 16. Clare doveva telefonare, ma non lo ha fatto. 17. Non dobbiamo masticare la gomma in classe.

FILE 33. Traduci in inglese.

1. Mi aiuteresti/Vorresti aiutarmi a pulire la cucina, per favore? 2. Ti dispiacerebbe aiutarmi a fare i letti? 3. Vorrei/Mi piacerebbe una casa più grande. 4. Ha detto che sarebbe venuto. 5. Saresti in grado di sollevare quella grossa pietra? 6. Arriveresti puntuale se prendessi un taxi. 7. "Dove pensi che dovrei andare in vacanza? Mi piacerebbe andare in Grecia." "Non andrei in Grecia, se fossi in te. Andrei in Spagna." 8. "Che cosa faresti se vedessi un marziano?" "Cercherei di comunicare con lui." 9. Se conoscessi il suo numero di telefono, te lo darei. 10. Se tu dovessi vederlo, potresti dirgli di chiamarmi? 11. Se stessero ancora dormendo non li sveglierrei. 12. Se ottenesse una promozione, dovrebbe trasferirsi a Parigi. 13. Dovrebbero essere in vacanza, vero? 14. Penso che dovrebbe visitare la National Gallery se andasse a Londra.

FILE 34. Traduci in inglese.

1. Ci sarebbe piaciuto mangiare una pizza. 2. "Avresti fatto la stessa cosa?" "No." 3. Susan sarebbe stata felice di vederci, vero? 4. "Sono andati a Londra in macchina." "Davvero? Non sarei andato a Londra in macchina. Sarei andato in treno." 5. "Che cosa avresti fatto se tu avessi vinto la lotteria?" "Avrei dato del danaro in beneficenza." 6. Se tu avessi studiato di più avresti potuto superare l'esame. 7. Se il tempo non fosse stato brutto saremmo usciti. 8. Se smette di piovere, usciamo. 9. Se tu mangiassi di meno perderesti peso. 10. James disse che avrebbe invitato Mary alla festa, ma poi se ne è dimenticato. 11. Mark dovrebbe aver ricevuto il mio messaggio. 12. Non avresti dovuto telefonargli! 13. Avresti potuto scrivere! 14. "John non è ancora arrivato. Deve aver perso l'autobus." "Oh, no! Non può aver perso l'autobus di nuovo!" 15. Non era necessario che tu lavassi i piatti. Abbiamo la lavastoviglie. 16. Non avremmo dovuto dormire in una tenda se Mark ci avesse prestato il suo appartamento. 17. Non hai controllato i numeri della lotteria? Potremmo aver vinto. 18. "Bill ha avuto un incidente ieri." "È probabile che stesse guidando troppo forte."

FILE 35. Traduci in inglese.

1. Vorrei essere più alto. 2. Vorrei non vivere in un piccolo paese. 3. Vorrei saper guidare la macchina. 4. John è spesso solo. Vorrei che avesse più amici. 5. "È un peccato che tu non sia venuto alla festa." "Sì. Vorrei essere venuto." 6. "Perché lo hai sposato? Che disastro! Vorrei non averlo mai incontrato." 7. Perché ti sei messa quell'orribile cappello? Vorrei che te lo togliessi. 8. Vorrei che la mia ragazza non vivesse in un'altra città. 9. Vorrei che i miei genitori la smettessero di criticare i miei vestiti. 10. Vi auguro Buon Natale. 11. Desidero ringraziarvi. 12. "Andiamo in taxi o con la metropolitana?" "Preferirei andare in taxi." 13. Abbiamo dormito in tenda, ma preferiremmo aver dormito in un albergo. 14. Peter vuole cercare un lavoro, ma io preferirei che andasse all'università. 15. Tom ha rifiutato quel lavoro, ma io preferirei che lo avesse accettato. 16. Preferirei leggere un libro che guardare la televisione. 17. La stazione è piena di ladri. Faresti meglio a non lasciare i tuoi bagagli incustoditi (*unattended*). 18. I tuoi capelli sono troppo lunghi. È ora che te li tagli. 19. È tardi. È ora che andiamo a casa.

FILE 36. Traduci in inglese.

1. "Queste macchine vengono fabbricate in Giappone, vero?" "Sì." 2. La loro casa fu svaligiata mentre erano in vacanza. 3. I cani non sono ammessi. 4. Ascolta quando ti si parla. 5. "Da chi è stato inventato il telefono?" "È stato inventato da Meucci." 6. "Le merci (*goods*) sono state spedite?" "Vengono spedite in questo momento." 7. Quando io arrivai, si stavano facendo le tartine. 8. Il ladro è appena stato arrestato. 9. Volevamo andare al concerto ma non siamo riusciti a trovare i biglietti. Erano stati tutti venduti. 10. Il nuovo ospedale verrà aperto il mese prossimo. 11. La tua macchina sta per essere riparata. 12. La loro casa verrebbe acquistata se non fosse così lontana dai negozi. 13. Se il nonno non si fosse sentito meglio, sarebbe stato portato in ospedale. 14. "Dove possiamo acquistare dei *souvenir*?" "Possono essere acquistati in quel negozio di fianco al museo." 15. Nuove case potrebbero venire costruite in questa zona. 16. "È stato consegnato il nuovo computer?" "Non ancora. Avrebbe dovuto venire consegnato prima delle 10.00."

TURN INTO ENGLISH

Esercizi di traduzione

FILE 37. Traduci in inglese.

1. Le furono inviati dei fiori il giorno del suo compleanno.
2. Mi fu offerto un ottimo (*very good*) lavoro.
3. Mi è appena stato detto che hai intenzione di trasferirti a Londra.
4. Ai bambini fu detto di stare zitti.
5. Mi fu consigliato di non uscire.
6. Ron Murphy è un bravissimo attore. Gli verrà dato un premio (*award*).
7. Si sa che lui è stato in prigione per molti anni.
8. Viene riportato che l'incidente si sia verificato (*occur*) nel tardo pomeriggio.
9. Si dice che David Evans lavori per la CIA. Si dice anche che abbia lavorato per l'FBI.
10. Si dice che la signora Swanson sia una brillante attrice.
11. Questo coltello non taglia (*is blunt*). Ha bisogno di essere affilato.
12. Questo libro vende migliaia di copie.

FILE 38. Traduci in inglese.

1. Susan è molto attraente ora che si è fatta tagliare i capelli.
2. "Mark sta riparando la sua macchina personalmente?" "No, se la sta facendo riparare da un meccanico."
3. "Abbiamo fatto sviluppare le nostre fotografie presso Photo Studio." "Scusa? Dove le avete fatte sviluppare?"
4. Di solito non mi faccio tingere (*dye*) i capelli. Me li tingo da sola.
5. Non abbiamo intenzione di far imbiancare l'appartamento. Abbiamo intenzione di imbiancarlo noi personalmente.
6. La sua triste storia mi ha fatto piangere.
7. Mio fratello ha comperato un nuovo computer ma non me lo fa usare / non mi permette di usarlo.
8. Ho convinto il babbo a vendere la sua vecchia macchina.
9. Penso che i miei genitori non mi faranno uscire questa sera.
10. Ieri mio padre mi ha fatto lavare la macchina.
11. Lui fu costretto ad interrompere il suo discorso.
12. Lei non sapeva parlare spagnolo, ma si è fatta capire a gesti.
13. "Scusatemi, sono in ritardo. Vi ho fatto aspettare molto?" "No, siamo appena arrivati."
14. Per favore, fateci avere un fax appena possibile.
15. Quel cane mi farà diventare pazza se non la smette di abbaiare.
16. Lo ascoltai cantare l'intera canzone.
17. Passando davanti alla sua camera, la udimmo piangere.
18. L'uomo fu visto rubare un orologio.
19. I due uomini furono visti lottare/mentre lottavano.

FILE 39. Traduci in inglese.

1. Sono sicuro che Jane mi ha detto la verità.
2. Nonna (*Granny*), mi puoi raccontare una storia, per favore?
3. Peter mi disse che Clare stava ancora dormendo.
4. Mary disse che era in ritardo e doveva andare.
5. Jane mi disse che si era appena sposata.
6. Loro dissero che non avrebbero giocato il giorno successivo.
7. Il dottore confermò che mi ero rotto la gamba destra.
8. Lui si lamentò (*complain*) che aspettava da mezz'ora.
9. Lucy promise che avrebbe fatto tutti i compiti.
10. L'uomo confessò che aveva rubato i soldi dalla cassaforte.
11. Brenda annunciò che stava per avere un bambino.
12. Il giornalista voleva sapere se ero mai stato in Africa. Io risposi di no.
13. Ci chiesero quando avevamo intenzione di partire.
14. Mi chiedevo perché George voleva vendere la sua casa.
15. L'impiegato della banca (*bank clerk*) mi chiese di firmare un documento.
16. Non sapevamo che cosa fare, così Jenny suggerì di noleggiare (*rent*) un film.
17. La donna insistette per vedere il direttore.
18. L'uomo ammise di avere rubato la macchina.
19. Il nonno (*Grandpa*) disse che poteva correre molto veloce quando era giovane.
20. Lui disse che avrebbe dovuto andare a trovare i suoi nonni il giorno seguente.
21. Lei gridò che desiderava non avermi mai incontrato.
22. Ha detto che si sposerebbe se avesse un lavoro.

FILE 40. Traduci in inglese.

- 1.** Dopo avere guardato la televisione, Tom andò a letto. **2.** Prima di fare i compiti, John ascoltò musica. **3.** Stavo andando a casa quando incontrai un vecchio amico. **4.** Mentre andavo a casa, incontrai un vecchio amico. **5.** Non appena/Nel momento in cui aprii la porta, un topo corse fuori. **6.** Aspettammo finché non smise di piovere. **7.** Per il momento in cui raggiunsi la stazione, il treno era già partito. **8.** Viviamo in questa casa da quando ci siamo trasferiti a Londra. **9.** Puoi stare qui finché/per tutto il tempo che vuoi. **10.** Quando Michael arriverà a New York, ci telefonerà. **11.** La donna stava parlando con due uomini. Nel frattempo continuava a guardare (*kept looking at*) l'orologio. **12.** Abbiamo trascorso alcuni giorni nella capitale. Poi/In seguito/E dopo abbiamo visitato il resto del paese. **13.** Da principio pensai che Tom fosse maleducato. Poi/In seguito mi resi conto (*to realise*) che era solo timido. **14.** La ragazza smise di piangere, ma dopo un po' cominciò di nuovo. **15.** Non riuscivamo a decidere quale vacanza scegliere, così alla fine abbiamo lanciato (*to toss*) una moneta. **16.** Cercava un lavoro da molti mesi quando finalmente ne trovò uno. **17.** Non andrò al concerto a meno che John non venga con me. **18.** "Anche se io studiassi molto non supererei l'esame." "No, sono sicuro che lo supereresti se tu studiassi un po' di più." **19.** Andrò alla loro festa a condizione che anche Angela sia invitata. **20.** David mi chiese se vivevo ancora a Londra. **21.** Hanno discusso se dovessero andare o rimanere. **22.** L'estate scorsa siamo andati in Inghilterra per migliorare il nostro inglese. **23.** Voglio regalare a Tom una macchina in modo che possa arrivare al lavoro più in fretta. **24.** Gli detti dei soldi in modo che potesse comperarsi qualcosa da mangiare. **25.** David ha intenzione di prendere la macchina fotografica nel caso voglia fare delle fotografie. **26.** Il ragazzo si nascose dietro la porta per paura di essere visto. **27.** Lui si alzò presto, come faceva sempre. **28.** Lui parla come se sapesse tutto, ma non sa niente. **29.** Non sopporto (*I can't stand*) le persone come lei.

FILE 41 - 1. Traduci in inglese.

- 1.** Non siamo usciti perché era freddo. **2.** Siccome era freddo non siamo usciti. **3.** Siamo ritornati a causa della neve. **4.** Il volo è stato annullato (*to cancel*) a causa della nebbia fitta. **5.** Lei vive in Giappone da due anni. Perciò dovrebbe saper un po' di giapponese. **6.** Non abbiamo seguito (*to take*) il suo consiglio. Come risultato/Di conseguenza abbiamo perso molti soldi. **7.** Le scimmie sono sia intelligenti che curiose. **8.** Oltre ad essere divertenti, i gatti sono anche indipendenti. **9.** Lui sa sia parlare che scrivere il tedesco molto bene. **10.** Voi state disturbando. O la smettete di chiacchierare o uscite dalla stanza (*leave the room*). **11.** Sebbene lei avesse molta fame, non mangiò nulla. **12.** Vivere in campagna può essere molto rilassante. Dall'altro lato può essere molto noioso. **13.** Anche se la conosco da molti anni, non posso dire di conoscerla bene. **14.** Io non trascorro molto tempo sui libri. Nonostante ciò, ottengo buoni risultati. **15.** Per quanto riguarda la causa dell'incidente, sappiamo che esso fu causato dalla strada ghiacciata.

FILE 42 - 2. Traduci in inglese.

1. Nel pomeriggio cominciò a piovere. 2. "Com'è il tempo?" "Sta cominciando a nevicare."
3. Non mi piace giocare a tennis. 4. Detesto dire bugie. 5. Odio dirti questo, ma non hai superato l'esame. 6. "Vorresti ballare?" "No, grazie. Non mi piace ballare." 7. Lui ha smesso di bere. 8. Ci fermammo in un pub per bere una pinta di birra. 9. Prometto. Non dimenticherò di chiamarti. 10. Non dimenticherò mai di avere incontrato il Presidente. 11. Lei si ricordò di chiudere la porta a chiave. 12. Ti ricordi di aver visto questo film l'anno scorso? 13. Ci dispiace (*regret*) informarvi che il volo 213 è stato cancellato. 14. Mi dispiace di avergli parlato in modo così scortese. 15. Intendevamo/Avevamo intenzione di alzarci presto, ma poi non lo facemmo. 16. Puoi viaggiare in treno, ma ciò significherà viaggiare per 12 ore. Faresti meglio ad andare in aereo. 17. Dovresti cercare di uscire più spesso se vuoi conoscere gente. 18. Perché non provi a mangiare di meno? Potresti sentirti meglio. 19. Tom propose di noleggiare un tandem. 20. Lui intendeva/si proponeva di noleggiare una macchina, ma poi decise di viaggiare con la corriera. 21. Ho bisogno di lavarmi le mani. 22. Le mie mani hanno bisogno di essere lavate. 23. L'uomo consigliò di prendere l'autostrada. 24. La guida turistica ci consigliò di comperare i souvenir nel negozio vicino al museo. 25. Non permettevano di giocare a pallone nel parco. 26. Non ci hanno permesso di giocare a pallone nel parco. 27. Proibivano di giocare a pallone nel parco. 28. Ci proibirono di giocare a pallone nel parco. 29. La guida raccomandò di portare vestiti pesanti nell'escursione. 30. La guida ci raccomandò di portare vestiti pesanti nell'escursione. 31. Guardai Tom lavare la macchina da cima a fondo (*from top to bottom*). 32. Passando davanti al suo giardino vidi Tom che lavava la macchina. 33. Sono contento di averlo rivisto. 34. Si diceva che lui avesse trascorso molti anni in America. 35. Spero di aver finito questo libro per la fine della settimana. 36. Deve essere partito perché l'ho visto fare le valige (*pack up*). 37. Qualcuno deve aver riparato il cancello. 38. I bambini negarono di avere rotto la finestra. 39. Avendo perso l'autobus, James arrivò a scuola piuttosto in ritardo.

- A. Come si dice: "ancora", "non ... più", "come" - Espressioni con "like"
 B. Come si dice: "anche/neanche", "anch'io/neanch'io", "io sì/lo no", "davvero?", "vero?/non è vero?", "penso di sì/penso di no"
 C. Parole da non confondere (sostantivi, aggettivi, avverbi)
 D. *False friends*

Per i verbi da non confondere
vedi sezione SOS VERBS! PAG. 450

A COME SI DICE ...

◆ ancora (still, not ... yet, again, more)

still = tuttora

She is still in bed. Lei è ancora a letto.

He still works there. Lui lavora ancora là.

still ... not = non ancora, esprime un senso di sorpresa o impazienza per un'azione/situazione che continua più a lungo del previsto.

She still hasn't written.

Non mi ha ancora scritto (ma avrebbe dovuto farlo).

not ... yet = non ancora

She hasn't written yet.

Non ha ancora scritto (ma mi aspetto che scriverà presto).

again = di nuovo, un'altra volta

Can you sing that song again, please?

Puoi cantare quella canzone di nuovo?

more = altro, in più

Would you like some more tea?

Vorresti dell'altro tè?

I don't want any more food.

Non voglio dell'altro cibo.

◆ non ... più (not ... any more, not ... any longer, no longer, no more)

not ... any more, not ... any longer =

non ... più, con **riferimento alla durata di tempo** (per dire che una situazione è cambiata) - **any more** e **any longer** si collocano **alla fine della frase**.

He doesn't love her any more/any longer.

Lui non la ama più.

not ... any more si usa anche in **riferimento a quantità**.

She doesn't want any more food.

Non vuole più cibo.

no longer = non ... più, ha lo stesso significato

di **not... any more, not... any longer**, con **riferimento alla durata di tempo**, ma è più formale - si colloca **tra soggetto e verbo**, e **dopo il verbo be**.

He no longer loves her.

Lui non la ama più.

They are no longer friends.

Loro non sono più amici.

no more si usa **solo in riferimento a quantità**.

non si dice: *They are no more friends.*

♦ come (how, as, like)

<p>how (= come, che, quanto) + aggettivo o avverbio</p> <p>- nelle esclamative <i>How tall you are!</i> Come sei alto! <i>How fast you're walking!</i> Come cammini in fretta!</p>	<p>as, congiunzione (= come, nel modo in cui) + soggetto + verbo</p> <p>- in frasi dipendenti <i>As you know, I moved to London last week.</i> Come sai, mi sono trasferito a Londra la settimana scorsa.</p>										
<p>how (= come, in che modo) + verbo</p> <p>- nelle interrogative dirette e indirette <i>How do you spell your name?</i> Come si scrive il tuo nome?</p>	<p>Ricorda anche le espressioni:</p> <table style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr><td>as agreed</td><td>come d'accordo</td></tr> <tr><td>as follows</td><td>come segue</td></tr> <tr><td>as requested</td><td>come richiesto</td></tr> <tr><td>as usual</td><td>come al solito</td></tr> <tr><td>as well as</td><td>come anche, oltre a</td></tr> </table>	as agreed	come d'accordo	as follows	come segue	as requested	come richiesto	as usual	come al solito	as well as	come anche, oltre a
as agreed	come d'accordo										
as follows	come segue										
as requested	come richiesto										
as usual	come al solito										
as well as	come anche, oltre a										
<p>like, preposizione (= come, simile a, nello stesso modo di) + sostantivo o pronomine, indica somiglianza/paragone <i>I want a mobile phone like yours.</i> Voglio un cellulare come il tuo.</p>	<p>as, preposizione (= come, in qualità di) + sostantivo</p> <p>Confronta gli esempi: <i>He's speaking as a doctor.</i> Parla in qualità di medico. (ed è medico) Ma: <i>He's speaking like a doctor.</i> Parla come un medico. (ma non lo è).</p>										

♦ espressioni con "like"

<p>LIKE viene usato anche</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • in espressioni come: 	<p>What is/are ... like?</p>
<p>- per chiedere il carattere di una persona, le caratteristiche di oggetti, la situazione del tempo climatico.</p>	<p>What do/does ... look like?</p> <p>- per chiedere l'aspetto fisico di una persona.</p>
<p><i>What's John like? - He's a kind person.</i> Com'è John? - È una persona gentile. <i>What's the weather like? - It's cold and rainy.</i> Com'è il tempo? - È freddo e piovoso.</p>	<p><i>What does Peter look like? - He's tall and thin.</i> Com'è Peter? - E' alto e magro.</p>
<p>• in alternativa a <i>such as / for example</i></p> <p><i>C. Dickens wrote many novels like/such as David Copperfield, Oliver twist, Hard times, etc.</i> <i>C. Dickens scrisse molti romanzi come David Copperfield, Oliver Twist, Hard times, ecc.</i></p>	

Attenzione!!!

Non confondere il verbo "**like**" con la preposizione.

Confronta:

<i>What do you like?</i>	Cosa ti piace?
<i>What would you like?</i>	Cosa vorresti?
<i>What are you like?</i>	Come sei (di carattere)?
<i>What do you look like?</i>	Come sei (di aspetto)?

TURN INTO ENGLISH

Esercizi di traduzione

FILE 41 - 2. Traduci in inglese il seguente testo.

I computer sono una necessità?

Oggi i computer giocano un ruolo importante nella vita della maggior parte di noi, **che** ce ne rendiamo conto **oppure** no. Alcune persone, **tuttavia**, si chiedono **se** ne abbiamo veramente bisogno. **Secondo me** i computer sono diventati una parte essenziale della vita moderna.

In primo luogo, possono risparmiare molto spazio (*room/space*), **poiché** un solo dischetto può immagazzinare (*store*) la stessa quantità di informazioni di parecchi libri. **Inoltre**, i computer possono risparmiare a tutti molto tempo prezioso. Le informazioni immagazzinate possono venir trovate in un tempo molto breve, **mentre** ricercare informazioni in modo tradizionale richiede molto più tempo.

Non di meno/Tuttavia vi sono persone che sostengono (*claim*) che i computer non sono necessari e rendono le nostre vite più complicate. Essi argomentano (*argue*) che in passato si riusciva (*we managed*) a fare le stesse cose con altri metodi. **Tuttavia**, essi non considerano (*fail to consider*) che il tempo risparmiato usando (*by using*) i computer per compiti ripetitivi (*repetitive tasks*) ci permette (*enables us*) di usare il nostro tempo in modo più creativo e produttivo.

Tutto considerato/Per concludere/In conclusione, credo fortemente che i computer siano uno strumento utile e che essi abbiano cambiato la nostra vita in meglio (*for the better*).

FILE 42 - 1. Traduci in inglese.

1. Perdonare è spesso difficile. 2. "Perché sei venuto qui?" "Per vederti." 3. È stato difficile capire? 4. È stata la cosa più facile da fare. 5. C'è qualcosa da bere? 6. Non sappiamo dove andare. 7. Vorresti ballare? 8. Per cominciare, prendo zuppa di pomodoro. 9. Clare era l'unica a parlare tedesco. 10. Puoi mostrarmi come usare questo computer? 11. Si rifiutò di farlo. 12. Decidemmo di fermarci per mangiare qualcosa. 13. Promise di non dire bugie. 14. Lui fu visto correre fuori dalla banca. 15. I miei genitori non mi permettono di usare la macchina. 16. Vuoi che ti aiuti? 17. Lui era impaziente che la sua ragazza arrivasse. 18. È normale per noi andare a letto a quest'ora. 19. Sto aspettando che Barbara si prepari. 20. Ci volle molto tempo perché Jane si preparasse. 21. È stato molto stupido da parte sua non dire la verità. 22. Susan dovrebbe essere a casa. 23. Farei meglio a parlare con lui. 24. Preferirei andare al cinema. 25. Mia madre mi ha fatto pulire la mia camera ieri mattina. 26. Ho vista la donna salire in un taxi. 27. Mi puoi aiutare a portare queste borse, per favore? 28. Perché non andare a teatro, invece? 29. Voglio finire i compiti e poi andare a fare una passeggiata. 30. Non ho potuto fare altro che accettare la sua offerta. 31. Jane studia francese da tre mesi. 32. Vietato fumare. 33. Vidi un bambino che piangeva. 34. Trascorro molto tempo a leggere/leggendo. 35. Lui se ne andò senza salutare. 36. La mamma mi sveglia prima di andare al lavoro. 37. Lei si guadagna da vivere facendo la cameriera. 38. Essendo molto agitato, Bob fece molti errori. 39. Non potei fare a meno di ridere. 40. Ho smesso di fumare tre mesi fa. 41. Non siamo abituati ad andare a letto tardi. 42. Il ragazzo rischiò di annegare. 43. Nel mio tempo libero amo leggere. 44. Perché non andiamo a ballare questa sera? 45. Il bambino ammise di aver mangiato tutti i cioccolatini. 46. Sprecherai il tuo tempo a cercare di convincerlo. 47. Passando davanti alla sua camera lo vidi studiare. 48. Ho trovato mia sorella che leggeva il mio diario. 49. Sono preoccupata che Brian lavori così tanto. 50. Non mi dispiace che lui esca dopo cena.

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi con *still*, *again*, *more*, *yet*.

1. I liked that film very much. I'd like to see it 2. Haven't you finished eating your dinner? - No, not 3. It's late! Where's Jane? - She's in bed. 4. Lucy, would you like some cake? - Yes, please. 5. Mary isn't at home She's at the office. 6. I like the song you were singing just now. Can you sing it , please? 7. George was working when I arrived to pick him up. 8. We haven't got enough sugar. We should buy some 9. John, can you lend me your dictionary , please? 10. I've already seen that film, but I want to see it

2. Non vedi Tom da due anni. Formula domande su di lui con *still*, seguendo l'esempio.

Two years ago Tom ...

- *was living in Paris.* ***Is he still living in Paris?***

1. was married.
2. was working for a travel agency.
3. had a moustache.
4. smoked a lot.

3. Scrivi frasi con *not ... yet*, seguendo l'esempio.

- *Pam is still at work. (come back home)* ***She hasn't come back home yet.***

1. Dad is still sleeping. (*woken up*)
2. Ted is still up. (*gone to bed*)
3. The children are still doing their homework. (*finished*)
4. I'm still thinking which pullover to buy. (*decided*)

4. Scrivi frasi usando *still e not ... any more*, seguendo l'esempio.

- *I used to play tennis and volleyball.*
(*still / tennis but ...*) ***I still play tennis but I don't play volleyball any more.***

1. She used to be a clever student and she was the best in the class.
(*still / a clever student but ...*)
2. We were tired and bored.
(*still / tired but ...*)
3. I used to have a moustache and a beard.
(*still / a moustache but ...*)
4. She worked in London and used to go there by car.
(*still / in London but ...*)

5. Inserisci correttamente *more* o *longer*.

1. I'm no a member of that club.
2. They had no bread at the supermarket.
3. He should learn to behave himself. He's no a child.
4. Credit cards will no be accepted.
5. No biscuits, thank you. I've already had too many.

6. Completa le frasi con *how, as, like*.

1. Susan started her career a shop assistant.
2. Can you tell me to make tomato sauce?
3. tall he is!
4. We need a house yours.
5. kind of him!
6. you know, we're staying at a hotel.
7. a friend, you should help her.
8. do you translate this word?
9. well you write!
10. do you spell your name?
11. Jack London wrote many adventure novels "White Fang" and "The Call of the Wild".
12. I've never read a novel this. It's really awful.
13. we had nothing better to do, we watched television.
14. Do you think Mary looks her mother?

7. Scrivi domande alle risposte fornite usando *What is/are/was/were ... like?* oppure *What do/does/did ... look like?*

1.?
Oh, it's warm and sunny.
2.?
Mary? Oh, she's generous and sweet.
3.?
The robbers? They were tall and had moustaches.
4.?
The hotel? Oh, it was nice and comfortable.
5.?
My boyfriend? He's tall and thin.
6.?
I'm quite tall and I've got long dark hair.
7.?
My parents? They're very nice.
8.?
It was cold and windy.

8. Abbina correttamente le domande e le risposte.

1. What do you like?
2. What do you look like?
3. What are you like?
4. What would you like, Sir?

- (a) I'll have tomato soup and Dover sole.
- (b) I think I'm generous and kind.
- (c) I like milk tea.
- (d) I'm quite tall but a bit plump.

1 ...
2 ...
3 ...
4 ...

B COME SI DICE ...

◆ anche / neanche

too / as well (= anche - alla fine di frase)	"I like rock music." "I like it too / as well ."
also (= anche)	"Mi piace la musica rock." "Piace anche a me."
not ... either (= neanche - in frase negativa)	"I also like rock music."
	"Mi piace anche / Anche a me piace la musica rock."
	"I don't like rock music." "I don't like it either ."
	"Non mi piace la musica rock." "Non piace neanche a me."
even (= anche, perfino)	Even a child can do that. Perfino un bambino può farlo.
not even (= neanche, neppure)	Not even a child would behave like that. Neppure un bambino si comporterebbe così.
even if (= anche se - riferimento a situazioni ipotetiche)	Even if he trained a lot, he would never run as fast as his brother. Anche se si allenasse molto, non correrebbe mai veloce come suo fratello.
even though (= anche se - riferimento a situazioni concrete)	Even though he trains hard, he can't run as fast as his brother. Anche se si allena molto, non riesce a correre veloce come suo fratello.

◆ anch'io / neanch'io

Le espressioni **anch'io**, **neanch'io**, per esprimere **accordo**, in inglese si rendono frequentemente con l'uso degli **ausiliari** come segue:

ANCH'IO so + ausiliare + soggetto "I'm tired." "So am I." "Sono stanco." "Anch'io."	NEANCH'IO neither/nor + ausiliare + soggetto "I'm not tired." "Neither/Nor am I." "Non sono stanco." "Neanch'io."
Osserva questi altri esempi: "I like rock music." "So do I." "I can swim." "So can I." "I went to London last summer." "So did I." "I have already seen that film." "So have I." "I'll talk to him again." "So will I."	Osserva questi altri esempi: "I don't like rock music." "Neither/Nor do I." "I can't swim." "Neither/Nor can I." "I didn't go to London." "Neither/Nor did I." "I haven't seen that film." "Neither/Nor have I." "I won't talk to him again." "Neither/Nor will I."

◆ davvero?

La **sorpresa o l'interesse** (davvero?, veramente?) si può rendere in inglese con l'uso degli **ausiliari** come segue:

ausiliare affermativo + soggetto? "I'm bored" "Oh, are you ?" "Sono annoiato." "Oh, davvero?"	ausiliare negativo + soggetto? "I'm not bored." "Oh, aren't you ?" "Non sono annoiato." "Oh, davvero?"
Osserva questi altri esempi: "She works a lot." "Oh, does she ?" "I bought a nice pullover." "Oh, did you ?" "She can play tennis." "Oh, can she?"	Osserva questi altri esempi: "She doesn't work much" "Oh, doesn't she ?" "I didn't buy anything" "Oh, didn't you ?" "She can't play tennis." "Oh, can't she ?"

♦ io sì / io no

Le espressioni **io sì / io no**, per esprimere **disaccordo**, in inglese si rendono frequentemente con l'uso degli **ausiliari** come segue:

IO SI'	IO NO
soggetto + ausiliare in forma affermativa <i>"I'm not tired."</i> <i>"I am."</i> <i>"Non sono stanco."</i> "Io sì."	soggetto + ausiliare in forma negativa <i>"I'm tired."</i> <i>"I'm not."</i> <i>"Sono stanco."</i> "Io no."
Osserva questi altri esempi: <i>"I don't live in London."</i> <i>"I do."</i> <i>"I didn't go to Paris."</i> <i>"I did."</i> <i>"I can't swim."</i> <i>"I can."</i> <i>"I won't phone him."</i> <i>"I will."</i>	Osserva questi altri esempi: <i>"I live in London."</i> <i>"I don't."</i> <i>"I went to Paris."</i> <i>"I didn't."</i> <i>"I can swim."</i> <i>"I can't."</i> <i>"I will phone him."</i> <i>"I won't."</i>

♦ vero? / non è vero? (Question tags)

Per esprimere **vero? / non è vero?** (**chiedere conferma**) si utilizzano per lo più le **question tags**, con l'uso degli ausiliari. Le **question tags** si utilizzano anche **per rendere più cortese una richiesta con l'imperativo o una proposta**. Osserva gli esempi:

	QUESTION TAG		QUESTION TAG
Con frase affermativa	Interr.negativa	Con frase negativa	Interrogativa
<i>They are at school,</i> <i>Mary can swim,</i> <i>She was studying,</i> <i>She's going to study,</i> <i>They went to Rome,</i> <i>They have been abroad,</i>	<i>aren't they?</i> <i>can't she?</i> <i>wasn't she?</i> <i>isn't she?</i> <i>didn't they?</i> <i>haven't they?</i>	<i>They aren't at school,</i> <i>Mary can't swim,</i> <i>She wasn't studying,</i> <i>She isn't going to study,</i> <i>They didn't go to Rome,</i> <i>They haven't been abroad,</i>	<i>are they?</i> <i>can she?</i> <i>was she?</i> <i>is she?</i> <i>did they?</i> <i>have they?</i>
Con l'imperativo		Con "let's"	
<i>Turn the TV on,</i> <i>Don't turn the TV on,</i>	<i>will you?</i> <i>will you?</i> e anche: <i>can/could/would you?</i>	<i>Let's turn the TV on,</i>	<i>shall we?</i>

♦ penso di sì / penso di no

Le espressioni italiane "penso", "mi aspetto", "spero", "temo" , "suppongo" di sì/di no, in risposta a interrogative dirette o indirette, si rendono in inglese come segue:

	Risposta affermativa	Risposta negativa
<i>Is Mark coming to the party?</i>	- si usa so <i>I think so. / I expect so.</i> <i>I hope so. / I'm afraid so.</i> <i>I suppose so.</i>	- si usa so o not a seconda del verbo <i>I don't think so. / I don't expect so.</i> <i>I hope not. / I'm afraid not.</i> <i>I don't suppose so. o I suppose not.</i>

PRACTICE

1. Riscrivi le battute sottolineate usando le costruzioni con *so* o *neither + ausiliare + soggetto*. Fai attenzione agli ausiliari.

➤ "I like jazz." "I like it too." "**So do I.**"
➤ "I don't read much." "I don't read much either." "**Neither do I.**"

1. "I haven't seen Mary." "I haven't seen her either."
2. "Peter can't dance." "Tom can't dance either."
3. "I met Mark yesterday." "I met him too."
4. "Mary likes Robert." "Jane likes him, too."
5. "I couldn't go to Alice's party." "I couldn't go there, either."
6. "James would like to come with us." "Bob would like to come, too."

2. Replica alle affermazioni utilizzando i suggerimenti tra parentesi. Segui l'esempio.

➤ *Peter can run very fast. (Tom / too)* **Tom can run very fast, too.**

1. I didn't pass the exam. (*I / either*)
2. Our team didn't win. (*theirs / either*)
3. Mark may not come. (*Alan / either*)
4. She can play the piano. (*she / the violin / also*)
5. I love cats. (*my sister / too*)

3. Inserisci correttamente *even, not even, even if, even though*.

1. "I never cry." " when you hurt yourself really badly? 2. " he left school at 16, he still managed to become prime minister. 3. Everyone I know likes the smell of bacon. Mark does , and he's a vegetarian. 4. you took a taxi, you would miss your train.

4. Rispondi *io sì o io no*, seguendo gli esempi. Fai attenzione agli ausiliari.

➤ "I like rock music." "**I don't.**"
➤ "I don't like rock music." "**I do.**"

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1. "I've been to England many times." | 4. "I can't go to Mary's party." |
| 2. "I can swim very well." | 5. "I didn't finish the test yesterday." |
| 3. "I play basketball." | 6. "I went to the concert last night." |

5. Replica alle affermazioni esprimendo *sorpresa/interesse* (Davvero? / Veramente?). Fai attenzione agli ausiliari.

➤ "She's gone home. " "**Oh, has she?**"
➤ "She hasn't gone home." "**Oh, hasn't she?**"

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1. "We often have bacon and eggs." | 5. "You look tired." |
| 2. "Mrs Johnson visited us yesterday." | 6. "I've been studying for hours." |
| 3. "They were at the pub last night." | 7. "They had been walking for hours." |
| 4. "You aren't on the waiting list." | 8. "She can swim very fast." |

6. Aggiungi in coda a ciascuna frase la *question tag* corretta.

- *You live in London, don't you?*
➤ *You don't live in London, do you?*
1. You've been to France before,?
 2. They don't often go to the theatre,?
 3. We'll arrive late,?
 4. Susan can cook,?
 5. You don't mean it,?
 6. He didn't win,?
 7. Let's go by car,?
 8. Don't come back late,?
 9. Stop talking,?

7. Scrivi risposte alle seguenti domande utilizzando i suggerimenti tra parentesi.

- A: "*Have the goods we ordered arrived yet?*" (*no / think*)
B: "**I don't think so.**"
- A: "*It's 7.30. Will the shops still be open?*" (*yes / think*)
B: "**I think so.**"
1. "Will Fiona come even if it keeps snowing?" " (*no / think*)
 2. "Will the weather get better?" (*yes / hope*)
 3. "Do you think it'll rain?" (*no / hope*)
 4. "It's almost midday. Do you think we can get there on time?" (*yes / suppose*)
 5. "Do you think the weather will be good in Sardinia in May?" (*yes / expect*)
 6. "Is the National Gallery closed in the afternoon?" (*no / suppose*)
 7. Are the Sullivans arriving at Heathrow? (*yes / suppose*)
 8. Are they terribly injured? (*yes / afraid*)
 9. I wonder if Peter will get the job. (*no / expect*)
 10. Can she swim? (*no / afraid*)

8. Completa i *mini-dialoghi* adeguatamente con *I think so, I don't think so, I hope so, I hope not.*

1. A: Do you think it will rain tomorrow?
B: It would ruin our garden party.
2. A: Has Susan gone to the hairdresser's?
B: She always does her hair herself.
3. A: Is Mandy still sleeping?
B: She went to bed late last night.
4. A: Isn't there a restaurant over there?
B: It's one o' clock and I'm really hungry.
5. A: Is the electrician coming this afternoon?
B: He said he's very busy these days.
6. A: Has Alan stopped smoking?
B: He had a terrible cough the last time I saw him.
7. A: Has Bob got an e-mail address?
B: but I don't know it.

C PAROLE DA NON CONFONDERE

SOSTANTIVI

♦ abito/i - vestito (clothes - dress - suit)

clothes = abiti / vestiti (solo al plurale per indicare indumenti in generale)
He always buys expensive clothes.
Lui compra sempre abiti costosi.

Attenzione!!!

cloth (pl. *cloths*) = straccio, strofinaccio, o tipo di tessuto

dress = abito/vestito intero femminile
She rarely wears a dress. She usually wears jeans.
Lei raramente mette un vestito. Di solito mette i jeans.
suit = abito da uomo (giacca e pantaloni) o completo da donna (giacca e gonna)
My father is the man in the dark suit.
Mio padre è l'uomo con l'abito scuro.

♦ biglietto (ticket - fare)

ticket = biglietto di autobus, treno, cinema
- *Two tickets for London, please.*
- *Single or return?*
- Due biglietti per Londra, per favore.
- Solo andata o andata e ritorno?

fare = costo/tariffa di un biglietto
Excuse me. How much is the fare to the station?
Mi scusi. Quant'è la tariffa per la stazione?

♦ casa (home - house)

home = la casa propria (del soggetto), l'ambiente familiare
I'm at home.
Sono a casa.
We're going home. (senza **to**)
Stiamo andando a casa.

house = la casa di altri (diversi dal soggetto), un edificio, una costruzione
I'm at Tom's house.
Sono a casa di Tom.
We're going to Tom's house. (con **to**)
Stiamo andando a casa di Tom.
This house is quite big.
Questa casa è piuttosto grande.

♦ città - paese (town - city - village - country)

town = centro abitato di media grandezza
Oxford is a beautiful town.
Oxford è una bella cittadina.
city = grande città
London is a big city.
Londra è una grande città.

village = piccolo centro abitato
I live in a small village.
Vivo in un piccolo paese.
country = stato, patria
Italy is a European country.
L'Italia è un paese europeo.
- **country** significa anche "campagna"
I live in the country. Abito in campagna.

♦ cliente (client - customer)

client = cliente di un professionista (di un avvocato, ...)
Mr Murphy is a solicitor and I'm one of his clients.
Mr Murphy è avvocato e io sono uno dei suoi clienti.

customer = chi acquista un prodotto o un servizio (in un negozio bar, ristorante, fabbrica, ...)
That restaurant has a lot of customers.
Quel ristorante ha molti clienti.

♦ figlio / figli / figlia (child/children - kids - son - daughter)

child = figlio in generale (pl. children) <i>They have no children.</i> Non hanno figli. grown-up children = figli adulti kids (informale) = ragazzini	son = figlio (maschio) daughter = figlia <i>We've got two children, a son and a daughter.</i> Abbiamo due figli, un maschio e una femmina.
---	---

♦ gioco (play - game - toy - joke)

play (sost. non numerabile) = attività del giocare in generale <i>Play is great fun for children.</i> Il gioco è un gran divertimento per i bambini. - play (sost. numerabile) significa anche rappresentazione teatrale	toy = giocattolo <i>Children have got a lot of toys nowadays.</i> I bambini hanno molti giocattoli al giorno d'oggi.
game = (sost. numerabile) = un gioco <i>Let's play a game.</i> Facciamo un gioco.	joke = scherzo, barzelletta <i>What a stupid joke!</i> Che scherzo stupido! <i>Alan is good at telling jokes.</i> Alan è bravo a raccontare barzellette.

♦ ladro - rapinatore (thief - robber - burglar - shoplifter - pickpocket - mugger)

thief (pl. thieves) = ladro comune - theft = furto - to steal = rubare (qualcosa) <i>The police arrested the thief who had stolen the jewels.</i> La polizia arrestò il ladro che aveva rubato i gioielli.	burglar = ladro di appartamenti - burglary = furto con scasso - to burgle = rubare in appartamenti con scasso <i>The burglars were caught red-handed.</i> I ladri di appartamenti furono colti con le mani nel sacco.
robber = rapinatore, chi ruba con minacce e violenza - robbery = rapina - to rob = rapinare (una persona o un luogo) <i>There was a bank robbery this morning. The two robbers have not been arrested yet.</i> C'è stata una rapina in banca questa mattina. I due rapinatori non sono ancora stati arrestati.	shoplifter = chi ruba nei negozi/supermercati pickpocket = borsaiolo mugger = chi deruba qualcuno per strada con minacce e violenza

♦ lavoro (work - job - labour)

work (sost. non numerabile) = lavoro in generale <i>I go to work by car.</i> Vado al lavoro in macchina. - work(s) ha anche il significato di "opera/e" <i>Shakespeare's works</i> Le opere di Shakespeare	labour = lavoro molto duro e faticoso forza lavoro, insieme di lavoratori di un paese o industria <i>manual labour</i> lavoro manuale <i>skilled labour</i> manodopera specializzata <i>the Labour Party</i> il Partito Laburista (dei lavoratori)
job (sost. numerabile) = professione, impiego, compito, incombenza <i>What's your job?</i> Che lavoro/mestiere fai?	

♦ paio - coppia (pair - couple)

pair = "paio" per cose che vanno abbinate

A pair of shoes/trousers/glasses ...

Un paio di scarpe/pantaloni/occhiali ...

couple = "paio" per cose che non vanno necessariamente abbinate e non esattamente due (circa due)

Why don't you take a couple of aspirins?

Perché non prendi un paio di aspirine/qualche aspirina?

- **couple** si usa anche per coppia di marito e moglie, fidanzati, ...

They are a nice couple.

Sono una bella coppia.

♦ politica (politics - policy)

politics = scienza della politica, politica in senso astratto

I'm not interested in politics.

Non mi interesso di politica.

policy = la pratica politica, la strategia politica di un governo/azienda ...

The economic policy of our government has been a failure so far.

La politica economica del nostro governo è stata un fallimento fino ad ora.

- **policy** significa anche "polizza assicurativa"

♦ signore, signora, signorina (Mr, Mrs, Miss, Ms, ecc.)

- quando sono seguiti da nome e cognome o dal solo cognome

Mr ... = Signor... *Mr Paul Jones / Mr Jones*

Mrs ... = Signora... *Mrs Mary Brown / Mrs Brown*

Miss ... = Signorina... *Miss Jane Smith / Miss Smith*

Ms ... per signora e per signorina quando non si conosce o non si vuole specificare lo stato civile della persona *Ms Sarah Sway / Ms Sway* (frequente nello scritto)

- come vocativi (non seguiti dal nome)

sir per signore *Good morning, sir.* Buon giorno, signore.

madam sia per signora che per signorina *Good morning, madam.* Buon giorno, signora/ina.

- in tutti gli altri casi

man, gentleman *That man is my father.* Quel signore / uomo è mio padre.

woman, lady *That woman is my mother.* Quella signora / donna è mia madre.

girl, young lady *That girl is my sister.* Quella signorina / ragazza è mia sorella.

Ma si dice: *Good evening, ladies and gentlemen.* Signore e signori, buona sera.

Attenzione!!!

Lady e Sir possono essere seguiti dal nome quando esprimono titoli onorifici.

Lady Sarah (Ashley) , Sir Robert (Spencer).

♦ strada - via (street - road - lane - way)

street = strada cittadina con case e negozi <i>There are a lot of shops in this street.</i> Ci sono molti negozi in questa strada.	lane = stradina (per lo più di campagna) <i>country lane</i> viuzza di campagna - <i>lane</i> significa anche "corsia" di autostrada <i>a six-lane motorway</i> un'autostrada a sei corsie
road = sia strada di città che di fuori città, strada di collegamento <i>The road to London</i> La strada per Londra	way = direzione, percorso, tragitto <i>Can you tell me the way to the station?</i> Può dirmi la via per la stazione? - <i>way</i> significa anche "modo, maniera" <i>This is the best way of doing it.</i> Questo è il modo migliore di farlo.

♦ straniero - forestiero (foreigner - stranger)

foreigner = straniero, persona di altra nazione <i>They don't understand what we are saying.</i> <i>They must be foreigners.</i> Non capiscono ciò che stiamo dicendo. Debbono essere stranieri. - aggettivo = <i>foreign</i> <i>a foreign language</i> una lingua straniera	stranger = forestiero, persona non conosciuta, qualcuno che è estraneo in un certo luogo o rispetto ad un gruppo di persone <i>Sorry, I can't help you. I'm a stranger here myself.</i> Mi dispiace, non posso aiutarla. Anch'io sono forestiero qui/non sono di queste parti.
---	---

♦ tempo (time - weather - tense)

time = tempo, ora, volta <i>It's time to start working.</i> È tempo di cominciare a lavorare. <i>What time is it?</i> Che ore sono? <i>We go to the cinema about three times a month.</i> Andiamo al cinema circa tre volte al mese.	weather = tempo atmosferico <i>What's the weather like? - It's awful today.</i> Com'è il tempo? - È orribile oggi. tense = tempo grammaticale <i>Complete the sentences with the simple present tense.</i> Completa le frasi con il tempo presente semplice.
---	---

♦ viaggio - gita (travel - journey - trip - voyage - flight - excursion - outing - tour)

travel = viaggio in senso generico <i>Many writers have written books about their travels.</i> Molti scrittori hanno scritto libri sui loro viaggi.	journey / trip = viaggio in senso specifico <i>We enjoyed our journey/trip to Italy very much.</i> Il nostro viaggio in Italia ci è piaciuto molto.
voyage = viaggio via mare <i>We felt sick during our voyage from Naples to Sicily. The sea was rough.</i> Ci siamo sentiti male durante il viaggio da Napoli alla Sicilia. Il mare era agitato.	flight = viaggio aereo <i>The flight took two hours.</i> Il volo ha impiegato due ore.
excursion / outing = gita, escursione <i>Yesterday we went on an excursion / for an outing to the lake.</i> Ieri siamo stati in gita al lago.	tour = viaggio, gita turistica <i>I'm going to Paris on a package tour.</i> Andrò a Parigi con un viaggio organizzato.

AGGETTIVI - AVVERBI

♦ alto (high - tall)

high = alto (di altitudine, dimensione, livello) Non è mai usato per parlare della statura di una persona. <i>Mont Blanc is 4,810 metres high.</i> Il Monte Bianco è alto 4.810 metri.	tall = alto (di statura) È usato soprattutto per persone, ma anche per alcune altre cose alte e strette come alberi, bicchieri, ... <i>Tom is 1.80 metres tall.</i> Tom è alto un metro e ottanta.
--	--

♦ bello (beautiful - good-looking - handsome - lovely - pretty - nice)

beautiful = ha significato di molto bello, bellissimo, generalmente non usato per parlare della bellezza maschile <i>A beautiful girl/view/garden/ ...</i> Una bella ragazza/vista/giardino/ ...	lovely = amabile, con riferimento per lo più al carattere <i>A lovely person</i> Una persona amabile
good-looking = di bell'aspetto, generalmente usato in riferimento a maschi <i>That boy is very good-looking.</i> Quel ragazzo è molto bello.	pretty = grazioso/a, usato per donne e bambini <i>A pretty girl</i> Una ragazza graziosa
handsome = bello, usato in genere per uomini <i>A handsome man</i> Un bell'uomo	nice = carino/a, simpatico/a, usato in riferimento sia all'aspetto che al carattere. <i>She's nice, isn't she?</i> E' carina, vero? <i>They are nice people.</i> Sono persone carine.

♦ brutto (ugly - plain - bad)

ugly = brutto di aspetto (con significato molto negativo) In genere si preferisce non usarlo per le persone. <i>He isn't very good-looking.</i> È preferibile a <i>He's ugly.</i>	bad = brutto, spesso con significato di "cattivo" <i>bad news</i> brutte/cattive notizie <i>bad weather</i> brutto/cattivo tempo <i>a bad cold</i> un brutto/forte raffreddore
plain = ha un significato meno forte ed è in genere preceduto da <i>rather</i> <i>She's rather plain, but she's very nice.</i> È piuttosto bruttina, ma è molto simpatica.	

♦ grande (big/large - great - tall - old)

big/large con riferimento a dimensione <i>This kitchen is quite big/large.</i> Questa cucina è piuttosto grande.	tall con riferimento a statura/altezza <i>How tall you are!</i> Come sei grande/alto!
great con riferimento a importanza <i>Coleridge was a great poet.</i> Coleridge fu un grande poeta.	old con riferimento all'età <i>You're too old.</i> Sei troppo grande/vecchio.

♦piccolo (small - little - short - young - slight)

small con riferimento a dimensione <i>This is a small house.</i> Questa è una casa piccola.	young con riferimento all'età <i>You're too young.</i> Sei troppo piccolo/giovane. - <i>the young</i> (sostantivo) = i piccoli, la prole di animali
little per formare vezeggiativi e / o diminutivi <i>What a nice little house!</i> Che casetta carina!	slight = leggero, poco importante <i>She's got a slight temperature.</i> Ha una leggera febbre.
short con riferimento a statura/altezza (basso) corto, breve	

♦piuttosto (quite - rather)

Vedi a **PAG. 108**

♦presto (soon - early)

early (attributo e avverbio) = presto, di buon ora, in anticipo <i>He's an early bird.</i> È una persona mattiniera/che si alza presto. <i>We got up early.</i> Ci siamo alzati presto.	soon = fra poco, entro breve tempo <i>Write soon.</i> Scrivi presto. <i>James will be here soon.</i> James sarà qui tra poco. - <i>as soon as possible</i> = il più presto possibile
--	--

♦solo - soltanto - solitario (only - just - alone - lonely)

only 1. (attributo) = solo, unico <i>He's the only person I've ever loved.</i> Lui è la sola/unica persona che io abbia mai amato. <i>I'm an only child.</i> Sono figlio unico. 2. (avverbio) = soltanto <i>There were only a few people.</i> C'erano solo/soltanto alcune persone.	alone (predicato) = da solo <i>What are you doing here all alone?</i> Che cosa fai qui tutto solo? lonely = solo, solitario, o isolato (per luogo) <i>To feel lonely</i> Sentirsi solo <i>He's a lonely type.</i> È un tipo solitario. <i>It's a lonely house.</i> È una casa isolata.
just (avverbio) = solo, soltanto (ha un significato simile a <i>only</i> -avverbio) <i>Would you like a biscuit?</i> <i>No, thanks. Just a cup of coffee.</i> Vorresti un biscotto? No, grazie. Solo una tazza di caffè. - <i>just</i> ha anche il significato di "appena" <i>He has just arrived.</i> E' appena arrivato.	

PRACTICE

1. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

1. Do you live in a **house** / **home** or in flat? 2. She lives in a small **village** / **country** in the south of England. 3. It is a very small **city** / **town** with only about 10,000 inhabitants. 4. That supermarket has a lot of **clients** / **customers**. 5. They sell **clothes** / **dresses** for men, women and children. 6. We've got two **sons** / **children**, a girl and a boy. 7. I'd like two **fares** / **tickets** to Liverpool. 8. Let's play a new **game** / **toy**. 9. I'm hopeless at telling **games** / **jokes**. 10. The bank **thieves** / **robbers** got away with £ 200,000. 11. Have you ever been burgled?- Yes, but the **mugger** / **burglar** was caught red-handed. 12. She is a nurse and she likes her **work** / **job**. 13. There's a shortage of skilled **labour** / **work** in my country. 14. What's the **time** / **weather** like? - It's been nice in the last few days. 15. The present perfect is a verb **time** / **tense**. 16. What's the **time** / **weather** by your watch? 17. Can I try on that **pair** / **couple** of jeans? 18. He never reads anything about **policy** / **politics**. 19. Most of the shops in this **road** / **street** are very expensive. 20. This motorway has six **lanes** / **ways**. 21. I met her on my **road** / **way** home. 22. Excuse me. Can you tell me the **street** / **way** to the station, please? - I'm afraid I can't help you. I'm a **foreigner** / **stranger** here myself. 23. How long did Ulysses' **voyage** / **tour** last? 24. Have a nice **journey** / **travel**. 25. Air **travel** / **trip** has become quite common. 26. Who's that **girl** / **Miss**?- She's Tom's sister. 27. Who's that **Mrs** / **Mr** Sullivan? - He's Tom's sister's husband.

2. Correggi l'errore. Sottolinea la parola usata impropriamente e sostituiscila con la parola corretta.

➤ <i>Football, basketball and tennis are ball plays.</i>	games
1. Two fares to Manchester, please.
2. A shoplifter stole my suitcase at the station.
3. Hurry up. There's no weather to lose.
4. There were only a pair of people on the bus.
5. What's the time like in England in summer?
6. Do you know the present continuous time?
7. They are on holiday and are having a big time.

3. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

1. How **high** / **tall** is Mount Everest?
2. Miss Gorman is quite **tall** / **high**.
3. Mr Johnson is a **handsome** / **beautiful** man, isn't he?
4. He's got **great** / **big** feet.
5. Dante is a **big** / **great** poet.
6. Susan is a **pretty** / **handsome** girl, isn't she?
7. This table is too **little** / **small** for eight people.
8. Look at that **little** / **short** girl. Isn't she pretty?
9. She hasn't got any brothers or sisters. She's an **lonely** / **only** child.
10. She's sad and often feels **alone** / **lonely**.
11. No, thanks. No biscuits. **Just** / **Alone** a cup of tea.
12. There were **only** / **alone** a few people at his party.
13. Hope to hear from you **early** / **soon**.
14. We left in the **soon** / **early** morning.
15. Write as **early** / **soon** as possible.

D FALSE FRIENDS

Per "false friend" si intende una parola inglese che sembra affine a una parola italiana, ma il cui significato è diverso. L'elenco contiene i "false friends" che maggiormente creano problemi agli studenti italiani.

abusive	= offensivo, ingiurioso	abusivo	→ <i>illegal</i>
actual	= effettivo, reale, vero	attuale	→ <i>present, current</i>
actually	= effettivamente	attualmente	→ <i>at present, now</i>
advice	= consiglio/i	avviso	→ <i>notice, warning</i>
to annoy	= irritare, infastidire	annoiare	→ <i>to bore</i>
annoyed	= seccato, irritato	annoato	→ <i>bored</i>
argument	= lite, discussione	argomento	→ <i>subject, topic</i>
to arrange	= organizzare, combinare	arrangiarsi	→ <i>to manage</i>
to attend	= assistere, frequentare	attendere	→ <i>to wait for, expect</i>
brave	= coraggioso	bravo	→ <i>good, clever</i>
camera	= macchina fotografica	camera	→ <i>room</i>
canteen	= mensa, refettorio	cantina	→ <i>cellar</i>
casual	= disinvolto, noncurante	casuale	→ <i>accidental</i>
cold	= freddo	caldo	→ <i>hot, warm</i>
college	= istituto superiore /universitario	collegio	→ <i>boarding school</i>
commodity	= merce, materia prima	comodità	→ <i>comfort</i>
comprehensive	= esaurente, onnicomprensivo	comprensivo	→ <i>sympathetic</i>
confidence	= fiducia, sicurezza	confidenza	→ <i>familiarity</i>
consistent	= coerente	consistente	→ <i>solid, substantial</i>
convenient	= comodo, opportuno	conveniente	→ <i>cheap, inexpensive</i>
to delude	= illudersi, ingannare	deludere	→ <i>to disappoint</i>
(oneself)			
delusion	= illusione	delusione	→ <i>disappointment</i>
to demand	= pretendere, esigere	domandare	→ <i>to ask</i>
diffident	= timido, insicuro	diffidente	→ <i>suspicious, wary</i>
disgrace	= vergogna, disonore	disgrazia	→ <i>misfortune, bad luck</i>
to dispose of	= disfarsi di	disporre di	→ <i>have at one's disposal</i>
dome	= cupola	duomo	→ <i>cathedral</i>
editor	= redattore, direttore di giornale	editore	→ <i>publisher(s)</i>
educated	= istruito, colto	educato	→ <i>polite</i>
education	= istruzione	educazione	→ <i>good manners</i>
effective	= efficace	effettivo	→ <i>actual</i>
estate	= proprietà immobiliare	estate	→ <i>summer</i>
eventual	= finale, ultimo	eventuale	→ <i>possible</i>
eventually	= infine, prima o poi	eventualmente	→ <i>if possible/necessary</i>
extravagant	= spendaccione, smodato	stravagante	→ <i>eccentric, odd</i>
fabric	= tessuto	fabbrica	→ <i>factory</i>
factory	= fabbrica	fattoria	→ <i>farm</i>
to fail	= fallire nel tentativo di fare	fallire (di ditta)	→ <i>to go bankrupt</i>
fastidious	= pignolo	fastidioso	→ <i>annoying</i>
firm	= ditta	firma	→ <i>signature</i>
furniture	= mobili	fornitura	→ <i>supply, consignment</i>
genial	= cordiale, gioviale, gentile	geniale	→ <i>ingenious, brilliant</i>
gregarious	= socievole	gregario/seguaice	→ <i>follower</i>
gymnasium	= palestra	ginnasio	→ <i>high school</i>
incident	= episodio, avvenimento	incidente	→ <i>accident</i>
inconsistent	= incoerente, contradditorio	inconsistente	→ <i>insubstantial</i>
indication	= indizio	indicazione	→ <i>information, directions</i>
ingenuity	= ingegnosità, abilità inventiva	ingenuità	→ <i>candour, innocence, naivety</i>

inhabited	= abitato	inabitato/disabitato	→ <i>uninhabited</i>
large	= grande	largo	→ <i>wide</i>
lecture	= conferenza	lettura	→ <i>reading</i>
library	= biblioteca	libreria	→ <i>book-shop, bookcase</i>
local	= abitante del luogo	locale	→ <i>room, premises (pl.)</i>
lunatic	= pazzo	lunatico	→ <i>moody, changeable</i>
lurid	= fosco, sinistro	lurido	→ <i>filthy, squalid, sordid</i>
magazine	= rivista, settimanale	magazzino	→ <i>warehouse, store, storeroom</i>
marmalade	= marmellata d'agrumi	marmellata	→ <i>jam</i>
miserable	= infelice	miserabile/povero	→ <i>poor</i>
morbid	= morboso	morbido	→ <i>soft, smooth</i>
nervous	= agitato, inquieto	nervoso/irritabile	→ <i>irritable, bad-tempered</i>
noisy	= rumoroso	noioso	→ <i>boring</i>
to nominate	= designare un candidato	nominare/menzionare	→ <i>to mention</i>
notice	= avviso, cartello, preavviso	notizia/e	→ <i>news</i>
novel	= romanzo	novella	→ <i>short story, tale</i>
to occur	= accadere, verificarsi	occorrere	→ <i>to need</i>
ostrich	= struzzo	ostrica	→ <i>oyster</i>
parents	= genitori	parenti	→ <i>relatives, relations</i>
pavement	= marciapiedi	pavimento	→ <i>floor</i>
petrol	= benzina	petrolio	→ <i>oil, petroleum</i>
phrase	= espressione, locuzione	frase	→ <i>sentence</i>
to polish	= lucidare	pulire	→ <i>to clean</i>
polite	= educato	pulito	→ <i>clean</i>
possibly	= forse, può darsi	possibilmente	→ <i>if possible</i>
preoccupied	= assorto, sovrappensiero	preoccupato	→ <i>worried</i>
to pretend	= fingere	pretendere	→ <i>to demand, to claim</i>
puncture	= foratura (di pneumatico)	puntura (di insetto)	→ <i>sting, bite</i>
to rape	= violentare	rapire	→ <i>to kidnap, to abduct</i>
rate	= tasso, andamento, velocità	rata	→ <i>instalment</i>
recipient	= destinatario	recipiente	→ <i>container</i>
to recover	= riprendersi, guarire	ricoverare (in ospedale)	→ <i>to take/admit to hospital</i>
to rob	= rapinare	rubare	→ <i>to steal</i>
rude	= maleducato, scortese	rude	→ <i>(rozzo) rough, (duro) tough</i>
rumour	= pettegolezzo, diceria, voce	rumore	→ <i>noise</i>
sensible	= sensato, di buon senso	sensibile	→ <i>sensitive</i>
story	= racconto, storia, aneddoto	storia (materia di studio)	→ <i>history</i>
stranger	= forestiero, estraneo	straniero	→ <i>foreigner</i>
suggestive	= allusivo, indecente, osceno	suggeritivo	→ <i>evocative, striking</i>
to support	= sostenere, fare il tifo	sopportare	→ <i>to stand, to bear</i>
sympathetic	= comprensivo, compassionevole	simpatico	→ <i>pleasant, nice, likeable</i>
terrific	= meraviglioso, fantastico	terrificante	→ <i>terrifying, dreadful, ghastly</i>
trivial	= banale, futile, di poco conto	triviale	→ <i>vulgar</i>
vicious	= maligno, cattivo, crudele	viziose	→ <i>depraved, immoral, corrupt</i>
vile	= pessimo, disgustoso	vile/codardo	→ <i>cowardly (agg.); coward (sost)</i>
the villain	= il malvagio (in un film, ...)	villano	→ <i>rude, impolite</i>
vine	= vite (da uva)	vino	→ <i>wine</i>
volatile	= volubile	volatile/uccello	→ <i>bird, fowl</i>

PRACTICE

- 1.** Scrivi il corretto equivalente italiano delle seguenti parole.

A		
sostantivi		
1. advice	7. lecture	13. notice
2. argument	8. novel	14. ostrich
3. camera	9. furniture	15. pavement
4. canteen	10. gymnasium	16. parents
5. delusion	11. library	17. puncture
6. education	12. magazine	18. rumour

B		
verbi		
1. to annoy	5. to fail	9. to pretend
2. to arrange	6. to nominate	10. to recover
3. to attend	7. to occur	11. to rob
4. to delude	8. to polish	12. to support

C		
aggettivi		
1. annoyed	5. convenient	9. fastidious
2. brave	6. diffident	10. genial
3. cold	7. educated	11. inhabited
4. consistent	8. extravagant	12. lunatic

D		
avverbii		
1. actually	2. eventually	3. possibly

- 2.** Completa ciascuna frase con la parola appropriata.

*parents - annoyed - furniture - argument - convenient -
extravagant - brave - library - lecture - advice - camera*

- Our house is for the shops.
- I was late at school this morning and the teacher was rather
- "What did your say about your school report?" "They haven't seen it yet because, when I got home with the report, they were out."
- "If we want to take photos, we need to buy a" "Ask John for He's an expert photographer."
- "Where did you buy that book?" "I didn't buy it. I borrowed it from the school"
- Last week at university there was an interesting about acid rains.
- I heard them shouting. They were having an as usual.
- Richard and Barbara are so They spend money like water.
- Martha is She is not afraid of walking all alone in that dangerous area of the city.
- We need to buy some new First of all, we want to buy a more modern table.

- 3.** Inserisci adeguatamente l'avverbio appropriato: *eventually, possibly, actually*,

- "What about going to the cinema?" "Well,, I don't think it's a good idea."
- Betty couldn't decide whether to accept or refuse his job offer; she decided to accept it.
- "Will he come?" "..... not."

SECTION 2

WORD FORMATION

- A. Formazione delle parole con suffissi e prefissi
- B. Parole composte: aggettivi e sostantivi composti
- C. Aggettivi e sostantivi di nazionalità'

Le parole possono essere semplici o derivate. Le **parole derivate** si ricavano da quelle semplici aggiungendo **suffissi**, **prefissi** o **altre parole**.

A FORMAZIONE DELLE PAROLE CON SUFFISSI E PREFISSI

◆ Suffissi

I **suffissi** sono particelle che vengono aggiunte alla radice di una parola (sostantivo, aggettivo, verbo, avverbio e talvolta preposizione) per formarne una nuova per lo più appartenente ad una diversa categoria grammaticale.

Per formare sostantivi

Verbo o talvolta sostantivo + -er, -or - sostantivi indicanti professione, attività di una persona, funzione o scopo di un oggetto		
to calculate	→	calculator calcolatore
to inspect	→	inspector ispettore
to act	→	actor attore
to teach	→	teacher insegnante
law	→	lawyer avvocato
to employ	→	employer datore di lavoro

Verbo o sostantivo + -ee, -ist, -ian, -ant, -ent - sostantivi che indicano professione o attività per lo più di tipo artistico, tecnico, scientifico, letterario, ecc.		
to employ	→	employee impiegato, dipendente
geology	→	geologist geologo
history	→	historian storico
music	→	musician musicista
to assist	→	assistant assistente
to preside	→	president presidente

Verbo + -sion, -tion, -ment, -al, -our - sostantivi indicanti azioni		
to admit	→	admission ammissione
to decide	→	decision decisione
to explode	→	explosion esplosione
to create	→	creation creazione
to evolve	→	evolution evoluzione
to encourage	→	encouragement incoraggiamento
to pay	→	payment pagamento
to excite	→	excitement eccitazione
to arrive	→	arrival arrivo
to behave	→	behaviour comportamento

Aggettivo e verbo + -ance, -ence, -ancy, -ency, -y, -ty, -ity, -iety, -ness - sostantivi astratti		
to appear	→	appearance aspetto
to exist	→	existence esistenza
to depend	→	dependence dipendenza
intelligent	→	intelligence intelligenza
to expect	→	expectancy aspettativa
to urge	→	urgency urgenza
efficient	→	efficiency efficienza
consistent	→	consistency consistenza
immune	→	immunity immunità
to vary	→	variety varietà
happy	→	happiness felicità
sad	→	sadness tristezza

Sostantivo + -ess		
- per formare il femminile di alcuni nomi di animali, di professioni o titoli		
lion →	lioness	leonessa
actor →	actress	attrice
waiter →	waitress	cameriera
prince →	princess	principessa

Sostantivo + -let, -ette		
- sostantivi indicanti qualcosa di piccolo (diminutivi o vezeggiativi)		
leaf →	leaflet	volantino
book →	booklet	opuscolo
laundry →	laundrette	lavanderia
kitchen →	kitchenette	cucinino

Sostantivo e aggettivo + -ism		
- sostantivi indicanti concezioni astratti come correnti di pensiero, movimenti letterari, principi politici o religiosi		
capital →	capitalism	capitalismo
social →	socialism	socialismo
romantic →	romanticism	romanticismo
Catholic →	Catholicism	cattolicesimo

Sostantivo + -ery, -ry		
- sostantivi indicanti uno stato o una condizione spesso con connotazione negativa, un'attività in un campo specifico, nomi collettivi		
rival →	rivalry	rivalità
slave →	slavery	schiavitù
chemist →	chemistry	chimica
machine →	machinery	macchinari

Sostantivo e aggettivo + -dom, -hood, -ship, -t, -th		
- sostantivi indicanti una condizione, un dominio, un rango, un periodo della vita, stato fisico o mentale/ morale		
free →	freedom	libertà
king →	kingdom	regno
child →	childhood	infanzia
neighbour →	neighbourhood	il vicinato
leader →	leadership	comando, guida
friend →	friendship	amicizia
high →	height	altezza
deep →	depth	profondità

Verbo e talvolta preposizione + -ing		
- sostantivi che indicano un'attività, un passatempo, un'abilità		
to clean →	cleaning	pulizia/e
to iron →	ironing	lo stirare
to wash →	washing	il lavare
out →	outing	gita, escursione

Per formare aggettivi

Verbo + -able, -ible, -ive		
- aggettivi indicanti una certa proprietà, l'idea di capacità/possibilità		
to accept →	acceptable	accettabile
to adapt →	adaptable	adattabile
to admire →	admirable	ammirabile
to eat →	edible/eatable	mangiabile
to drink →	drinkable	bevibile/potabile
to respond →	responsible	responsabile
to attract →	attractive	attraente

Sostantivo + -y, -ly		
-aggettivi indicanti qualità, aspetto o periodicità		
dirt →	dirty	sporco
anger →	angry	arrabbiato
hunger →	hungry	affamato
thirst →	thirsty	assetato
wind →	windy	ventoso
friend →	friendly	amichevole
day →	daily	giornaliero
month →	monthly	mensile

Sostantivo + -ary/ory, -ate		
- aggettivi indicanti qualità o atteggiamento		
revolution →	revolutionary	rivoluzionario
satisfaction →	satisfactory	soddisfacente
affection →	affectionate	affezionato

Sostantivo + -al, -ar, -ic		
- aggettivi di tipo tecnico, scientifico, culturale		
nation →	national	nazionale
crime →	criminal	criminale
circle →	circular	circolare
atom →	atomic	atomico
science →	scientific	scientifico

Sostantivo + -en		
- aggettivi indicanti <i>fatto di, composto di</i>		
earth →	earthen	di terra
gold →	golden	dorato
wood →	wooden	di legno
wool →	woollen	di lana

Sostantivo + -ious, -ous		
- aggettivi indicanti proprietà o caratteristica particolare		
mystery →	mysterious	misterioso
danger →	dangerous	pericoloso
marvel →	marvellous	meraviglioso

Sostantivo e aggettivo + -ish		
- aggettivi con significato riduttivo, spesso negativo		
child →	childish	infantile/ bambinesco
brown →	brownish	marroncino

Sostantivo + -like		
- aggettivi indicanti modo di comportarsi o di apparire (non hanno connotazione negativa)		
child →	childlike	infantile
man →	manlike	virile

Sostantivo	+ -ful (con una determinata qualità)
care →	careful attento
meaning →	meaningful significativo
use →	useful utile
beauty →	beautiful bello
peace →	peaceful tranquillo

+ -less (senza una determinata qualità)		
	careless	disattento
	meaningless	privo di significato
	useless	inutile
	NO beautiless (ma: ugly)	
	NO peaceless (ma: busy, noisy...)	

Ricorda che molti partecipi presenti (forma in **-ing**) e partecipi passati (forma in **-ed**) possono essere usati come aggettivi
(vedi a PAG. 180)

Verbo	+ -ing - aggettivi che descrivono una persona o cosa	+ -ed - aggettivi che descrivono la reazione causata da una persona o cosa
to bore to interest	boring noioso interesting interessante	bored annoiato interested interessato

Per formare verbi

Aggettivo e talvolta sostantivo + -en, -ify		
- verbi che indicano trasformazione della qualità o della condizione		
sweet →	to sweeten	addolcire
black →	to blacken	annerire
length →	to lengthen	allungare
wide →	to widen	ampliare
false →	to falsify	falsificare
simple →	to simplify	semplificare
pure →	to purify	purificare

Sostantivo e aggettivo + -ise, -ize		
- verbi che indicano realizzazione, attuazione di quanto espresso dalla parola da cui il verbo deriva		
advertisement →	to advertise	fare pubblicità
apology →	to apologize	chiedere scusa
emphasis →	to emphasize	enfatizzare
summary →	to summarize	riassumere
general →	to generalize	generalizzare
commercial →	to commercialize	commercializzare

Per formare avverbi

Aggettivo + -ly		
- avverbi per lo più di modo		
dangerous →	dangerously	pericolosamente
simple →	simply	semplicemente
easy →	easily	facilmente
logic →	logically	logicamente

Per la formazione degli avverbi di modo e le variazioni ortografiche vedi anche a PAG. 164

Preposizione e sostantivo + -wards		
- avverbi che esprimono direzione		
back →	backwards	all'indietro
south →	southwards	verso sud
to →	towards	verso

Sostantivo + -wise		
- avverbi che significano a mo' di, a guisa di ...		
clock →	clockwise	in senso orario
crab →	crabwise	a mo' di granchio/ di traverso
cross →	crosswise	a mò di croce

♦ Prefissi

I **prefissi** vengono aggiunti all'inizio di una parola (sostantivo, aggettivo, verbo o avverbio) modificandone il significato.

de- , dis- , in- , un- indicano l'**opposto**

(il prefisso *in-* diventa *-il* davanti a *l*; *im-* davanti a *p*; *ir-* davanti a *r*)

to motivate →	to demotivate	demotivare	patience →	impatience	impazienza
service →	disservice	disservizio	regular →	irregular	irregolare
honest →	dishonest	disonesto	rational →	irrational	irrazionale
offensive →	inoffensive	inoffensivo	happy →	unhappy	infelice
legal →	illegal	illegal	to pack →	to unpack	disfare
legitimate →	illegitimate	illegittimo	real →	unreal	irreale

a-, non- indicano **assenza di qualità**

moral →	amoral	amorale	to balance →	to counterbalance	controbilanciare
political →	apolitical	apolitico	attack →	counterattack	contrattacco
violent →	non-violent	non violento			

mis- conferisce valore **peggiorativo** o indica qualcosa di **sbagliato**

fortune →	misfortune	sfortuna
to understand →	to misunderstand	capiere male

counter- indica **opposizione**

to balance →	to counterbalance	controbilanciare
attack →	counterattack	contrattacco

over- indica **eccesso**

to charge →	to overcharge	fare pagare in eccesso
to cook →	to overcook	cuocere in eccesso
to do →	to overdo	strafare, esagerare

under- indica **insufficienza**, posizione **sottostante, rango subordinato**

cooked →	undercooked	non cotto abbastanza
ground →	underground	sotto il suolo, metropolitana
to estimate →	to underestimate	sottostimare

out- indica **al di fuori, più di, in eccesso**

law →	outlaw	fuorilegge
standing →	outstanding	eminente
to grow →	to outgrow	crescere in eccesso

re- indica **ripetizione**

to build →	to rebuild	ricostruire
to set →	to reset	ripristinare

fore- indica **anticipazione**

to see →	to foresee	prevedere
head →	forehead	fronte

Altri prefissi di origine latina sono comuni a varie lingue, come:
super-, extra-, ultra-, post-, pre-, inter-, contra-, trans-, ante-, auto-, ecc.

PRACTICE

1. Scomponi le seguenti parole.

	prefisso	radice	suffisso
> <i>dishonestly</i>	<i>dis</i>	<i>honest</i>	<i>ly</i>
1. disagreement			
2. imprudently			
3. unreasonable			
4. unhappily			

2. Completa la seguente tabella.

verbo	sostantivo	verbo negativo
1. to appear		to disappear
2. to approve		
3.	connection	
4.		to demotivate
5.	packing	to unpack

3. Completa la seguente tabella.

verbo	sostantivo	aggettivo
1.		competitive
2. to destroy		
3.		direct
4.		preferable
5. to succeed		

4. Completa la seguente tabella.

aggettivo	sostantivo	verbo
1. dark		to darken
2.		to deepen
3. strong	strength	
4.	weakness	
5.	width	to widen

5. Completa la seguente tabella.

sostantivo	aggettivo	aggettivo negativo
1. ability		unable
2. fitness		
3. friendship		
4.	tolerant	intolerant
5.		dishonest

6. Completa le seguenti tabella.

verbo	sostantivo	aggettivo	aggettivo negativo	avverbio
1.		active	inactive	
2. to care				carefully
3. to comfort			uncomfortable	
4.			hopeless	hopefully
5. to respect		respectable	irrespective	
6. to satisfy		satisfactory		
7. to suspect	suspicion	suspicious		
8.	use	useful		

7. Scrivi le parole che corrispondono alle definizioni. Usa i seguenti *prefissi* forniti.

dis- mis- non- re- over- pre- fore- out-

1. To sleep for longer than you intended to and to wake up late.
2. A person who doesn't smoke.
3. To understand wrongly.
4. To write something again.
5. Not honest.
6. To see or imagine what will happen.
7. Cooked in advance.
8. A person who has opted out of the law.

8. Completa le frasi con l'*aggettivo* derivante dal sostantivo tra parentesi.

➤ *His behaviour was quite (child) **childish**.*

1. They are going to make a (*science*) experiment.
2. The players sing the (*nation*) anthem before the football match.
3. It's a (*wonder*) day.
4. It was a (*marvel*) experience.
5. The weather is not very good today. It's rather (*wind*)
6. Can you tell me something about your (*day*) routine?
7. I'm very (*hunger*) Can I have a sandwich?
8. Susan is very (*anger*) She doesn't want to see me any more.
9. Mary is (*thirst*) Give her a cup of tea.
10. Be (*care*) , children. Don't go too near the river bank.

9. Completa le frasi con l'*aggettivo* derivante dal verbo tra parentesi.

➤ *Excuse me. Is that water (*drink*) **drinkable**?*

1. Mrs Robinson is a very (*attract*) woman.
2. What he did was (*admire*)
3. The food wasn't special but (*eat*)
4. Who is (*respond*) for the accident?

10. Completa le frasi con *aggettivi negativi*.

➤ *My handwriting is completely **illegible**. No one can read it.*

1. My sister is twenty-eight years old but behaves as if she were sixteen. She's very
2. The shape of this vase is very and it is very difficult to wrap it.
3. What we did is
4. He is a very person.
5. That was an experience.
6. Her daughter is very She is always telling lies.

LEGIBLE

**MATURE
REGULAR**

**LEGAL
RESPONSIBLE
FORGETTABLE
HONEST**

11. Completa le frasi con *aggettivi terminanti in -less o in -ful* derivanti dai sostantivi forniti.

➤ *That woman is really **beautiful**.*

1. He has caused many accidents. He is a driver.
2. They had a holiday in California. They spent their days relaxing at the beach.
3. Smoking is for one's health.
4. The doctor hurt me when he gave me the injection. It was quite
5. Don't be afraid of that dog. He is

BEAUTY

**CARE
REST**

**HARM
PAIN
HARM**

12. Completa le frasi con i *sostantivi* derivanti dagli aggettivi forniti.

- | | |
|--|-------------|
| 1. Their made Jane jealous. | HAPPY |
| 2. All machines must be checked for | SAFE |
| 3. Susan's often makes her blush. | SHY |
| 4. Alan will show his when he goes to live on his own. | INDEPENDENT |
| 5. I have in reading without glasses. | DIFFICULT |

13. Completa le frasi con i *sostantivi* derivanti dai verbi forniti.

- | | |
|--|-----------|
| 1. My sister has a fantastic | IMAGINE |
| 2. I have a for sweet food, but I don't eat them too often. | PREFER |
| 3. Tom has an amazing of butterflies from all over the world. | COLLECT |
| 4. Alan's to give her a lift to the station meant that she missed the train. | REFUSE |
| 5. The doctor gave her a for a cough mixture. | PRESCRIBE |
| 6. Uncle John is looking forward to his after years of working hard. | RETIRE |
| 7. Fiona cares about her and is always smartly dressed. | APPEAR |
| 8. Tickets for the first of the play were completely sold out. | PERFORM |

14. Completa il testo con le parole corrette derivanti dalle parole fornite.

Mary is my best friend. She is definitely a very (0) sociable woman. She has a lot of friends because she is always 1), 2) and ready to help anyone. When it comes to 3) situations, she always acts 4) For example, a few weeks ago she saved a little girl's life by pulling her out of the path of a speeding truck. When it comes to giving advice, she is always very 5) and 6) She is loved for her 7) When she goes abroad, she always brings me and all her friends presents from the countries she visits. However, sometimes she can be rather 8) especially when she is driving. Sometimes she drives so 9) that all her friends are 10) to get in the car with her.	SOCIAL CHEER RELY DANGER BRAVE HELP SUPPORT GENEROUS CARE CARELESS FRIGHTEN
---	---

B PAROLE COMPOSTE: aggettivi e sostantivi composti

Molte parole in inglese si formano dalla **combinazione di due o più parole** che possono essere:

- congiunte: *armchair, postman, toothpaste, weekend, football, ecc.*
- legate da trattino: *washing-machine, passer-by, milk-jug, grown-up, ecc.*
- separate: *travel agent, war film, cheese sandwich, living room, ecc.*

◆ Aggettivi composti

• aggettivo/avverbio + participio passato	<i>a blue-eyed girl</i>	una ragazza dagli occhi azzurri
• numero + sostantivo	<i>a well paid job</i>	un lavoro ben pagato
• numero + sostantivo + aggettivo	<i>a ten-dollar banknote</i> (NO: a ten dollars banknote)	una banconota da dieci dollari
• sostantivo/avverbio/aggettivo + -ing	<i>a ten-year-old girl</i> (NO: a ten years old girl)	una bambina di dieci anni
	<i>a car-manufacturing company</i>	una società produttrice di auto
	<i>a hard-working man</i>	un duro lavoratore
	<i>a good-looking boy</i>	un ragazzo di bell'aspetto

◆ Sostantivi composti

• sostantivo + sostantivo	youth club	circolo per giovani
• gerundio + sostantivo	washing machine	lavatrice
• verbo + preposizione	grown-up	adulto
• sostantivo + preposizione+ sostantivo	mother-in-law	suocera
• sostantivo + aggettivo	Attorney General	Procuratore Generale

• Nei sostantivi composti **la parte principale è l'ultima parola a destra**. Ogni nome che si aggiunge a sinistra riduce, specificandolo, il significato delle parole che seguono.
club = circolo
youth club = club per giovani/giovanile
a London youth club = un circolo giovanile di Londra
• Poiché **il sostantivo o i sostantivi che precedono la parte principale** fungono da attributo, essi di norma **non vogliono la -s del plurale**.
a shoe shop = un negozio di **scarpe**

• Per formare **il plurale dei sostantivi composti** di norma si aggiunge la desinenza del plurale **all'ultimo elemento** del vocabolo
shoe shops; youth clubs; travel agents; school subjects; grown-ups; ecc.
Ma:
- **alcuni sostantivi composti** aggiungono la desinenza del **plurale al primo elemento** del composto (per lo più i composti sostantivo + preposizione)
mothers-in-law; fathers-in-law; passers-by;
- quando la prima parola è **man** o **woman**, vengono resi al plurale entrambi gli elementi
man writer → men writers; woman servant → women servants

Attenzione!!!

Non confondere
 Quando si parla di un **contenitore + il suo contenuto**
 si deve usare la preposizione **of**.
 Confronta:



a coffee cup
 una tazza da caffè



a cup of coffee
 una tazza di caffè



a wine glass
 un bicchiere da vino

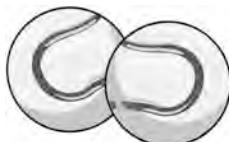


a glass of wine
 un bicchiere di vino

PRACTICE

1. Scrivi le *parole composte* corrispondenti alle seguenti definizioni.

1. a factory that makes cars
2. a machine for washing
3. a large, warm bag to sleep in
4. the door of the kitchen
5. a person who drives a bus
6. a present which is given on Christmas day
7. a shop that sells toys
8. a person who robbed a bank
9. a party that is given on someone's birthday
10. the day when someone was born
11. a woman aged 45
12. a girl with blue eyes

2. Scrivi sei sostantivi composti, utilizzando la parola *tennis* e le parole fornite.*rackets / balls / shoes / court / match / player***1.** a**2.** two**3.** a pair of**4.** a**5.** a**6.** two**3.** Scrivi il *plurale* dei seguenti sostantivi composti.

singolare	plurale	singolare	plurale
1. woman astronaut	9. grown-up
2. shoe shop	10. river bank
3. flower pot	11. door handle
4. chocolate box	12. Christmas present
5. passer-by	13. father-in-law
6. wine glass	14. man student
7. sugar bowl	15. man servant
8. teacup	16. travel agent

4. Traduci in italiano le seguenti espressioni.

1. a milk-jug - a jug of milk
2. a teacup - a cup of tea
3. a sugar bowl - a bowl of sugar

4. a jam jar - a jar of jam
5. a flower pot - a pot of flowers
6. a chocolate box - a box of chocolates

C AGGETTIVI E SOSTANTIVI DI NAZIONALITÀ: paesi, nazionalità, abitanti, popoli, lingue

Includiamo in questa sezione anche gli aggettivi e i sostantivi di nazionalità perché essi si formano dai nomi di stato/continente mediante **suffissi**.

Dal punto di vista grammaticale, gli aggettivi e i sostantivi di nazionalità si possono dividere in **quattro gruppi**:

◆ Gruppo 1 - Aggettivi terminanti in - an, -ian , -i

- Usati come aggettivi sono invariabili
- Quando sono usati come sostantivo plurale o come popolo prendono la **-s** del plurale
- A questo gruppo appartiene anche **Greek, greco**

stato/ continente	nazionalità (aggettivo)	abitante (sostantivo)	popolo	lingua
Africa	African	an African (two Africans)	the Africans	
Albania	Albanian	an Albanian (two Albanians)	the Albanians	Albanian
Austria	Austrian	an Austrian (two Austrians)	the Austrians	German
Australia	Australian	an Australian (two Australians)	the Australians	French, Flemish
Belgium	Belgian	a Belgian (two Belgians)	the Belgians	Dutch, German
Bolivia	Bolivian	a Bolivian (two Bolivians)	the Bolivians	Spanish
Brazil	Brazilian	a Brazilian (two Brazilians)	the Brazilians	Portuguese
Bulgaria	Bulgarian	a Bulgarian (two Bulgarians)	the Bulgarians	Bulgarian
Canada	Canadian	a Canadian (two Canadians)	the Canadians	English, French
Chile	Chilean	a Chilean (two Chileans)	the Chileans	Spanish
Egypt	Egyptian	an Egyptian (two Egyptians)	the Egyptians	Arabic
Europe	European	a European (two Europeans)	the Europeans	
Germany	German	a German (two Germans)	the Germans	German
Hungary	Hungarian	a Hungarian (two Hungarians)	the Hungarians	Hungarian
India	Indian	an Indian (two Indians)	the Indians	Hindi, English
Iran	Iranian	an Iranian (two Iranians)	the Iranians	Farsi
Italy	Italian	an Italian (two Italians)	the Italians	Italian
Mexico	Mexican	a Mexican (two Mexicans)	the Mexicans	Spanish
Norway	Norwegian	a Norwegian (two Norwegians)	the Norwegians	Norwegian
Peru	Peruvian	a Peruvian (two Peruvians)	the Peruvians	Spanish
Rumania	Rumanian	a Rumanian (two Rumanians)	the Rumanians	Rumanian
Russia	Russian	a Russian (two Russians)	the Russians	Russian
USA	American	an American (two Americans)	the Americans	English
Israel	Israeli	an Israeli (two Israelis)	the Israelis	Hebrew
Pakistan	Pakistani	a Pakistani (two Pakistanis)	the Pakistanis	Urdu, English
Greece	Greek	a Greek (two Greeks)	the Greeks	Greek

◆ Gruppo 2 - Aggettivi terminanti in - ese

- Sono **invariabili** (non prendono mai la **-s del plurale**) sia quando fungono da aggettivo che quando fungono da sostantivo o quando indicano l'intero popolo
- A questo gruppo appartiene anche **Swiss, svizzero**

stato	nazionalità (aggettivo)	abitante (sostantivo)	popolo	lingua
China	Chinese	a Chinese (two Chinese)	the Chinese	Chinese
Japan	Japanese	a Japanese (two Japanese)	the Japanese	Japanese
Portugal	Portuguese	a Portuguese (two Portuguese)	the Portuguese	Portuguese
Switzerland	Swiss	a Swiss (two Swiss)	the Swiss	German, French, Italian

♦ Gruppo 3 - Aggettivi terminanti in - sh e -ch

- Sono invariabili sia come aggettivi che quando indicano l'intero popolo
- Per sostantivarli si usano al singolare i suffissi **-man** e **-woman**, al plurale **-men** e **-women** o il sostantivo **people**

stato	nazionalità (aggettivo)	abitante (sostantivo)	popolo	lingua
England	English	an Englishman/woman (two Englishmen/women)	the English	English
Ireland	Irish	an Irishman/woman (two Irishmen/women)	the Irish	English, Gaelic
Wales	Welsh	a Welshman/woman (two Welshmen/women)	the Welsh	English, Welsh
France	French	a Frenchman/woman (two Frenchmen/women)	the French	French
Holland	Dutch	a Dutchman/woman (two Dutchmen/women)	the Dutch	Dutch

♦ Gruppo 4 - Alcuni aggettivi in - sh hanno forme diverse per aggettivo e sostantivo

stato	nazionalità (aggettivo)	abitante (sostantivo)	popolo	lingua
Great Britain	British	a Briton	the British	English, Gaelic
Denmark	Danish	a Dane	the Danish	Danish
Finland	Finnish	a Finn	the Finns (o the Finnish)	Finnish
Poland	Polish	a Pole	the Poles	Polish
Scotland	Scottish	a Scot (o a Scotsman/woman)	the Scots	Gaelic, English
Spain	Spanish	a Spaniard	the Spaniards (o the Spanish)	Spanish
Sweden	Swedish	a Swede	the Swedes	Swedish
Turkey	Turkish	a Turk	the Turks	Turkish

Ricorda:

- Gli aggettivi e i sostantivi di nazionalità sono sempre scritti con la **lettera maiuscola**
- La **lingua** quasi sempre corrisponde all'**aggettivo di nazionalità**. Non è preceduta dall'articolo *the*, ma è richiesto l'articolo quando è accompagnata dalla parola *language*
- Per indicare l'intero popolo è possibile anche usare l'aggettivo di nazionalità seguito dal sostantivo **people** (*the Poles = the Polish people*)

Note:

- Per designare la lingua araba si usa la parola *Arabic*. Si dice anche *Arabic numerals* (= numeri arabi). Esiste anche l'aggettivo *Arabian*, che però è usato nello stile letterario: "The Arabian Nights' Entertainment" (= Le Mille e una Notte.)
- Per riferirsi al popolo di religione ebraica si usa l'aggettivo *Jewish* (= ebreo) - *the Jewish people* (= il popolo ebraico) e il sostantivo *Jew* (= ebreo) - *Jew-baiting* (= La persecuzione degli ebrei)
- Oltre a *Scottish* esiste anche l'aggettivo *Scotch* usato solo per cibi e bevande: *Scotch whisky* (= whisky scozzese)

PRACTICE

1. Sottolinea la soluzione corretta.

1. The French / Frenchs speak French / the French. 2. The Finns live in Finland / Finnish.
3. The Italians / Italian speak Italian. 4. The Chineses / Chinese speak Chinese / Chinese language.
5. The Dutches / Dutch live in Holland. 6. There were four Irish / Irishmen at the conference.
7. A Spanish / Spaniard lives near my house. 8. I think the Japanese / Japanese language is as difficult as Arabic / Arabian.
9. There are a lot of Pakistanis / Pakistani living in England. 10. I like that Scot / Scottish girl.
11. Most Scots / Scottish speak English / the English nowadays.
12. English people / English like the Italian weather.
13. The Austrian / Austrians speak German.
14. The Welsh / Welshes live in Welsh / Wales.
15. The Danes / Danish live in Denmark.
16. Mark and Paul are Australian / Australians.
17. Do you like Scot / Scotch whisky?

SOMETHING MORE ABOUT NOUNS

- A. Particularita' di alcuni sostantivi numerabili e non numerabili
- B. Plurale: alcuni casi particolari
- C. Sostantivi collettivi

A PARTICOLARITA' DI ALCUNI SOSTANTIVI NUMERABILI E NON NUMERABILI

- Alcuni sostantivi non numerabili hanno corrispondenti numerabili con un significato simile, ma più specifico. Tra questi ricorda:

NON NUMERABILI	NUMERABILI
accommodation	alloggio
bread	pane
clothes/clothing	abbigliamento
cutlery	posate
food	cibo
luggage/baggage	bagaglio/i
mail/post	posta
money	danaro
music	musica
poetry	poesia (genere letterario)
scenery	panorama
travel	viaggio
work	lavoro
	a hotel un albergo, a guest house una pensione, ...
	a loaf una pagnotta
	a garment un indumento, a suit/dress abito, ...
	a knife un coltello, a fork una forchetta, a spoon un cucchiaino
	a dish un piatto, a meal un pasto
	a suitcase una valigia
	an e-mail un'e-mail, a letter una lettera, ...
	a coin una moneta, a banknote una banconota
	a song una canzone
	a poem una poesia
	a view una vista, a landscape un paesaggio
	a journey / a trip un viaggio
	a job un mestiere

- Alcuni sostantivi possono essere sia numerabili che non numerabili ma con un significato diverso. Tra questi ricorda:

NON NUMERABILI	NUMERABILI
change	resto, moneta spicciola
glass	vetro
light	luce
paper	carta
room	spazio
wood	legno
work	lavoro
	a change un cambiamento
	a glass un bicchiere
	a light una lampada
	a paper un giornale, un documento, una prova d'esame
	a room una stanza
	a wood un bosco
	a work un'opera (un libro, un quadro, ecc.)

- Alcuni sostantivi possono avere il plurale ma con un significato diverso. Tra questi ricorda:

NON NUMERABILI	NUMERABILI
business	affari
fruit	frutta/i
glass	vetro
hair	capelli
	businesses aziende
	fruits risultati
	glasses bicchieri / occhiali
	hairs peli

PRACTICE

-
1. Completa le coppie di frasi adeguatamente scegliendo tra le coppie di parole fornite.

*paper/papers
money/coins*

*music/song
poetry/poem*

*accommodation/hotel
suitcases/luggage*

- (a) How many **suitcases** have you got, Madam? - Three.
(b) How much **luggage** have you got, Sir? - Two pieces.
1. (a) Can you pass these to Helen, please?
(b) Dad is reading the
2. (a) I'd like to change some
(b) I've only got a few banknotes, but no
3. (a) Peter likes very much.
(b) He's listening to a by Shakira.
4. (a) I prefer to prose.
(b) My favourite is one by Coleridge.
5. (a) Excuse me. I'm looking for a
(b) Is it possible to find here?

-
2. Completa le seguenti frasi adeguatamente utilizzando le parole fornite.

➤ *a light / light*

(a) **Light** is life.

(b) Have you got **a light** on your desk?

1. *a paper / paper* (a) is made from wood pulp.
(b) "The Times" is
2. *wood / a wood* (a) This table is made of
3. *a change/ change* (b) We often have a picnic in
4. *a room / room* (a) Here's a ten-pound note. - And here's your
5. *fruit / fruits* (b) My life is boring. I need
6. *works / a job / work* (a) There are too many people. There isn't enough
7. *a glass / glass / glasses* (b) We've got for guests.
(a) These are the of my labours.
(b) I'd like some , please. One kilo of oranges.
(a) John's worried because he can't find
8. (b) In my opinion "Othello" is the best of Shakespeare's.....
(c) Peter is at
9. (a) A window is made of
10. (b) There's on the table.
(c) Where are my ? I can't read without.

-
3. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

1. We've got two **luggages** / **suitcases**. 2. This is a beautiful **poem** / **poetry**. 3. Can you lend me some **coin** / **money**? 4. I don't like **job** / **work**. 5. We need a **wood** / **some wood** to make a fire. 6. **There is some fruit** / **There are some fruits** in the basket. 7. Picasso's **jobs** / **works** are fascinating. 8. There are no **hotels** / **accommodations** in this village. 9. The **cutleries** / **knives and forks** are in the top drawer. 10. How **much** / **many** bread do we need? - We need one **bread** / **loaf**.

B PLURALE: ALCUNI CASI PARTICOLARI

- Alcuni sostantivi hanno **soltanto la forma del plurale**. Tra questi:

<i>belongings</i>	beni personali	<i>outskirts</i>	periferia
<i>clothes</i>	abiti/abbigliamento	<i>premises</i>	fabbricato/locale
<i>Customs</i>	dogana	<i>riches</i>	ricchezza/e
<i>earnings</i>	guadagni	<i>savings</i>	risparmi
<i>goods</i>	merci	<i>stairs</i>	scale
<i>the Middle Ages</i>	il Medio Evo		

- I sostantivi che indicano **oggetti composti da due parti** inseparabili sono **sempre plurali**. Per enumerarli si usa *a pair of / two pairs of ...* Tra questi:

articoli di abbigliamento		strumenti	
<i>pants</i>	pantaloni da donna	<i>binoculars</i>	binocoli
<i>pygamas</i>	pigiama	<i>glasses/spectacles</i>	occhiali
<i>shorts</i>	pantaloncini	<i>scissors</i>	forbici
<i>trousers</i>	pantaloni da uomo	<i>tongs</i>	pinze, tenaglie, mollette

- Alcuni sostantivi di **origine greca o latina** mantengono i **plurali nella lingua d'origine**

SINGOLARE	PLURALE	SINGOLARE	PURALE		
<i>analysis</i>	→ <i>analyses</i>	analisi	<i>memorandum</i>	→ <i>memoranda</i>	promemoria
<i>basis</i>	→ <i>bases</i>	base/i	<i>oasis</i>	→ <i>oases</i>	oasi
<i>crisis</i>	→ <i>crises</i>	crisi	<i>parenthesis</i>	→ <i>parentheses</i>	parentesi
<i>criterion</i>	→ <i>criteria</i>	criterio/i	<i>phenomenon</i>	→ <i>phenomena</i>	fenomeno/i
<i>datum</i>	→ <i>data</i>	dato/i	<i>stimulus</i>	→ <i>stimuli</i>	stimolo/i
<i>medium</i>	→ <i>media</i>	mezzo/i di informazione	<i>thesis</i>	→ <i>theses</i>	tesi

- Alcuni sostantivi, pur terminando con la **-s**, sono **sempre singolari**. Tra questi:

- nomi di scienze e discipline	<i>mathematics (maths), physics, politics, economics, ecc.</i>
- nomi di alcune malattie come:	<i>measles</i> morbillo <i>mumps</i> orecchioni
- nomi di giochi come:	<i>billiards</i> biliardo <i>bowls</i> gioco delle bocce
	<i>darts</i> frecce <i>dominoes</i> domino
	<i draughts<="" i=""> dama</i>
- nomi di piatti/cibi come:	<i>fish and chips</i> pesce e patatine fritte <i>spaghetti, tagliatelle</i>
- il termine news notizie	

C SOSTANTIVI COLLETTIVI

Tra i sostantivi collettivi più comuni ricorda:

cattle	bestiame
class	classe
clergy	clero
company	compagnia, società
family	famiglia
government	governo
majority	maggioranza
minority	minoranza
people	gente
police	polizia
staff	personale, dipendenti
team	squadra

Attenzione!!!

- I sostantivi collettivi sono seguiti da:
- **verbo al singolare** quando il gruppo viene considerato come un'entità unica;
- **verbo al plurale** quando i componenti del gruppo vengono considerati come entità individuali.
Every class has more than twenty-five students.
Ciascuna classe ha più di venticinque studenti.
My class are optimistic about the test results.
La mia classe è ottimista sui risultati del test.
- I sostantivi **cattle, people e police** sono sempre plurali e pertanto sempre seguiti dal **verbo al plurale**.

PRACTICE

1. Scrivi il *plurale* dei seguenti sostantivi.

1. oasis	5. parenthesis
2. medium	6. basis
3. memorandum	7. thesis
4. crisis	8. stimulus

2. Scrivi il *singolare* dei seguenti sostantivi quando è possibile. Metti una X quando non è possibile.

1. Customs	5. earnings
2. trousers	6. belongings
3. analyses	7. data
4. phenomena	8. scissors

3. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

1. Measles **are** / **is** a contagious disease.
2. The spaghetti **was** / **were** delicious.
3. "Fish and chips" **are** / **is** quite popular in Great Britain.
4. There **was** / **were** a lot of people at the conference.
5. Physics **was** / **were** one of my favourite subjects at school.
6. The police **were** / **was** arresting two robbers.
7. Unfortunately my favourite team **is** / **are** at the bottom of the division.
8. My family **are** / **is** at the seaside at the moment.
9. There **are** / **is** good news for Tom.
10. The goods **are** / **is** being packed at the moment.
11. He likes playing billiards. **They are** / **It is** his favourite hobby.
12. The old woman couldn't walk up the stairs. **They were** / **It was** too steep.
13. They have been saving for many years, but their savings **isn't** / **aren't** enough to buy a house.
14. We don't like living in the **outskirt** / **outskirts**.
15. Darts **is** / **are** a popular game in Great Britain.
16. I don't care what people **say** / **says**.
17. Where **is** / **are** my pyjamas? Have you seen **them** / **it**?
18. I need two **trousers** / **pairs of trousers**.
19. "I can't find my binoculars. I've been looking for **them** / **it** everywhere." "Perhaps **it is** / **they are** in the bottom drawer."
20. **Are there** / **Is there** any news?

4**SOMETHING MORE
ABOUT PREPOSITIONS**

- A. Aggettivi + preposizione
 B. Sostantivi + preposizione -----
 C. Usi idiomatici delle preposizioni

Per i verbi seguiti da preposizione
 vedi sezione SOS VERBS! PAG. 456

A AGGETTIVI + PREPOSIZIONE

Studia questa lista di *aggettivi + preposizione*. A volte sono possibili altre preposizioni.
 Un buon dizionario ti potrà fornire maggiori informazioni.

TO BE			
<i>crazy about</i>	pazzo per	<i>dependent on</i>	dipendente da
<i>glad/happy about/with</i>	contento/felice di	<i>keen on</i>	appassionato di
<i>nervous about</i>	ansioso per	<i>good to</i>	buono con
<i>worried about</i>	preoccupato per	<i>generous to</i>	generoso con
<i>good at</i>	bravo in	<i>married to</i>	sposato con
<i>bad at</i>	non bravo in	<i>similar to</i>	simile a
<i>surprised at</i>	sorpreso di	<i>used to</i>	abituato a
<i>amazed at / by</i>	sbalordito per / da	<i>rude to</i>	maleducato con
<i>afraid of</i>	timoroso di	<i>expert in</i>	esperto di
<i>capable/incapable of</i>	capace/incapace di	<i>interested in</i>	interessato a
<i>fond of</i>	appassionato di	<i>angry with/at</i>	arrabbiato con
<i>kind/nice of</i>	gentile da parte tua/sua/...	<i>bored with</i>	annoiato di
<i>stupid of</i>	stupido da parte tua/sua/...	<i>crowded with</i>	affollato di
<i>tired of</i>	stanco di	<i>disappointed with</i>	deluso di
<i>responsible for</i>	responsabile di	<i>fed up with</i>	stanco di
<i>different from (to)</i>	diverso da	<i>pleased with</i>	soddisfatto/contenuto di

B SOSTANTIVI + PREPOSIZIONE

Studia questa lista di *sostantivi + preposizione*. A volte sono possibili altre preposizioni.
 Un buon dizionario ti potrà fornire maggiori informazioni.

<i>admiration for</i>	ammirazione per	<i>an authority on</i>	un esperto di
<i>an application for (a job)</i>	una domanda di(lavoro)	<i>a comment on</i>	un commento su
<i>a cheque for</i>	un assegno di	<i>an effect on</i>	un effetto su
<i>a cure for</i>	una cura per	<i>an influence on</i>	un'influenza su
<i>a desire for</i>	un desiderio di	<i>(be in) authority over</i>	(avere) capacità di controllo su
<i>a disregard for</i>	un disprezzo di / per	<i>(have) control over</i>	(avere) il controllo di
<i>a need / demand / request for</i>	un bisogno/richiesta di	<i>(be in) dispute over</i>	essere in disputa su
<i>provision(s) for</i>	provviste/risparmi per	<i>an access to</i>	un accesso a
<i>a reason for</i>	una causa di	<i>an alternative to</i>	un'alternativa a
<i>a recipe for</i>	una ricetta di / per	<i>an attitude to/towards</i>	un atteggiamento verso
<i>respect for</i>	rispetto per	<i>a reaction to</i>	una reazione verso / per
<i>responsibility for</i>	responsabilità di	<i>a solution to</i>	una soluzione a
<i>room for</i>	spazio per	<i>a witness to</i>	un testimone di
<i>sympathy for</i>	comprensione per	<i>(be in) dispute with</i>	essere in disputa con
<i>an interest in</i>	un interesse per	<i>an encounter with</i>	un incontro con
<i>a rise/an increase in</i>	un aumento di	<i>a link with</i>	un legame con
<i>a fall / a decrease in</i>	una diminuzione di	<i>a quarrel with</i>	un litigio con
<i>a cause of</i>	una causa di	<i>a relationship with</i>	un rapporto con

Ricorda che quando una preposizione è seguita da un verbo questo va costruito alla forma in -ing

(Vedi a PAG. 182)

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi adeguatamente con gli *aggettivi* forniti facendoli seguire dalla *preposizione* corretta.

afraid / worried / crazy / tired / bad / good / kind

➤ *She's crazy about disco music. She really likes it a lot.*

1. We're his health. He's ill quite often.
2. She's dogs. She was attacked by one when she was a child.
3. Thank you very much. That's very you.
4. I'm watching TV. Shall we go out tonight?
5. I'm very English. I never make mistakes in tests.
6. He's very history. He doesn't even know when America was discovered.

2. Completa le frasi adeguatamente con gli *aggettivi* forniti facendoli seguire dalla *preposizione* corretta.

happy / dependent / angry / responsible / generous / fond / rude / pleased

1. Tom is baseball. He never misses a match.
2. He was the accident. He didn't stop at the "give way" sign.
3. I decided to go to university and my parents were my decision.
4. I would like to be independent but I'm still my parents.
5. She's very me. She often gives me some money.
6. I'm Bob and I don't want to see him any more.
7. I don't want to invite Bob to my party. He's always me.
8. He is not his job. He's looking for another job.

3. Inserisci in ciascuna frase la *preposizione* corretta.

1. Alan has great admiration his maths teacher.
2. James doesn't have a good relationship his father.
3. Britain severed diplomatic links Argentina when the Falkland Islands were invaded.
4. There is no access the village because of the snow.
5. Tom is writing an application a job.
6. She has a special interest the theatre.
7. There is a great demand that kind of goods.
8. If scientists find a cure cancer and AIDS, we will have a much healthier society.
9. Mr Johnson was a witness the bank robbery.
10. The spokesperson said that lifting the arms embargo would be a recipe bloodshed in the warring country.
11. She's a world authority 19 th century Irish history.
12. I don't want any comments my new haircut.
13. There must be an alternative people sleeping in the street.
14. The radiation leak has had a disastrous effect the environment.
15. The government's attitude the refugees is not sympathetic.
16. Once he had an encounter a wild pig.
17. Nobody knows what the cause the explosion was.
18. The bus was late but nobody knew the reason the delay.
19. I was surprised at Tom's reaction what I said.
20. Do you think we will find a solution this problem?

C USI IDIOMATICI DELLE PREPOSIZIONI

AT	at a distance at any rate at all costs/any cost at first sight at hand at last at least at leisure	ad una certa distanza ad ogni modo ad ogni costo a prima vista a portata di mano alla fine, finalmente almeno con comodo	at most at once at present at best at times at a time at war at peace	al massimo subito al momento, ora nel migliore dei casi a volte, talvolta alla volta in guerra in pace
BY	by accident by all means by chance by day/night by far by heart by letter/fax/post	per caso a tutti i costi, di sicuro per caso di giorno, di notte di gran lunga a memoria per lettera/fax/posta	by mistake by now by twos by the way little by little one by one side by side	per errore ormai a due a due a proposito a poco a poco uno alla volta fianco a fianco
FROM	from time to time	di volta in volta	from now on from that day on	d'ora in poi da quel giorno in poi
IN	in any case in danger in a hurry in love in need	in ogni caso in pericolo in fretta innamorato nel bisogno	in public/private in secret in short in turn in vain	in pubblico, in privato in segreto in breve a turno invano, inutilmente
ON	on average on board on the contrary on business on holiday on duty on fire on foot on horseback	in media a bordo al contrario per affari in vacanza in servizio in fiamme a piedi a cavallo	on a journey on the other hand on the phone on purpose on sale on television on time on my way home on the whole	in viaggio d'altra parte al telefono di proposito in svendita alla televisione puntualmente andando a casa complessivamente
OUT OF	out of breath out of danger out-of-date out of order out of place out of reach	senza fiato fuori pericolo fuori moda guasto fuori posto non a portata di mano	out of sale out of sight out of mind out of stock out of use out of work	fuori commercio lontano dagli occhi lontano dal cuore esaurito fuori uso disoccupato
TO	to and fro to his/her face to measure to my cost to my knowledge	avanti e indietro in faccia su misura a mie spese a quanto ne so io	to my mind to my surprise to the last man not to the point what's that to you?	a mio avviso con mia sorpresa fino all'ultimo uomo non pertinente che te ne importa?
UNDER	under age under control under pressure	al di sotto dell'età sotto controllo sotto pressione	under repair under stress under threat	in riparazione sotto stress sotto minaccia

PRACTICE

1. Abbina adeguatamente le parti in A alle parti in B per costruire frasi di senso compiuto.

A

1. They fell in love
2. I had been running for over an hour
3. He was very nervous
4. Girl, be careful. You
5. They came out of their hiding place
6. These shoes are
7. Do one thing
8. We had a good time
9. Your answer is
10. Out of sight,

B

- a) when we were on holiday.
- b) at first sight.
- c) are in danger.
- d) when they realized they were out of danger.
- e) and was walking to and fro.
- f) made to measure.
- g) out of mind.
- h) not to the point.
- i) and I was out of breath.
- j) at a time.

1 ...
2 ...
3 ...
4 ...
5 ...
6 ...
7 ...
8 ...
9 ...
10 ...

2. Abbina adeguatamente le parti in A alle parti in B per costruire frasi di senso compiuto, completandole con le preposizioni corrette.

A

1. The appointment was at 10 o'clock
2. my knowledge, elephants
3. I told him
4. Sorry, those chairs
5. Sorry, Mr Jenkins is abroad
6. You can't use that telephone.
7. He's unemployed. He has been
8. We jumped out of the car and
9. It's far the most interesting
10. I'm sure he did it

B

- a) book I've ever read.
- b) It's order.
- c) his face.
- d) can weigh up to 6,000 kilos
- e) and we got there time.
- f) are stock.
- g) purpose.
- h) a few minutes later it was fire.
- i) work for more than two months.
- j) business.

1 ...
2 ...
3 ...
4 ...
5 ...
6 ...
7 ...
8 ...
9 ...
10 ...

3. Completa le frasi con le *preposizioni* corrette.

1. You must learn this poem heart.
2. my surprise, Helen didn't come to the party.
3. He usually goes to school foot.
4. The latest model is currently sale at all our branches.
5. his way home, the boy stopped to pick flowers for his mother.
6. Last summer they went a journey to Greece.
7. the whole, I think that travelling by train has more advantages than disadvantages.
8. My sister likes travelling by car. the contrary, I prefer travelling by train.
9. the way, Jenny, can you tell Simon that the appointment is at 10 o'clock?
10. They should be back from their holiday now.
11. He succeeded last.
12. I wanted to send that letter to George but I addressed it to Alan
13. This dress is not fashionable any longer. It is date.
14. You are too young to drink alcohol in public places. You are age.
15. Mr Murphy is work. He has been looking for a job for months.

COMMUNICATIVE FUNCTIONS

- A. Le funzioni comunicative (Che cosa sono?)
- B. Il linguaggio dei rapporti interpersonali
- C. Le funzioni comunicative con i modali e forme alternative

A LE FUNZIONI COMUNICATIVE

Che cosa sono?

Per **funzioni comunicative** si intendono tutte le attività di comunicazione che si effettuano tra le persone per scopi specifici, come per esempio, salutare, presentarsi, esprimere capacità, esprimere probabilità, dare consigli, chiedere il permesso, rimproverare, scusarsi, ecc. È possibile realizzare lo stesso scopo comunicativo in vari modi, utilizzando **lessico** e **strutture grammaticali** (nel linguaggio parlato anche l'**intonazione**) diversi a seconda della **situazione**. Nella scelta del lessico e delle strutture grammaticali è fondamentale considerare alcuni **fattori**: la **relazione sociale** tra noi e il nostro interlocutore (amici? estranei? superiore e subordinato?), l'**atteggiamento psicologico** nei confronti dell'interlocutore o della situazione (simpatia? antipatia? indifferenza? tensione? noia?), il **luogo** in cui avviene la comunicazione (a casa? in contesti pubblici e ufficiali?), il **canale** utilizzato (lettera? telefono? conversazione faccia a faccia?), l'**argomento** (serio? buffo? triste?). Accanto ad un linguaggio che possiamo definire **neutrale**, utilizzabile in linea di massima in qualsiasi situazione, esistono varietà di linguaggi più **formali** e più **informali**, utilizzabili a seconda del grado di formalità della situazione.

Questa sezione presenta un'ampia gamma di funzioni comunicative realizzate tramite espressioni formali, informali e neutrali. Le forme più informali e quelle più formali sono segnalate.

B IL LINGUAGGIO DEI RAPPORTI INTERPERSONALI

◆ PRESENTARSI E PRESENTARE QUALCUNO

How do you do. My name's Paul Johnson. (formale)	How do you do, Mr Johnson.
Hello, I'm Peter Sway. (informale)	Nice to meet you, Peter.
Mrs Gorman, I'd like you to meet / may I introduce you to David Parker. (formale)	Please to meet you, Mr Parker.
Susan, this is / meet Ann. (informale)	Hi. (informale) / Hello, Ann.

◆ SALUTARE

Hello / Hi. (informale)	Hello / Hi.	
Good morning. (fino alle 12 a.m.)	Good morning.	
Good afternoon. (fino alle 6 del pomeriggio)	Good afternoon.	
Good evening. (dopo le 6 del pomeriggio)	Good evening.	
How are you?	Fine,	
How are things?	Very well,	thanks. And you?
How are you doing / getting on? (informale)	Not too bad,	

◆ ACCOMIATARSI

I really must go now.	Yes, I must go, too.
Give my regards to Jane. Say hello to Jane. Give my love to Jane. (informale)	Yes, I will.
Take care. (informale) Look after yourself.	Yes, I will.
Don't forget to phone me / to write.	No, I won't. Don't worry.
Good night (prima di andare a dormire) Goodbye. Goodbye. It was nice to meet you. Bye / Cheerio. (informale)	Good night. Goodbye. Yes. I hope we meet again some time. Goodbye! Bye. / Cheerio.
Bye! See you! (informale) Bye! See you later/tomorrow/next week/on Monday/ ... Goodbye! See you soon , I hope.	Yes, I hope so. Bye! Yes. Bye! / Yes, see you! Yes. See you soon! / Yes, I hope so, too.

◆ INIZIARE UNA CONVERSAZIONE TELEFONICA

Hello. Is that Manchester 67543? Can I speak to Robert Sullivan, please? Oh, hello Robert. This is George here.	Yes. Speaking. Oh, hello George. / Hi, George.
Hello, Thompson Limited. Hold the line. I'll put you through.	Could I speak to Mr Murphy, please? Thank you.
Is that Susan?	Sorry, you've got the wrong number.

◆ INIZIARE E CONCLUDERE UNA LETTERA

Saluti iniziali	Saluti finali
Dear Jane, (informale)	Yours, / Yours truly, / Love,
Dear Mr / Mrs / Miss / Ms Brown,	Yours sincerely, / Best regards,
Dear Sir, / Madam, / Sirs, (formale)	Yours faithfully,

◆ CONGRATULARSI E RISONDERE

Congratulations! Well done! I'm so delighted to hear that you ...	Thank you very much!
--	----------------------

◆ RINGRAZIARE E RISONDERE

Thank you (very much / so much) Thanks (a lot) (informale) It's very kind of you.	That's all right. Not at all. Don't mention it. You're welcome. It's a pleasure.
---	--

◆ SCUSARSI E RISONDERE

I'm sorry. I'm so / terribly / really / extremely sorry. I apologize. (formale) I do apologize. I'm afraid I ...	Forget it (informale) Never mind. Oh, that's all right. It doesn't matter. Don't worry about it.
--	---

◆ DIRE CIO' CHE PIACE

I like I enjoy I'm fond of I'm keen on I'm crazy about	horror films. playing chess.
--	-------------------------------------

◆ DIRE CIO' CHE NON PIACE

I don't like I dislike I can't stand / bear I'm fed up with I detest / hate	fish and chips eating fattening food.
---	--

◆ ESPRIMERE INDIFFERENZA

coffee? Do you like Tom Cruise? Shakira? the Reelists? Where would you like to go? Do you want fish or meat?	It's all right. He's all right. She's all right. They're all right. I don't mind / I don't care. It doesn't matter to me. / It's all the same to me.
---	---

ESPRIMERE ATTEGGIAMENTI INTELLETTUALI

◆ CHIEDERE UN'OPINIONE

Do you like ...?
How do you like ...?
What do you think of ...?
How do you feel about ...?
What's your opinion of ...?

Con domande brevi

I didn't like that film. Did you?
I wouldn't do that again. Would you?

◆ ESPRIMERE UN'OPINIONE

Personally / Frankly / Honestly I think that ...
In my opinion / view ...
It's my opinion / belief that ...
It seems to me that ...
As I see it, ...
If you ask me, ...
As far as I'm concerned, ...

◆ ESPRIMERE ACCORDO

Yes, I quite agree with you.
Yes, you are quite/absolutely right.
I couldn't agree with you more.
Yes, I think so too.
That's exactly the way I feel.
Exactly / Precisely.

Con l'uso degli ausiliari

I think Yes, so do I.
I don't think ... No, neither / nor do I.

◆ ESPRIMERE DISACCORDO

I'm sorry I really can't agree with you.
I'm afraid I disagree.
Nonsense! / Rubbish! /
Are you joking? **(molto informale)**

Con l'uso degli ausiliari

Tom lives here. No, he doesn't!
George doesn't live here. Yes, he does!

◆ INTERROMPERE

Sorry to interrupt you, but I'd just like to say ...
Excuse me, could I just say something?
Hold on / Hang on a moment. **(informale)**
Just a moment. **(informale)**

◆ CAMBIARE ARGOMENTO

By the way, now that you mention ... I'd like to ...
By the way, speaking of ..., I'd like to ...
Incidentally, that reminds me ...

◆ CORREGGERE

It was blue.

Well, actually
As a matter of fact
In fact
If anything

it was brown.

◆ RIFORMULARE

They are enjoying themselves, **or rather**, they appear to be enjoying themselves.
The food was cold and the service was terrible - **in short**, that restaurant was a real disaster.
He took the watch without permission. **In other words**, he stole it.
I'll come and see you in two days, **that is to say** Sunday.
There were very few people. **In fact** the cinema was almost empty.

◆ CHIEDERE CHIARIMENTI O RIPETIZIONI

I'm sorry I don't understand.
Sorry? / Pardon? / I beg your pardon?
Could you repeat/say that again?
I'm afraid I didn't understand/catch what you said.
What exactly do you mean?

◆ RAFFORZARE UN ARGOMENTO

I've got a sore throat and, **what's more**, my head aches.
I arrived late for the lesson and, **on top of that**, I had forgotten my book.
They have built more schools, but **that's not all** - they have also reduced university fees.

ESPRIMERE EMOZIONI

◆ ESPRIMERE APPROVAZIONE

What a nice skirt!	
I approve of	your decision. your leaving in the morning.
It is/was a good idea to ...	
It is/was quite right to ...	
I'm in favour of peace.	

◆ ESPRIMERE DISAPPROVAZIONE

How silly / childish of you!	
I don't approve of	your decision. your leaving in the morning.
I disapprove of	your leaving in the morning.
It is/was not a good idea to ...	
You shouldn't have left in the morning.	
I'm against war.	

◆ ESPRIMERE PIACERE

How wonderful!	
That's great / terrific / fantastic / marvellous!	
Isn't it great / terrific / fantastic / marvellous?	
I'm so pleased / delighted!	
What a wonderful / fantastic / great (+ sostantivo)	
It is such a wonderful / beautiful / (+ sostantivo)	
I've never seen such a beautiful (+ sostantivo)	

◆ ESPRIMERE IRRITAZIONE

How stupid of me / you / ...!	
It's such a nuisance!	
Oh, for goodness sake!	
What a waste of time!	
What on earth are you doing?	
Why are they always quarrelling?	
I wish they wouldn't do that.	
I'm sick and tired of the way you keep on doing that!	

◆ ESPRIMERE DESIDERIO

I wish he	were here. would come.
If only he would listen to me. I'd like a cup of strong black coffee. I'm dying for a cup of strong coffee.	
I'd love I can't wait I'd give anything	to see him again.
I'm looking forward to	seeing him.

◆ ESPRIMERE RAMMARICO

I wish he hadn't drunk so much.	
If only he had listened to me. We regret to inform you that the flight has been cancelled. I regret shouting at him that way.	
I'm beginning to wish I hadn't come. What a fool I was not to stay at home.	
I can't think why	
I don't know why	I told him that.

◆ ESPRIMERE SPERANZA

I hope that he comes / will come.	
I hope to meet him tomorrow. Let's hope that he makes progress. With a bit of luck he will pass the exam.	

◆ ESPRIMERE DELUSIONE

It's a pity that he can't come. I'm sorry to hear that he won't come. I'm disappointed that he didn't come. I'm disappointed in / with his progress. Hasn't he arrived yet?	

◆ ESPRIMERE PREOCCUPAZIONE

I'm worried	about ...
I'm concerned	that he might ...
It's very worrying that (he hasn't phoned yet.)	
I'm afraid something must have happened.	
What's wrong / the matter with you / him / ...?	

◆ ESPRIMERE SOLLIEVO

Thank goodness / heavens! I'm so relieved that ... It's such a relief to know / to hear that ... It's a good thing that ...	

♦ ESPRIMERE PARTECIPAZIONE

Oh, dear! I'm so sorry.
What a pity / shame!
I was so sorry to hear that ...
How awful for you - I am sorry.
What a terrible thing to happen!
You have all my sympathy.
It wasn't your fault.

♦ BIASIMARE E RIMPROVERARE

It serves you right. It's your own fault. It's your fault for ...	Perhaps you'll be more careful from now on. You should / shouldn't have ... That will teach you to ...
---	---

♦ ESPRIMERE SORPRESA E INTERESSE

What a surprise!
This is a surprise!
How strange / odd / funny / amazing!
No! I don't believe it!
Really?
I'm surprised / amazed / astonished that ...

vedi anche come tradurre "davvero?"
con l'uso degli ausiliari

PAG. 400

♦ ESPRIMERE INDIFFERENZA

It doesn't surprise me.
I'm not a bit surprised.
I always thought that would happen.
I don't care. / Who cares? / I couldn't care less.
So what? (**molto informale**)
It's none of my business.
It doesn't matter to me.
It doesn't make any difference to me.

PRACTICE

1. Che cosa potresti dire nelle seguenti situazioni? (Studia bene da PAG. 434 a PAG. 435)
1. E' mattino. Incontri la Signora Jones. Salutala.
 2. Incontri il tuo amico Bob. Salutalo e chiedigli come sta.
 3. Presenta Alex a Martin.
 4. Saluta il tuo amico Peter dopo avere trascorso la serata insieme e digli che speri di vederlo presto.
 5. Come dici al tuo amico: "Ciao. Ci vediamo domani."
 6. Dì al tuo amico di salutarti Susan.
 7. Il tuo amico ha superato un esame difficile. Fagli le tue congratulazioni.
 8. Ringrazia il signore a cui hai chiesto informazioni.
 9. Hai dato delle informazioni ad un signore per strada. Il signore ti ringrazia. Come rispondi al suo ringraziamento?
 10. In autobus hai pestato un piede ad un signore. Chiedi scusa.
 11. In autobus un signore ti ha pestato un piede senza volere e ti chiede scusa. Accetta le sue scuse gentilmente. Cosa dici?
 12. Al telefono. Qualcuno chiede di parlare con te. Rispondi "sono io". Come dici?
 13. Al telefono. Qualcuno ti ha chiesto di poter parlare con il direttore della ditta per cui lavori. Come diresti: "Resti in linea. Glielo passo. / La metto in contatto."
 14. Rispondi al telefono. Il tuo interlocutore ha sbagliato numero. Cosa gli dici?
 15. Come saluti al termine di una lettera che comincia con "Dear Sir / Madam" ?
 16. Come saluti al termine di una lettera che comincia con "Dear John / Pam" ?
 17. Rispondi a qualcuno che ti chiede "Do you like tea?" . Esprimi indifferenza.
 18. Qualcuno ti chiede "Do you want tea or coffee?" Rispondi esprimendo indifferenza. ("È la stessa cosa per me. / Fa lo stesso.")

2. Che cosa potresti dire nelle seguenti situazioni?

(Studia bene a **PAG. 436** come "Esprimere atteggiamenti intellettuali")

1. Chiedi a qualcuno che cosa ne pensa del jazz.
2. Qualcuno ti ha chiesto che cosa ne pensi di un certo film. Rispondi che francamente pensi che sia terribile.
3. Un amico ti ha detto "Susan is beautiful." Esprimi accordo. ("Sono proprio d'accordo.")
4. Un amico ti ha detto "That film is very interesting." Esprimi disaccordo in modo molto informale ("Stai scherzando?")
5. La professoressa sta parlando di un certo argomento. Tu vuoi dire qualcosa in proposito. Interrompila educatamente.
6. Stai parlando con qualcuno di una certa questione. Ad un certo punto ciò che il tuo interlocutore sta dicendo ti fa venire in mente un'altra cosa. Cosa dici per cambiare argomento? ("A proposito, adesso che parli di ..., vorrei ...")
7. Qualcuno ha detto "There were 300 people at the meeting." Correggi per dire che ce ne erano solo 200. ("Beh, veramente ce ne erano solo 200.")
8. Non hai capito ciò che qualcuno ha appena detto. Chiedi gentilmente di ripetere.
9. Chiedi chiarimenti su ciò che è stato detto. ("Che cosa intendi dire esattamente?")
10. Hai detto: "I feel terrible. I've got a sore throat and a cold." Rafforza l'argomento dicendo: "E per di più, mi fa male la testa."

3. Che cosa potresti dire nelle seguenti situazioni?

(Studia bene da **PAG. 437** a **PAG. 438** come "Esprimere emozioni")

1. Incontri un'amica che ha un bel vestito. Esprimi approvazione ("Che bel vestito!")
2. Un amico ha preso una decisione. Digli che approvi la sua decisione.
3. E' scoppiata una guerra. Esprimi la tua approvazione o disapprovazione. ("Sono a favore/Sono contrario a questa guerra.")
4. Un tuo amico ti ha dato una bella notizia. Esprimi piacere. ("Sono così contento!")
5. Hai fatto una sciocchezza. Esprimi irritazione per ciò che hai fatto. ("Che stupido!")
6. Qualcuno sta facendo qualcosa che ti irrita. Esprimi irritazione ("Ma che diavolo sta facendo!")
7. Sei in macchina. Esprimi la speranza di arrivare a casa presto. ("Con un po' di fortuna saremo a casa presto.")
8. Hai invitato un amico alla tua festa. Lui ti dice che non può venire. Esprimi delusione. ("È un peccato che tu non possa venire.")
9. Vorresti tanto che in questo momento una certa persona fosse qui con te. Esprimi questo desiderio. ("I wish ...")
10. Tu parli e dai consigli, ma il tuo ragazzo/la tua ragazza non ti da mai ascolto. Esprimi il desiderio difficilmente realizzabile che lui/lei ti ascolti. ("Se soltanto mi ascoltasse!")
11. E' un gran caldo, hai una sete terribile e vorresti tanto un bicchiere di acqua. Esprimi questo desiderio in modo tale che renda "Non so che cosa darei per un bicchiere d'acqua."
12. Hai bevuto molto e ti sei ubriacato. Esprimi rammarico. ("Se soltanto non avessi bevuto così tanto!" / "Vorrei non aver bevuto così tanto.")
13. Tuo fratello è partito da un po' di tempo. Avrebbe dovuto telefonare ma non lo ha ancora fatto. Esprimi la tua preoccupazione. ("È preoccupante che lui non abbia ancora telefonato. Temo che sia accaduto qualcosa.")
14. Tuo fratello è in viaggio da molto tempo. Ha appena fatto sapere che sta bene. Esprimi sollievo. ("È un tale sollievo sapere che sta bene.")
15. Un tuo amico ha perso il lavoro. Esprimigli la tua partecipazione/comprendizione. ("Oh, mamma mia! Mi dispiace tanto!")

C**LE FUNZIONI COMUNICATIVE CON I MODALI E FORME ALTERNATIVE**

In questo paragrafo vengono presentati i verbi modali, semi-modali e forme alternative, suddivisi per "aree di significato" o "funzioni comunicative".

♦CAPACITA'

capacità al presente	He	can is able to knows how to is capable of	use a computer. using a computer.
capacità generica al passato	He	could	already use a computer when he was five.
capacità specifica al passato	He	was able to managed to succeeded in	use the computer on that occasion. using the computer on that occasion.
capacità ipotetica	He	could	use a computer if you helped him
capacità ipotetica al passato	He	could have	used the computer if you had helped him.
be able to + forma base si usa in tutti i tempi verbali e sostituisce <i>can</i> nei tempi e nei modi in cui <i>can</i> non è grammaticalmente possibile			
(Vedi a PAG. 268)			

♦PERMESSO

chiedere il permesso (dal modo più informale a quello più formale)	Is it OK / all right if I Can I Could I Do you think I could I was wondering if I could I wonder if I could Do you mind if I Would you mind if I Would you mind	use your car?
	Would it be possible to May I Might I May I have your permission to	use your car?
	Our daughter can / may Our daughter is allowed / permitted to We allow / permit our daughter to We let our daughter	use the car on Sundays.
	We can't / may not We aren't allowed/permited to Dad doesn't allow/permit us to Dad doesn't let us	use the car every day.
	When I was eighteen I could	
	On that occasion I was allowed/permited to	use my father's car.
be allowed to e be permitted to + forma base si usano in tutti i tempi verbali e sostituiscono <i>can</i> e <i>may</i> nei tempi e nei modi in cui <i>can</i> e <i>may</i> non sono grammaticalmente possibili		
(Vedi a PAG. 272)		

◆ RICHIESTA

Chiedere qualcosa a qualcuno	Can I have Could I have Would it be possible to have I would like I wonder if I could have	a piece of cake, (please)? a piece of cake.
Chiedere a qualcuno di fare qualcosa	Can / Will you Could / Would you Could you possibly Do you mind Would you mind I wonder if you'd mind	help me? helping me? helping me.
	Would you like to Would you be so kind as to I would appreciate it if you could	help me? help me.

◆ OFFERTA

Offrire qualcosa a qualcuno	Have a biscuit / Do please have a biscuit. Do you want a biscuit? (molto informale) Will you have a biscuit? Do you fancy a biscuit? (informale) Do you feel like a biscuit? (informale) Would you like a biscuit? Would you care for a biscuit? (molto formale)
Offrirsi di fare qualcosa per qualcuno	Shall I Can I Would you like me to Do you want me to
	help you? Let me help you, I will ('ll) help you,

◆ INVITO

Fare un invito (dal modo più informale a modi più gentili e formali)	(Do) come with us. Do you want to come to our party? Do you fancy / Do you feel like going to the cinema? Will / Won't you come to our party? Why don't you come to our party? How about coming for a meal on Sunday? Would you like to come to our party? I was wondering if you'd like to go to the museum. (formale) May I invite you to our party? (formale)
--	---

◆ PROPOSTA

Let's	go for a walk.
Shall we	go for a walk?
Why don't we	
What about / How about	going for a walk?

◆ CONSIGLIO / SUGGERIMENTO

chiedere un consiglio / suggerimento	What shall I What do you think I should	wear tonight?
dare un consiglio / suggerimento	Why don't you Why not I think you should I think you ought to You'd better If I were you, I'd You could	wear a long dress?
	I propose I suggest I recommend	wear a long dress.
		wearing a long dress.
dare un consiglio forte	I would advise you to wear a long dress.	That book is really interesting. You must read it.

♦OBBLIGO / NECESSITA'

obbligo e necessità	You must You have to/you've got to		return the books in a week.				
	You are supposed to expected to meant to						
	You need to						
	It's necessary	(for you) to that you should					
	You are compelled to obliged to required to						
	You are to						
Ricorda che must si coniuga solo al presente. Have to + forma base si usa in tutti i tempi e modi e sostituisce <i>must</i> nei tempi e nei modi in cui <i>must</i> non è grammaticalmente possibile.							
(Vedi a PAG. 276)							

♦PROIBIZIONE

obbligo di non fare qualcosa	You mustn't		exceed the speed limit.		
	You are not supposed to meant to		leave your luggage here.		
	You are forbidden to		leave the country.		
	prohibited from		leaving the country.		
	It is forbidden to		park here.		
	You are not to		play there.		
negazione del permesso di fare qualsiasi	vedi "permesso non concesso" con: can't, may not, not to be allowed to, not to be permitted to.		(Vedi a PAG. 440)		
not to be allowed to + forma base si usa in tutti i tempi e modi verbali e sostituisce <i>can't/ mustn't/ may not</i> nei tempi e nei modi in cui <i>must, can e may</i> non sono grammaticalmente possibili.					
(Vedi a PAG. 272)					

♦ASSENZA DI OBBLIGO/NECESSITA'

assenza di obbligo o necessità	You don't have to / You haven't got to You needn't You don't need to		get up early.				
	You are not meant to expected to		do all the cleaning.				
	(for you) to that you should						
	It is not necessary						
	There is no need						
	You are not compelled to obliged to required to						
not to have to + forma base può essere coniugato in tutti i tempi verbali vedi a PAG. 276							
Per la differenza fra <i>mustn't</i> e <i>don't have to</i> vedi a PAG. 276							
Per il verbo <i>need</i> , vedi a PAG. 280 - 297							

♦ CERTEZZA

certezza	I'm	certain / sure / convinced	that he is telling the truth.
	It is	sure / clear / obvious	
	There is	no doubt	
	He is	certainly / surely / definitely	telling the truth.
certezza affermativa presente ricavata da deduzione logica	That	must	be Alan on the phone.
		will	
certezza affermativa presente riguardante il passato		You must (will) have paid a lot of money for that dress.	
certezza affermativa passata		She was driving so fast that there had to be an accident.	
certezza presente al negativo ricavata da deduzione logica		It can't be Mary on the phone.	
certezza negativa presente riguardante il passato		She can't have received your letter yet.	
certezza negativa passata		What she told me couldn't have been true.	

♦ PROBABILITA' / IMPROBABILITA'

probabilità	It is probable	that he works near here.
	It is likely	works near here.
	He probably	to work near here.
probabilità presente o futura basata su deduzione logica / supposizione	He should He ought to	work near here because I meet him every morning.
probabilità riguardante un evento passato basata su deduzione logica / supposizione	They should have They ought to have	arrived by now. They left two days ago.
improbabilità	It's unlikely	that he works near here.
	He's unlikely	to work near here.
	I don't expect / suppose	that the weather will improve.
	It shouldn't It oughtn't to	rain again according to the weather forecast.
improbabilità riguardante un evento passato	They shouldn't have They oughtn't to have	arrived yet.

♦ POSSIBILITA'

possibilità teorica al presente (legata ad una condizione generale)	Children can be very noisy.	
possibilità teorica al passato	A few years ago, it could be very cheap to buy a house by the sea.	
possibilità concreta presente o futura (legata ad una particolare occasione)	He may Perhaps / Maybe he will	be late.
possibilità concreta riguardante un evento passato	He took the train to London last night so he may have arrived by now.	
possibilità ipotetica	Let's watch this film. It might (could) prove interesting. Take a coat. It could (might) be cold.	
possibilità ipotetica riguardante un evento passato	He might (o could) have told the truth, but we didn't believe a word he said.	

♦ DESIDERIO / VOLONTÀ'

desiderio di qualcosa	I want (molto informale) I would like I fancy I feel like I'm dying for (enfatico)	an orange.
desiderio/volontà di fare qualcosa	I want I would like I wish I'm dying	to go on holiday.
	I fancy I feel like	going on holiday.
desiderio non facilmente realizzabile (Vedi a PAG. 300)	I wish I were younger. I wish I had more money. I wish they could come. I wish they would stop quarrelling.	
desiderio riguardante un evento passato non verificatosi (Vedi a PAG. 300)	I wish I had gone to her party.	
desiderio/volontà che qualcuno faccia qualcosa	I want I would like I wish I'm dying for	her to stay here a bit longer. (vedi "costruzione oggettiva" a PAG. 140)

♦ AUGURIO

con wish	I wish you a Merry Christmas.	
con may	May you be happy.	
con l' imperativo	Have a nice weekend / time / journey / meal! Have a lovely Christmas! Enjoy yourself!	
con il congiuntivo presente	God bless you!	

♦ PREFERENZA

preferenza abituale / permanente	I prefer summer to winter. I prefer swimming to playing tennis.		
preferenza specifica / momentanea (Vedi a PAG. 304)	Would you like a cup of tea?	- I would ('d) prefer - I would ('d) rather - I'd sooner	a cup of coffee. have a cup of coffee (than ...)
	Would you like to go to the cinema?	- I would ('d) prefer - I would ('d) rather - I'd sooner	to stay at home (rather than ...) stay at home (than ...)

♦ ABITUDINE

abitudine / comportamento tipico del presente	Children will		spend hours watching TV.
	Children		
abitudine / comportamento tipico del passato	When I was a child I	would used to	spend hours watching TV.
	When I was a child I		spent hours watching TV.

PRACTICE

1. Abbina le frasi alla funzione comunicativa che esprimono.

1. They can swim very well.
2. She could already swim very well at the age of seven.
3. Can you open the window, please?
4. Can I go out, mum?
5. Television programmes can be very boring sometimes.
6. You can't smoke in this room.
7. We couldn't disturb dad when he was working in his office.
8. He could win the race, if he trained hard.
9. Could I speak to Mr Jordan, please?
10. Next month I will be able to drive a car.
11. On that occasion I was able to make myself understood.
12. All the lights are off. They can't be in.

- | | | |
|----|---|-------|
| a) | assenza di permesso/proibizione al passato | 1 ... |
| b) | richiesta di permesso (formale) | 2 ... |
| c) | capacità abituale del passato | 3 ... |
| d) | richiesta (informale) | 4 ... |
| e) | possibilità teorica | 5 ... |
| f) | assenza di permesso/proibizione al presente | 6 ... |
| g) | possibilità ipotetica | 7 ... |
| h) | capacità/abilità del presente | 8 ... |
| i) | deduzione negativa | 9 ... |
| j) | capacità specifica del passato | 10... |
| k) | richiesta di permesso (informale) | 11... |
| l) | capacità/abilità del futuro | 12... |

2. Abbina le frasi alla funzione comunicativa che esprimono.

1. It may rain this evening.
2. They might come, but I'm not sure.
3. May I speak to Mr Jordan, please?
4. Might I give you some advice?
5. You may not park here.
6. We won't be allowed to stay up late.
7. We weren't allowed to camp on the beach.
8. When I was 18 years old I was allowed to stay out late.

- | | | |
|----|--|-------|
| a) | assenza di permesso nel futuro | 1 ... |
| b) | richiesta di permesso (molto formale) | 2 ... |
| c) | probabilità remota | 3 ... |
| d) | permesso al passato | 4 ... |
| e) | assenza di permesso/proibizione del presente | 5 ... |
| f) | assenza di permesso /proibizione al passato | 6 ... |
| g) | possibilità/probabilità futura | 7 ... |
| h) | richiesta di permesso (formale) | 8 ... |

3. Abbina le frasi alla funzione comunicativa che esprimono.

1. Do you want to come to the cinema with us?
2. Will you have some more tea?
3. Would you buy me some bread, please?
4. Will you stop talking, please?
5. Would you like to come to my birthday party?
6. Would you like a cup of coffee?
7. Would you mind filling in this form, please?

- (a) offerta informale
- (b) invito informale
- (c) richiesta informale
- (d) offerta cortese/formale
- (e) richiesta molto formale
- (f) richiesta formale
- (g) invito cortese/formale

1 ...
2 ...
3 ...
4 ...
5 ...
6 ...
7 ...

4. Abbina le frasi alla funzione comunicativa che esprimono.

1. I must do my homework this afternoon.
2. You must respect the Highway Code.
3. The cat refuses to eat. He must be ill.
4. You mustn't play with fire. It's dangerous.
5. Shall I wash the dishes?
6. Shall we go to the cinema tonight?
7. You ought to/should brush your teeth before going to bed.
8. You needn't come/you don't have to come, if you don't want to.
9. We didn't have to wait for him.
10. He should be able to speak English well by now.
11. You shouldn't talk to your father like that!

- a) assenza di necessità al presente
- b) probabilità/supposizione
- c) rimprovero/consiglio
- d) obbligo/ regola
- e) certezza/deduzione affermativa
- f) offerta di aiuto
- g) proposta
- h) proibizione
- i) assenza di necessità al passato
- j) consiglio
- k) obbligo morale del parlante

1 ...
2 ...
3 ...
4 ...
5 ...
6 ...
7 ...
8 ...
9 ...
10...
11...

5. Solo tre frasi tra le seguenti esprimono capacità/abilità. Indicale con un tick (✓).

- (a) A cheetah is capable of running very fast.
- (b) When I was eight I could already swim quite well.
- (c) They can't be out. The lights are on.
- (d) I will never be able to learn German. It's too complicated.

6. Solo tre frasi tra le seguenti esprimono possibilità. Indicale con un tick (✓).

- (a) It may snow.
- (b) May I leave a message for Mr Johnson, please?
- (c) He might be late.
- (d) Perhaps he will be late.

7. Solo tre frasi esprimono *richiesta* (di qualcosa o che qualcuno faccia qualcosa). Indicale con un tick (✓).

- (a) Would you be so kind as to send us your catalogue?
- (b) Can I have a sandwich?
- (c) Would it be possible to borrow your car?
- (d) Will you have some more tea?

9. Solo tre frasi tra le seguenti esprimono *permesso*. Indicale con un tick (✓).

- (a) You can go out, but remember to be back before midnight.
- (b) We are allowed to park our bikes in the courtyard.
- (c) I would like to park the car near the entrance.
- (d) Only authorized personnel can park here.

11. Solo tre frasi tra le seguenti esprimono *obbligo/dovere*. Indicale con un tick (✓).

- (a) I've got to help my mother in the kitchen.
- (b) You must respect the environment.
- (c) It can be hot in summer.
- (d) She was compelled to resign.

13. Solo tre frasi tra le seguenti esprimono un *consiglio*. Indicale con un tick (✓).

- (a) You oughtn't to go out every evening.
- (b) You should eat less.
- (c) Shall I clean the kitchen?
- (d) You'd better see a doctor.

15. Solo tre frasi esprimono *preferenza*. Indicale con un tick (✓).

- (a) I'd rather stay at home than go out.
- (b) I'd prefer to go out, if you don't mind.
- (c) I'd better put a coat on.
- (d) I'd sooner relax than work.

8. Solo tre frasi esprimono *offerta* (di qualcosa o di fare qualcosa per qualcuno). Indicale con un tick (✓).

- (a) Do you feel like a drink?
- (b) Would you like something to drink?
- (c) Will you sit down, please?
- (d) Shall I help you?

10. Solo tre frasi tra le seguenti esprimono *assenza di permesso/divieto/proibizione*. Indicale con un tick (✓).

- (a) Dogs are not allowed in this park.
- (b) You may not go there if you have a dog.
- (c) He's unlikely to come.
- (d) You mustn't make such a noise!
- (e) Perhaps he will not come.

12. Solo tre frasi tra le seguenti esprimono *assenza di necessità*. Indicale con un tick (✓).

- (a) We don't have to work on Saturdays.
- (b) You mustn't stay out late.
- (c) You needn't wear a tie in that restaurant.
- (d) We didn't have to pay for the tickets. They were free.

14. Solo tre frasi tra le seguenti esprimono un' *offerta*. Indicale con un tick (✓).

- (a) Will you have a sandwich?
- (b) Do you want some more meat?
- (c) Will you sit down, please?
- (d) Would you like a cup of coffee?

16. Solo tre frasi esprimono *abitudine* (presente o passata). Indicale con un tick (✓).

- (a) Children will spend hours watching videos.
- (b) I used to spend my holidays in Italy.
- (c) I may spend my holidays in Italy.
- (d) When I was eighteen I would go to the disco very often.

17. Solo tre frasi esprimono un *augurio*. Indicale con un tick (✓).

- (a) I wish you good luck!
- (b) May all your dreams come true!
- (c) I wish he were here.
- (d) God save the Queen!

18. Solo tre frasi esprimono *desiderio* (realizzabile o irrealizzabile). Indicale con un tick (✓).

- (a) I would like you to stay here longer.
- (b) Do you really need to study all this?
- (c) I wish he would ring me.
- (d) She's dying for her son to attend college.

19. Abbina ciascuna frase in A a quella che esprime un significato simile in B.

A	B
1. He probably lives near here.	(a) He would like to live near here. (b) I'm sure he lives near here. (c) It's likely that he lives near here.
2. You must have paid a lot of money for that painting.	(a) You would have paid a lot of money for that painting. (b) You will have paid a lot of money for that painting. (c) If I were you, I'd pay a lot of money for that painting.
3. Mr Jones can't have received your letter yet.	(a) Mr Jones must have received your letter. (b) It is certain that Mr Jones hasn't received your letter yet. (c) Your letter should have arrived. You posted it two days ago.
4. Take a scarf. It could be cold.	(a) You should have taken a scarf because it was cold. (b) You'd better take a scarf. It might be cold. (c) It was cold, so I had to take a scarf.
5. Do you feel like going to the cinema?	(a) Would you like to go to the cinema? (b) Do you like going to the cinema? (c) Aren't you going to the cinema?

20. Riformula le frasi usando le parole tra parentesi per esprimere:

capacità - permesso - richiesta

➤ *He can use a computer. (knows)* ***He knows how to use a computer.***

1. Can you type? (*able*)
2. I don't know how to drive a lorry. (*not capable*)
3. Were you really able to translate that difficult passage? (*succeed*)
4. He managed to open the door. (*able*)
5. Could I have a look at your newspaper, please? (*wonder*)
6. Could you help me? (*would you mind*)
7. Is it OK if I use your car? (*can*)
8. I was wondering if I could use your computer. (*may I*)
9. Can you go on holiday with your friends? (*allowed*)
10. She was allowed to see her husband in prison. (*permitted*)

21. Riformula le frasi usando le parole tra parentesi per esprimere:

offerta - invito - proposta - suggerimento/consiglio

1. Would you like a biscuit? (*fancy*) 2. Do you want me to help you? (*shall*) 3. Let's go for a walk. (*what about*) 4. I think you should see a doctor. (*if I were*) 5. You'd better stay at home. (*ought*) 6. I don't think you should drive so fast. (*better not*) 7. I suggest you should see that film. (*recommend*) 8. Would you like to come to my party? (*may I invite*)

22. Riformula le frasi usando le parole tra parentesi per esprimere:

obbligo/necessità - proibizione - assenza di obbligo/necessità - assenza di permesso

1. You have to fill in this form. (*must*) 2. You must return the books by tomorrow. (*supposed*)
3. I was obliged to examine the report again. (*compelled*) 4. He was to wait in his room. (*had*)
5. It was necessary for him to walk more often. (*needed*) 6. You don't have to pay for the drinks. (*needn't*)
7. It is not necessary for you to do all the cleaning. (*not expected*) 8. There is no need for you to worry so much about the test. (*needn't*)
9. You must not touch anything before the police arrive. (*not supposed*) 10. He is prohibited from leaving the country without permission. (*forbidden*)
11. You aren't allowed to smoke in here. (*can't*) 12. You may not leave the room. (*not allowed*)
13. I was not expected to serve at tables. (*have*)

23. Riformula le frasi usando le parole tra parentesi per esprimere:

certezza - deduzione logica - probabilità - improbabilità - possibilità

1. I'm sure he didn't steal the money. (*can't*) 2. I'm certain they've arrived by now. (*must*)
3. Perhaps she was in the garden when you phoned. (*may*) 4. I'm sure he is telling the truth. (*must*)
5. He probably lives around here. (*It's likely*) 6. He will probably be late. (*He's likely*) 7. There ought to be a bank on the main road. (*should*)
8. There's very little chance that it will snow tomorrow. (*It's unlikely*) 9. Maybe his new film is good. (*may*)
10. Perhaps she told you the truth. (*might*).

24. Riformula le frasi usando le parole tra parentesi per esprimere:

desiderio/volontà - augurio - preferenza - abitudine

1. I feel like an orange. (*would like*) 2. We would like to take a holiday. (*feel like*) 3. I'm sorry I wasn't at your wedding. (*wish*) 4. I would like you to know what they told me. (*want*)
5. May you have a long life. (*wish*) 6. I would prefer to go to the theatre rather than go to the cinema. (*I'd rather*)
7. Teenagers spend hours playing video games. (*will*) 8. When I was a child I spent the whole summer at my grandparents'. (*would*)
9. When I was a child I would take my teddy bear to bed with me. (*used*)

S.O.S. VERBS

- | | |
|---|---|
| A. Verbi da non confondere | E. Altri <i>phrasal verbs</i> |
| B. Fare: <i>to do / to make</i> - Altri modi per rendere "fare" | F. Costruzioni sintattiche dei verbi |
| C. Verbi con preposizione e senza preposizione | G. Costruzioni sintattiche dei verbi più comuni |
| D. <i>Phrasal verbs</i> | H. Tabella riepilogativa dei tempi verbali |
| | I. Verbi irregolari (paradigmi) |

A VERBI DA NON CONFONDERE◆ **affittare (to rent - to let - to hire)**

to rent = dare o prendere in affitto <i>When they moved to London they decided to rent their flat in Manchester rather than sell it.</i> Quando si trasferirono a Londra decisero di affittare il loro appartamento a Manchester piuttosto che venderlo. <i>We rented a flat by the sea.</i> Affittammo un appartamento vicino al mare.	to hire = dare o prendere a nolo, assumere qualcuno per lavori temporanei <i>Taxi for hire.</i> Taxi a noleggio <i>We need to hire some new staff.</i> Abbiamo bisogno di assumere nuovo personale.
to let = dare in affitto (usato in annunci o per affitti di breve durata) <i>We've got a big house, so we let some rooms to tourists during the summer.</i> Abbiamo una casa grande così affittiamo alcune stanze durante l'estate.	- Per il noleggio di macchine, biciclette e motocicli si usa spesso to rent . <i>We flew to Canada and then we rented a car there.</i> Siamo andati in Canada in aereo e poi là abbiamo noleggiato una macchina.

◆ **aspettare (to wait for - to expect)**

to wait for s.thing/s.body = esprime l'atto concreto dell'aspettare, attendere <i>We had to wait for him for a couple of hours.</i> Dovemmo aspettarlo per un paio di ore.	to expect = 1. esprime l'atteggiamento mentale di attesa <i>I'm expecting an important phone call.</i> Aspetto una telefonata importante.
Attenzione!!! Non confondere - <i>to attend</i> significa "frequentare, partecipare a" <i>I'm attending a guitar course.</i> Sto frequentando un corso di chitarra.	2. aspettarsi, supporre, immaginare <i>We expect there will be a lot of problems.</i> Ci aspettiamo che vi saranno molti problemi.

◆ **conoscere (to meet - to know - to get to know)**

to meet = conoscere, incontrare <i>I met her many years ago.</i> L'ho conosciuta/incontrata molti anni fa.	to know = conoscere, esprime la condizione del conoscere <i>I know her well.</i> La conosco bene.
	to get to know = fare la conoscenza di

♦ controllare (to check - to control)

to check = controllare (nel senso di "verificare")
Could you check the battery, please?
 Potrebbe controllare la batteria, per favore?

to control = tenere sotto controllo, dominare
She can't control herself.
 Non riesce a controllarsi.

♦ crescere - allevare (to grow - to bring up)

to grow = 1. crescere, far crescere
The boy has grown taller.
 Il ragazzo è cresciuto.
You've grown a beard!
 Ti sei fatto crescere la barba!
 - **to grow up** = essere allevato
I grew up in London.
 Sono cresciuto a Londra.
 2. coltivare prodotti agricoli
I'll grow tomatoes here.
 Qui coltiverò/ci farò crescere pomodori.

to bring up = allevare, crescere, educare
 (bambini)
My grandmother brought up eight children.
 Mia nonna ha cresciuto/allevato otto figli.
He's been brought up well.
 È stato cresciuto/educato bene.

♦ dire (to say - to tell) - (Vedi a pag. 332) ♦ fare (to do - to make) - (Vedi a pag. 455)

♦ parlare (to speak - to talk)

to speak è usato per
 1. esprimere l'abilità di parlare
Can you speak English? Sai parlare inglese?
 2. con il significato di "rivolgere la parola"
They didn't speak to each other for years.
 Non si parlarono per anni.
 3. con il significato di "prendere la parola"
(parlare in situazioni formali)
It's your turn to speak. Tocca a te/a lei parlare.
 4. per chiedere di parlare con qualcuno al telefono
Can I speak to Mr Pitt, please?
 Posso parlare con il signor Pitt, per favore?

to talk è usato in situazioni meno formali, per lo più con il significato di "conversare, chiacchierare, discutere di qualcosa"
Peter, I need to talk to you.
 Peter, ho bisogno di parlarti.
She never stops talking.
 Non smette mai di parlare.

Attenzione!!!

- In riferimento al contenuto di un libro/film/... non si dice: *This book/film speaks/talks about ...* ma si dice: *This book is about ...*

♦ perdere - mancare (to lose - to miss)

to lose = perdere, con il significato di "smarrire"
Yesterday I lost my wallet.
 Ieri ho perso il portafoglio.

Attenzione!!!

Non confondere

"lose" (verbo) = perdere
 con

"lose" (agg.) = 1. non aderente, ampio
loose clothes abiti ampi / non stretti
 2. sciolto, slacciato
lose hair capelli sciolti
lose shoe-laces lacci delle scarpe slacciati

to miss =
 1. perdere, con il significato di "non riuscire a prendere un mezzo di trasporto"
We missed the bus. Abbiamo perso l'autobus.
 2. perdere, con il significato di "non riuscire a vedere/sentire qualcosa"
We missed the beginning of the film.
 Abbiamo perso l'inizio del film.
 3. "sentire la mancanza di", "avere nostalgia di"
I miss you. Mi manchi.
 - **to be missing** = mancare, non esserci
Who is missing? Chi manca?
Ricorda anche:
missing link anello mancante
missing person persona dispersa

♦ portare (to take - to bring - to carry - to wear)

<p>to take = 1. portare lontano da chi parla <i>Can you take these papers to the boss, please?</i> Puoi portare questi documenti al capo, per favore? 2. con il significato di "accompagnare" <i>Could you take me to the station, please?</i> Potresti portarmi alla stazione, per favore? - vedi anche prendere</p>	<p>to carry = portare oggetti, trasportare <i>She was carrying a heavy suitcase.</i> Stava portando una pesante valigia.</p>
<p>to bring = portare verso chi parla o verso colui con cui si parla <i>Can you bring me those papers, please?</i> Mi puoi portare quei documenti, per favore? <i>Next time I'll bring you a present.</i> La prossima volta ti porterò un regalo.</p>	<p>to wear = portare, indossare, essere vestiti in un certo modo <i>She was wearing a red jacket.</i> Portava/Indossava una giacca rossa.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Attenzione!!!</p> <p>Non confondere "to wear" con "to put on" - to put on esprime l'atto di indossare, mettersi un indumento <i>She was putting on a jacket.</i> Si stava mettendo una giacca.</p>

♦ prendere (to take - to get - to catch - to fetch - to pick up)

<p>to take = prendere <i>Take this road. You'll get there in five minutes.</i> Prendi questa strada. Arriverai là in cinque minuti. <i>How much sugar do you take in your tea?</i> Quanto zucchero prendi/metti nel tuo tè?</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Attenzione!!!</p> <p>Non si dice: <i>I'll take a cup of coffee/a drink/...</i> Ma si dice: <i>I'll have a cup of coffee/a drink/ ...</i> Prendo una tazza di caffè/una bevanda/...</p>	<p>to catch = prendere, nel senso di "afferrare" <i>Try to catch that butterfly.</i> Cerca di prendere quella farfalla. - si dice anche: <i>to catch cold</i> prendere freddo <i>to catch a cold</i> prendere un raffreddore - in riferimento a mezzi di trasporto si possono usare sia take che catch</p> <p>take/catch a train/a bus ... = prendere un treno / un autobus ... (è preferibile catch se si vuole sottolineare il "riuscire a prendere")</p>
<p>to get = prendere, con il significato di "comperare" (= <i>buy</i>) <i>Can you get/buy me some fruit?</i> Mi puoi prendere/comperare della frutta?</p> <p>- Ma per esprimere la decisione di comperare qualcosa si usa take</p> <p><i>This dress suits you. - OK. I'll take it.</i> Questo vestito ti sta bene. - Va bene. Lo prendo.</p>	<p>to fetch = andare a prendere (e riportare) <i>Can you fetch me the chair that is in the kitchen?</i> Puoi andarmi a prendere la sedia che è in cucina? - get può essere usato con un significato simile a fetch</p> <p><i>"I left my glasses in the living room."</i> <i>"I'll fetch/get them for you."</i> "Ho lasciato gli occhiali nel soggiorno." "Te li vado a prendere."</p> <p>to pick up = passare a prendere <i>Can you pick me up at 7?</i> Puoi passarmi a prendere alle 7?</p>

♦ prestare (to lend - to borrow)

to lend = dare in prestito <i>Can you lend me your pen, please?</i> Mi puoi prestare la tua penna, per favore?	to borrow = prendere in prestito <i>Can I borrow your pen for a second?</i> Posso prendere (in prestito) la tua penna per un secondo?
---	--

♦ ricordare (to remember - to remind)

to remember = ricordarsi, tenere a mente <i>Remember to lock the front door.</i> Ricordati di chiudere la porta anteriore.	to remind = ricordare a qualcuno, far ricordare <i>He reminded me to lock the front door.</i> Lui mi ricordò di chiudere la porta anteriore.
---	---

♦ sembrare (to seem - to smell - to sound - to taste - to feel - to look)

to seem = sembrare, in senso generale (riferimento a sensazioni, impressioni) <i>He seems to be an honest man.</i> Sembra che sia un uomo onesto	to taste (like) = sembrare al gusto <i>It tastes like honey.</i> Sembra miele.
to smell (like) = sembrare all'odorato <i>This meat is disgusting. It smells like fish.</i> Questa carne è disgustosa. Puzza di pesce.	to feel (like) = sembrare al tatto <i>This material feels like velvet.</i> Questa stoffa sembra di velluto.
to sound (like) = sembrare all'uditivo <i>The news sounded very strange.</i> La notizia ci sembrò molto strana.	to look (like) = sembrare alla vista <i>She looks young. She looks like a girl</i> Sembra giovane. Sembra una ragazza.

♦ vedere - guardare (to see - to watch - to look at - to stare)

to see = vedere (anche con il significato di "incontrare qualcuno") <i>I saw an interesting film last night.</i> Ho visto un film interessante ieri sera. <i>I'm seeing Tom tonight.</i> Vedo Tom questa sera.	to watch = guardare 1. nel senso di seguire con lo sguardo o con attenzione qualcosa che cambia o è in movimento <i>He was watching TV / a football match ...</i> Stava guardando la televisione/una partita di pallone ... 2. nel senso di "osservare" <i>She sat watching the children play.</i> Sedeva guardando i bambini giocare. 3. nel senso di "tenere d'occhio, sorvegliare" <i>The detective was watching the man.</i> Il detective stava tenendo d'occhio l'uomo.
to look at = guardare, nel senso di volgere lo sguardo verso qualcosa/qualcuno <i>Look at that man! He's going to fall off the ladder.</i> Guarda quell'uomo! Sta per cadere dalla scala. - to have a look at = guardare, dare un'occhiata <i>Can I have a look at your newspaper, please?</i> Posso dare un'occhiata al suo giornale, per favore?	to stare = fissare, guardare fisso <i>Why are you staring at me?</i> Perché mi stai fissando?

PRACTICE

1. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

1. The old lady **hired** / **let** us her spare bedroom for £ 100 a week.
2. We can't afford to **hire** / **rent** new staff.
3. They'll fly to New York and then they'll **let** / **rent** a car there.
4. Can you **expect** / **wait for** me for a couple of minutes?
5. I **knew** / **met** him a couple of years ago.
6. I've never had the chance to **get to know** / **know** him.
7. Have you **checked** / **controlled** the meaning of this word in your dictionary?
8. She can't **check** / **control** her emotions.
9. Those children were **grown up** / **brought up** badly. They're too spoiled.
10. You've **grown** / **brought up** a moustache!
11. They **bring up** / **grow** potatoes in that field.
12. Look! Mary is **wearing** / **putting on** a dress. She looks nice in a dress.
13. What's Mary doing? - She's **wearing** / **putting on** a jacket.
14. Waiter! Can you **bring** / **take** us some red wine, please?
15. She came into the room **carrying** / **taking** a heavy suitcase.
16. Let's **take** / **catch** that road on the left. It's shorter.
17. I'm going to the supermarket. Shall I **get** / **take** some fish for dinner?
18. What would you like? - I'll **take** / **have** tomato soup.
19. I've left my coat in the sitting room. - I'll **fetch** / **catch** it for you.
20. I'll **pick you up** / **fetch you** at 10.00.
21. Excuse me. Can I **borrow** / **lend** your newspaper for a second?
22. John, can you **lend** / **borrow** me your dictionary?
23. Can you **remember** / **remind** her name?
24. **Remember** / **Remind** me to buy some magazines for the journey, will you?
25. Her skin is so soft. It **feels like** / **sounds like** satin.
26. He's very pale. He **looks like** / **tastes like** a ghost.
27. What awful bath salts. They **taste like** / **smell like** garlic.
28. What a terrible singer. He **sounds like** / **looks like** a cat.
29. This cake is delicious. It **sounds like** / **tastes like** honey.
30. Tom is **seeing** / **watching** TV.
31. I'm **seeing** / **watching** Tom tonight.
32. The police are **watching** / **seeing** the entrance to the bank.
33. Don't **stare** / **watch** at people like that. You might upset them.

2. Le parole sottolineate non sono appropriate. Sostituisci la/e parola/e sottolineata/e in ciascuna frase con la parola appropriata.

➤ *They have got four spare rooms, so they rent them to tourists.*

let

1. Susan got married last year and now she is waiting for her first child.
2. Can you control the battery, please?
3. I met her at the airport. She was putting on a red dress.
4. He doesn't talk English.
5. We lost the last part of his speech.
6. He brought the children to the park.
7. This material sounds like velvet.
8. I don't remind her address.

B FARE: **TO DO / TO MAKE** - Altri modi per rendere "fare"

TO DO (= fare) indica attività materiale, morale o intellettuale	TO MAKE (= fare) indica attività materiale (costruire, fabbricare, preparare)
<p>Espressioni di uso comune con il verbo <i>to do</i></p> <p><i>to do a favour</i> fare un favore <i>to do a test</i> fare un test / verifica <i>to do a translation</i> fare una traduzione <i>to do an exercise</i> fare un esercizio <i>to do business</i> fare affari <i>to do exercise</i> fare esercizio fisico <i>to do good / harm</i> fare del bene / male <i>to do one's best</i> fare del proprio meglio <i>to do one's duty</i> fare il proprio dovere <i>to do one's homework</i> fare i compiti <i>to do the cleaning</i> fare le pulizie <i>to do the cooking</i> cucinare <i>to do the housework</i> fare i lavori domestici <i>to do the ironing</i> stirare <i>to do the shopping</i> fare la spesa <i>to do the washing</i> fare il bucato <i>to do the washing up</i> lavare i piatti</p>	<p>Espressioni di uso comune con il verbo <i>to make</i></p> <p><i>to make a choice</i> fare una scelta <i>to make a copy</i> fare una copia <i>to make a discovery</i> fare una scoperta <i>to make a fortune</i> fare fortuna <i>to make a journey</i> fare un viaggio <i>to make a living</i> guadagnarsi da vivere <i>to make a mess</i> fare della confusione <i>to make a mistake</i> fare un errore <i>to make a noise</i> fare rumore <i>to make a phone call</i> fare una telefonata <i>to make a promise</i> fare una promessa <i>to make a request</i> fare una richiesta <i>to make a reservation</i> fare una prenotazione <i>to make a speech</i> fare un discorso <i>to make an agreement</i> fare un accordo <i>to make an appointment</i> fissare un appuntamento <i>to make an effort</i> fare uno sforzo <i>to make an offer</i> fare un'offerta <i>to make arrangements</i> fare preparativi <i>to make fun (of)</i> prendersi gioco (di) <i>to make friends (with)</i> fare amicizia (con) <i>to make money</i> fare i soldi / fortuna <i>to make peace / war</i> fare la pace / guerra <i>to make plans</i> fare progetti <i>to make progress</i> fare progressi <i>to make the bed</i> fare il letto</p>

*Tom is doing his homework,
but he is making a lot of mistakes.*

◆ Altri modi per rendere il verbo "fare"

<i>to ache / to hurt</i>	dolere / far male	<i>to go on an excursion</i>	fare un'escursione
<i>to ask a question</i>	fare una domanda	<i>to keep company</i>	fare compagnia
<i>to be careful</i>	fare attenzione	<i>to pack (up)</i>	fare le valigie
<i>to be silent / quiet</i>	fare silenzio / stare zitto	<i>to pay a compliment</i>	fare un complimento
<i>to dial a number</i> telefonico	fare un numero	<i>to pay a visit (to)</i>	fare una visita (a)
<i>to go fifty-fifty</i>	fare / pagare a metà	<i>to pay attention</i>	stare attento
<i>to go on a cruise</i> <i>a journey</i>	fare una crociera	<i>to play a game</i>	fare una partita
<i>to go on a trip</i> <i>a voyage</i>	 } fare un viaggio	<i>to play a trick</i>	fare uno scherzo
		<i>to take a photograph</i>	fare una fotografia
		<i>to take an examination</i>	fare / sostenere un esame

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi adeguatamente con la forma corretta di *do* o *make*.

1. Remember to an appointment with the dentist. 2. Can you me a favour? 3. If you want to keep fit, you should some exercise every day. 4. I'm not good at Maths and I'm not much progress. 5. Your test isn't very good, George. You've a lot of mistakes.

2. In ciascun gruppo è presente una parola che non viene usata con il verbo indicato. Eliminala.

1. to do the housework - harm - an effort	4. to make a decision - business - war
2. to make a test - a living - a mistake	5. to do the ironing - the dishes - a choice
3. to do the shopping - an exercise - a speech	6. to make money - one's duty - plans

C VERBI CON PREPOSIZIONE E SENZA PREPOSIZIONE**◆ VERBI CON PREPOSIZIONE IN INGLESE** (con o senza preposizione in italiano)

Molti verbi inglesi sono seguiti da una **preposizione** che **spesso è diversa** da quella retta dal verbo corrispondente italiano, oppure in italiano non è presente nessuna preposizione.

Eccone alcuni fra i più comuni (***sb*** = somebody; ***sth*** = something; ***qn*** = qualcuno; ***qc*** = qualcosa)

<i>to apologize to sb for sth</i>	scusarsi con qn di qc
<i>to approve of sb / sth</i>	approvare qn / qc
<i>to ask sb for sth</i>	chiedere a qn qc
<i>to ask sb about sth</i>	chiedere informazioni a qn su qc
<i>to comment on sb / sth</i>	commentare / criticare qn / qc
<i>to complain to sb about sth</i>	lamentarsi con qn per qc
<i>to compliment to sb about sth</i>	complimentarsi con qn per qc
<i>to congratulate sb on sth</i>	congratularsi con qn per qc
<i>to cut sth into (pieces)</i>	tagliare qc a / in (pezzi)
<i>to depend on sb / sth</i>	dipendere da qn / qc
<i>to disapprove of sb / sth</i>	disapprovare qn / qc
<i>to dream about / of sb / sth</i>	sognare (di) qn / qc
<i>to fill sth with sth</i>	riempire qc di / con qc
<i>to have a look at sb / sth</i>	dare un'occhiata a qn / qc
<i>to hear from sb</i>	avere notizie di / da qn
<i>to insist on doing sth</i>	insistere a / su / nel fare qc
<i>to look at sb / sth</i>	guardare qn / qc
<i>to laugh at sb / sth</i>	ridere di qn / qc
<i>to listen to sb / sth</i>	ascoltare qn / qc
<i>to live on qc</i>	vivere di qc
<i>to object to sb / doing sth</i>	disapprovare qc / obiettare a fare qc
<i>to pay for sth</i>	pagare (per avere) qc
<i>to provide sb with sth</i>	fornire qn di qc
<i>to quarrel with sb about sth</i>	litigare con qn per qc
<i>to rely on sb / sth</i>	contare su qn / qc
<i>to report on sb / sth</i>	riportare su qn / qc
<i>to speak to sb about sb / sth</i>	parlare a / con qn di / su qn / qc
<i>to spend (money) on sth</i>	spendere (danaro) in / per qc
<i>to succeed in doing sth</i>	riuscire a fare qc
<i>to suffer from sth</i>	soffrire di / per qc (una malattia, ecc.)
<i>to take care of sb</i>	prendersi cura di qn
<i>to thank sb for sth</i>	ringraziare qn di / per qc
<i>to think about / of sb / sth</i>	pensare a qn / qc
<i>to wait for sb / sth</i>	aspettare qn / qc
<i>to worry about sb / sth</i>	preoccuparsi di / per qn / qc

◆ VERBI SENZA PREPOSIZIONE IN INGLESE (con preposizione in italiano)

Alcuni verbi in inglese non sono seguiti da preposizione, diversamente dall'italiano.
Eccone alcuni tra i più comuni.

<i>to ask sb</i>	chiedere a qn
<i>to answer sb / sth</i>	rispondere a qn / qc
<i>to divorce sb</i>	divorziare da qn
<i>to join (a group, a club, the army, etc)</i>	unirsi a (un gruppo, un club, l'esercito, ecc.)
<i>to miss sb / sth</i>	sentire la mancanza di qn / qc
<i>to need sb / sth</i>	aver bisogno di qn / qc
<i>to phone sb</i>	telefonare a qn
<i>to play (tennis, cards, etc)</i>	giocare a (tennis/ carte, ecc)
<i>to tell sb</i>	dire a qn
<i>to trust sb</i>	fidarsi di qn

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi con le *preposizioni* corrette.

1. Ann apologized me not phoning before leaving.
2. They didn't succeed changing my opinion.
3. Alan was at the station. He was waiting his girlfriend.
4. Bob spends all his pocket-money video games.
5. Why don't you talk him?
6. He paid £ 85.00 that jacket.
7. Why don't you ask him his working experience?
8. She thanked us the present we had sent her.
9. You should listen her.
10. What are you doing next weekend? - It depends the weather.
11. He is always laughing me.
12. He's vegetarian. He lives fruit and vegetables.
13. I dreamt you last night.
14. I've never suffered headaches before.
15. I strongly disapprove lying.

2. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta (**X** indica nessuna preposizione).

1. They told **to** / **X** us that they wanted to go to the mountains.
2. Mary was talking **with** / **to** her father.
3. I think you should phone **to** / **X** her.
4. He didn't answer **X** / **to** the phone.
5. Why are they looking **at** / **X** me?
6. He congratulated **with** / **X** me **for** / **on** my school report.
7. He is always complaining **for** / **about** his job.
8. We need **X** / **of** some sugar.
9. Why don't you trust **X** / **of** me?
10. Robert joined **to** / **X** the army last month.

3. Completa ciascuna frase con la forma corretta di uno dei seguenti *verbi + la preposizione corretta* dove è necessaria.

listen / answer / trust / need / wait / play / divorce / ask

➤ *Where have you been? We've been waiting for you.*

1. Our teacher says we more practice.
2. In my free time I like music.
3. You must your own feelings and decide for yourself.
4. They cards all afternoon yesterday.
5. Last month, Tom Mary to marry Pamela.
6. If you are thirsty, Jane a glass of water.
7. Bob, can you the phone, please?

4. Traduci le seguenti frasi.

1. John spende tutti i suoi soldi in CD.
2. Sento la mancanza del mio ragazzo.
3. Da quanto tempo la aspetti?
4. Hai ascoltato la radio questa mattina?
5. Perché non chiedi a quel poliziotto dell'incidente?
6. Lui chiese scusa per il ritardo.
7. Tom è entrato a far parte del nostro club il mese scorso.
8. Quei ragazzi stanno ridendo di me.
9. Taglia le patate in piccoli pezzi.
10. Riempì il bicchiere di vino rosso.
11. Mi scusi. Posso dare un'occhiata al suo giornale?
12. Non approvo il tuo comportamento.
13. Mark and Ted stanno giocando a biliardo.

D PHRASAL VERBS

Un "phrasal verb" è una particolare combinazione di **verbo + particella avverbiale o preposizione** in cui la particella avverbiale o la preposizione modificano il significato del verbo, quindi uno stesso verbo può assumere significati diversi a seconda della preposizione o della particella avverbiale da cui è seguito. (ex: *to put up* = ospitare; *to put out* = spegnere) Molti "phrasal verbs", frequenti nel parlato, hanno **forme equivalenti** costituite da un'unica parola, spesso **di origine latina o greca**, che però vengono utilizzate nel linguaggio formale. (ex: *to carry on* = *to continue*; *to put out* = *to extinguish*).

Vi sono 4 diversi tipi di "phrasal verbs"

• Verbi accompagnati da particella avverbiale (come: up, away, in, out, across, along, back, down, off, on, out, over, round, through). Possono essere transitivi o intransitivi .	TRANSITIVI (con oggetto) <i>Turn off the gas.</i> Posizione della particella avverbiale a) se l'oggetto è un sostantivo , la particella avverbiale può precedere o seguire l'oggetto <i>Turn off the gas./ Turn the gas off.</i> b) se l'oggetto è un pronomo , la particella avverbiale si colloca dopo il pronomo <i>Turn it off.</i> Non si dice: <i>Turn off it.</i> INTRASITIVI (senza oggetto) <i>A terrible war broke out.</i>
--	--

• Verbi seguiti immediatamente da preposizione (come: at, on, across, for, off, with, over, after, to, into) la quale a sua volta è seguita da un sostantivo o un pronomo e forma con questo un complemento indiretto.	Posizione della preposizione La preposizione non può essere collocata dopo l'oggetto <i>I'm looking for my hat.</i> Non si dice: <i>I'm looking my hat for.</i> <i>We'll have to look into the matter.</i> Non si dice: <i>We'll have to look the matter into.</i>
• Verbi seguiti immediatamente da particella avverbiale e da preposizione , a loro volta seguite da un sostantivo o da un pronomo, con cui formano un complemento indiretto.	Posizione della particella avverbiale e della preposizione La particella avverbiale e la preposizione non possono essere collocate dopo l'oggetto <i>They ran out of petrol.</i> Non si dice: <i>They ran petrol out of.</i>

Attenzione!!!

Osserva gli esempi e nota come una stessa particella può essere preposizione o particella avverbiale a seconda di come viene usata:

She got off the bus. (verbo + preposizione + compl. indiretto)

Lei scese dall'autobus.

Get off at the second stop. (verbo + part. avverbiale - senza compl. oggetto)

Scendi alla seconda fermata.

Take off your pullover. / Take your pullover off. (verbo + part. avverbiale - con compl. oggetto)

Togli il maglione.

Nei gruppi di verbi che seguono i verbi in cui è dato il complemento oggetto tra parentesi prima della particella avverbiale (ex. *Put (sth) on*) sono del tipo:

Put on your coat. / Put your coat on. / Put it on.

PRACTICE

I seguenti verbi, con i loro significati più comuni, sono tra quelli maggiormente ricorrenti nelle prove di certificazione del PET (Preliminary English Test). Studiali ed esegui gli esercizi.

break down <i>rompersi (di macchine)</i>
break into <i>entrare con la forza</i>

break out <i>scoppiare (di guerre, incendi,...)</i>
break up <i>finire (di scuole, riunioni,...)</i>

1. Completa ciascuna frase con la corretta *particella avverbiale / preposizione*.

1. A terrible war is going to break
2. Sorry, I can't pick you up. My car has broken
3. The burglars broke our house during the night, while we were sleeping.
4. The bank where I work has been broken four times this year.
5. School is going to break for the summer holidays.
6. When the fight broke no one was able to stop the two men.

bring (sth) about <i>causare</i>
bring (sb/sth) back <i>riportare</i>

bring (sb) up <i>allevare, crescere (di persone)</i>
bring (sth) up <i>sollevare (una questione)</i>

2. Completa ciascuna frase con la corretta *particella avverbiale / preposizione*.

1. I lent you a CD a month ago. When will you bring it to me?
2. The question of air pollution was very important but Dr. Murphy was the only one to bring it at the meeting.
3. They brought her as a Catholic.
4. He brought his company's collapse by reckless speculation.
5. When her parents died an aunt brought her
6. Can you bring my umbrella, please?

come across <i>imbattersi in qc per caso</i>
come back <i>ritornare</i>

come round <i>andare a trovare/far visita</i>
come into <i>ereditare</i>

3. Completa ciascuna frase con la corretta *particella avverbiale / preposizione*.

1. I came a lot of money when my old uncle died.
2. I love this small island. I hope I can come next summer.
3. She often comes for a cup of tea in the afternoon.
4. While I was tidying up the attic I came an old diamond ring.
5. Why don't you come one of these days? Bob would be pleased to see you.
6. Are you coming home for dinner?

cut (sth) down <i>abbattere</i>
cut (sb/sth) off <i>isolare, sospendere l'erogazione</i>

cut (sth/sb) out <i>tagliare, escludere</i>
cut (sth) up <i>tagliare in piccoli pezzi</i>

4. Completa ciascuna frase con la corretta *particella avverbiale / preposizione*.

1. If the bill is not paid within five days, your gas supply will be cut
2. Could you cut my meat for me please, daddy?
3. They'll cut those two trees to make room for the swimming pool.
4. The editor cut several paragraphs to make the text shorter.
5. The flood cut the village for two weeks.
6. They tried in vain to cut me of the bargain.

get on with	<i>andare d'accordo, cavarsela</i>
get over	<i>superare (di malattia, spavento)</i>

get away (from)	<i>andarsene, scappare</i>
get away with	<i>farla franca</i>

5. Completa ciascuna frase con la corretta *particella avverbiale / preposizione*.

1. It's very difficult to get with my parents.
2. The teacher will find out you haven't done your homework. You won't be able to get with it.
3. The prisoners managed to get
4. It looks as though she's getting her illness.
5. Why don't you try to get with your brother?
6. How are you getting with your studies?

give (sth) up	<i>smettere, rinunciare</i>
give (sth) away	<i>dare via</i>

give (sth) back	<i>restituire</i>
give in	<i>cedere, arrendersi</i>

6. Completa ciascuna frase con la corretta *particella avverbiale / preposizione*.

1. Jane gave eating fatty food when she went on a diet.
2. She was a spy and gave secret information during the war.
3. Although it looked as though Peter was winning the race, Alan refused to give
4. George has lent me his mobile but I have to give it on Sunday.
5. I think you should give smoking.
6. They were giving food to the poor.

go off	<i>spegnersi, andare via (di luce, gas,...)</i>
go on	<i>continuare</i>

go out	<i>spegnersi (di luce, fuoco,...)</i>
go through	<i>esaminare, leggere, ripassare</i>

7. Completa ciascuna frase con la corretta *particella avverbiale / preposizione*.

1. Suddenly the lights went
2. The teacher told the students to go reading.
3. The candle went
4. My pipe has gone
5. You should go your lesson again.
6. The customs officer went our luggage carefully.

look at	<i>guardare, dare un'occhiata</i>
look after	<i>badare a</i>
look forward to	<i>non veder l'ora di</i>

look for	<i>cercare, andare in cerca di</i>
look (sth) up	<i>consultare (dizionario, elenco)</i>

look into *indagare*

8. Completa ciascuna frase con la corretta *particella avverbiale / preposizione*.

1. Will you please look the children while I'm out?
2. I've lost my glasses. I've been looking them all morning.
3. The police are looking the disappearance of a girl.
4. Jennifer looked him in surprise.
5. "I don't know the meaning of *mean*." "Look it in the dictionary."
6. I'm really looking seeing you.

put (sth) out spegnere (<i>di luce, fuoco, sigaretta, ...</i>)	put (sth) on indossare
put (sb) up ospitare	put (sth) off rimandare (<i>di incontri, vacanze, ...</i>)
put sb through (to sb) passare qn al telefono	put (sth) aside mettere da parte, risparmiare

9. Completa ciascuna frase con la corretta *particella avverbiale / preposizione*.

1. Fortunately the firemen managed to put the fire.
2. She didn't put her coat before going out.
3. If you come to Italy, I'll be glad to put you
4. The general manager has put the annual meeting.
5. I'll put you to the captain.
6. We have managed to put enough money to buy a house.

run into incontrare qn per caso	run after correre dietro a
run out of esaurire, rimanere senza	run (sb/sth) over investire (<i>con un veicolo</i>)

10. Completa ciascuna frase con la corretta *particella avverbiale / preposizione*.

1. Did you know that Paul is in hospital? He was run by a car.
2. A dog is running a cat.
3. This morning I ran Robert. I hadn't seen him for a long time.
4. Eileen, we've run of bread. Can you go and buy some?
5. The police ran the thief but they couldn't catch him.
6. I ran a black cat while I was driving home.

take after assomigliare	take on assumere personale
take off decollare	take (sth) up iniziare qc di nuovo (<i>di attività, sport, ...</i>)
take (sth) off togliere (abiti)	take (sth) down scrivere, prendere appunti

11. Completa ciascuna frase con la corretta *particella avverbiale / preposizione*.

1. I'd like to take tennis.
2. The policeman took the driver's name and address.
3. I usually take some students for fruit-picking in the summer.
4. My wife is selfish and arrogant. I hope our daughter won't take her.
5. You can take your coat, if you like.
6. By the time we got to the airport the plane had already taken

turn (sth) down abbassare (<i>di radio, gas, ...</i>); rifiutare	turn up arrivare
turn into trasformar/si in qn/qc, diventare qn/qc	turn (sth) up alzare, aumentare (<i>di radio, gas ...</i>)
	turn (sth) on/off accendere/spegnere (<i>di radio, gas, ...</i>)

12. Completa ciascuna frase con la corretta *particella avverbiale / preposizione*.

1. I had to turn his invitation to his party because of previous engagements.
2. It's cold in here. Why don't you turn the heating?
3. They turned when the play was almost over.
4. Dr Jekyll turned Mr Hyde when he drank a special potion.
5. He forgot to turn the gas before going out.
6. We waited for two hours but he didn't turn

13. Completa le frasi inserendo le seguenti *particelle avverbiali / preposizioni*.

for, up, after (x2), forward to, out of, into, over

1. We've run flour. We need to buy some.
2. I'm looking a new flat.
3. The car almost ran the cyclist.
4. I look my younger brother when Mum is at work.
5. David is looking his first day at college.
6. I looked her number in the telephone directory.
7. Two policemen were running the thieves.
8. On his way home from work, he ran his friend Bob.

14. Completa le frasi inserendo le seguenti *particelle avverbiali / preposizioni*.

round, into (x 2), back, down, out

1. Yesterday afternoon some friends of mine came for a cup of tea.
2. A burglar broke our house and took the TV.
3. My friend Alan came a fortune when his aunt died.
4. When she came home from work, I had to tell her the bad news.
5. A fire broke and destroyed the whole village.
6. The car engine broke in the middle of the motorway.

15. Completa le frasi inserendo le seguenti *particelle avverbiali / preposizioni*.

off, up (x2), into, on

1. Water turns ice when it freezes.
2. They offered to put me for the night.
3. He turned just in time for dinner.
4. Sarah always puts her dentist's appointments.
5. Can you turn the radio? I'd like to listen to the news.

16. Completa le frasi inserendo le seguenti *particelle avverbiali / preposizioni*, in modo tale che il verbo abbia lo stesso significato dell'espressione fornita tra parentesi.

up, out, off, on, down

1. They took the old painting and put up a new one. (*removed*)
2. The plane will take in a few minutes. (*will leave the ground*)
3. When I was a teenager I didn't get with my father. (*have a good relationship with*)
4. The editor cut several paragraphs to make the text shorter. (*removed*)
5. We will be happy to put you (*have someone as a guest*)

17. Riscrivi le frasi effettuando lo spostamento della particella dopo l'oggetto quando è possibile. Scrivi X quando lo spostamento non è possibile.

- *Take off your coat.*
➤ *They were looking at the shop window.*

Take your coat off.

X

1. Turn down the television.
2. The dog ran after the cat.
3. Get on with your work.
4. I went to the station to pick up my friend.
5. I was having a look at a magazine.
6. They will look into the matter.
7. We ran out of petrol.
8. We sent for a doctor.
9. I can't keep up with my colleagues.
10. We put up our friends when they came to England.

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

E ALTRI PHRASAL VERBS

I **phrasal verbs** che seguono, assieme a quelli del paragrafo precedente, sono tra quelli maggiormente ricorrenti nelle prove di certificazione del FCE (First Certificate in English). I gruppi di verbi contengono anche *phrasal verbs* già presentati nel paragrafo precedente ma in alcuni casi con significato diverso. Studiali ed esegui gli esercizi.

be away	<i>essere assente</i>	be over	<i>finire (di evento, partita, gioco...)</i>
be back	<i>ritornare</i>	be up	<i>essere alzato (non a letto)</i>
be in	<i>essere in casa, in ufficio, ...</i>	be up to	<i>fare qualcosa di malvagio o di sbagliato</i>
be off	<i>partire</i>	be up to sb	<i>stare a qn di decidere</i>
break down		break (sth) off	
<i>cedere (di nervi)</i>		<i>interrompere (relazione, attività)</i>	
break (sth) down		break up	
<i>demolire (una porta, barriera)</i>		<i>lasciarsi, finire una relazione</i>	
call at / in at / by		call (sth) off	
<i>andare da, passare da un luogo</i>		<i>cancellare, annullare un evento</i>	
call on		call for	
<i>passare a trovare qualcuno</i>		<i>passare a prendere qn/qc da un luogo</i>	
carry (sth) about / around		carry (sth) off	
<i>portare da un posto all'altro</i>		<i>riuscire a fare qc di difficile</i>	
carry on (with sth)		carry (sth) out	
<i>continuare a fare qc</i>		<i>eseguire, compiere (di esperimenti, tests, indagini, ...)</i>	

PRACTICE

1. Completa le frasi con la corretta *particella avverbiale / preposizione* dopo i verbi **be** e **break**.

down (x 2) / off (x2) / back / away / in / up (x 4) / over

1. I'll be in no time. 2. I was from home. 3. "Can I speak to Tom, please?" "Sorry, he is not at the moment." 4. I really must be See you on Monday. 5. The rain will soon be 6. It's to you to decide. 7. What are the children to? 8. The dog is to no good. 9. When we gave her the bad news she broke and cried. 10. Let me in or I'll break the door 11. He broke his holiday to attend a business meeting. 12. Jenny and George have broken

2. Completa le frasi con la corretta *particella avverbiale / preposizione* dopo i verbi **call** e **carry**.

out (x2) / in at / around / for (x2) / on (x3) / off

1. Can you call the shops on your way home and get some milk? 2. She's going to call you at eight o'clock and she wants you to be ready to leave straightaway. 3. I was wondering when I could call the gloves that I left at your house last night. 4. We called our neighbours to see if everything was all right. 5. Our salesman will call you next week. 6. Let's have lunch now. We can carry with our work in the afternoon. 7. The experiment was carried successfully. 8. She was nervous about giving a talk to her colleagues, but she carried it very well. 9. I've been carrying these letters for days, and I keep forgetting to post them. 10. The hospital is carrying tests to find out what's wrong with her.

come about succedere	come out in avere all'improvviso problemi alla pelle (brufoli, arrossamento,...)
come across trovare per caso; incontrare per caso	come round (to) cambiare opinione
come out essere pubblicato/dato alla stampa	come round far visita; riprendere coscienza
come up with suggerire un'idea o soluzione	
drop in (on sb) fare una breve visita (a qn)	drop out ritirarsi (da una gara, ...); abbandonare tutto
fall for essere attratti, essere ingannati	fall through fallire (di piani/progetti)
fall out (about / over) litigare	fall in with sb socializzare con qn
get (sth) across (to sb) far capire qc (a qn)	get sb down deprimere
get along / on (with sb/sth) cavarsela; andare d'accordo	get down to cominciare a concentrarsi su
get away (from) andarsene, scappare	get on (with) continuare a fare qc
get away with farla franca, rimanere impunito	get over rimettersi (da malattia, spavento)
get back ritornare (a casa)	get rid of liberarsi di
get sth back riavere qc indietro	get through farcela, superare un esame, arrivare a destinazione
get by cavarsela, sopravvivere	get through (to) raggiungere qn per telefono

PRACTICE

3. Completa le frasi con la corretta *particella avverbiale / preposizione* dopo i verbi *come, drop e fall*.

through / for (x2) / about / in (x2) / across / out (x3) / round (x3) / out in

- She hasn't come from anaesthetic yet.
- I've lost my extra car keys. If you come them while you're cleaning the room, please put them in a safe place.
- How did all that come?
- This heat has made me come an itchy red rash.
- Do you still dislike your office, or have you come to thinking it's all right?
- We'll come at six.
- How many books come each year?
- If you're in town next month, we'd love to see you. Please try to drop on us.
- Paul isn't at university any longer. He dropped
- She always falls unsuitable men.
- I might have known she'd try a trick like this and that you'd fall it.
- She fell with her boyfriend over where to go on holiday.
- He fell with a friendly group of people when he was travelling in Europe.
- Our holiday fell at the last minute because the travel firm went bankrupt.

4. Completa le frasi con la corretta *particella avverbiale / preposizione* dopo il verbo *get*.

down to / on / along / away with / over / of / across / down / back / away / through

- I'd like to get with some work, if you don't mind.
- Why can't you and your sister get? You're always arguing.
- If I thought I could get it I wouldn't pay any tax at all.
- At the age of 17, he couldn't wait to get from home.
- I've got a lot of work to do but I can't seem to get it.
- It took him years to get the shock of his wife dying.
- That shirt is really ugly. Why don't you get rid it?
- I couldn't get to his office. The line was always engaged.
- Robert is really intelligent, but sometimes he has problems getting his ideas
- The chaos in his house was starting to get him
- He climbed over the wall to get his ball

go after <i>andar dietro, rincorrere</i>	go off <i>esplosione</i>
go back <i>ritornare in un luogo</i>	go on <i>continuare</i>
go back on <i>non mantenere una promessa, cambiare una decisione o un accordo</i>	go on at sb <i>continuare a parlare di qc, criticare ripetutamente</i>
go down <i>diminuire (di prezzi, temperatura)</i>	go out (of) <i>uscire da un luogo</i>
go in for <i>iscriversi a (una gara, ecc.), intraprendere una professione</i>	go over / through <i>esaminare, verificare i dettagli di qc</i>
hand (sth) in <i>dare, presentare (documenti, lettere, ...); consegnare (oggetti trovati)</i>	hand (sth) out <i>distribuire, dar via, passare, allungare</i>
keep (sb/sth) back <i>tenere qn indietro, trattenere, tenere a freno</i>	keep sth off <i>tenere qc lontano per impedire effetti dannosi</i>
keep (sb) down <i>tenere qn assoggettato, opprimere (il popolo, ...)</i>	keep on <i>continuare (a fare qc), perseverare</i>
keep sth from sb <i>nascondere, non dire qc a qn</i>	keep to <i>restar fedele a, attenersi, rispettare</i>
keep sb/sth in <i>trattenere qn/qc in un luogo, lasciare qc al suo posto</i>	keep up with <i>rimanere alla pari, non restare indietro rispetto a qc</i>

PRACTICE

5. Completa le frasi con la corretta *particella avverbiale / preposizione* dopo i verbi **go e hand**

over / back on / off / out (x2) / on / in for / in / on at / down

1. I wish you'd stop going me about my haircut.
2. Gary is hopelessly unreliable and always goes his promises.
3. Please go with what you're doing and don't let us interrupt you.
4. A local radio station received an anonymous warning twenty minutes before the bomb went
5. She went of the room with a smile on her face.
6. I always go my revision notes just before I go into an exam.
7. Have you ever considered going medicine?
8. They think prices will go next year.
9. You'd better get started on your report. You know that you have to hand it tomorrow morning.
10. Why don't you have a course description and list of assignments? The teacher handed them on the first day of class.

6. Completa le frasi con la corretta *particella avverbiale / preposizione* dopo il verbo **keep**.

up with (x2) / off / back (x2) / down / from / in / on (x2) / to

1. Take a sunshade to keep the sun
2. The police kept the rioters
3. No matter what a woman tries to do to improve her situation, there is some barrier or attitude to keep her
4. They will keep part of my salary.
5. She knew that Gabriel was not telling her all the truth. He was keeping something her.
6. That's the best scene in the film, you must keep it
7. The heretic kept his faith in spite of torture.
8. Did you give up or did you keep trying?
9. He was walking so fast that I had to run to keep him.
10. My wife keeps saying that I work too hard.
11. I did my best to keep the other runners.

look back / round girarsi a guardare	look out for continuare a guardare per vedere
look back on ricordare, riflettere sul passato	look out guardare ciò che sta succedendo e stare attento
look down on considerare qn/qc inferiore	look (sb/sth) over esaminare velocemente per farsi un'idea
look forward to non veder l'ora di, aspettare con piacere	look through leggere, esaminare un gruppo di cose per selezionare informazioni e scegliere ciò che interessa
look on considerare qn/qc come qualcosaltro	look (sth) up consultare (dizionario, elenco)
make for dirigersi verso qn o un luogo	make up applicare cosmetici, truccarsi
make sth of sth capire qc di qc, avere un'opinione di	make up (with) fare la pace
make (sth) out compilare, completare	make (sth) up inventare una scusa, una storia
make (sth) over (to) trasferire, cedere, passare	make up for compensare con qc di buono
pass away morire	pass out svenire

PRACTICE

7. Completa le frasi con la corretta *particella avverbiale / preposizione* dopo il verbo **look**.

back / on / out for / down on / out / through / back on / over

1. I'm looking the ads for second-hand cars, but there's nothing that would suit me. 2. I'll look a present for Jenny while I'm in town. 3. When they looked their many years together, they realized that their marriage had been a very happy one. 4. It's not surprising that Jane has few friends. She seems to look anyone who doesn't like the same things that she does. 5. Tom looked and waved as he left. 6. Look, a car is coming! 7. They presented their draft to the president, who looked it, nodded and signed it in less than ten minutes. 8. They looked her as a daughter.

8. Completa le frasi con la corretta *particella avverbiale / preposizione* dopo i verbi **make** e **pass**.

of (x2) / away / for / up (x3) / over / out (x2) / up for

1. She takes ages to make (her face) in the mornings. 2. He rose from his seat and made the door. 3. Can you make anything this document? 4. What do you make the new boss? 5. We often quarrel but we always make it with each other soon after. 6. He is going to make his business to his son. 7. I made a cheque to "Henry's Supermarket". 8. Just kiss and make , will you? 9. No amount of money can make the death of a child. 10. When Ella heard that she had won a million dollars, she was so shocked that she passed 11. I'm very sorry to hear that your father passed

put (sth) back / forward spostare indietro / avanti (nel tempo)	put (sb) out espellere qn che disturba put (sth) out spegnere (un incendio, ...)
put (sb) down umiliare	put (sb) through passare qn al telefono
put sth down to attribuire (la causa)	put (sth) up alzare, sollevare, erigere
put (sth) off posticipare	put (sb) up ospitare qn a dormire
put (sb) off scoraggiare qn dal fare qc	put up aumentare (prezzi, affitto, ...)
put (sth) on mettersi, indossare; accendere (la luce, il gas, ...)	put up with tollerare

run across / into incontrare qn/qc per caso	run (sb/sth) over investire con un veicolo
run after correre dietro, dare la caccia	run over / through leggere velocemente
run out of esaurire, rimanere senza	run for candidarsi (alle elezioni)

set about cominciare a fare	set off / out partire per un viaggio
set sb/sth apart rendere qn/qc diverso, distinguere	set (sb/sth) on istigare, aizzare
set (sb/sth) back causare un ritardo a qn/qc	set out dare dettagli, spiegare (soprattutto per iscritto)
set off provocare, scatenare, causare, far esplodere	set (sth) up istituire, avviare, mettere su (una azienda, ufficio, scuola, ...)

PRACTICE

9. Completa le frasi con la corretta *particella avverbiale / preposizione* dopo il verbo **put**.

through / down to / back / forward / off (x2) / out (x2) / up (x2) / up with / down

- When we arrived at the camp-site we soon put our tent.
- "May I speak to the manager?" "Hold on. I'll put you"
- The outbreak of the civil war was put the barons.
- Most European countries put the clocks in autumn and in the spring.
- Why did you have to put me in front of everybody like that?
- Once she's made up her mind to do something, nothing will put her
- I can't put your rudeness any longer.
- He was making trouble so he was put of the team.
- The general meeting has been put It will be held on Friday instead of Monday.
- The firemen were able to put the fire in a very short time.
- Can you put us for the night?

10. Completa le frasi con la corretta *particella avverbiale / preposizione* dopo i verbi **run e set**.

about / after / out of / through / for / apart / back / off (x2) / on / out / up / over / across

- We ran some old friends in the village.
- She ran me to hand me some papers I had dropped.
- We've run milk. Can you buy some?
- She was run and killed by a train.
- The director wants us to run the first act of the play this morning.
- I think he should run president.
- What sets it from hundreds of similar small French towns is the huge factory.
- He has written a letter to The Times setting his views.
- There will be a risk of public protest that could set reforms.
- Nicholas set for his remote farmhouse in Connecticut.
- The teacher told the class to work out the area of a circle, but some of them didn't know how to set it.
- A new boom was set by lower rates of discount.
- He left his job with "Johnson & Johnson" to set a new firm.
- They brought the young man in and set the dog him.

take after <i>assomigliare</i>	take (sth) off <i>togliere (abbigliamento)</i>
take (sth) back <i>ritrattare qc di detto o scritto</i>	take (sb) on <i>assumere, dare lavoro a qn</i>
take sb/sth for <i>scambiare qn/qc per qn/qc altro</i>	take (sth) on <i>accettare (un lavoro, una responsabilità)</i>
take (sb) in <i>prendere qn in casa, dare rifugio; ingannare</i>	take (sb) out <i>portare qn fuori (a cena, ...)</i>
take (sb) off <i>imitare qn (nel vestire, parlare, ...)</i>	take to <i>cominciare a piacere</i>
take off <i>decollare (di aereo)</i>	take (sth) up <i>intraprendere un'attività; occupare una posizione/spazio</i>

turn (a)round <i>girarsi (nella direzione opposta)</i>	turn (sth) on <i>accendere (gas, luce, radio, ...)</i>
turn (sth) (a)round <i>girare qc (nella direzione opposta)</i>	turn out <i>risultare essere, avere un certo esito</i>
turn away / back <i>rifiutare il permesso di entrare (in un luogo)</i>	turn (sth) out <i>vuotare, svuotare</i>
turn (sth) down <i>rifiutare qc; ridurre il volume (di TV, ...)</i>	turn out for <i>affluire, accorrere, essere presenti</i>
turn into <i>trasformar/si in</i>	turn (sth) over <i>rovesciare, rivoltare, mettere sottosopra</i>
turn (sth) off <i>spegnere (gas, luce, radio, ...)</i>	turn to <i>rivolgersi (per aiuto/consiglio)</i>
turn (sb) off <i>indisporre, stancare</i>	turn up <i>capitare/presentarsi all'improvviso</i> turn (sth) up <i>aumentare il volume (di TV, ...)</i>

PRACTICE

- 11.** Completa le frasi con la corretta *particella avverbiale / preposizione* dopo il verbo *take*.

for / back / after / in (x2) / off (x2) / on (x2) / up (x3) / to

- He left a job in the City to take farming.
- Do you take me a fool?
- He has spoken to a publishing firm. They are going to take him
- The monastery took 26 refugees.
- Don't take more responsibilities than you can handle.
- Ted's always been difficult. He takes his dad.
- He had taken a position in the centre of the room.
- Teenagers often take their teachers' mannerisms.
- UN peacekeeping forces are expected to take positions along the border.
- I married in my late teens and I was taken by his charm - which soon vanished.
- Ok, I'll take it all I admit that what I said was wrong.
- We eventually took at 11 o'clock and arrived in Venice at 1.30.
- The first series was really bad, but for some reason the public took it.

- 12.** Completa le frasi con la corretta *particella avverbiale / preposizione* dopo il verbo *turn*.

(a)round (x2) / down / into / on / off (x2) / out for / out / over / to / up (x2) / away

- It's cold in here. I'm going to turn the heater
- He turned his best friend for help.
- I can barely hear the TV. Can you turn it a little?
- We were all surprised when Barbara turned at the party. We didn't even know she was in town.
- That music turns me Please play something else!
- Turning boat people would be an inhumane action.
- I thanked him for the offer but turned it
- Everybody turned and stared when I entered the meeting late.).
- Circe turned men pigs.
- I don't want this chair facing the window. Will you turn it ?
- Liz picked up the blue envelope and turned it curiously.
- How many people turned the meeting?
- I'm cold. Do you mind if I turn the air conditioner ?
- Sometimes things don't turn the way we think they're going to.

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION (FCE)

1. Completa la seconda frase in modo tale che abbia lo stesso significato della prima usando da due a cinque parole compresa la parola fornita.
- *She really looks like her mother.*
takes *She really takes after her mother.*
1. The dog was trying to find the bone he had buried in the garden.
looking The dog he had buried in the garden.
2. Why didn't the security guard chase the thief?
run Why didn't the thief?
3. Bob inherited an enormous amount of money when his uncle died two years ago.
came Bob of money when his uncle died two years ago.
4. The fire brigade was called to extinguish the fire.
out The fire brigade the fire.
5. Peter looks like his grandfather.
after Peter his grandfather.
6. I often remember the past with mixed feelings.
look I often with mixed feelings.
7. The new manager tends to show contempt for the junior staff.
look The new manager the junior staff.
8. My old friend John arrived unexpectedly last week after over two years.
up My after over two years.
9. Can you lower the volume of the telly, please? I'm on the phone.
down Can you , please? I'm on the phone.
10. Daniel is recovering from the operation better than we all expected.
getting Daniel better than we all expected.

MULTIPLE CHOICE

2. Leggi le frasi e decidi quale risposta (A,B,C o D) è corretta.
1. If you Mary, could you tell her I'd like to see her?
 A go into B look after C run into D look up
2. The bomb shattering windows but hurting nobody.
 A went off B went up C get down D got over
3. Tom is me to have a tattoo, but I don't want to.
 A going in for B going on at C calling in at D setting about
4. I'm sorry James and Barbara's marriage has
 A broken down B broken up C broken into D made up
5. The doctor told me I should fatty food.
 A keep up with B go after C cut down on D get across

F COSTRUZIONI SINTATTICHE DEI VERBI

Questa tabella riassume le **principali costruzioni sintattiche dei verbi**.

verbo + compl. oggetto	<i>He studies law. / He likes oranges.</i>
verbo + doppio accusativo (give, offer, show, ... PAG. 100)	<i>He gave me a present. He offered me a cup of coffee.</i>
verbo + that + frase (add, admit, affirm, answer, argue, assume, assure, believe, bet, complain, declare, deny, doubt, explain, guess, inform, know, mention, observe, realise, recognise, relate, remark, repeat, reply, say, state, ...)	<i>He answered that he was from Rome. He complained that the beach was dirty. He said that he was tired.</i>
verbo + that + ... should ... Questa costruzione è usata spesso per esprimere il congiuntivo imperfetto in alternativa all'indicativo con i verbi: agree, arrange, ask, beg, command, decide, demand, desire, insist, intend, order, propose, recommend, request, require, suggest, think, urge, regret, marvel, ...	<i>He insisted that we should go. He recommended that we should book in advance. He suggested that we should hire a taxi.</i>
verbo + infinito PAGG. 366 367 369 371	<i>He forgot to buy some toothpaste.</i>
verbo + complemento oggetto + infinito (costr. oggettiva) - want, would like, hate, love, like, prefer, allow, permit, forbid, force, need, ... PAG. 367	<i>He wants me to wash the car. He doesn't allow me to go out after dinner.</i>
verbo + for + compl. + infinito (arrange, take, suit, e i verbi che reggono la preposizione <i>for</i> PAG. 367)	<i>He arranged for his son to have swimming lessons. He is waiting for John to get ready.</i>
verbo + compl. oggetto + infinito senza <i>to</i> (vedi "verbi causativi" PAG. 326 e "verbi di percezione" PAG. 328)	<i>He made me cry. He saw the girl cross the road.</i>
verbo + foma in -ing PAGG. 371 374	<i>He likes reading. He remembered meeting the woman one month before.</i>
verbo + compl. oggetto + forma in -ing ("verbi di percezione" PAG. 328 e i verbi find, catch, discover, keep, leave, get, have, set PAG. 371)	<i>He saw the girl crossing the road. He found his sister reading his diary.</i>
verbo + aggettivo possessivo (o forma possessiva del nome) o compl. oggetto + forma in -ing. PAG. 371	<i>Do you mind my/me sitting here? I can't stand Tom's/Tom crying.</i>
verbo + compl. oggetto + participio passato ("far fare":have something done, PAG. 324 e verbi di percezione PAG. 328)	<i>He had his car washed. We saw a dog run over by a car.</i>
discorso indiretto FILE 39	<i>He said that he was leaving. He told us to be quiet. He asked me what I was doing.</i>
verbo + preposizione verbo + particella avverbiale verbo + particella avverbiale + preposizione (vedi phrasal verbs, PAG. 458)	<i>He sent for the doctor. Our car broke down in the tunnel. He ran out of petrol.</i>
verbo + preposizione /particella avverbiale + forma in -ing PAG. 182	<i>He apologized for breaking the vase.</i>
verbo con costruzione personale e impersonale - con verbi come: take (vedi PAG. 86), seem, appear, happen	<i>I won't take long. It won't take long. He seems to know her well. It seems that he knows her well.</i>

G COSTRUZIONI SINTATTICHE DEI VERBI PIU' COMUNI

L'elenco fornisce le **costruzioni sintattiche** usate con i **verbi più comuni**.

A volte sono date anche forme passive quando si tratta di costruzioni di uso comune.

È tuttavia consigliabile consultare un buon **dizionario monolingue** che fornisce esempi relativi alle varie costruzioni.

(*sb = somebody; sth = something*. Quando *sb* e *sth* sono indicati tra parentesi significa che il complemento è facoltativo)

verbo	that + frase	that + sb + should	infinito	oggettiva (<i>sb to ...</i>)	-ing
acknowledge	•		<i>he is acknowledged</i> •	•	•
add	•				
admit	•				•
adore					•
advise	(<i>sb</i>) •			•	•
affirm	•				
afford			•		
agree	•	•	•		<i>on</i> •
allow			• <i>he is allowed</i> •	•	•
announce	(<i>to sb</i>) •				
answer	•				
apologise					<i>for</i> •
approve					<i>of (his)</i> •
argue	•				
arrange	•	•	•	<i>for</i> •	
ask	•	•	•	•	
assume	•				
assure	<i>sb</i> •				
avoid					• <i>sb / his</i> •
can't bear			•	•	•
beg	(<i>sb</i>) •	(<i>of sb</i>) •	•	•	
begin			•		•
believe	•		<i>he is believed</i> •	•	<i>in</i> •
bet	•				
care			•		<i>about</i> •
cause				•	
cease			•		•
choose			•		
command	•	•		•	
commence					•
comment	•				<i>on his</i> •
compel			<i>he is compelled</i> •	•	
complain	•				<i>about having to do</i> <i>about his</i> •
confess	(<i>to sb</i>) •				<i>to</i> • <i>to having done</i>
consent			•		<i>to his</i> •
consider	•		<i>he is considered</i> •	•	•
continue			•		•
dare			•	•	

verbo	that + frase	that + sb + should	infinito	oggettiva (sb to ...)	-ing
decide	•	•	•		
declare	•				
demand	•	•	•		
deny	•				• his •
deserve			•		•
desire	•	•	•	•	
detest					• sb / his •
discover	•			•	sb •
dislike					• sb / his •
doubt	• <i>if/whether ...</i>				
dread	•		•		• sb / his •
dream	•				of •
enable				•	
encourage				•	
enjoy					• sb / his •
ensure	•				
expect	•		•	•	
explain	<i>(to sb)</i> •				
fail			•		
fancy					• sb / his •
fear	•		•		•
feel	•			senza to •	sb / sth • feel like •
find	•				sb •
finish					•
forbid			<i>we are forbidden</i> •	•	•
force			<i>we are forced</i> •	•	
forget	•		•		•
forgive					sb for •
get (persuadere)				•	
go			•		•
grant	<i>(sb)</i> •				
guess	•				
hate			•	•	• sb / his •
hear	•		<i>he was heard</i> •	senza to •	sb • he was heard •
help			• (con / senza to)	•(con/senza to)	can't help •
hope	•		•		
imagine	•			•	• sb / his •
implore				•	
inform	<i>sb</i> •				
insist	•	•			on •
intend	•	•	•	•	•
invite			<i>we are invited</i> •	•	
involve					• sb / his •
judge	•			•	
keep					<i>on</i> • <i>sb</i> • <i>sb from</i> •
know	•		<i>he is known</i> •	•	
learn	•		•		

verbo	that + frase	that + sb + should	infinito	oggettiva (sb to ...)	-ing
leave			<i>he was left</i> •	•	<i>sb / sth</i> •
let				<i>senza to</i> •	
like			•	•	• <i>sb / his</i> •
long			•	<i>for</i> •	
look forward to					•
love			•	•	• <i>sb / his</i> •
make			<i>he was made</i> •	<i>senza to</i> •	
manage			•		
mention	(<i>to sb</i>) •				<i>sb / his</i> •
mind					• <i>sb / his</i> •
need			•	•	<i>it needs</i> •
notice	•		<i>he was noticed</i> •	<i>senza to</i> •	<i>sb / sth</i> • <i>he was noticed</i> •
object	•				<i>to</i> • <i>to his</i> •
oblige			<i>he was obliged</i> •	•	
observe	•		<i>he was observed</i> •	<i>senza to</i> •	<i>sb / sth</i> • <i>he was observed</i> •
offer			•		
omit			•		
order	•	•	•	•	
permit			<i>he was permitted</i> •	•	•
persuade	<i>sb</i> •			•	
plan			•		
postpone					•
practise					•
prefer			•	•	•
presume	•		<i>he is presumed</i> •		
pretend	•		•		
proclaim	•			•	
promise	(<i>sb</i>) •		(<i>sb</i>) •		
propose	(<i>to sb</i>) •	•	•		•
prove	(<i>to sb</i>) •		•		
realise	•				
recognise	•				
recommend	•	•		•	•
refuse			•		
regret	•	•	•		• <i>sb / his</i> •
relate	•				
remark	(<i>to sb</i>) •				
remember	•		•		• <i>sb / his</i> •
remind	<i>sb</i> •			•	
repeat	•				
reply	(<i>to sb</i>) •				
report	(<i>to sb</i>) •				•
request	•	•	<i>he was requested</i> •	•	
require	•	•	<i>he was required</i> •	•	<i>it requires</i> •
resent					<i>having to do</i> <i>sb / his</i> •
resist					•
risk					• <i>sb / his</i> •
say	•		<i>he is said</i> •		

verbo	that + frase	that + sb + should	infinito	oggettiva (sb to ...)	-ing
see	•		<i>he was seen</i> •	senza to •	sb •
show	(sb) •		how •	how •	
can't stand					• sb / his •
start			•		•
stop			•		• sb (from) •
succeed					in •
suggest	•	•			•
suppose	•		<i>he is supposed</i> •		
suspect	•		<i>he is suspected</i> •		
teach	(sb) •		<i>he was taught</i> •	(how) •	
tell	sb •		<i>he was told</i> •	•	
tempt			<i>he was tempted</i> •	•	
tend			•		
think	•	•	<i>he is thought</i> •		of/about •
threaten	• (+ would)		•		
trouble			•		
trust	•			•	
try			•		•
understand	•		<i>he is understood</i> •	•	
urge	•	•		•	
volunteer			•		
want			•	•	it wants •
warn	(sb) •			•	
watch			<i>he was watched</i> •	senza to •	sb •
wish	•		•	•	

PRACTICE

1. Quale costruzione è possibile? Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

(Vedi a PAG. 471)

- He is acknowledged **that he should be / to be** one of our best writers.
- He added **that he had noticed / noticing** a man jump into a taxi.
- He admitted **to steal / stealing** the jewels.
- He advised **us to take / us taking** a taxi.
- He apologized **for being / that he was** late.
- He arranged **for a taxi to collect us / for a taxi collecting us**.
- He asked **that the flowers should be watered / us watering the flowers**.
- He complained **about having to do / to have to do** a lot of work.
- He consented **that he would put / to put** them up.
- He confessed to his wife **that he had slept / him to sleep** for the second half of the film.

2. Quale costruzione è possibile? Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

(Vedi a **PAGE. 472**)

1. He decided **that we should pay / us to pay** in advance.
2. He demanded **to see / seeing** the person in charge.
3. He deserves **to receive/ that he receives** a prize.
4. He detests **to have / having** to get up when it's dark outside.
5. She discovered her mother **to read/ reading** her diary.
6. Computerisation should enable **us to cut / to cut** production costs.
7. The role of the police is to ensure **the people to obey the law / that the law is obeyed**.
8. I expect **you finding / that you will find** it somewhere in your bedroom.
9. He failed **to understand / understanding** that there was a problem.
10. I could feel drops of sweat **trickling / to trickle** down my neck.
11. I eventually found her **reading / to read** a newspaper in the library.
12. We forgave him **to have caused / for causing** the unpleasantness.
13. They hope **to visit / that they should visit** us next year.
14. They hadn't imagined **that it would be / it be** so difficult.

3. Quale costruzione è possibile? Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta. (Vedi a **PAGE. 472 - 473**)

1. John implored his parents **not to send / not sending** him away to school.
2. He insisted **us to go / that we should go** first.
3. The operation involves **putting / that we put** a little tube into your heart.
4. Let your shoes **dry / to dry** completely before putting them on.
5. I'm longing **to stop / that I stop** commuting every day.
6. I'm looking forward to **seeing / see** you.
7. I don't mind **him to come / his coming** home late.
8. The captain ordered **that all the soldiers should attend / the soldiers attending** the parade.
9. He objected **to our leaving / us to leave** immediately.
10. We've had to postpone **going / to go** to France because Adrian's got an interview for a job that week.
11. He pretended **that he didn't mind / not minding**, but I knew that he did.

4. Quale costruzione è possibile? Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta. (Vedi a **PAGE. 473 - 474**)

1. He recommended **to see / that we should see** that film.
2. He refused **doing / to do** it.
3. Please remind **me to post / me posting** this letter.
4. I suddenly remembered **me to have / that I had** an appointment.
5. He risked **that he lost / losing** his house when his company went bankrupt.
6. Can you show me how **to set / setting** the video recorder?
7. I can't stand **to hear / hearing** her cry.
8. With a single remark he succeeded **to offend / in offending** just about everybody in the room.
9. He suggested **me to take / that I should take** a taxi.
10. The weather threatens **to change / changing** by the end of the week.

H TABELLA RIEPILOGATIVA DEI TEMPI VERBALI (forma attiva)

(S = soggetto; FB = forma base del verbo; PP = participio passato)

		affermativa	negativa	interrogativa
P R E S T	Present simple	S + FB he/she/it + FB+ -s	S + do not + FB he/she/it + does not + FB	do + S + FB? does + he/she/it + FB?
S E N T	Present continuous	S + am/is/are + -ing	S + am/is/are not + -ing	am/is/are + S + -ing?
P A S T	Past simple -verbi regolari -verbi irregolari	S + FB+ ed S + forma propria (went,bought,etc)	S + did not + FB	did + S + FB?
	Past continuous	S + was/were + -ing	S + was/were not + -ing	was/were + S + -ing?
P A S T	Present perfect simple	S + have/has + PP	S + have/has not + PP	have/has + S + PP?
	Present perfect continuous	S + have/has been + -ing	S+ have/has not been + - ing (usato solo in casi particolari)	have/has + S + been + -ing?
	Past perfect simple	S + had + PP	S + had not + PP	had + S + PP?
	Past perfect continuous	S + had been + -ing	S + had not been + -ing	had + S + been + -ing?
F U T	Future simple	S + will + FB	S + will not + FB	will + S + FB?
U R E	Present continuous + time expression	vedi sopra (present continuous)	vedi sopra (present continuous)	vedi sopra (present continuous)
F U T	Be going to	S + am/is/are + going to + FB	S + am/is/are not + going to + FB	am/is/are + S + going to + FB?
	Future continuous	S + will be + -ing	S + will not be + -ing	will + S + be + -ing?
E	Future perfect simple	S + will have + PP	S + will not have + PP	will + S + have + PP?
	Future perfect continuous	S + will have been + -ing	S + will not have been + -ing (di norma non usato)	will + S + have been + -ing?
C O	Present conditional	S + would + FB	S + would not + FB	would + S + FB?
N D	Present conditional continuous	S + would be + -ing	S + would not be + -ing	would + S + be + -ing?
I T	Perfect conditional	S + would have + PP	S + would not have + PP	would + S + have + PP
I O N A L	Perfect conditional continuous	S + would have been + -ing	S + would not have been + -ing	would + S + have been + -ing?
I N	Present infinitive	to + FB	not to + FB	/
F I	Present continuous infinitive	to be + -ing	not to be + -ing	/
N I	Perfect infinitive	to have + PP	not to have + PP	/
T I V E	Perfect continuous infinitive	to have been + -ing	not to have been + -ing	/

PRACTICE

FILES
9, 11

1. Completa le frasi con i corretti **tempi del presente**. Per l'uso vedi

1. I (*work*) a lot in this period.
2. The rescue team (*pick up*) the casualties at the moment.
3. That volcano generally (*erupt*) every three years.
4. We usually (*effect*) payment by cheque.
5. Peter (*get up*) at the moment.

FILES
18, 19, 23, 24, 25

2. Completa le frasi con i corretti **tempi del passato**. Per l'uso vedi

1. I (*meet*) John two months ago.
2. We (*never / be*) abroad.
3. I (*just / come*) back from work.
4. When (*you / break up*) with your husband? - Last month.
5. He (*just / come*) back from work when he received the bad news.
6. I (*talk*) to Mary when our boss came into the office shouting.
7. While I (*cross*) the road, I was run over by a car.
8. I (*work*) all day and I'm tired.
9. We (*drive*) for almost two hours when we ran out of petrol.
10. (*you / ever / be*) to London?
11. Where (*you / be*)? - To the post office.
12. We (*be*) to Paris three times.
13. When (*you / meet*) him? - Last summer.
14. We (*not / touch*) anything until the police arrived.
15. After we (*check*) into the hotel, he went to get something to eat.
16. Since he moved to the countryside, he (*be*) more relaxed.

3. Completa le frasi con le forme verbali che esprimono correttamente il **futuro**, o con il **present simple** in alcuni casi particolari. A volte più di una soluzione è corretta.

Per l'uso vedi
FILES
26, 27, 28

1. I'm hungry. I (*have*) a sandwich.
2. Perhaps he (*come*) by train.
3. At 3 o'clock on Friday afternoon I (*work*) as usual.
4. They say prices (*probably / go up*)
5. By the end of the month I (*finish*) reading this book.
6. Scientists say that the ozone hole (*get*) bigger and bigger.
7. I have already decided where to go on holiday. I (*go*) to Sicily.
8. "My car has got a flat tyre." "Don't worry. I (*give*) you a lift to the station."
9. Look at that girl on the ladder! She (*fall*) off.
10. In the year 2050 we (*drive*) flying cars.
11. Pamela (*be*) twenty next month.
12. Sorry, I can't come to the cinema. I (*see*) Tom tonight.
13. This time tomorrow we (*sail*) to Sardinia.
14. We will send you a fax as soon as we (*receive*) the goods.
15. I hope I (*find*) a new job by the end of the year.
16. If I (*get*) that job, I'll move to Manchester.

4. Completa le frasi con i corretti **tempi del condizionale**
(present conditional o perfect conditional)

Per l'uso vedi

**FILE
33, 34**

1. (you / like) something to eat?
2. I (like) to spend a month on a tropical island.
3. If I were you, I (not / defend) him.
4. What (you / do if you saw someone stealing in a store?
5. If I had won the lottery, I (give) a lot of the money to the poor.
6. I (not / let) the children go out in such bad weather, if I were you.
7. If I lived in the city I (go) to the theatre more often.
8. She (tell) you if she had known it was important.
9. If I had been you, I (not / accept) his invitation.
10. (you / like) to come to my birthday party?

5. Sottolinea l'alternativa corretta.

Tempi dell'infinito - vedi

**FILE 42
PAG 376**

1. Do I have **to type / to be typing** this letter?
2. **To have forgiven / To forgive** is not always easy.
3. What's this instrument used for? - **To have measured / To measure** blood pressure.
4. Show me how **to operate / to be operating** this machine.
5. It's good **to be sitting / to have been sitting** by the fire on a cold day like this.
6. He claimed **to be working / to have been working** for hours.

6. Trasforma le frasi nella **forma** indicata tra parentesi.

1. I was crying when he entered the room. (neg.)
2. He kept defending his child. (interr.)
3. I have been to New York many times. (neg.)
4. They are seeing their friends next Sunday. (interr.)
5. He killed the cashier. (neg.)
6. His sister is making arrangements for her wedding. (interr.)
7. We watch television after dinner. (neg.)
8. We will be eating meal pills, twenty years from now. (interr.)
9. We will live longer lives. (interr.)
10. She is going to look for a more creative job. (interr.)
11. Alex had found a better paid job. (interr.)
12. I will have read the whole book by the end of the week. (neg.)
13. She takes after her mother. (interr.)
14. Computers will have become essential in fifty years' time. (interr.)
15. She would like to get that job. (interr.)
16. Amanda is having her hair cut. (interr.)
17. A better equipped rescue team would have rescued many more people.
(interr.)
18. They would help the children in countries at war. (interr.)
19. Did they put higher taxes on petrol? (neg.)
20. Are they going to recycle plastic bottles? (aff.)
21. They would have been lying on the beach. (interr.)
22. Would they be staying with a family? (aff.)

MULTIPLE CHOICE

7. Cerchia la soluzione corretta.

1. I ... my grandparents tomorrow.	A seeing	B 'm seeing	C see
2. David's parents ... on a farm.	A lives	B live	C living
3. James ... the dog at the moment.	A is walking	B walk	C walks
4. I ... of moving to the country.	A think	B 'm thinking	C thinks
5. Susan ... to Tom's party last night.	A hasn't gone	B didn't go	C doesn't go
6. John ... studying for three hours.	A was	B has been	C have been
7. Mrs Sway was reading a book while her husband ... the lawn.	A mows	B has mowed	C was mowing
8. I ... Jennifer for dinner later tonight.	A 'm seeing	B have seen	C saw
9. It's a waste of time trying to convince him. He never ... to anyone.	A listened	B listens	C listening
10. George ... his homework when the phone rang.	A does	B did	C was doing
11. Last night we ... at an excellent French restaurant.	A are dining	B have dined	C dined
12. Bill has already ... the grass.	A cut	B cutting	C been cutting
13. She ... the train to Paris tomorrow.	A caught	B is catching	C was catching
14. He told me ... on the grass.	A not walk	B not to walk	C not walking
15. By the end of the week I ... reading this book.	A will finish	B will be finishing	C will have finished
16. How long have you ... in Paris?	A live	B living	C been living
17. The teacher didn't begin the lesson until all the students ... down	A had sat	B sit	C will have sat
18. If I were you, I ... to a better area.	A would move	B would have moved	C will move
19. They won't earn enough money unless they ... overtime.	A worked	B work	C will work
20. Have you told the employees that there ... a meeting tomorrow morning?	A will be	B will have been	C would be

ERROR CORRECTION

8. Elimina la parola non necessaria in ciascuna frase.

- *She told me do not to touch the wire.*
1. He promised that to be back soon.
 2. I have read this book last summer.
 3. John has rarely goes to the seaside.
 4. We arrived after the play had been started.
 5. She's been having cooking all day.
 6. David won't have been fixed the roof until Friday.

7. We are to leaving for London this evening.
8. He was be watching TV when the light went off.
9. If you will go to Pisa, you can see the Leaning Tower.
10. She is the most beautiful girl I have ever be seen.

I VERBI IRREGOLARI (paradigmi)

Le forme contrassegnate da asterisco (*) hanno anche la forma regolare. La forma irregolare è la più comunemente usata.

La lista non comprende alcuni verbi irregolari di uso molto raro.

base form	past simple	past participle		base form	past simple	past participle	
arise	arose	arisen	<i>sorgere</i>	find	found	found	<i>trovare</i>
awake	awoke	awoken	<i>svegliare/rsi</i>	flee	fled	fled	<i>fuggire</i>
be	was/were	been	<i>essere</i>	fling	flung	flung	<i>scagliare</i>
bear	bore	borne	<i>reggere</i>	fly	flew	flown	<i>volare</i>
beat	beat	beaten	<i>battere</i>	forbid	forbade	forbidden	<i>proibire</i>
become	became	become	<i>diventare</i>	forecast	forecast	forecast	<i>prevedere</i>
begin	began	begun	<i>cominciare</i>	forget	forgot	forgotten	<i>dimenticare</i>
bend	bent	bent	<i>piegare/rsi</i>	forgive	forgave	forgiven	<i>perdonare</i>
bet	bet	bet	<i>scommettere</i>	forsake	forsook	forsaken	<i>abbandonare</i>
bind	bound	bound	<i>legare</i>	freeze	froze	frozen	<i>gelare</i>
bite	bit	bitten	<i>mordere</i>	get	got	got	<i>ottenere</i>
bleed	bled	bled	<i>sanguinare</i>	give	gave	given	<i>dare</i>
blow	blew	blown	<i>soffiare</i>	go	went	gone	<i>andare</i>
break	broke	broken	<i>rompere</i>	grind	ground	ground	<i>macinare</i>
breed	bred	bred	<i>allevare</i>	grow	grew	grown	<i>crescere</i>
bring	brought	brought	<i>portare</i>	hang	hung	hung	<i>appendere</i>
broadcast	broadcast	broadcast	<i>trasmettere</i>		(hanged)	(hanged)	<i>impiccare</i>
build	built	built	<i>costruire</i>	have	had	had	<i>avere</i>
burn	burnt*	burnt*	<i>bruciare</i>	hear	heard	heard	<i>udire</i>
burst	burst	burst	<i>scoppiare</i>	hide	hid	hidden	<i>nascondere/rsi</i>
buy	bought	bought	<i>comprare</i>	hit	hit	hit	<i>colpire</i>
cast	cast	cast	<i>gettare</i>	hold	held	held	<i>tenere</i>
catch	caught	caught	<i>prendere</i>	hurt	hurt	hurt	<i>fare/rsi male</i>
choose	chose	chosen	<i>scegliere</i>	keep	kept	kept	<i>tenere</i>
come	came	come	<i>venire</i>	kneel	knelt*	knelt*	<i>inginocchiarsi</i>
cost	cost	cost	<i>costare</i>	knit	knit*	knit*	<i>lavorare a</i>
creep	crept	crept	<i>strisciare</i>				<i>maglia</i>
cut	cut	cut	<i>tagliare</i>	know	knew	known	<i>conoscere</i>
deal	dealt	dealt	<i>trattare</i>	lay	laid	laid	<i>posare</i>
dig	dug	dug	<i>scavare</i>	lead	led	led	<i>condurre</i>
do	did	done	<i>fare</i>	lean	leant*	leant*	<i>appoggiarsi</i>
draw	drew	drawn	<i>disegnare,</i> <i>tirare</i>	leap	leapt*	leapt*	<i>saltare</i>
dream	dreamt*	dreamt*	<i>sognare</i>	learn	learnt*	learnt*	<i>imparare</i>
drink	drank	drunk	<i>bere</i>	leave	left	left	<i>partire,</i> <i>lasciare</i>
drive	drove	driven	<i>guidare</i>	lend	lent	lent	<i>prestare</i>
eat	ate	eaten	<i>mangiare</i>	let	let	let	<i>lasciare,</i> <i>permettere</i>
fall	fell	fallen	<i>cadere</i>	lie	lay	lain	<i>giacere</i>
feed	fed	fed	<i>nutrire</i>	light	lit*	lit*	<i>accendere</i>
feel	felt	felt	<i>sentire/rsi</i>	lose	lost	lost	<i>perdere</i>
fight	fought	fought	<i>combattere</i>				

base form	past simple	past participle		base form	past simple	past participle	
make	made	made	<i>fare</i>	spell	spelt*	spelt*	<i>compitare</i>
mean	meant	meant	<i>significare</i>	spend	spent	spent	<i>spendere,</i>
meet	met	met	<i>incontrare</i>				<i>trascorrere</i>
mistake	mistook	mistaken	<i>sbagliare/rsi</i>	spill	spilt*	spilt*	<i>versare</i>
mow	mowed	mown*	<i>tagliare</i>	spit	spat	spat	<i>sputare</i>
			<i>l'erba</i>	split	split	split	<i>dividere/rsi</i>
overcome	overcame	overcome	<i>superare</i>	spoil	spoilt*	spoilt*	<i>viziare</i>
pay	paid	paid	<i>pagare</i>	spread	spread	spread	<i>spargere</i>
put	put	put	<i>mettere</i>	stand	stood	stood	<i>stare in piedi</i>
read [ri:d]	read[red]	read[red]	<i>leggere</i>	steal	stole	stolen	<i>rubare</i>
rid	rid	rid	<i>sbarazzare</i>	stick	stuck	stuck	<i>incollare</i>
ride	rode	ridden	<i>cavalcare</i>	sting	stung	stung	<i>pungere</i>
ring	rang	rung	<i>suonare</i>	stink	stank	stunk	<i>puzzare</i>
rise	rose	risen	<i>sorgere</i>	strike	struck	struck	<i>colpire</i>
run	ran	run	<i>correre</i>	string	strung	strung	<i>legare (con corda)</i>
saw	sawed	sawn*	<i>segare</i>				<i>lottare</i>
say	said	said	<i>dire</i>	strive	strove	striven	<i>giurare</i>
see	saw	seen	<i>vedere</i>	swear	swore	sworn	<i>spazzare</i>
seek	sought	sought	<i>cercare</i>	sweep	swept	swept	<i>gonfiarsi</i>
sell	sold	sold	<i>vendere</i>	swell	swelled	swollen*	<i>nuotare</i>
send	sent	sent	<i>mandare</i>	swim	swam	swum	<i>oscillare</i>
set	set	set	<i>porre</i>	swing	swung	swung	<i>prendere,</i>
sew	sewed	sewn*	<i>cucire</i>	take	took	taken	<i>portare</i>
shake	shook	shaken	<i>scuotere</i>				<i>insegnare</i>
shed	shed	shed	<i>spargere</i>	teach	taught	taught	<i>strappare</i>
shine	shone	shone	<i>splendere</i>	tear	tore	torn	<i>dire,</i>
shoot	shot	shot	<i>sparare</i>	tell	told	told	<i>raccontare</i>
show	Showed	shown	<i>mostrare</i>				<i>pensare</i>
shrink	shrank	shrunk	<i>restringersi</i>	think	thought	thought	<i>gettare</i>
shut	shut	shut	<i>chiudere</i>	throw	threw	thrown	<i>conficcare</i>
sing	sang	sung	<i>cantare</i>	thrust	thrust	thrust	<i>calpestare</i>
sink	sank	sunk	<i>affondare</i>	tread	trod	trodden	<i>capire</i>
sit	sat	sat	<i>sedersi</i>	understand	understood	understood	<i>intraprendere</i>
slay	slew	slain	<i>trucidare</i>	undertake	undertook	undertaken	<i>svegliare/rsi</i>
sleep	slept	slept	<i>dormire</i>	wake	woke	woken	<i>tessere</i>
slide	slid	slid	<i>scivolare</i>	wear	wore	worn	<i>piangere</i>
sling	slung	slung	<i>scagliare</i>	weave	wove	woven	<i>vincere</i>
smell	smelt*	smelt*	<i>odorare</i>	weep	wept	wept	<i>avvolgere</i>
sow	sowed	sown*	<i>seminare</i>	win	won	won	<i>torcere</i>
speak	spoke	spoken	<i>parlare</i>	wind	wound	wound	<i>scrivere</i>
speed	sped*	sped*	<i>accelerare</i>	wring	wrung	wrung	
				write	wrote	written	

Strategia

per imparare i verbi irregolari.

- 1.** Trascrivi i verbi sul quaderno suddividendoli in **tre gruppi**, come segue:

Tre forme diverse			Due forme diverse			Tre forme uguali		
<i>arise</i>	<i>arose</i>	<i>arisen</i>	<i>bend</i>	<i>bent</i>	<i>bent</i>	<i>bet</i>	<i>bet</i>	<i>bet</i>
.....

- 2.** Crea dei **sottogruppi** come negli esempi.

<i>arise</i>	<i>arose</i>	<i>arisen</i>
<i>drive</i>	<i>drove</i>
.....

<i>awake</i>	<i>awoke</i>	<i>awoken</i>
<i>break</i>	<i>broke</i>
.....

<i>bear</i>	<i>bore</i>	<i>borne</i>
<i>swear</i>	<i>swore</i>
.....

<i>begin</i>	<i>began</i>	<i>begun</i>
<i>drink</i>	<i>drank</i>
.....

<i>blow</i>	<i>blew</i>	<i>blown</i>
<i>draw</i>	<i>drew</i>
.....

<i>bring</i>	<i>brought</i>	<i>brought</i>
<i>buy</i>	<i>bought</i>
.....

<i>sell</i>	<i>sold</i>	<i>sold</i>
<i>tell</i>	<i>told</i>
.....

<i>bend</i>	<i>bent</i>	<i>bent</i>
<i>send</i>	<i>sent</i>
.....

<i>forsake</i>	<i>forsook</i>	<i>forsaken</i>
<i>mistake</i>	<i>mistook</i>
.....

<i>lay</i>	<i>laid</i>	<i>laid</i>
<i>pay</i>	<i>paid</i>
.....

- 3.** Quali altri gruppi si possono formare? Formane altri.

- 4.** Memorizza i paradigmi
- ripetendoli a voce alta
 - scrivendoli ripetutamente su un foglio
(fai attenzione allo "spelling")

- 5.** Memorizza il significato dei verbi.

- 6.** Ora esercitati a completare i paradigmi partendo dalla forma base, come nell'esempio.

base form	past simple	past participle	significato
<i>arise</i>	<i>arose</i>	<i>arisen</i>	<i>sorgere</i>
<i>sell</i>

- 7.** Ora esercitati a scrivere i paradigmi partendo dal significato, come nell'esempio.

significato	base form	past simple	past participle
<i>rompere</i>	<i>break</i>	<i>broke</i>	<i>broken</i>
<i>splendere</i>

Appendix

Simboli fonetici e alfabeto

VOWELS

six	[ɪ]
sixty	[i]
seat	[i:]
red	[e]
bad	[æ]
car	[ɑ:]
dog	[ɒ]
floor	[ɔ:]
put	[ʊ]
boot	[u:]
cup	[ʌ]
about	[ə]
girl	[ɜ:]

DIPHTHONGS (double vowels)

make	[eɪ]
five	[aɪ]
now	[aʊ]
oil	[ɔɪ]
home	[əʊ]
hear	[ɪə]
air	[eə]
poor	[ʊə]

CONSONANTS

bad	[b]	singer	[n]
take	[k]	pen	[p]
watch	[tʃ]	ready	[r]
dad	[d]	sing	[s]
foot	[f]	zoo	[z]
go	[g]	wish	[ʃ]
page	[dʒ]	treasure	[ʒ]
house	[h]	tea	[t]
yellow	[j]	thin	[θ]
lady	[l]	that	[ð]
mum	[m]	voice	[v]
no	[n]	win	[w]

THE ENGLISH ALPHABET

A /eɪ/	N /en/
B /bi:/	O /əʊ/
C /si:/	P /pi:/
D /di:/	Q /kju:/
E /i:/	R /a:/
F /ef:/	S /es/
G /dʒi:/	T /ti:/
H /eɪtʃ/	U /ju:/
I /aɪ/	V /vi:/
J /dʒeɪ/	W /dʌblju:/
K /keɪ/	X /eks/
L /el/	Y /waɪ/
M /em/	Z /zed/

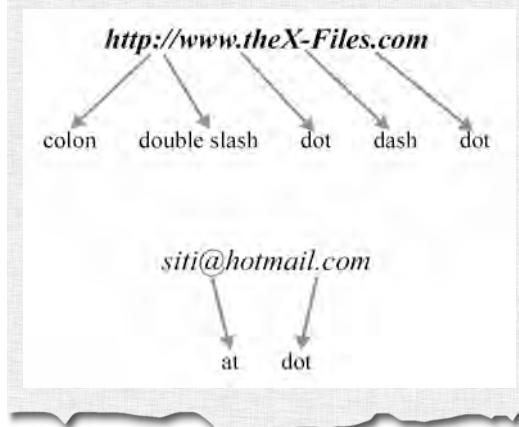
TELEPHONE ALPHABET

A Alfred	N Nellie
B Benjamin	O Oliver
C Charlie	P Peter
D David	Q Queen
E Edward	R Robert
F Frederic	S Samuel
G George	T Tommy
H Harry	U Uncle
I Isaac	V Victor
J Jack	W William
K King	X X-Ray
L London	Y Yellow
M Marie	Z Zebra

Punteggiatura (punctuation marks)

.	full stop (punto)
.	dot (negli indirizzi di posta elettronica)
,	comma (virgola)
:	colon (due punti)
;	semicolon (punto e virgola)
?	question mark (punto interrogativo)
!	exclamation mark (punto esclamativo)
“ ”	inverted commas (virgolette)
,	apostrophe (apostrofo)
()	brackets (parentesi)
—	dash (lineetta)
-	hyphen (trattino)
/	slash mark (barra)
//	double slash (doppia barra)
...	dots (puntini di sospensione)
	new paragraph (a capo)
A	capital letter (lettera maiuscola)
a	small letter (lettera minuscola)

Nota come si legge un “Internet address”



INDEX

(Abbreviazioni: agg. = aggettivo; compl. = complemento; conn. = connettivo; prep. = preposizione; pron. = pronomo; sost. = sostantivo; v. = vedi)

A

- a/an* 12, 123
- a bit* 104, 176
- a lot (of) / lots (of)* 102
- *a lot* + comparativo 176
- abbastanza* 108
- (be) able* 268
- about* 26, 63
- (be) about to* 240
- above* 30
- accompagnarsi* 435
- according to* 360
- accordo* 400, 436
- accusativo*
 - doppio accusativo 100
 - (be) accustomed to* 370
- across* 110
- actually* 411
- admit* 338, 371, 470, 471
- advice* 43
- advise* 338, 375, 471
- affittare* 450
- afford*, 366, 471
- afraid* 10
 - *be afraid (of) + -ing* 182
 - *I'm afraid so/not* 401
- after*
 - prep. di tempo 68
 - + forma in *-ing*, 182
 - connettivo 344
 - after that* 355
 - afterwards* 355
 - again* 396
 - against* 30
 - agente (compl. di) 310
 - aggettivi
 - comparativi e superlativi 166-167, 172
 - composti 180, 421
- di nazionalità 14, 424-425
- dimostrativi 24
- formazione degli 415-416
- funzione attributiva o predicativa 16
- in *-ing* e *-ed* 180
- indefiniti 40, 258-261
- interrogativi 142
- numerali cardinali 54-55
- numerali ordinali 65
- ordine degli attributi 16
- possessivi 46
- seguiti da infinito 366
- seguiti da preposizione 182, 430
- ago* 144, 197, 198
- agree* 338, 366, 470, 471
- alfabeto inglese* 483
- all* 258, 262
- allow* 272, 375, 440
 - *be allowed* 272, 440
- alone* 409
- along* 110
- already* 187
- also* 356, 400
- alternativa* 356
- although/though* 232, 357
- always* 76
- among* 30
- anche/neanche 400
- anch'io/neanch'io 400
- anche se 347, 357, 400
- ancora 396
 - non ancora 187, 396
- and* 232, 356
- another* 264
- answer* 336, 470, 471
- any* 40
 - composti di *any* 254-255

anyone/anybody, 254-255
anything, 254-255
anywhere, 254-255
apologize (for) 182, 338
approvazione 437
approve (of) 437, 471
around/round 110
arrange 367, 470, 471
articolo
- determinativo 12, 118-123
- indeterminativo 12, 123
as
- *as ... as* (uguaglianza) 172
- conn. di tempo 344
- conn. di modo 352, 397
- conn. di causa, 354
- prep. 352, 397
as a consequence 354
as a (general) rule 360
as a matter of fact 361
as a result 354
as far as 110
as far as I am concerned 360
as far as I know/can see 360
as far as ... is/are concerned 360
as for/as to 360
as if/as though 352
as long as 347
as much/many as 172
as regards 360
as soon as 230, 344
as well, 356

as well as 356
ask 336, 470, 471
- *ask for* 456
aspettare 450
at
- prep. di luogo 30, 34
- prep. di tempo 68
- dopo aggettivi 182, 430
- usi idiomatici 432
(not) at all 435
at last 345
at the moment 92
augurio 301, 444
ausiliari
- nelle risposte brevi 4
(v. anche singoli tempi verbali)
- nelle *question tags* 5, 401
(v. anche singoli tempi verbali)
- nel discorso indiretto 336
- per esprimere "anch'io/neanch'io" 400
- per esprimere "davvero?" 400
- per esprimere "io sì/yo no" 401
avere (v. *have*)
avverbi
- comparativo e superlativo degli 170, 172
- di frequenza 76
- di modo 164, 416
- di tempo determinato con *past simple* 144
- di tempo indeterminato con *present perfect* 187
- formazione degli 164, 416
- (v. anche "connettivi")
away (from) 110

B

back
- *at/in the back (of)* 34
be
- presente 4
- *been to* 186
- con *here/there* (ecco qui/là) 10
- espressioni idiomatiche con 10
- *past simple* 144
- *there, is/are* 28
- congiuntivo: *if I were* 286
- verbo di stato e verbo di azione 96-97

be able to 268, 440
be about to 240
be allowed to 272, 440
be capable of 268, 440
be due to 240, 354
be expected to 282, 442
be going to 218, 220, 224
be likely/unlikely 270, 443
be on the point of 240
be permitted to 272, 440
be supposed to 282, 442

be sure/be certain 222, 443
be/get used to 182, 184
be to (dovere) 282, 442
because
 - conn. di causa 232, 354
 - *because of* 354
been/gone, 186
before,
 - prep, di tempo 68
 - conn. 344
 - + forma in *-ing* 182
 - + *present simple* 230
begin 374
behind 30
below 30
beside 30
besides 356
(the) best 166
better 166, 170

 - *had better* 306
between
 - prep. di luogo 30
 - prep. di tempo 68
biasimare 438
big 408
born (was/were born) 144
both 260
 - *both ... and* 260, 356
bring, 452
but 232, 357
by
 - compl. d'agente 310
 - + pron. riflessivo 88
 - prep. di mezzo 86
 - prep. di tempo 68
 - usi idiomatici 432
by far 176

C

cambiare argomento 436
can 126-127, 440-441, 443
 - *can/could* 266
 - *can/may* 130
 - nel discorso indiretto 340
 - nel periodo ipotetico 228
can't (deduzione negativa) 127, 443
can't bear/help/stand/resist 370
(be) capable of 268
capacità 126-127, 266, 268, 440
carry 452
casa 404
catch 371, 452
cause (verbo) 367
certezza 443
c'è/ci sono 28
chiedere
 - chiarimenti 436
 - conferma 5, 401
 - qualcosa 441
 - a qualcuno di fare qualcosa 441
child/children 21, 405
città 404
come 352, 397

 - comparativi
 - di maggioranza 166, 170
 - di minoranza 172
 - di uguaglianza 172
 - in correlazione 175
 - irregolari 166, 170
 - rafforzativi dei 176
 - sempre più/sempre meno 175
cold (agg., *be cold*) 10
cold (sost., *have a cold*) 37
(be) compelled to 276, 442
complain 332, 470, 471
 - *complain about* 338, 471
complemento
 - d'agente 310
 - di vantaggio 100
 - diretto/indiretto 100
 - pron. personali complemento 26
composti
 - aggettivi composti 180, 421
 - sostantivi composti 421-422
 - verbi composti (v. *phrasal verbs*)
 - con *some, any, no, every* 254
 - indefiniti composti con *ever* 250

condizionale
- presente (v. *present conditional*)
- passato (v. *perfect conditional*)
congiuntivo presente 444
congiunzioni (v. connettivi)
congratularsi 435
conoscere 450
connettivi
- aggiunta 232, 356
- alternativa, 232, 356
- condizione 230, 347
- contrasto e concessione 232, 357
- causa e conseguenza 232, 354
- dubbio 349
- esclusione 232, 356
- inclusione 356
- modo 352
- precauzione 350
- scopo 232, 350
- tempo 230, 344
- altri connettivi per strutturare un discorso 360-361
consiglio/suggerimento 114, 274, 306, 441

consequently 354
(as a) consequence 354
continue 374, 471
contrasto 232, 357
correggere 436
costruzione
- oggettiva 140, 367, 470
- personale 318, 320, 470
- impersonale 320, 470
costruzioni sintattiche dei verbi 470-474
could 266, 440-441, 443
- *can/could* 266
- nel discorso indiretto 340
- nel periodo ipotetico 286, 292
- forma composta di 296-297
- con verbi di percezione 268
- *could/was able to* 268
- *could/was allowed to* 272
- *could/might* 270
countable/uncountable nouns 42, 426
country 404
couple 406

D

da
- prep. di moto da luogo 110
- prep. di tempo 68
- *for/since* 196
- compl. d'agente 310
dare (semi-modale) 280
dare indicazioni/direzioni 114
data 65
davvero? 400
decide 472
deduzione
- affermativa 132
- negativa 127
- riferimento al passato 297
deep 60
defining relative clauses 244-245
delusione 437
deny 338, 371, 472
desiderio 138, 140, 437
despite 357
- *despite that* 357
- *despite the fact that* 357
did (ausiliare) 146
dimostrativi 24
dire (*say /tell*) 332
direzioni (dare) 114
disaccordo 401, 436
discorso indiretto
- affermazioni nel 332
- domande e risposte nel 336
- futuro nel 333
- *had better* nel 341
- *would rather* nel 341
- modali nel 340
- ordini, richieste, consigli nel 338
- periodi ipotetici nel 341
- variazioni dei pron. personali, possessivi, avverbi, ecc. 333
- variazioni dei tempi verbali 333
- verbi introduttivi del 332, 336, 338

do/does (ausiliare)
- con verbi ordinari 72
- con *have* 36, 82
- *donot/don't* -imperativo negativo 114
- *so do I/neither do I* 400
- *I do/I don't* (io sì/yo no) 401
- *do you?* (davvero?) 400
do (fare) 455, 480
- *do/ make* 455
doppio accusativo 100
doppio genitivo 49
dovere

- v. *must, shall, should, ought to, have to, need*
- altre forme per esprimere dovere 282
down / down to 110
downstairs 31
dozen 42
dress 404
dry (oneself) 89
due to 232, 354
durata (v. forma di durata)
during 68
(*be*) *dying* 444

E

each 259
each other 89
early 170, 409
ecco 10
either 260
- *either...or* 260, 356
- *not ... either* 400
else 264
end
- *at the end* 34, 345
- *in the end* 345
enjoy 371, 374, 472
enough 108, 367
enter 111
esclamazioni 125
esclusione 232, 356
essential 366-367
essere (v. *be*)
età 56

even/not even 400
even if 347, 400
even though 357, 400
eventually 345
ever 76
- composti con *ever* 250
- con *present perfect* 187
every 258
- composti con *every* 254
everybody/everyone 254
everything 254
everything that 245
everywhere 254
except 369
expect 450
- ci si aspetta che 320
- *be expected to* 282
- *I expect so / I don't expect so* 401
explain 332, 472

F

fail 366, 472
fall
- *fall asleep* 88
- *fall in love* 88
family 428
fancy 441
far 166, 176
- *by far* 176
- *farther/ the farthest* 166

- *how far* 60
fare (do/make) 455
far fare 326
farsi fare 324
fast 164
feel 328, 375, 472
feel like 453, 472
fetch 452
few/a few 104

- fewer/the fewest* 172
- finally* 345, 360
- find* 371, 470, 472
- finish* 371, 472
 - (*the*) *first* (num. ordinale) 65
 - *it's the first time + present perfect* 187
 - *it was the first time + past perfect* 207
- first* (conn.) 360
 - *first of all / firstly* 360
- for*
 - compl. di vantaggio 100
 - conn. di causa 354
 - *for/since* 196
 - dopo aggettivi 430
 - dopo sostantivi 430
 - dopo verbi 182, 456, 458
 - nella forma di durata 196, 200, 210
 - prep. di tempo 68
 - prep. semplice 26
- for a long time / for long* 196
- for example/for instance* 361
- for fear of/for fear that* 350
- (be) forbidden* 276, 366, 442
- forget* 374, 472
 - forma di durata 196-197, 198, 200, 210
 - forma in -*ing* 92-93
 - come aggettivo 180, 370
 - come sostantivo (soggetto/oggetto) 185, 370
 - nelle proibizioni brevi 185, 370
 - dopo preposizioni 182, 370
 - dopo verbi 338, 371, 374-375
 - dopo espressioni idiomatiche 370-371
 - dopo verbi di percezione 371
 - dopo *need, want, require* 322, 374
 - in sostituzione di subordinata relativa 251, 370
 - in sostituzione di subordinata di modo 370
 - in sostituzione di subordinata temporale 370
 - in sostituzione di subordinata di mezzo 370
 - in sostituzione di subordinata di causa 370
 - tempi e forme della forma in -*ing* 376
 - variazioni ortografiche della 93
 - forma interrogativa, negativa, interr.- neg. (v. singoli tempi verbali)
 - forma passiva 310-311, 314
 - con verbi seguiti da preposizione 310
 - con i modali 316
 - costruzione impersonale 320
 - costruzione personale 318, 320
 - particolari significati passivi 322
 - con *get* 311
 - formazione
 - delle parole (con prefissi e suffissi) 414-417
 - del plurale 20-21, 428
 - degli avverbi di modo 164, 416
 - frazioni 65
 - frequenza
 - avverbi/espressioni di 76
 - from*
 - prep. di moto 110
 - prep. di tempo 68
 - prep. semplice 26
 - usi idiomati 432
 - furniture* 21, 43
 - further/ the furthest* 166
 - funzioni comunicative 434-449
 - con i modali e forme alternative 440-445
 - future*
 - *continuous* 234-235
 - *perfect simple* 236
 - *perfect continuous* 238
 - *simple* 222
 - v. anche futuro
 - futuro
 - anteriore (v. *future perfect simple*)
 - anteriore progressivo (v. *future perfect continuous*)
 - con *be going to* 218, 220, 224
 - con *future continuous* 234-235
 - con *present continuous* 216, 220
 - con *present simple* 226
 - con *will* (v. *future simple*)
 - altri modi per esprimere il futuro 240
 - in subordinata temporale 230
 - in subordinata ipotetica 230
 - nel discorso indiretto 333
 - nel passato 333

G

generally 76
genitivo sassone 48
- doppio genitivo 49
gerundio (v. forma in *-ing*)
get 452
- + agg. o part. passato (f. riflessiva) 88
- + part. passato (f. passiva) 311
- *get somebody to do* 326
- *get something done* 324
- *get on/into/off/out of* 111
get used to 182, 184
giorni della settimana 65

give
- con doppio accusativo 100
- in frase passiva 318
glasses 428
go,
- + forma in *-ing* 371
(be) going to (v. futuro)
gone/been 186
got (con *have*) 36
great 408
grow 451
grow up 451

H

h (muta) 12
had better 306, 441
- nel discorso indiretto 341
half 62
- *a half* 65
hair 21, 43, 426
hard 164
hardly 164
hardly ever 76
hate 84, 371, 374, 472
have
- *present simple* 36
- *past simple* 151
- espressioni idiomatiche con 82
- *have somebody do* 326
- *have something done* 324
- uso di *do/does* con 36
- uso di *did* con 151
- uso di *got* con 36
- verbo di stato e verbo di azione 96-97
have to/have got to 276
- *don't have to* 276

hear 96, 328, 375, 472
here 10
home/house 404
hope 301, 366, 472
how
- esclamativo 125, 397
- interrogativo 8, 397
- relativo 245
how about 135, 370
how far 60
how long (misura) 60
how long (tempo) 196, 200
how long is it since...? 198
how much (prezzo) 58
how much (quantità) 102
how many 102
how often 76
how old 56
however 232, 250, 357
hundred/hundreds 54
hungry 10

I

if
- nel discorso indiretto 336
- in frasi ipotetiche 227, 228, 230, 286,
294, 347
- connettivo di dubbio 349

- *as if* 352
- *even if* 347
- *if only* 301
- *if/in case* 350
- *if/whether* 349

- *if clauses* (v. periodo ipotetico)
- imagine (that)* 347
- imperativo 114
 - con *let's* 135
- imperfetto (v. *past simple*)
 - con *used to* 160
 - con *would* 160
- impiegare/raci 86
- improbabilità 443
- in*
 - dopo aggettivi 182, 430
 - dopo sostantivi 430
 - dopo superlativi 166
 - dopo verbi 182, 456, 458
 - prep. di luogo 30, 34
 - prep. di tempo 66, 68
 - usi idiomatici 432
- in a hurry* 10
- in a word* 361
- in addition (to)* 356
- in case* 350
- in case of* 347
- in contrast* 357
- in front (of)* 30
- in general* 360
- in my opinion/ view* 360
- in order to* 232, 350
- in other words* 361
- in spite of* 357
- in spite of that* 357
- in spite of the fact that* 357
- in the middle (of)* 30
- (in) the way* 352
- (in) the same way as* 352
- includere 356
- indifferenza 435, 438
- indefiniti 36, 254-265
 - relativi composti con *ever* 250
- infinito 4, 366-369
 - soggetto 366
 - di scopo 366
 - in luogo di frase relativa 251, 366
 - con *to* 366-367
 - senza *to* 369
 - *for* + costruzione oggettiva 367
 - nel discorso indiretto 338
 - nella costruzione oggettiva/infinitiva 140, 367
 - tempi e forme dell'infinito 376
- information* 21, 43
- inside/outside* 31
- instead of* 182
- interrogative indirette 336
- intenzione 218, 220, 224
- interesse 438
- Internet address 483
- interrompere 436
- into* 110, 111
- inversione soggetto/verbo
 - nelle situazioni ipotetiche 294
- invito 138, 140, 441
- irritazione 200, 300, 437
- istruzioni 114, 338

J

- job* 405
- journey* 407
- just* 409
 - con *present perfect* 187

K

- keep* 371, 472
- know* 96, 450
 - *get to know* 450
- *want to know* 336
- *know how* 268

L

- last/lastly* 360
- *last night/week/...* 144
- *at last* 345
- late* 170

lately 187
later 170
lead 452
lend/borrow 453
less/the least 172
let 272, 440, 473
- *let somebody do* 326
let's 135, 441
like
- prep. 352, 397
- verbo 84, 140, 374, 473
- *would like* 138, 140, 367, 374
likely/unlikely, 270, 443

linkers (v. connettivi)
little 104
- *a little* 104, 176
lonely 409
look
- *look at* 328, 456, 460
- *look forward to* 182, 460, 466
- *look like* 397, 453
- *it looks as if/as though* 352
lose 451
lots of 102
love 84, 371, 374, 473
luggage 21, 43, 426

M

madam 406
mai 76
make 455
- *make/do* 455
- *make somebody do* 326
- *make oneself loved/hated/...* 326
manage (to) 268, 366, 473
many 102, 176
- *as many as* 172
- *how many* 102
- *too many* 104
matter
- *it doesn't matter* 436, 438
- *what's the matter* 10
may 130, 440-441, 443
- *may/can* 130
- *may/might* 270
- nel discorso indiretto 340
- nel periodo ipotetico 228
- forma composta di 296-297
- per esprimere augurio 444
maybe 130
mean 374
- *(be) meant* 442
mesi 65
meet 89
might 270, 440, 443
- *might/may* 270
- *might/could* 270
- nel discorso indiretto 340

- nel periodo ipotetico 286, 292
- forma composta di 296-297
mind
- indifferenza 436
- permesso 440
- richiesta 138, 441
Miss, Mr, Mrs, Ms 2, 406
misure 60
million/millions 54
modali (potere, dovere, volere)
- caratteristiche generali dei 126
- dopo connettivi di scopo e precauzione 232, 350
- forma passiva con 316
- forme composte dei 296-297
- funzioni comunicative con 440-445
- nei periodi ipotetici 228, 286, 294
- nel discorso indiretto 340
- v. anche i singoli verbi
molto/i 102, 176
money 21, 43, 426
more 166-167, 170
- *no more* 396
moreover 356
most
- quantità (*most of*) 261, 262
- superlativo (*the most*) 166, 170, 261
much 102, 176
- *as much as* 172
- *how much* 58, 102
- *too much* 104

- *very much* 102
- must* 132, 442, 443
- *must / have to* 132, 276
- *mustn't / don't have to* 276

- *must / should* 274
- nel discorso indiretto 340
- nel periodo ipotetico 228
- forma composta di 297

N

namely 361
 nazionalità 14, 424-425
near 30
necessary 276, 280, 367, 442
 necessità 276, 280, 442
need 86, 280, 442

- + forma in -ing 322
- semi-modale 280
- forma composta di 280, 297

neither (of) 260, 262

- *neither am I / do I ...* 400
- *neither....nor* 260, 356

never 76

- con *present perfect* 187

nevertheless 357
next 360
next to 30
no (agg. indefinito) 40

- composti con 254-255
- no good* 370
- no longer* 396
- no more* 396
- no need* 442

no one 254
no point in 370
no use 370
nobody 254
none (pron. indefinito) 40

- *none of / neither of* 262

nor 356

- *neither ... nor* 260, 356
- *nor am I/nor do I* 400
- not ... any longer* 396
- not ... any more* 396
- not at all* 435
- not only ... (but also)* 356

notice 328, 375, 473
nothing 254-255
now 92
nowhere 254
number

- *a large number of* 102

numeri

- cardinali 54-55
- ordinali 65
- di telefono 56

O

obbligare 326
obbligo 123, 274, 442
(be) obliged to 276, 442
of 26

- dopo aggettivi 182, 430
- dopo indefiniti 255, 258, 260
- dopo sostantivi 430
- dopo superlativi 166
- dopo verbi 182, 456

of course 127, 130
off 110 -111

- dopo verbi 458

offer 366, 473

- con doppio accusativo 100

- con costruzione personale (f. passiva) 318
- verbo introduttivo del discorso indiretto 338

offrire qualcosa 138, 441
offrirsi di fare qualcosa 135, 441
often 76

- *how often* 76

old 16

- *be ... old* 10, 56
- *how old* 56

on

- prep. di luogo 30, 34
- prep. di tempo 66, 68

- dopo aggettivi 430
- dopo sostantivi 430
- dopo verbi 182, 456, 458
- + forma in *-ing*, 344
- usi idiomatici 432
on condition that 347
on the contrary 357
on the other hand 357
on the whole 360
on top of that 356, 437
once 344
once a (day/week/...) 76
one
- numero cardinale 54
- *one of* 262
one/ones 142
one another 89
oneself 88
only 409
- *if only* 301
- *not only ... but also* 356
on(to) 110
opinione 360, 436
opposite 30

or 232, 356
- *either ... or* 232, 356
- *or else* 356
- *or rather* 361, 436
- *or better* 361
order 338, 473
ordinare argomenti 360
ordini 114
- nel discorso indiretto 338
ore 62
other(s) 264
ought to 126, 274, 441, 443
- nel discorso indiretto 340
- forma composta di 296-297
out of
- prep. di luogo 110-111
- nelle proporzioni 262
- usi idiomatici 432
outside 31
over 30
owing to 232, 354
own (verbo) 96
(on one's) own 88

P

parlare (*speak/talk*) 451
parole
- composte 48, 421-422
- formazione delle 414-425
partecipazione 438
particella avverbiale 458
participio passato
- forma 186
- come aggettivo 180
- dopo verbi di percezione 328
- in luogo di frase relativa 251
- nei tempi composti 186, 206, 236, 290, 296-297
- nella forma passiva 310, 314, 316, 318, 320
- nella struttura *have something done* 324
participio presente (v. forma in *-ing*)
passato progressivo (v. *past continuous*)

passato prossimo (v. *past simple* e *present perfect*)
passato remoto (v. *past simple*)
passivo (v. forma passiva)
past
- prep. di luogo 110
- prep. di tempo 62
past continuous 154, 156
past participle (v. participio passato)
past perfect continuous 212
past perfect simple 206-207, 212
past simple
- *di to be* 144
- *di to have*, 151
- dei verbi regolari e irregolari 146-147
- contrasto con *past continuous* 156
- contrasto con *present perfect* 192
- dopo *it's (about /high) time* 308
- dopo *wish* 300

- people* 21
 percentuale 262
 perdere (*lose/miss*) 451
perfect conditional 290
 - nelle ipotetiche di 3° tipo 292
 - nel discorso indiretto 333*perfect conditional continuous* 290
perhaps 130, 222
 periodo ipotetico
 - di tipo "0" 227
 - di 1° tipo 228, 294
 - di 2° tipo 286, 294
 - di 3° tipo 292, 294
 - nel discorso indiretto 341
 permesso 127, 130, 266, 270, 272, 440
permit 272, 375, 440, 473
(be) permitted 272, 440
 persuasione 326
personally 360
phrasal verbs 458-469
 piacere (verbo) 84, 371, 374, 435
 - esprimere piacere 125, 437
 - (*a piece (of)* 42
 - piuttosto 108*plain* 408
plenty of 102
 plurale dei sostantivi 20-21, 426, 428
 poco/pochi 104
 (un) po' di 104
 portare 452
 posizione
 - degli aggettivi (attributo/predicato) 16
 - degli avverbi di frequenza 76
 - delle espressioni di frequenza 76
 - degli avverbi con *present perfect* 187
 - della particella avverbiale con *phrasal verbs* 458
 - della preposizione con *phrasal verbs* 458
 - delle preposizioni con i relativi 244, 248
 - di *enough* 108
 possessivi
 - aggettivi 46
 - pronomi 52
 possibilità 127, 130, 266, 270, 443
 precauzione 350
prefer 84, 304, 374, 473
 preferenza 304, 444
 prefissi 417
 prendere 452
 preoccupazione 437
 preposizioni
 - di mezzo 86
 - di moto 110
 - di stato in luogo 30-31, 34
 - di tempo 68
 - semplici 26
 - dopo aggettivi 182, 430
 - dopo sostantivi 430
 - dopo verbi 182, 456
 - con *phrasal verbs* 458
 - + forma in *-ing* 182, 370
 - usi idiomatici delle 432*present conditional* 284
 - nelle ipotetiche di 2° tipo 286
 - nel discorso indiretto 333*present conditional continuous* 284
present continuous 92
 - contrasto con *present simple* 96
 - con valore di futuro 216
 - contrasto con *to be going to* 220*present perfect simple* 186
 - con *for* e *since*, 196
 - contrasto con *past simple* 192
 - contrasto con *present perfect continuous* 202*present perfect continuous* 200
 - contrasto con *present perfect simple* 202
 presentare/presentarsi 434
 presente
 - abituale (v. *present simple*)
 - progressivo (v. *present continuous*)*present simple*
 - di *to be* 4
 - di *to have* 36-37
 - dei verbi ordinari 72
 - con valore di futuro 226
 - nel periodo ipotetico di tipo "0" 227
 - nelle subordinate temporali 230
 - nelle subordinate ipotetiche 227, 228, 230*prestare (lend/borrow)* 453
 prezzi 58
 probabilità 130, 270, 443
 professioni

- articolo indeterminativo con le 12, 123
proibizione 132, 274, 276, 442
(be) prohibited 276, 442
promise 332, 338, 366, 473
pronomi
- dimostrativi 24
- indefiniti 40, 254-265
- interrogativi 8, 78, 142
- personali complemento 26
- personali soggetto 2
- possessivi 52

- reciproci 82
- relativi indefiniti composti con *ever* 250
- relativi restrittivi 244-245
- relativi non restrittivi 248
- riflessivi 88-89
propose 374, 473
proposta 135, 441
proporzioni 262
provided/providing (that) 374
punteggiatura 483
put on 452

Q

quantità
- elevata 102
- eccessiva 104
- indefinita 40
- ridotta 104
- nulla 40
- totale 258-259
quanto/i? 102
(a) quarter 62

quasi 187
quasi mai 76
question tags 401
- v. anche singole forme verbali
question words 8, 46, 78
- soggetto/oggetto 78
questo/quello 24
quite 108

R

rafforzare un argomento/idea 356, 436
rammarico/rimpianto 300-301, 437
rarely 76
rather 108, 176
- *rather than* 304
- *or rather* 361
- *would rather* 304, 341
recently 187
reciproci (v. pronomi)
recommend 338, 375, 470, 473
refuse 338, 366, 473
regret 338, 374, 473
relativi (v. pronomi)
remember 374, 453, 473
reply 336, 473

reported speech (v. discorso indiretto)
require (+ -ing) 322, 374, 473
richieste 127, 266, 441
- nel discorso indiretto 338
ricordare (*remember/remind*) 453
rifiutare (un' offerta) 138
riflessivi (v. pronomi)
riformulare 361, 436
rimproverare 297, 438
ringraziare 435
risk 371, 473
risposte brevi
- v. singoli tempi verbali
- nel discorso indiretto 336
- con *hope, think, expect, suppose, ...* 401

S

salire/scendere da un mezzo di trasporto 111
salutare 434
(the) same (as) 172

say 332
- *say/tell* 332
scissors 428

scopo 232, 350
 scusarsi 435
see 96-97, 328, 369, 375, 453, 474
seem 453, 470
seldom 76
 sembrare 453
 sempre 76
 sempre più/sempre meno 175
shall 135, 441
 - nel discorso indiretto 340
 - nelle *question tags* 401
short answers (v. risposte brevi)
should 274, 441
 - *should/must* 274
 - *should/would have to* 284
 - forma composta di 296-297
 - inversione con 294
 - nel discorso indiretto 340
 - nei periodi ipotetici 228, 286, 292
 - verbi + *should* 366, 470, 471-474
 si (si dice/si pensa che ...) 320
 signore, signora, signorina 406
 simboli fonetici 483
simple past (v. *past simple*)
simple present (v. *present simple*)
since
 - prep. di tempo 68
 - nella forma di durata (*since/for*) 196
 - *it is ... since* 198
 - connettivo di tempo 344
 - connettivo di causa 232, 354
slightly 176
smell 96-97, 453
so
 - *I think/hope/expect so* 401
 - connettivo di causa 354
 - connettivo di conseguenza 232, 354
 - nelle esclamazioni 125
 - *not so ... as* 172
 - *so am I/so di I* 400
 - *so as to / so as not to* 350
so far 187
so little/so few 104
so much/so many 102
so ... that 232, 354
so that 232, 350

soggetto
 - forma in *-ing* come soggetto 185, 370
 - infinito come soggetto 366
 - inversione soggetto/verbo 294
 - *it* come soggetto impersonale 2, 320, 367
 - omissione del 2
 - pronomi personali soggetto 2
 - *question words* come soggetto 78
 (di) solito 76
some 40
 - composti di 254-255
somebody/someone 254-255
something 254-255
sometimes 76
somewhere, 254-255
soon 409
 - *as soon as* 230, 344
 sorpresa 125, 400, 438
sorry 366, 435, 436
 sostantivi
 - collettivi 428
 - comparativi e superlativi con 170, 172
 - composti 421-422
 - di nazionalità 424-425
 - formazione dei 414-415
 - numerabili/non numerabili 42-43, 426
 - singolare e plurale dei 20-21, 426, 428
 - terminanti in *-ing* 185, 370
 - usati come attributo 16, 421
sound 352, 453
speak 451
 speranza 437
 spesso 76
 stagioni 65
start 374, 474
 stato in luogo
 - preposizioni di 30-31, 34
still 396
stop 374, 474
 subordinata
 - causale (causa) 232, 354
 - consecutiva (conseguenza) 232, 354
 - concessiva (concessione) 232, 357
 - finale (scopo) 232, 350
 - dubitativa (dubbio) 349
 - ipotetica (condizione) 230, 347

(v. anche periodo ipotetico)
- modale (modo) 352
- temporale (tempo) 230, 344-345
- relativa restrittiva 244-245
- relativa non restrittiva 248
succeed (in) 268, 474
successione (nel tempo) 345
such (esclamativo) 125
- *such as* 361, 397
- *such ... that* 232, 354
suffissi 414-416
suggerimento 135, 274, 338, 441

suggest 338, 371, 470, 474
superlativo relativo
- di maggioranza 166-167, 170
- di minoranza 172
- irregolare di aggettivi 166
- irregolare di avverbi 170
suppose
- *be supposed to* 282
- *It is supposed that/He is supposed to* 320
- *I suppose so/not / I don't suppose so* 401
- *suppose/supposing that* 347
supposizione 274, 289, 297

T

take 86, 452, 470
take off 111, 461, 468
talk 451
tall 60
taste 96, 453
telefono
- numeri di telefono 56
- conversazioni al telefono 24, 435
tell 318, 332, 338, 474
- *say/tell* 332
than 166, 170, 172
that
- congiunzione 332
- dimostrativo 24
- relativo 244-245
- *that is/that is to say* 361, 436
the (v. articolo determinativo)
then 345
there 10, 333
- *there is/there are* 28
therefore 354
these 24
think 96-97, 222, 332, 474
- *I think so/I don't think so* 401
- *It is thought that He is thought to* 320
thirsty 10
this 24
those, 24
though 357
- *as though* 352
- *even though* 400

thousand/thousands 54
through 110
throughout 68
till /until 68, 230, 236, 344
time 407
- *What time is it?* 62-63
- *it's the first/second time* 187
- *it was the first/second time* 207
- *it's (about/high) time* 308
- *for a long time* 196
to
- prep. di moto a luogo 110
- prep. di tempo 62, 68
- compl. di termine 100
- dopo aggettivi 430
- dopo sostantivi 430
- usi idiomatici 432
- preposizione o particella infinitiva 184
- v. anche infinito con *to/senza to*
tonight 216
too 104
- *too little/toofew* 104
- *too much/too many* 104
towards 110
trapassato prossimo (v. *past perfect*)
trapassato prossimo progressivo (v. *past perfect continuous*)
travel
- verbo 111
- sostantivo 407
troppo/i 104

trousers 428
try 374, 474

tuttora 396
twice (a day/a week/...) 76

U

under 30
- usi idiomatici 432
unless 228, 230, 347
unlikely 270, 443
until /till 68, 230, 236, 344
up 110
- *up to now* 187

- *be up to* 463
upstairs 31
uscire 111
used to 160, 184
(*be/get*) *used to* 182, 184
usually 76
(*as*) *usual* 352

V

variazioni nel discorso indiretto
(v. discorso indiretto)
variazioni ortografiche nella formazione di
- avverbi di modo 164
- comparativi e superlativi degli
aggettivi 166
- forma in *-ing* 93
- *past simple* dei verbi regolari 146
- plurale dei sostantivi 20-21
- 3a pers. sing. del *present simple* 72
vedere/guardare 453
verbi
- composti (v. *phrasal verbs*)
- costruzioni sintattiche dei 470-474
- di movimento 111
- di percezione 328, 375
- di stato 96-97
- di volontà (volitivi) 140
- introduttivi del discorso indiretto
(v. discorso indiretto)
- irregolari 146-147, 480-481
- modali (v. modali)
- non seguiti da preposizione 456
- regolari (*past simple* dei) 146-147
- riflessivi /non riflessivi 88-89
- seguiti da oggetto indiretto e diretto 100, 470

- seguiti da agg. possessivo/forma possessiva
del nome/compl. oggetto + *-ing* 371, 470
- seguiti da costruzione oggettiva 367, 470
- seguiti da *for* + costruzione oggettiva 367, 470
- seguiti da *that* + frase 470
- seguiti da *that* + *should*, 470
- seguiti da forma in *-ing* 371, 470
- seguiti da forma in *-ing* o infinito 374
- seguiti da infinito con *to* 366-367, 470
- seguiti da infinito senza *to* 369, 470
- seguiti da preposizione 182, 456, 458, 470
- seguiti da particella avverbiale 458, 470
- semi-modali 280
- tempi verbali (v. singole forme verbali)
- tabella dei tempi verbali 476
vero/non è vero? (v. *question tags*)
very 102
- *the very* 176
- *very much* 102
viaggio 407
village 404
volerci/impiegarci 86
volere
- modali (v. *will* e *would*)
- *want* 140
- volere che + congiuntivo 140

W

wait for 367, 450
want,
- + infinito 140

- + costruzione oggettiva 140
- + forma in *-ing* 322, 374
- *want to know* 336

- ward(s)*
 - avverbi composti con 416
- warn* 338, 474
- waste* 371
- watch* 328, 453, 474
- way* 407
 - *in the way* 352
 - *in the same way as* 452
 - *on the way* 34
- wear* 452
- well* 164
 - *as well* 356, 400
 - *as well as* 356
- were* (congiuntivo)
 - dopo *as if* 352
 - dopo *wish* 300
 - *if I were* 286
- what*
 - esclamativo 125
 - interrogativo 8
 - relativo 245
 - *what/which* 142
 - *what about* 135, 370, 441
 - *what's more* 356, 437
- whatever* 250
- when*
 - tempo 227, 230, 344
 - interrogativo 8
 - relativo 245
 - *when/while* 156
- whenever* 250
- where*
 - interrogativo 8
 - relativo 245
- whereas* 357
- wherever* 250
- whether* 366, 349
 - *whether/if* 366, 349
- which*
 - interrogativo 142
 - relativo 244, 248
 - *which/what* 142
- whichever* 250
- while*
 - contrasto 357
 - tempo 230, 344
- *while/when* 156
- *after a while* 345
- who*
 - interrogativo 8
 - relativo 244, 248
- whoever* 250
- (the) whole* 259
 - *on the whole* 360
- whom* 244, 248
- whose*
 - interrogativo 46
 - relativo 244, 248
- why*
 - interrogativo 8
 - relativo 245
 - *why/because*, 8
 - *why don't* 135, 441
 - *why not* 135, 369, 441
- wh-questions* 8, 78
 - nel discorso indiretto 336
- wide* 60
- width* 60
- will*
 - ausiliare del futuro 222, 234, 236, 238
 - abitudine nel presente 444
 - modale (richieste/offerte) 138
 - forma composta di 297
 - nel discorso indiretto 333
 - nel periodo ipotetico di 1° tipo 228, 294
 - nelle *question tags* con imperativi 401
- wish* 300-301, 444
 - nel discorso indiretto 341
 - per esprimere augurio 301, 444
- with* 26
 - dopo aggettivi 430
 - dopo sostantivi 430
 - dopo verbi 456
- with reference to* 360
- within* 68
- without* 26
 - + *-ing* 182
- woman* 21
- wonder* 336
- work* (sostantivo) 426
- worse/the worst* 166, 170
- (be) worth* +*-ing* 370

would

- ausiliare del condizionale 284, 290
- abitudine nel passato 160, 444
- forma composta di 296-297
- modale (richieste/offerte) 138
- per futuro nel passato 333
- nel periodo ipotetico 286, 292
- nel discorso indiretto 333, 340

would like 84, 138, 140, 367, 374, 441, 444

would mind 138, 441

would prefer 84, 304, 367, 374, 444

would rather 304, 369, 444

- nel discorso indiretto 341

wrong

- *be wrong* 10
- *what's wrong?* 10

Y

yes/no questions

- nel discorso indiretto 336

yesterday 144

yet

- contrasto 357

- *yet? / not ... yet* con *present perfect* 187

(*the*) *young* 118, 409

Z

zero 54

Trinity Whitebridge
www.trinity-whitebridge.co.uk

Editor: Ralph Nisbet
Cover designed by Saverio Todaro
Project managed and edited by Claudia Varesi
Printed by Socrate, Città di Castello (PG)

Copyright (2006) by Trinity Whitebridge

First published 2006
2010 2009 2008 2007 2006
V IV III II I